





LEFEVRE  
—  
DESTRUCTION  
OF  
TROY

LONDON  
1676















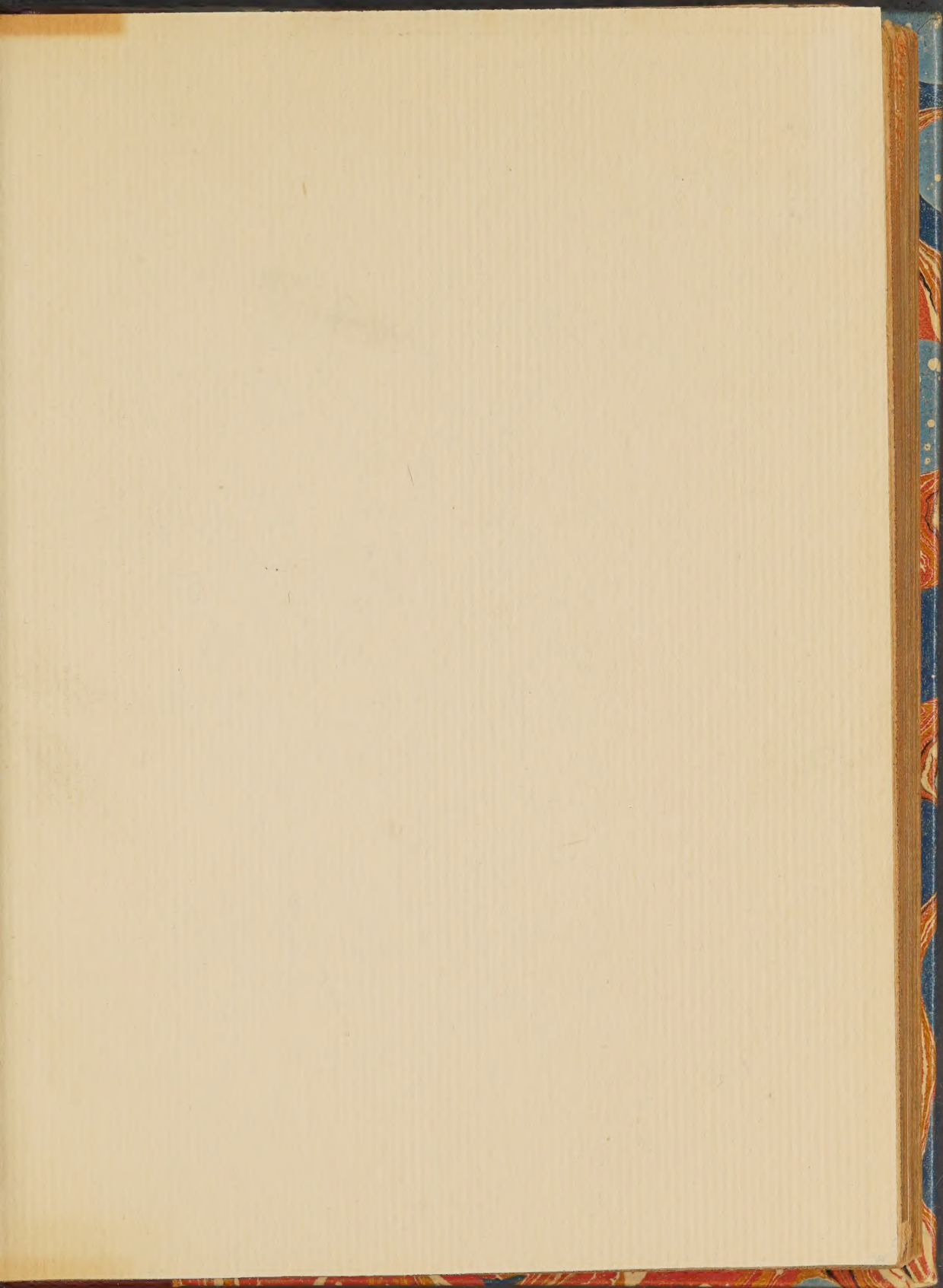
939. 21

D477

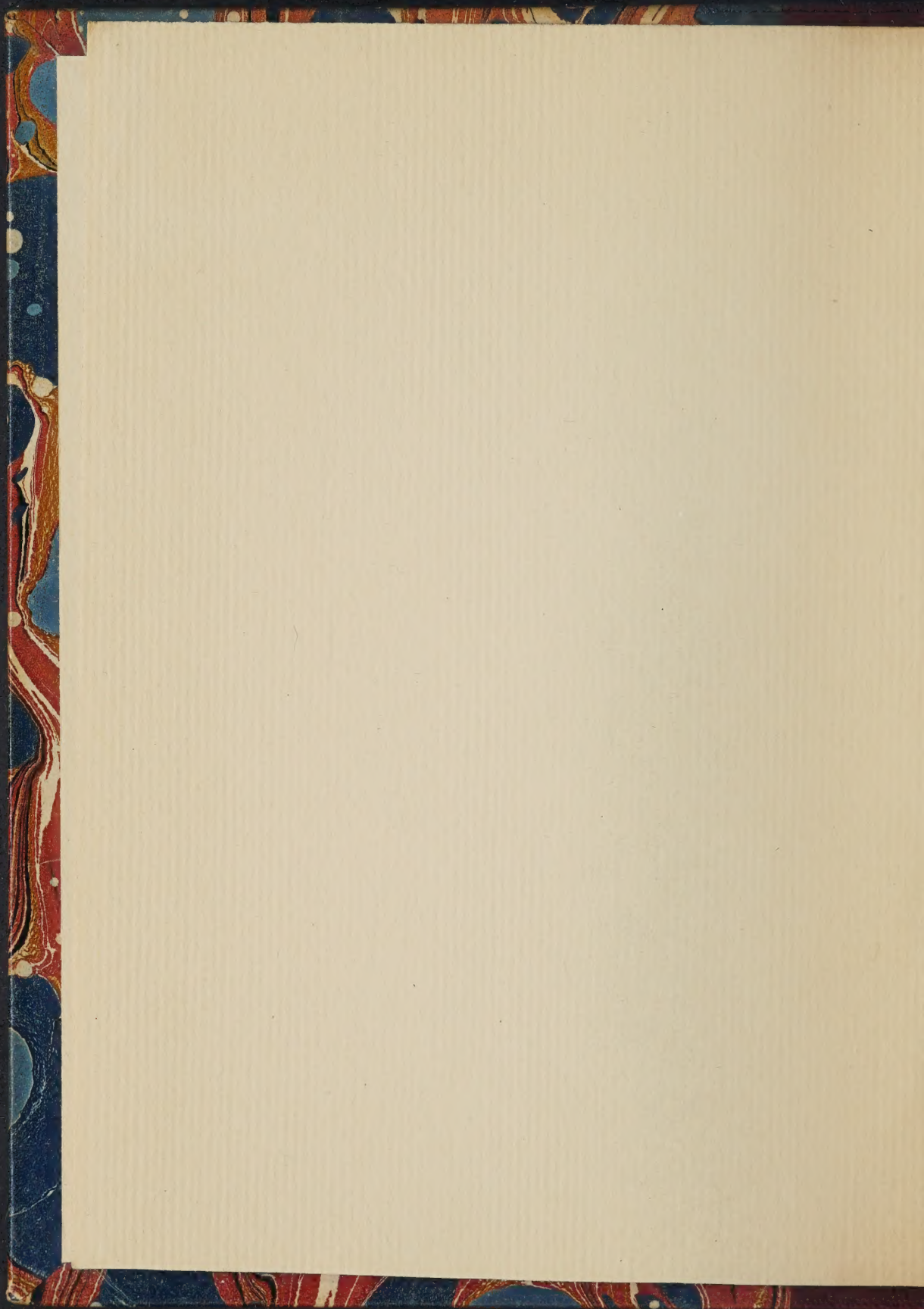
1676

R.B. 9-10











THE  
DESTRUCTION  
OF  
TROY,  
THE  
Second Book.

WHEREIN IS CONTAINED

The Prowess of the Valiant

H E R C U L E S,

WITH HIS

Marvellous Deeds, Wonderful Works;  
And of his Death.

---

L O N D O N,

Printed for Thomas Passenger, at the Three Bibles  
on London-Bridge. 1676.



THE  
DESTRUCTION  
OF

TROY.

THE  
Second Book.

79145  
WHEN IT IS CONTAINED

The Towers of the Valiant

H. E. R. C. U. L. E. S.

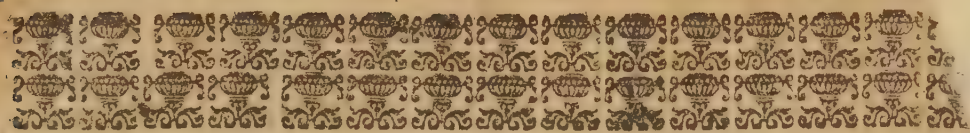
WITH HIS

Marvelous Deeds, Wonderful Works;  
And of his Death.

LONDON,

Printed for Thomas T. & Co. in the Strand.





THE  
DESTRUCTION  
OF  
TROY.

---

The First Book.

---

CHAP. I.

The Linage of *Saturn*, and how for inventing the Sowing of Corn. Planting, &c. He was honoured in *Creet* as a God.

**W**hen the children of Noah, were spread by the Climates  
raigns, and strange habitations of the world, by the  
general division of tongues, made at the foundation  
of the Tower of Babylon: in those days, that the  
world was of gold, and the men stedfast as mountains, and rude  
as beasts, exalting their desires in rare conceits, practising to  
make Towns, Cities and Castles, Scepters and Diadems, and  
to forge the cursed sect of Gods among the possessors of the Isle  
of *Creet*. There was a man exalted full of Riches, happy in a  
benterous enterprize, and very rich with the grace of fortune,  
some men called this man *Celion*, and some *Uranus*, he was  
lawful Son of *Ether*, son of *Damor Gorgon* the old de



## The First Book of

the Cabies of Arcadie, and first beginner of the false Panim Gods. This Uranus had to wife his own sister called Vesta: he lived gloriously with her, and had possession of the most part of the Ile of Creet, and abounded prosperously in worldly goods, increasing in Seigniorie: and in linage, and was marvellous rich. He had two Sins, to wit Titan and Saturn: and two Daughters, Cibell and Ceres, of whom hereafter: and he had many other sons and daughters, of whom I make no mention, forasmuch as they are out of my purpose. What shall I rehearse more of the glory of this Uranus. He had all things as he would, and was fortunate, and nothing went against him: his goods multiplied, his Children increased, but Titan, the eldest son was ill favoured, and counterfeit, and Saturn was marvellously fair and amiable: for which cause Vesta the Mother loved much better Saturn than Titan, and that by nature, for naturally, the mothers love better their fair Children than their foul: wherefore Saturn was nourished most in the lap of his mother, and Titan was in manner banished. And when Saturn was great, what for his beauty, and for his cunning, and other virtues, he bare the whole love of all the people.

In this time, whomever found any thing profitable, for y<sup>e</sup> commonwealth, was commonly proclaimed a God, after their foolish and dark custome: wherefore Saturn was so named, for in his youth, and by his cunning he gave the first instruction, for tilling and manuring the earth, and for sowing and reaping corn. This invention was applyed to Saturn, with divine reverence and love, not only of Vesta and Uranus, and his kinsmen: but above measure, all the people of Creet, and of the marshes and Countries lying thereabout. And thus his name was renowned, that from all places, men and Children, Nobles and Peasants, came to his School to learn. In those days that Saturn began thus to flourish, and was twenty years of age, and his brother forty, Uranus their Father by a sickness that he had, dyed. It was grievous to Vesta his wife, and his sons and daughters also, they did his obsequie reverently, abounding with great and bitter sorrow. The obsequie done (but not their sorrow) Vesta sam-



## The Destruction of Troy.

3

that Titan her eldest son pretended to enjoy the succession of his Father: He on a day called her dear son Saturn with Titan, and other of the Countrey, and said, that her young son Saturn should succeed, and have the heritages of her Husband. Titan hearing the will of his mother wept, and kneeling to his mother, said to this wife: Mother, I am right unfortunate, when ye will that my right patrimony shall be given from me: and that because I am not so well formed of members, as my brother Saturn is, ye will deprive me of my fortune, which ye may not do by law or reason. I am your first Son, ye have nourished mee with the substance of your blood, as your Child bozn in your belly nine months. I am he that first inhabited your feminine chambers: then you gave me your due love, and sorted to mee the succession of your heritages. Then whence cometh this, that ye now seek to destroy me: every mother is bound to conserve the right of her Child. Alas, mother, will ye make me a bastard, was not Uranus my father? am I not he, that ye were so glad for, when first I was conceived in the lawful bed of my Father your Husband? am I not he, that ye bare, and gave mee suck of your breasts, and oftentimes, kissed me, when my members were soft and tender? O mother! acknowledge that I am Titan, and for as much as I am not so well addressed as my brother Saturn, so much ye ought the more to desire my promotion.

When Vesta heard her Son Titan speak so profoundly, she had pittie on him: yet that pittie was not of so high vertue, that might surmount the great love she had for Saturn, then she said: Titan my son, I deny not, that thou tookest thy substance from mee, I love thee entirely, and I desire thy welfare: but it is evident in every mans sight, that for the default of thy members, thou art not a man sufficient to defend thy fathers Heritage with labour and pain: for if it happen that one man should make war, thou wert not able to resist him, thy brother hath the love of all the people, for his beauty, and his vertues, every man holdeth him in reverence and thee in derision. Be thou content, thou shalt lack nothing, and if thou dost, speak to mee, & I shall remedy it: but never speak for the heritage, for Saturn shall obtain it, by the favour of his wisdom, meekness, and benignity, and al-



So because the common sort judgeth that he shall be the man, whose life shall shine gloriously.

Titan was sore troubled with the words of his mother, and began to wax red, having suspicion, that Saturn had contrived this matter against him: whereupon he said to him: Saturn thy ambition to reign aboue me, hath now ingendred in my heart thy mortal mischief. Thou knowest well, that I am the eldest son of our father Uranus, why art thou so bold and presumptuous, to exalt thy self aboue me. Wherefore name me from henceforth thy mortal enemy. When Saturn heard these menaces of his brother Titan, he excused himself, and answered that he never thought to come to the succession of their father, nor never had conspired it. Then Vesta their Mother, Cibel, and Ceres, took the words from Saturn, and said to Titan, that his threating of Saturn was nothing, for he should reign, and be their Lord and Master. Titan full of envy, and more angry than he was before, said plainly, he would not suffer it. Saturn had a great part of the people that assisted him. And Titan also had others on his side, which began to murmure the one parry against the other. All the company was sore troubled, and began to presse in, and intreated them to cease the noise, and appease Titan: notwithstanding it was hard to do, for he would often have run upon Saturn, if he had not been hindred. In the end, the wise men shewed Titan by great reason, that he was the more feeble, and that Saturn was more in the favour of the people, and wished him to moderate himself a little, and said, that he should agree, and grant the reign to Saturn by condition; that if he married, he should be bound to put to death all his children males, that should be begotten of his seed, if he had any, for the will of both parties. Vesta with her daughters, and the ancient wise people commended to Titan this condition, and laboured so to Saturn, that they brought them to the Temple of Mars, that was in the City of Oson, whereof was Lord, a mighty man called Milliseus, and that before the Image of Mars, Saturn swore that if he happened to marry, and that he had any Children males, he would slay them all: and thus was Titan content, that his brother should enjoy the land of Crete, and peace was made between them.



## CHAP. II.

How *Saturn* was crowned King of *Creet*, found divers Sciences and was honoured as a God.

**A**fter the peace between *Titan* and *Saturn*, *Titan* saw in himself, that he could not with honour abide under his younger Brother: but chose rather to search his adventures in other places, than to be a Subject in his own Countrey. He took his wife, his childzen and friends, and departed at all adventure into divers places, where he found fortune so good and happy, that by arms and strength he made himself King of divers Realms, which he parted unto his Childzen, and provided certain Espies, to observe if his brother *Saturn* married, and if his wife brought forth male childzen, and whether he put them to death or no. During these things, *Saturn* dwelled with his mother and his sisters, *Cibel* and *Ceres*, and reigned with great magnificence: the people of the Countrey, Crowned him with great glory, with a Crown of *Lawrel*, *Saturn* accepted this Royal honour, and took the Scepter in his hand, and bare the Crown on his head, and Reigned wisely, inducing his people to live honestly, and to love virtue, and ordained a naked sword to be born before him, in sign of Justice. He did Justice on malefactors, and exalted them that were good: he also did build a City which he named *Creet*, because the Isle bare the said name, and he was the first Inhabiter. When he had founded the City, he ordained his Palace and dwelling place in the middle thereof, as the heart is in the midst of the body, to minister to the members, so he would instruct and govern his people. And after this, he chose an hundred and four wise men, which he instituted and ordained Counsellors and Governors of his Realm. And then they of *Creet*, seeing the great wisdom of their King, assembled together divers times, and named him a God: and yet more, they founded unto him a Temple, an Altar, and an Idol, bearing in the one hand a sickle, in signification, that he destroyed the vices in such wise, as the sickle cutteth herbs and destroyeth the weeds: and in the other hand, he held a serpent, that did bite



his tail, forasmuch as Saturn said, that every man should bite the tail of the Serpent, that is to say, that every man should fear and fly the evil end: For the end oftentimes is venomous, as the tail of a Serpent: and that appeareth yet daily, by the end of many evil disposed and inbenomed men.

By the means of these things, the Renown of King Saturn grew famous. There were moze abundance of fruits, than in any other time. So that the Poets compared the world at this time to gold, which is most pzeious of all mettals: wherefore men say that Saturn was the first man that found the manner to melt mettall, and to refine gold, and made his vessels and utensils of his house, of diuers mettals. Then began men, by the doctrine of Saturn to use and wear gold, to mine the Rocks, to pierce perillous mountains, to haunt thozne deserts, to fight with Serpents, fierce Dragons, deadly Griffons, and diuers monstrous beasts, and to spread abroad their worldly engines. By these exercises, Saturn learned men to take these beasts. And first found out the manner of shooting and drawing of the Bow. Of gold, made Saturn his house, his Chambers, and Halls, to shine by marvellous working. He was strong and hardy, and did not fear any serpent of the mountain, nor any Monster of the Desert, or beast dwelling in Caves. He knew the veins of gold in the earth, and could discern them from the veins of silber. He edified rich things of Gold, pleasant to the eye sight, and courageous to the heart. In this time of the golden world, the people liued long. And all the world laboured in edification of Science: Among whom Saturn was never idle, after he had once laboured in earing and sowing cozn. He melted and refined gold and mettals, and inured his men to draw the Bow. He himself found first the Bow, and the manner to sail by Sea, and to row with little Boats in the Rivers, and took much pleasure to endoctrine his people in all these things, and he had great abundance of worldly goods, only he durst not marry, because that he had swozn to put to death all the men Childzen that should come of his seed. Whereof he was oftentimes grieved, to his great displeasure.



# The Destruction of *Troy*.

7

## CHAP. III.

How *Saturn* went to *Delphos*, to the Oracle of *Apollo*, who answered he should have a Son would chase him out of his Realm. And how he married his Sister *Cibel*, &c.

**W**hen *Saturn* saw his palace flourish, and shine with gold and his people obey him, and saw his gold smiths and workers break mountains, with their Wick-axes and instruments: saw his Warriours cut the waves of the Sea with their Dars, saw his disciples manure the earth, saw his Archers shoot and smite the birds sitting in the high trees, and flying in the Air: he thought he might embrace great glozy, and exalt on his high throne and his felicity. But on the other side, when he remembred the Covenant made between him and his Brother *Titan*, he was like the Peacock that is proud of his fair feathers: dilyerly coloured which he spreads round as a wheel, and with all only looking on his feet, he leaveth all his joy. *Saturn* likewise by his treaty, lost all his joy, his glory and pleasure: He long time led this life, now glad, now sorrowful, growing alway, and increasing his Realm, and daily thought and pondred in himself if he might marry or not, for nothing in the world he would falsifie his oath: he was just and true in word and deed. Nevertheless nature moved him to have generation, and to come in company of women, and this moving was at all times refreshed, and renewed by a continual sight that he had daily of a passing fair maid, to wit his sister *Cibel*, who he saw continually: in whom was no default of all the parts of nature appertaining to a woman: she was out of measure right humble in speaking: wise in her works, honest in conversation, and flowing in all vertues. And for this cause *Saturn* beheld her oft times, and on a time as he beheld her affairs and works, he cast his eyes on her vertues, that pleased him so greatly, that in the end he was desirous of her love, whereof his mother *Vesta* had great joy. And she perceiving the desire of *Saturn*, gave him courage and will to marry her, and solicited the marriage so effectually, that with great honour *Saturn* espoused *Cibel* his sister.

after



after their manner, and she was the first Queen of Creet. He living with her, paid in such wise the due debt of marriage, that at the end of nine moneths Cibel had a son, which Saturn did put to death, acquitting himself of the oath that he had made unto his Brother Titan. And of this Boccace maketh no mention. But they lay together again, and Cibel conceived then of the seed of Saturn, another Son with a Daughter, that by space of time appeared great in the Mothers belly.

In the time when the law of Nature was in his vigour and strength then men married with their sisters: and in especial the Vanims, if they were not content, and had sufficient of one wife, they might take more without reproach. When Saturn knew that his wife was with Child the second time, the death of his first Son came before him, and he said in himself, that he would that his wife had been barren. When he began to be full of divers fantasies of soze thoughts, and desired to know, what should befall of the fruit of the womb of Cibel. He went himself forth to the Isle of Delphos unto the Dracle of Apollo, that gave answer to the people, that demanded of things that should after happen. And then when he had done his Sacrifice, and made his prayer the Priest of the Temple put him into a perclos under the Altar of the aforesaid Idol: and there he heard a great whirling wind that troubled him, and all his wit and understanding that he was in manner of a swoond, by which he fell to the ground and when he arose, he thought that Apollo appeared unto him with a dreadful face, and said thus unto him: Saturn, what moveth thee to know thine evil Destiny? Thou hast begotten a Son, that shall take from thee the Diadem of Creet, and shall banish thee out of thy Realm, and shall be without compare above all people, the most fortunate man that ever was born in Creet. After these words, Saturn came again to himself and remembred him of his evil Prophecie, that touched the bottom of his heart, and being soze amazed, and right pensive, he went out of the Dracle with a troubled heart, came to his Servants, and went to ship: and when he was in his ship he hung down his head, which he held not up till he came to Creet. Then he began to think, and be pensive. And after many right sorrowful



## The Destruction of Troy.

9

Forrowfull sighs, engendred in the root of melancholly, said in this wise: Alas Saturn poor King, what a baileth me, the dignity to be the first King of Crete? What profiteth mee, these divine reberences? or what good doth me my Science, when I feel the ficklenesse of Fortune? O Fortune! soon turning, plying to every wind like a rolier at least stay that the wheel that turneth without end, may speak to me Saturn the inventor and founder of the Common-wealth. And if thou wilt not lend me thy clear and laughing visage, at least lend me thy large ears? Thou hast given me triumph and gloze of a Crown, and now thou sufferest me to fall from this great honour: and what is this thou hast consented to my prosperitie, and now conspirest my overthrow, and shameful end: and intendest that I shall be named the unhappy Saturn. If all my life hath been nourished in happines, and the end unhappy and woful, I shall be called unhappy and all my fortunes shall turn to reproach and shame: O Fortune! in what thing have I offended? Have I fought against thee? What have I done, tell me? Hast thou envy to mee, because I have been in the Dracle of Apollo; he hath shewed unto me the ruine of my Scepter, the downfal and breaking of my Diadem, the exalting of my Child, and the putting mee out of my Realm. Alas what remedy to this great sorrow that I have? I have slain one of my Sons, and have concluded in my self, that never hereafter I will so cruelly spill the life of my Childzen, but rather dye with them. After this conclusion, I must of very force continue in my first unnatural cruelty. For if my Son that now is in the womb of my Wife, be suffered to live he shall exile and put me out of my Realm. which shall be to me right hard to bear. And therefore it is better to slay him. Alas, and if I slay him, then it seemeth mee, I should resist the will of my God, which peradventure will raise him again, and that would be worse, for then I should not only be called a homicide and man slayer, but an unnatural murtherer, not of a Gyant, nor of a strange man of another land: but of an innocent little Child, issued of my proper beins, bones and flesh: that after the Propgnostication of Apollo, is pre-elect, and chosen by the greatest Lord of Greece, and soveraign of all the Kings in his time.

C

Saturn



Saturn thus feeling himself in great trouble, and alway worse and worse, as afore is said, began to change his colour and was pale, full of melancholly, and of fantasies, and could not appease his misfortune, his most private friends, and they that were most familiar with him, durst not approach unto him, but seeing his sorrow, they were discomfited in discontent, sorrowful with his sorrow, and angry with his anger. He was in short time so greatly perplexed, that his face was like unto ashes, or as he had been dead: and after many thoughts, he opened his mouth and spake softly thus: I slay my self by melancholly, and am a man greatly abused: I have made an oath, unto my brother Titan, that I will put all my Children male to death, that shall come of my flesh. Peradventure the Gods would not suffer that I should be forsaken, but let me have knowledge by Apollo, that my wife hath conceived a Son, that shall put me out of my Realm to the intent that I should slay him: forasmuch as I had concluded in my self, to have broken my oath, and have spared the lives of my Children. And since it is so, I will no longer spare them: if it happen that my Son be born alive he shall be put to death: for it is better that he dye a Child, than he should wax a man, and rebel against mee, and exalt himself above mee by his malice, insurrection, or otherwise.

In this resolution, sorrowful Saturn returned into his house, continuing in this estate, in such wise that Cibel durst not come into his presence, nor could get of him a pleasant look: whereupon he got him a surname of sorrow, and was named Saturn the Melancholly. And it was so, that when he had been in his house a certain space, and saw the day approach that his wife should be delivered of Child: to execute his resolute will, he called his wife and said. Dame, it is so apparent, that shortly thou shalt be delivered of the fruit of thy womb: If thou be delivered of a Son, I command thee upon pain of death, that thou slay him, and that thou send me his heart. Now when Cibel heard the words of this unnatural violence, she fell to the ground in a swoond, for her legs failed her. And in the recovering of the swoond, she kneeled before the feet of Saturn and said on this wise. Sir, hast thou no shame, that wilt be Husband to a woman-murderer.



## The Destruction of Troy.

II

murdering her own Child: I thee require of mercy and grace, beseeching thee to have regard, that I am thy wife, and have the heart of a woman, and not a Tyrant or Murtherer, Dame (answered Saturn) require no more touching this matter: it is judged by a foreseen sentence, that if thou have a Son he shall be dead: for I have sworn so to my Brother Titan: and above this, I have answer of Apollo, that in thy womb is a Son that shall cast me out of this Realm: and therefore see that at his birth he be dead, as thou lovest thy life: and also as I have said, send me his heart mingled with wine, that I may drink it. Sir, answered Cibel, knowst thou not that I am a woman, that by proper and singular inclination, I have a love to small children. D thinkest thou that I have a heart so hard, as to soile my hands with the blood of my own Son? I pray thee to reboke thy sentence, and be propitious to thy wife and generation. Thou art wise after the judgment of thy people: in this point, thou shewest thy self cruel, for by thy oath thou art not bound to slay thy Son; seeing it is truth, that all oaths made against good manners ought not to be holden. For to slay thy Son, it is a villainous case, and contrary to honour, reason, pity, equity and justice. It is sin against nature, against vertue, and against all good manners. When thy oath is naught, and thou oughtest to disanul it: thou art King, and upon pain of death forbiddest all people to do murther, or homicide. By this thou art a mirroz and example to others: therefore be content. And mee seemeth on the other side, that thou interpretest evil the sentence of Apollo, saying that I have in my womb a Son, that shall pull thee out of thy Kingdom, for by this, it ought to be understood, that the Son that I bear shall overclibe thee, and put thee out of thy Kingdom, that is to say into thy Sepulchre, the day that thou shalt depart out of this world. And if this may not appease thee: if it so happen, that I have a Son, thou mayest have him kept in a strong Tower, and there set such ward upon him, that he shall never be of power, to exalt himself against thee.

Saturn had then his heart so passing great, that for compassion Vesta the Mother, Cibel and Ceres wept plenty of tears, and so did likewise all the assistants that were in the place, yet it could



not abate the harsh commandment of King Saturn. But in conclusion, he said to Cibel, that she should no more procure the respite of the life of his Son: but he should be dead, and she also with him, if she did not his commandment. With this sorrowful conclusion, Cibel departed from thence all in a trance half dead, and casting abroad her arms and hands, with great excess of tears, that ran like a river from her tender eyes, entred into a Tower, her mother that desolate Lady following her, Shee being in her Chamber sorrowful, began to fall in trabel, and was delivered of a Daughter, and a Son. The Daughter was born before the Son and was sent by Ceres, to be nourished in the City of Parthenie, and was named Juno: and the Son began to laugh at the coming out of his mothers womb, and was named Jupiter.

When Cibel and Vesta saw the Child laugh, their tears began to grow double, what time Cibel overcome with discontent, with a sigh and feeble spirit said to her mother: Ha my mother, what pitious case shall this be now? give me a sharp knife, and I will murder my Son by unnatural error against my will. And after this villainous deed, for my absolution of the great sin, I will murder my self also. And this is my full purpose: for after so cruel a deed notwithstanding any excuse, I will no longer live. The mother of Cibel was then greatly dismayed, when she heard her Daughter resolve on such a cruelty: being afraid, said to her my Daughter, art thou out of thy wit? My Mother, answered Cibel, yea verily I am out of my wit, and yet more I am furious mad. Make mee no longer to languish. Give me the cursed mortal knife, forged in an evil hour, for of force I must obey King Saturn, your well beloved Son, my redoubted Husband, that hath commandment over mee, and will shamefully put me to death, if I accomplish not his commandment, in the death of his Son, which he hath charged mee to kill.

As Vesta considered what her Daughter said, and the error she was in she took the Child that was in her arms, and plucked it from her by force, while the innocent Child laughed. When Cibel saw her Son in the arms of her mother, as a woman enraged,



raged she began to cry, that she would slay the Child, and give  
 it her again, or else she would rise out of her bed, and go and  
 complain to King Saturn. After these words, Vesta delibered  
 the Child to a Damosel of the house, that was there with them,  
 and bade her that she would go slay the Child in the presence  
 of Saturn, or in some other place: out of their sight: the poore  
 Damosel excused her self, but Vesta gave her commandment,  
 and charged her with great menaces, that she should go forth,  
 and take the Child and slay it. And so by the commandment of  
 those two Ladies, she took the knife many times, and put it to  
 the throat of the Child, to cut it a sunder, and alway the noble  
 Child laughed at the knife. And when the Damosel saw this,  
 that it was innocent, she could not find in her heart to do it a-  
 ny harm. In this sorrow, Vesta, Cibell and the Damosel  
 wept a long time. Now they judging him to death, and put-  
 ting the knife to his throat: suddenly the Damosel reboked it,  
 and swore that she would never be the Murtheress of so faire a  
 Child. After this they began a little to pacifie their hearts, and  
 to turn to motherly pity. Cibell called her that held the Child,  
 and required her pitiously, that she would give her her Son,  
 to kiss and hold in her arms, promising that she would do him  
 no harm. The Damosel that knew not what should befall, de-  
 libered her her tender Child: and then when Cibell beheld her  
 Child with her face bedewed with tears, she kissed his laughing  
 mouth, more than a hundred times, and came again to her na-  
 ture acknowledging her sin, and began to say; My Child, I had  
 been very unfortunate, if I had taken thy life from thee, my  
 right sweet Son, alas, shall I persecute thee after the will of  
 thy father King Saturn? It is his commandment, and I owe  
 him obedience: if I obey the sin is his, If I obey not, I make  
 my self culpable of death. Ah what is this, shalt thou dye by  
 my hands? by the hands of thy own mother? Ha, shalt thy mo-  
 ther be thy executioner? I know not what to say, but will I or  
 will I not thou art my Son. Every mother loveth her Child:  
 how may I hate thee? It is much better that I dye than thou.  
 I have lived long enough, and thou art now first born. Merily  
 thou shalt not dye at this sin, I shall save thy life, or I shall  
 dye.



dye for thy health, requiring mercy for the evil will I had against thee.

# CHAP. IV.

How *Saturn* had commanded to slay *Jupiter*, and how his mother *Cibel* sent him to King *Melliseus*, where he was nourished.

**T**He sorrowful Lady, after this came better to her self, and kissed her Child that still laughed. And *Vesta* beheld her countenance all afresh, and sat down on the beds side where her Daughter lay. There they two began to speak together of *Saturn*, and of the fortune of this Child, and that he had been in great adventure: and promised the one unto the other, that they would save the Child, unto their power. After this promise, in the end of divers purposes, they concluded to send this Child secretly unto the two Daughters of King *Melliseus*, the which *Vesta* had nourished in her young Age. Of these two Daughters, the one was named *Almachee*, the other *Millisee*. After this conclusion, *Vesta* wrapped the Child as it ought to be, and delivered it unto a Damosel being there present, with all things, and gave her charge to bear it secretly to *Almachee* and *Millisee*. The good Damosel enterprized the said charge, and departed out of Creet with the Child in safety to the City of *Oson*, which she presented to *Almachee* and *Millisee*, rehearsing how *Vesta* had sent him to them, for the great love and trust that she had in them, and how *Saturn* had commanded that his mother should slay it.

Anon, as these two Damosels saw the Child, and understood how *Saturn* had judged it to death, they received it with pity, and in favour of *Vesta*, promised to nourish it in the secretest and best wise that they might: and forthwith the same hour, they bare the Child unto a mountain that was nigh the City, wherein dwelled a *Purse*, in a deep hole of a Cave, which was richly carved with divers Instruments. And then they sent a manner was the life of the Child saved. *Almachee* and *Millisee* nourished the Child with the milk of a Goat. Fortune was to him



him more propitious than Nature. What shall I say, in the beginning when he was put in the Caba, as his Nurse on a day saw him cry by his proper inclination of Child-hood, because he should not be heard, they took Trumpets, Timpanes and Cornbals, and made them to sound so greatly, that a great multitude of Bees flying about the mountain heard their sound, and with this sound entered into the Caba, and took hold by the Child, flying about him without doing him any harm: and yet more, they made their honey, whereof the Child did eat, and was nourished thereby, which was a marvellous thing. The Damosel that had borne this Child thither: when she returned rehearsed to Dame Cibel and Vesta, all her proceedings insomuch that she gave them great comfort touching the Child. Then the two Ladies by deliberation took an Avest, which is a precious stone, and brayed it to powder, and after they had mingled it with wine, in a cup of gold, Dame Vesta, bare it to her Son Saturn, and he abounding in bitter tears, said unto him: My Son, thy wife hath sent thee this drink, know thou verily that she this day hath rendered and yielded the fruit of her womb, a Son and Daughter: she hath sent the Daughter to nourish in the City of Parthenie: but in the obeying of thy strict commandment, we have put to death thy Son. Of whom the body, the flesh, and the little tender bones, be now turned into ashes, and she hath sent here to thee, the heart tempered in wine: which I present to thee, to the end that thou do thy pleasure, and be no more in doubt by thy Son to be put out of thy Realm.

When Saturn heard the pitious words of his mother, understanding the tidings that she shewed him, began to frown and was greatly displeased, howeuer he drank the drink, thinking that it had been done as his mother had given him to understand; and after went into his Chamber, and there began to be exceeding melancholy: and after that time forward, he purposed and strove to abstain himself from paying his Wife the due debt of Marriage.

But as there is no sorrow that overpasseth not by space of time, so he forgot this sorrow, and lying with his wife engendered another Son, which she saved like as Jupiter was saved, (notwith-



(notwithstanding that Saturn charged her to put him to death and this Child was carried to Athens, where he was nourished, and named Neptune. Per after this he lay with his wife and begot another Son and Daughter, who when they were bozn, departed from their mother : but at this time, she told not of her Son but hid him from Saturn, which Son was named Pluto, and she did keep it in the parts of Thessalie, that afterward was named Hell. And to content her Husband Saturn, when she was delibered of these two Childzen, she sent to him her daughter, which was called Galanta, and she dyed in her tender years, And thus of all these Generations Saturn supposed that none had been reserved but Juno his Daughter, whom he went oftentimes to visit in Parthenie, where he sent it to be nourished with many noble Virgins of her age, and also many ancient Gentlewomen, to teach them Gentlenesse and virtue. But of all them I will a while pass over, and also of Jupiter, Neptune and Pluto. And now I will shew, how Dardanus put his Brother Jasius to death, for covetousness to raigh in the City of Corinth : and how he departed out of Corinth, and how he laid the first stone in the City of Dardane, which afterwards was named Troy.

#### CHAP. V.

How after the death of King *Corinthus* of *Corinth*, his two sons *Dardanus* and *Jasius*, strove which of them should Reign, and how *Dardanus* slew his brother by treason, wherefore he was forced to depart the Countrey.

**I**n the time when Creet began to be a Kingdom, and was in possession of their first King, at the same time in the City of Corinth which stands in Naples, reigned *Corinthus* their first K. and *Corinthus* had to wife one of the Daughters of King *Atlas* of *Libie*, named *Electra*. They reigned together prosperously, they left after them two Sons, one was named *Dardanus*, and the other *Jasius* : Some say, that *Dardanus* was Son to *Jupiter* : but *Boccace* supposed he was lawfull Son of *Corinthus*, (as it appeareth in the sixth book of the genealogy of the Gods)



Gods (then Dardanus and Jasius, after the death of their Father Corinthus, and their Mother Electra) would succeed in the Realms, and in no wise they could accord. They were both of haughty courage, they argued and strove the one against the other, and conspired in such wise, that Dardanus on a day assembled all the people he could get, to destroy his Brother Jasius, his friends assembled in secret, to offer their assistance.

When Jasius saw his Brother in arms, his blood began to change and deeming this matter would turn to great mischief, he cryed. Alas, what availeth this Counsel, and to seek means of peace between my Brother and mee: we are betrayed, loe here is my Brother, that cometh upon me all in Arms, each man save himself that may. With these words Dardanus came to the Consistory, smote his Brother unto death, and said, Jasius. Thou hast exalted thy self against mee, but now I will make an end of thee. Jasius fell down dead among the feet of his friends, and their cloaths were all bespotted with his blood. When the friends of Jasius, saw his Tyranny, they saved themselves as well as they could and fled. Then Dardanus returned to the Royal Palace and the friends of Jasius gathered together, and went to Arms and made so great a noise, that in little space all the City was strangely troubled for the death of Jasius, who was greatly in the grace and favour of all the people of Corinth. For when they had rehearsed the death of Jasius, they took great sorrow, and menaced Dardanus to death. And forthwith in effect, they assembled by great routs in the streets, and said one to the other: alas now is dead the love of Corinth, that had more amity and love to the common weal than Dardanus. Let us go and avenge his death; and punish the malefactor, and let us no longer tarry: For we shall do a meritorious work. Who ever doth injustice and tyranny, is not worthy to be the head of Justice. If we suffer a murderer to reign over us, never shall good come thereof. Where the head is sick and evil, the members may not be whole nor good. Dardanus hath slain his Brother Jasius wrongfully. It is very likely, that he will slay us after his will. Let us take from him his puissance, and let us shew that we be men, destroyers of vice, and enemies unto all time

D

that



that seek and ingender tyranny. Such were the clamours of the Corinthians: that by continual noise they combined themselves, and assembled in one place, and were of ardent appetite, to correct the malefactor Dardanus and his complices. In this tempest and swelling fury. they went unto the Palace, where Dardanus put himself for refuge, but they found the gates shut, and could not enter into it: wherefore they besieged the place, making so great stir, that Dardanus was abashed, and assembled his friends, and asked them their counsel. They answered that he and they were in great peril, and that the people so moved could not lightly be appeased, and for this they said to him: save thy self, and us also with thee: thou hast slain thy Brother Jasius, whom the people loved for his benignity; the trespass is great, seeing it is so done, the best way that is to be taken, is, that thou leave this Palace, and find means to issue out, and we shall go with thee, and search our adventures in other Lands: for it will be great danger, to content and appease this people: For it is so, that the Corinthians be terrible to all men that they hate.

Dardanus hearing these words, began to sigh, and considering that he must depart from the City by his fault and desert, he smote himself on the breast, and said: Ha, fortune unstedfast, what is to me befalln? My hands be foul and filthy, with the blood of my lawful Brother. The insurrection and the rebellion of my people hanging before mine eyes: it is best to flee to save my life, and to live of rapine and theft. What mischance, what evil hap is this? Since it is so, I yeeld, and will go away, at all adventures. When the friends of Dardanus had understood that he was concluded to save his life, they joined to him, and appointed that the next morning at the break of day, they would depart from the Palace, and take the adventure to pass by their enemies, saying that if they might escape, they would go to Sea, and take the Kings Barge. And they sware to help each other unto the death. The night passed, the day appeared, and then Dardanus that had not rested that night to his pleasure, but had watched with his armed men, and were ready to take the adventure that the Gods and Fortune would give and send.



send them, issued out of the Palace, and found the most part of his enemies asleep: he rushed out among the Mastsails, and passing forth with little resistance, (that notwithstanding the warring Corinthians) he came to his royal Ship, and took the Sea, and saved himself, whereof the Corinthians had great sorrow.

When Dardanus saw that he was quit of the fear of the Corinthians, he sailed by Sea, and landed first at the Port of Samos, being in Thrace, and there victualled, and went to Sea again, and arrived in Asia, in a quarter where the land was joyned to the Sea of Helespont: And finding this Land fruitful to inhabit, he made it his habitation, and there set the first stone of a very great City that he began, and after finished. This City was at that time named Dardane, after the name of Dardanus, but afterward it was called Troy. Dardanus peopled and filled his City with men and women, which he got by sweetness and fair promises: And the other part he conquered by force, theft, and pillage: He made himself King of Dardane, and ditched the City about with great ditches. After long time he passed out of this world, and left a Son of his wife Candama, that was second King of Dardane. This King was named Erutonium, and reigned seven years in augmenting and encreasing his City and people, and at last came to the end of his years, and there reigned after him Troos his Son. This Troos was the third King of Dardane, and was a strong man, fierce, and hardy in Arms, and increased greatly his Seigniorie and his Crown, in so much as the Dardanians said, that there was no King but Troyes: and named them Trojans. And thus was Troy exalted more than all the Realms of Greece, so highly, that King Tantalus of Phrygia had great envy, and gave his heart how he might put down the name of Troy that was his neighbour. And began to assay to bring it down, as hereafter shall be related.



## CHAP. VI.

Of the great war that was moved between the *Pelagians*, and *Epiriens*, and how King *Lycaon* was destroyed by *Jupiter* because of a man put to him for hostage, which he did most cruelly murder; and cause to be roasted.

**A**Ustin rehearseth: that the wise and subtile Virgin *Minerva* shewed her self in this time by the Brook called *Triton*, by the greatness and subtilty of her engine: for she found the manner to forge and make Arms. And to this purpose Ovid rehearseth, that she had fought against a Giant named *Pallas*, and slew him by the flood of *Triton*. At the same time, when arms were founded, and the Sciences of *Minerva* were practised by all the world, a fierce dissention ingendred between the *Epiriens* and the *Pelagians*, that after were named *Arcadians*. And hereof maketh *Boccace* mention in the fourth book of the *Genealogie* of the Gods. Among the *Pelagians* reigned that time a King named *Lycaon*, eldest Son of *Titan*. The *Epiriens* then enterprized upon the *Pelagians*, whereby arose great troubles. For which cause they assailed each other by feats of Arms, so cruelly, that both parties suffered many mortal broils. When the wise men of *Epire*, saw this war so dissolute, and that they of their party had unjustly undertaken this war, they acknowledged their fault, and went to the King *Lycaon* bearing branches of *Olive*, in signification of peace, and required him that he would condescend to accord the peace of both. *Lycaon* considering that his people had as much lost as won, and that the battels were perillous, accorded to the *Epiriens*, by condition that they would deliver him one of their most noble men, such as he would demand, to be his servant a space of time, in token that they had unrightfully engendred this dissention. The *Epiriens* consented to this condition, and delibered to King *Lycaon* in servitude the most noble man among them: and thus ended the war.

The term of time drawing over, and that the *Epirien* had served King *Lycaon* his due time: and the time was expired, the *Epiriens* assembled themselves together, and by deliberation



tion of counsel, sent an Ambassage to Lycaon, to treat the deliverance of the Epirien. These Ambassadors departed from Epire, and came to Pelage: and shewed to the King, how their man had served as long as he was bound for: a required him that he would deliver him, and ratifie the peace, to the end that ever after they might be friends together. When Lycaon that was hardy of courage, fierce and evil unto all, and to his own people, understood the words and requests of the Epiriens he had great anger in himself, and said to them: (thinking contrary) that on the morrow he would feast them, and do as they had demanded. With these words the Epiriens departed joyfully from the presence of King Lycaon, and on the morrow came to the feast that was richly ordained, and made for them in great plenteousness, which was fair at the beginning and in the end foul and abominable: for when it came to the performing of the feast, King Lycaon rose from the Table, and went into the Kitchen, and took the body of the Epirien his servant, that he had murdered the same night and all roasted and sodden, brought it in a great platter to the feast, and presented it to the Epiriens, saying: loe here is the Epirien that hath served mee, which was cause of the eschuing of the ruine and perdition of Epire. I said yesterday, I would deliver him this day: take him who will, I discharge and quit my hands of him, and will have him no more. All they that were present as well his servants as strangers, had great horzour, when they heard and understood the words of King Lycaon: they had great shame and fury to behold so shameful and abominable a work, and outrageous sin: and were so troubled, that the blood went from their faces, and they laid their hands before their eyes, as they that abhorred to behold the poor martyred Epirien. And there was no man knew what to say of the infamy of King Lycaon: but when the King saw them so troubled, and that every man began to frown and grudge apart, he left them, and went from thence into his Chamber: and then every man arose from the Table, abhorring and eschewing the scent and savour of the dead man, and would have departed and gone their way all confused, had not Jupiter the Son of Saturn been, which the Epiriens had brought with them.



them in their Legation and Ambassage, forasmuch as he was a fair Child, amiable and gentle. He then, when he saw that every man drew apart, he put himself in the midst of the Epiriens, and began his glorious enterprize, and said: O! what is this? Where is the blood of the Epiriens? Are they banished out of hardiness? be they exile out of valour, and of honesty? Which be the Epiriens, that by force will expose themselves to the vengeance of so foul and horrible a deed? This case is not to be born. And the terribleness of the Tyrant Lycaon, is not to be bettered, when it abideth unpunished. We see that the Pelagians make shew that they be evil apayed with him: he must be punished. I say as for mee, I shall never have pleasure in my life, till I see him restrained of his Tyranny.

At which time the Epiriens conceiving the great courage of Jupiter that was so young. they thanked their gods for it, that they had brought him with them, and said to him, with one voice: Child, blessed be the womb that bare thee, and blessed be the Gods that fore-seeing this injury done to us, have so inspired us, to bring thee with us. Wee had not been so bold, as to have taken any vengeance. Thy words quickned our spirits, which were dead and asleep, and had passed by the infamy of the Tyrant Lycaon, Thy hardiness hath made us hardy, thy valiantness hath made us valiant, and lovers of valiancy: and thy wisdom hath illuminated us. In this case, thou shalt bee conductor of this work, and commander: and we will obey thee.

Jupiter answered, Mostshipful Lords and Sirs, I am not wise enough to receive the honour that ye do mee, nor my tender years shall not accept it. Alway by advice of counsel as humbled under all correction, I will say to you what is expedient to be done. If ye find no man say better, then you shall do by my counsel and advice: ye shall take this poor Epirien, in the same estate that he is delivered to you. and bear him unto the common place of this City: for it is this day Sabbath and Holyday, the Pelagians being there in great number and multitude, passing their time with divers plays and sports. Then ye shall shew this poor dead man: for it is said, that the King is not well beloved by his own people for his unmanly works, and this



this trespass is passing foul : anon, as they shall know what he hath done by this foul work : ye shall see if they will take in this pleasure or displeasure. If pleasure, then it were in vain, and folly to speak thereof, for this present time any more, but we must seek remedy, in our return to Epire. If they take displeasure, ye may plainly discover your courages, and call them to purge this crime that is so cursed, and I know, they shall lightly intend to us : And for the non-amity that is between him and them, he shall not dominere nor reign over them, by tyranny : For he is not their natural Lord : but he is the Son of Titan, brother to Saturn. And is not King by election : but by force.

All they that heard Jupiter thus speak, marvelled greatly, and accorded to his counsel, that no man contraried it. And so they took the murdered Epirien, and bare him to the common place and there they shewed him openly in every mans sight. When the Pelagians saw this dead man, of whom the skin was scorched, the flesh roasted, and the sinews shrunk : and that the bones appeared by the joyntures : they assembled all about him in great number, and casting their eyes upon him, they had so great horrour, and abashment. that their hearts trembled, complaining each to other : and many went away for compassion, and wept trembling for anger, and other took dust and cast into the Air in sign of sorow, cutting their cloaths, and saying lifting their hands on high : O Gods almighty what people be these Epiriens ? they have roasted a mans body, and have brought it before us ? What mean they ? Are we eaters of mans flesh ? or bring they it to us to shew the cruelty of their courage or come they to eat this dead man among us to fear us withall.

Jupiter there being awaiting, and laying his ears, and seeing with his eyes the manner of the Pelagians, and their countenances, concerning that they condiscended in the condemnation, and enmity of him that wrought this pitious work, when he had heard their reasons, he addrested himself among them, and said : O ye men of Pelage, marvel you not of this unmanly and unnatural work ? Have ye not enough learned and known the tyrannies of King Lycaon ? Hee hath murdered this man, and  
this



this man is the Epirien that was delivered to him at the treaty of peace with you, for to serve him. Lo, this is the reward that he hath done to him. He hath tyrannized very much, and hath done him evil for good. What great infamy is it to you, that the folk and people of every other City, have reigning over them Kings, noble and vertuous: and they bee Crowned by election for their vertuous deeds? ye be far different from them, and of another nature: A Tyrant is your King, an unjust man, a sinner worthy of infamous death, consider under whose hands ye be, and how nigh you find your selves in malady and peril of death. When the head aketh, all the other members suffer pain, then ye may not be whole and sound. What shall we now do, think ye, and counsel ye us? we come to you for refuge, and to demand of you how we ought to do and behaue us against one that is so foul a King as Lycaon: Tell us the very truth: If ye confess the truth, and that ye be lovers of reason, Justice and of equity: ye shall judge and condemn him, ye shall lay your hands together in correction of him, and so shall ye be ridd of his malice.

As the Pelagians understood of Jupiter, that Lycaon their King had committed this villainous crime, also that he had presented to the Epiriens the body of their friend so dead, they being at table: they condemned his sin, and murmured against him saying: that they would no more be governed under the rod of so perberse and infamous a Tyrant, and said to the Epiriens, that they would abide by them and stand their friends. With these words Jupiter put himself among the Pelagians, and admonished them to conspire against their King. With which conspiracy accorded all they of the City. And the words of Jupiter were so agreeable unto them: and his manners, that they put in his hand the death and destruction of their King Lycaon, to the end that he should trust and have affiance in them, they sent for their arms and habiliments of war, and armed themselves. After they assembled about Jupiter, and said to him, that he should be their Captain and their conductor to achieve this said work.

Jupiter being joyous of so great an honour and worship, excused himself. But his excusations took no place, the Epiriens, and



and the Pelagians ordained him head over them. And he being constituted in his dignity, set his people in order, and after bid them to march toward the Palace. They had not long gone on the way: when they saw King Lycaon issued out of his Palace with a great company of his friends all armed as they that had been advertised of the conspiracy made against Lycaon: and fearing that his enemies came to assail him, to shew himself a man of fierce courage, came against them, thinking presumptuously to have overcome them. And as they began to approach, they challenged each other to death without other counsel: And strongly moved, making a battle marvailous sharp.

Lycaon having led his people in order against Jupiter. They mingled themselves hastily together with little strife of words: but with great amazement of strokes.

The strife cost much, but most especially to Lycaon: for his people were less in puissance than the men of Jupiter, which were strong and of great enterprize: so they fought and smote upon the Pelagians many blows and cast them down by force so unmeasurably, that none was able to abide that was before them. Among all other Jupiter did wonders: by his well doing he put Lycaon, in a passing great distress and noyance. And in this great annoy, he pursued passing fast, to run upon him. But when the false Tyrant saw him come, and laid his strokes so mightily that all them that he caught were smitten down to the earth, then his heart began to fail him, and went on the other side: and he had not long abiden there, when that Jupiter had overthrowen the Pelagians, and made them to flee from the place before him, like as if he had been the thunder of tempest.

In this manner, when Lycaon saw his complices in such extremity, he hid himself, not as a King, but as a poor man out of comfort and hope, so desolate as he durst take none of his Complices with him to help him away, nor to comfort him. He feared Jupiter as death: (so flying away as is said) durst not enter his Palace, but issued out of the City and went unto a great Forrest, that was nigh, and from thenceforth he was a thief, and for this cause the Poets say, that he was turned into a Wolf: that is to say, he lived as a wolf, of preyes and robberies.



ries Albeit to confirm this mutation, Leoncius rehearseth that Lycaon so dying as is said, fearing to be pursued of Jupiter, put himself in a River or a great Lake, and there saved himself: where feeling that the water of that River had a singular propertie, that the men that put themselves into that water, should be turned into wolbes for the tearm of nine years, and the nine years expired, if they would put themselves in the water again, they should recover their first likenesse. And so it might well be done; for Lycaon put himself into the water, and was transformed to a Wolf by space above said, and lived of theft and pillage in the woods and forrests, waiting oft times how the Pelagians governed themselves: and in the end when he had accomplished his penance, he returned into the River and took again his mans forme, and knowing that the City of Pelage might never be recovered, he returned poor and wretched to his father Titan, of whom I will say a little, and shall tell, how Jupiter began to be amorous on Calisto, Daughter of the said Lycaon.

## CHAP. VII.

How Jupiter after the discomfiture of King Lycaon, transformed himself into the shape of a Religious Woman, waiting on the Goddess Diana, for the love of Calisto, Daughter to the said Lycaon, did obtain of her his will.

**A**fter the discomfiture of King Lycaon, which was transformed into the shape of a Wolf, and began to bee a Ravisher of the substance of the Countrey, eating of their Childzen, and murdering of wild beasts, that he oftentimes assailed by rage of hunger: which constrained him to cherish his miserable life: when the Epiriens saw that Jupiter had vanquished their enemies, and that he abode master in the same place, they brought him with great glory to the Palace, and sought long for Lycaon first in the place where the battel had been, and after that, in the Chambers of the Palace: but they found him neither quick nor dead, nor could hear any tidings of him.

And so it happened, that as Jupiter sought him thus from chamber to chamber, he found in the highest Tower the daughter



ter of King Lycaon, named Calisto, which was very fair, young and fresh of colour. The Damosel weeping for the loss of her Father which she had newly understood. When Jupiter saw her so discomforted, he sat him down by her, and said: Damosel, comfort your self, and speak to me, and cease your weeping. Alas (sir, said the Damosel) how should I recomfort my life: the Epiroens have slain the King my Father. Dought I to take consolation in his ruine? Dought I not to be angry? since an hundred thousand misfortunes traverse my body, and trouble me; And I so poore a gentle Damosel, Daughter of a King, that I desire death, not life, and am more in despair than in hope.

When Jupiter knew that she was daughter of King Lycaon, he had more compassion of her than euer he had before, and said to her: Damsel, appease your heart: I know well, that it is of force, that nature acquit her self: but ye ought to consider the wicked works of your father, which ye are bound to bewail. He was less reasonable than a King ought to be. He is not dead: He hath put himself in some secret place to save himself: his sins were too infamous, and who shall bewail and sorrow for him. The Gods have suffered the overthrow, and casting down his pride, and tyranny. It is far otherwise than ye take it, have patience in his righteous aduersity: For his demerits, give you cause to take patience, whereas nature inclineth you to impatience: and yet ye ought not to be impatient for his casting down: For the loss of a Tyrant turneth a Country to joy. The outrageous sins, and unmanly furies of your Father shall nothing be hurtful unto you, nor turn to your prejudice: no man shall mis-use you in any manner of wise, I assure you.

Sir, answered the Maid, I thank you for your great courtesies, and for the fair words which ye proffer, and say unto me, I know well that my poverty hath made me unworthy: But since I see the misfortune of my Father is irreuocable, and his infelicity is past remedy, I renounce the world, and pray you to intreat for me to the Epiroens, that I may go into the religion of Dame Diana the noble Virgin, daughter of the wise Jupiter, sometime King of Attick and born in this Land. Whereupon ought to be remembred, that right anciently issued out of



Pelagie, a wise noble man named Jupiter, of whom Boccace maketh mention in the first book of the Genealogie of the Gods, which Jupiter was King of Attick, who forasmuch as he induced the people to honest Laws, and did first ordain and hallow marriage: Before that time the Atticians married them not, but used women in common, and of this Jupiter came a daughter named Diana, the which willing to abide in the state of Virginitie, made a Cloyster in the woods of Arcadie, where she assembled many Virgins that passed their time with hunting and chasing the wild beasts. For to turn to our purpose: this noble Virgin Diana, lived at the time of the subversion of the reign of Lycaon. When Jupiter understood of Calisto, that she would yield her self with the Virgin, he said unto her: And how Damosel be ye so despaired for a little tribulation, that toucheth not your person? Be ye young and fair, among none of you that so go into Religion, may grow no fruit of Children. Advise you well, It were better that ye abode among the people, that replenish the world. Many women and also men, enter into Religion in their youth, and repent them in their age. Sir, said Calisto, tempt me no more. If there be any gentleness in you, receive the prayer and request of so desolate and infortunate a Gentlewoman, more desirous of the health of my soul, than of temporal pleasures. During these devises, Jupiter beheld without ceasing this Damosels beauty: forasmuch as she would go into Religion: when he had heard her answers, and had seen how sweetly she had taken it, and would not be turned from her will: he said to her, that her request should be accomplished. Then he called the Epiriens, and required them that they would be content to suffer this Virgin to enter into Religion. The Epiriens put the request in the will of Jupiter: and Jupiter yielded so much, that she was conducted into the Religion of Virgins. After he searched all the Palace of King Lycaon, and made the Epiriens seize his riches: and there Jupiter abode a certain time with so great worship, that the Pelagians and the Epiriens would have Crowned him to be their King: But he would never consent thereto: as he that considered his young age, and the variations of fortune, and said, that it availeth more to a man



man, and is to him more sure, to be made King in his old age, than in his youth, for the divers perils that may fall. Alway he accorded, that he would be Captain of the Realm, and was a man of great Justice, sweet and courteous unto all manner of people.

This was the first coming up of this Noble Child. When he had brought in subjection the Pelagians, he buried the Epirien that Lycaon had murdered, and did his obsequie solemnly, and after he did burn to ashes the Pelagians, that had been slain in the help of Lycaon, and after that he sent word, and made all these things to be known and shewed to the Epiriens that were left at home in Epire, as to the King Melliseus, whereof all the Epiriens and the King Melliseus gave thanks unto their Gods. After this, he gave not his heart and courage so much to accomplish these things, but that otherwhile he gave himself to remember and to think on the beauty that he had seen in the religious Calisto, whereby the sparkles of love environed strongly his heart, in such wise that day and night he wished her in his arms, and repented him that he had consented that she went into Religion. And so laboured in this manner, that his rest in the night was taken from him, and he was not now his own man, so increased his love and desire to this Virgin: and for to see her, he made his pastime to haunt the Woods, and continually to hunt the wild Beasts in the Forrest with Dame Diana, where, by fortune and adventure otherwhile he encountered and met the Maid Calisto. And when he had once seen her, that day he was overjoyed. And if he saw her not, hee had abundance of many thoughts, that ran strangely in his mind. I may not at all tarry on this matter. He thought still how he might come to the grace of this religious Calisto, and all thoughts reduced and brought into one, he concluded on a day, that he would put him in the habit of a Religious Woman, and go into the cloyster of Dame Diana, and require to be received with the Virgins.

This conclusion being ratified in Jupiter in divers days, he did make his womans cloathing by a secret workeman, which promised him to keep his secrets. When his cloathing was made he assembled the Epiriens, in an evening, and took his leave of



them for certain time, saying: that he would go alone, to do certain secret things. The Epiriens were all dismayed and desolate, when they heard the intention of Jupiter: and prayed to the Gods that they would conduct him in his journey requiring him instantly, that he would return shortly again to them. Which he promised he would: and then he withdrew him into his Chamber, and took the keys of the great Gate, and on the morrow betimes, when he was arrayed and dressed in the vesture and cloathing of a Maid, he departed from thence alone, and entred into the Wood, and came to the habitation of the Religious Maidens. Jupiter had yet no beard, but was fair coloured in visage. When he came unto the Cloyster, he knocked at the Gate, and then came to him a passing fair Maid named Athalanta, that after was Wife unto the King Meleager of Achay. And she demanded of him, what he would. Jupiter answered: noble Virgin, I am a poor woman, of a noble house: I have vowed to the Gods my Virginitie: I pray you present me unto the Lady of this place, to the end that I might serve the Gods, and be of the number of the other Virgins. And if it please the Gods, I will deserve it at your hands. Athalanta, moved with compassion to the Maid, accorded him his request, and presented him to Dame Diana. Jupiter spake all so sweetly and demurely, and made so humble and feminine manners, that he seemed to be a Maid. Diana beheld him well, and said: that she had never seen so fair a Maid; nor so great: and then welcomed him, and received him. Then Jupiter thanked Dame Diana for her grace, and Athalanta of her courtesie, and had good hope in his enterprise, when he saw himself so soon received without knowing. Then Jupiter began to learn to spinne, and to work in silke, and to do the exercises of Maidens. And it became him as well as if he had been a Maid. He was humble and of solitary conversation: he laboured with his hands, with his eyes, and his heart: with his hands he made corporal works, and with his eyes he beheld secretly the beauty of Calisto, and with his heart, imagining how and by what means he might beguile Calisto.

His heart was alway fearful: sometimes he was moved with  
great



great heaviness, and otherwise in comfort, and hope to speed well and yet knew not what to say or do, forasmuch as shame were more in him than hardness. He was long in this pain more doubtful than bold. But in the end he adventured himself and finding on a day Calisto beside a well, where she refreshed her as she that was weary that had run long with Dame Diana, chasing then and hunting a wild beast: he sat him down by her and said: my Sister Calisto, I yield my self to thee, and to thy favour, I am a man and no woman, thy beauty hath overcome my courage. For to come to the point where we be now, I have cloathed me like a Maid. Alas, I require thee, that thou receive me unto thy love, so shall we live together in the Religion, and we shall take our pleasures. A man hath nothing in this world but his life. They that have more pleasure than that, they be judged so much more fortunate and happy. Thou hast withdrawn thee hither for displeasure, and lost thy flourishing youth, Calisto, I cannot praise thee enough, I have been so desirous to find thee in secret places that the force of my love hath made me do this, and that I have enterprized this adventure, hoping in Fortune that she shall give me grace, and suffer our youths to be used together secretly, for we may commune together the one with the other, without knowing of any person, not only in the Chambers, but also in the bushes of this wood. O my Sister, take heed what I say: and as I received and furthered of late thy request, I pray thee receive and allow the request without disdain of him that thou mayest see is a lover of thee.

When Calisto had heard Jupiter, and knew that he was a man, she was afraid, and rose up, thinking to have fled, but she might not, for Jupiter held her fast by the cloathing, and made her to sit down by him, clipping her about the neck, and kissing her by force, so much that Calisto cried out, and said: O Jupiter what folly is this? Knowest thou that I am so to be overcome of thy flattering words? I had much rather the earth would open, and swallow mee up in her womb. My sister (answered Jupiter) there is no remedy that may let my will be accomplished: ye shall do my will and pleasure, be it by force,



or be it by love. With these words Calisto began to cry with all her might: and Jupiter began to accomplish his pleasure on her, There was neither man nor woman thereabouts that heard her, and Jupiter did his will of her body, and knew her fleshly, and engendred on her a Son. After he comforted her, and promised to help her in all things, and to take her to his Wife, if she would return to the world with him. But his fair speech, nor his promises might not comfort her, nor for nothing that he could do or say, he could not come into the grace of Calisto. And alway she swaie great oaths, that she would complain unto her Mistress Diana. Then Jupiter departed from her displeased in her displeasure. And then he went by the Woods, thinking what was him befalln, and also what he had to do.

## CHAP. VIII.

How *Calisto* because she was with Child, the Goddess *Diana* put her out of the order, and of her company.

**A**t this time began to rise in the mind of Jupiter many thoughts, and for the better, he concluded in himself to return to Pelage, from whence he came. And he was displeased with himself for the enforcing of his Lady *Calisto* by love, he departed from the Wood, and so hastened on his way, that he was on the morn among the *Epiriens* in his first habit. When the *Epiriens* saw Jupiter come again, they made him great chear, and great honour. And the same day Jupiter fained him, that he would go to hunting, and so went, and found means to speak with *Calisto*, and required her that she would be his Love: but she in no wise would assent to him. He returned from the chase so grieved, that for to pass his melancholly, he departed out of the Country. The fourth day following after that, he ordained there folk that governed the people, and returned into the house of King *Mellifeus*, who received him as his Son, and there he dwelled a long time without adventures, whereof any mention is made, and also *Calisto* dwelled in peace a while: and when she heard tell, that Jupiter was gone, she was passing joyous, for she had rather have him far than nigh, alway the time passed, the



the fruit of her womb grew: and the day came that Diana and Athalanta, with other Virgins, perceived that she was with Child: wherefore they assembled all in their Chapter, and called Calisto, and then spake Diana to her: Calisto my Daughter, thou hast committed fornication with some man, this fornication is not excusable: The Virgins of this place be sorry for thy sin, and have abomination of thy shame. For this cause it is of force that thou depart out of this house: thou shalt be no longer their fellow. Thou hast made thy self worthy to depart, by the breaking and losing of thy Virginitie. Take thine array, go thy way into some place, where thou mayest be delivered of the fruit that resteth in thee, for thou shalt be no longer here within.

When Calisto heard the Goddess Diana, and knew that shee said truth, great tears fell from her eyes, and weeping in great abundance, excused her upon Jupiter, rehearsing the abuse and violence that he had. Diana and the Maidens had great marvel of Jupiter that had them so deceived. Calisto craved her mercy, and many times offered her self to the correction of the Maidens. Notwithstanding, she was held excused, they received her not to mercy. She was condemned to go out of the Cloyster, and so much went the matter forth, that the poor Religious woman departed from thence so ashamed, that she would not go to any Town, City, or House: but in a deep Cave that she had seen aforesaid in the Wood. And first she made her provision of herbs and roots, forasmuch as the winter was coming. After she entered into the Cave, as the Bear holdeth him in his Den, wherefore the Arcadians fained that she was turned into a Bear. And it is not to be forgotten, that during the time, she was delivered of a Son, which she named Archas. The Child was great and huge of members, Calisto nourished him among the wild beasts, with roots, fruits, and herbs, and of the proper meats and preys that the cruel and terrible beasts lived with, and there was no beast that did him any harm. And he was so cruel and fierce, that at the age of seven years, his mother angered or troubled him on a day, he lifted up himself against her, and would have slain her. Insomuch that Calisto was constrained to flee before him by the bushes, and to issue out of the wood, and



to go to Jupiter, which at that time was in the City of Pelage.

Archas pursued Calisto his mother, until he came within the City, and so forthwith entred after her into the Palace, and held in his hands two great round stones: when Calisto entred into the Palace, she met with Jupiter whom she knew: and kneeling down on the earth before him, required him in a troubled spirit, that he would do her justice on her Son that would slay her. Jupiter that nothing knew Calisto, forasmuch as she was ill cloathed and half wild and savage, beheld the Child, and made him be taken, and after he demanded of Calisto what she was? Sir, (said she) I am Calisto, that for thy sin was long since banished out of my Religion. I have had this Child of thy seed, such as thou seest, this is thy Son: I have nourished him seven years in the Forrest among wild beasts. He now would slay mee, forasmuch as I have angered him: I pray thee save my life. When Jupiter heard these words of Calisto, he was glad, for it was said, that she was dead, and he comforted her in the best wise he could: after that he called Archas, and made the peace between him and his mother, and caused him to be cloathed, and retained him in his Palace. And thenceforth the same Archas governed himself so well and wisely, that at the prayer and request of the Pelagians, Archas was made King of that Country.

#### CHAP. IX.

How Titan assailed by war his brother Saturn, forasmuch as he had not put to death all his Children males.

**W**hen young Archas was Crowned King of Pelage hee named the City Arcadia after his name, King Saturn was so puissant, That to amplifie and encrease the splendour of his nativity, he named himself Saturn, Sonne of Heaven and Earth. But then as he began to study how, and by what manner he might exalt the splendour of his felicity, by divine mysteries, Fortune turned her back to him. And as there is nothing in the earth that may abide and endure: so it happened that Titan was certified, that Queen Cibel had divers men children that she did cause to be kept secretly, and thereby had saved their



their lives. Boccace that recounteth this History, in the fourth booke of the Genealogies of the Gods, saith not by what means Titan knew this thing alway, either by suspicion or by envy, that he had of the glory of Saturn his Brother, or by secret advertisement. Under this colour he determined in his courage, to assaile Saturn by arms, and for this cause he did assemble all his Sons, and required them, that they would help him to get the Land of Crete, saying that he would make war against Saturn his Brother: and that by right and just title hee had good cause, for that he had not put to death divers men Children that his wife Cibel had conceived of his seed, like as he had promised, and sworn.

The Children of Titan, the one was Lycaon, that at this time was no longer a wolf, nor King of Arcadia, another had to name Tiphon, and was King of Sicil and of Cypres, the third was called Briarius, and was King of Nericos, the fourth was named Caon, and was King of the Isle of Cya, the fifth was named Egeon, King of the Sea Egee, and of the Isle desart, and the sixth was named Epirion, King of Plipheros. When they had heard the will of their Father that had purveyed them all these Realms, that he had conquered after his departing out of Crete, they desiring to please him, and coveting the recoverance of their ancient heritage that were then of great renown, said to him as by one voice, that they were ready to accomplish his good pleasure, and to go into Crete with armed hand, and swear that they should constrain Saturn to seek his Sons, and persecute them with his hand to death.

The old Titan had in his heatt great joy, when he beheld the great courages of his Sons. And they promised and swore together, that they all should employ themselves to the recoverance of their Heritages. After which Communication, they gathered them together at the Port of Sicil, and sent unto their Lordships to assemble men of Arms: They went and made such diligence and so exploited, that there were assembled great store of armour and hardnes, and much people at the said Port. And when the day was come they so desired, they departed from Sicil with a great Host, and took Sea, that in few days they sailed



unto Creet, at the Port arrived, and took Land. And then entering fiercely into the Land, they destroyed all before them so cruelly, and continued in their warre so mortally, that they came unto the City of Creet, where King Saturn dwelled and was resident: and then Saturn was advertised of their coming and descent. And Titan that might no further pass without a battle or assault, sent to Saturn a Letter whereof the tenor followeth. O Saturn glutted with worldly honour, and covetous of glory, for as much as thou art occupier of the Seigniory that by right belongeth to me, Titan thy Lord and elder brother: furthermore, because thou art falsly perjured, for thy wife hath divers men-children that thou hast not put to death, in likewise as thou wert bound: know that I am come to take possession of thy Kingdome, not appertaining to thee, but to me. Wherefore come to mercy, and submit thy self to grace, or else make thee sure of thy person, for if it be possible for me, I will come and have satisfaction of thee.

When Saturn had read this Letter, as a man all amazed sent for his Wife Cibel and took her apart, and adjured her to say the truth, and tell him what she had done with his Children. The poor Lady changed colour, and said? Sir, thou knowest that I am a woman, the heart of a woman naturally doth work of pity. Had not I been in nature an abominable monster, if I should have devoured with my hand the Children of my womb? Where is that mother that will murder her Children? My hand was never man-slayer, nor never shall be. I have erred against thy Commandment, in the favour of nature, and since it must needs be so, I had rather to be murdered than a murderer, and to be named pitious than cruel, for murder is cruelty appertaining to unreasonable beasts, and to Tyrants: and pity it is naturally appertaining to a woman. And therefore I confesse to have borne three Sons conceived of thy seed, which I have caused to be nourished secretly: but demand of me no further where they be, for they shall live as long as it pleaseth fortune, will Titan or not: and there is no death whereof any woman may be tormented with, that shall make the places to be discovered where they be.

Saturn.



Saturn hearing these words of his Wife, was so astonished, that he assembled all the wise men of his City, and said to them: My brethren and friends, what is best to be done? Titan my Brother hath begun war in this Realm: my Wife hath confessed, that she hath received of mee three Sons, which she hath nourished in a strange kind, under the colour that I should not slay them. Titan assaileth mee. What shall we do? Sir, (answered the Wise men) where any thing is exalted by over great presumption, there must be policy to conduct wisely, and to withstand it. Thou hast a strong City, and many people, thou art wise to govern them: put thy self in arms, and take no regard to the quarrels of Titan. A man is not worthy to be a King without vertue and gentle manners. Creet was never a Realm but now: Titan hath been in all his life inclined to vices, in which purpose he seeketh to come to the Crown. If he extol himself thou must debase him. This is the remedy, help thy self, and we shall help thee. He that flyeth, causeth his enemies to chase him. Thus now it may not be eschewed, but we must withstand and assault our enemies, and that couragiously. For what a man may do this day, let him not put it over till to morrow.

Arm thee then well and surely, and assail from the City thine enemies. If thou do, thou shewest thy courage to be advanced greatly, and not lightly to be overcome by any: and so thou mayest abate somewhat their pride and presumption. If thou behave thy self otherwise, and let them take their rest, that shall be matter and cause to encourage them: upon which they will wax proud, hoping to come to their purpose, which shall be to thee more harming than available: For courage and hope oftentimes (men say) make men to attain to become Conquerours, great and high. Notwithstanding, thou art a King: and thy will must be accomplished and fulfilled.

Saturn answered, Brethren and friends: it were great shame to us and our City, if we suffer it to be dissipate and destroyed. It is of force and very necessity that the war be begun and laid open, that every man dispose himself to save his worship. Titan assaileth mine honour, Since it must be, that of this matter the



arms and war must be judges, we will arm us in this instant, and pursue the entertainment of the right good adventure of Fortune that shall come unto us. And my heart telleth mee, that as soon as our enemies be entred into this Land, we shall make them issue out again. With this answer all the wise and noble men of Creet took great pleasure.

Then Saturn gave the answer to the Messenger of Titan, and said unto him: that if Titan returned not within two hours, he would come and take the battel against him. With this answer the Messenger returned to Titan, and told him the intention of Saturn. Titan swore he would never return back, till he had abidden the battel. Saturn was a man of great valour, and high spirit. When the Messenger of Titan was departed, he made sound an Alarm to Arms, at which sound both young and old armed themselves, and made them ready. And in short time they were ready at the point: and when Saturn saw that his enemies made no appearance to move, he went and ascended into his Chariot (for in this time the Kings went to battel in Chariots.) after he issued out of this City, and ranged his people about him, and caused them to march against his brother Titan.

As soon as the Titanoyes saw the Saturnians come, they were right glad and made themselves the greatest cheer of the world, and moved themselves joyously against them: and with a great cry, they had great Shields of Trees, Baces and Volaxes, Gulsarms of strange fashions, and they were all on foot except Titan, and his Sons, which as Kings had then Curses and Chariots, in which they were brought and carried, not by the force of Horse, but by the puissance of Men. The Archers of King Saturn began to shoot, and made the Titanoyes to stay and stand as long as their shot dured, and slew many of them. When the shot failed, the Titanoyes, that had great sorrow to be so served of the Saturnians, ordered themselves again, and swore the one to the other, that they would be avenged, and came forth and fought hand to hand: in which they bestirred themselves so eagerly, that for the noise and din that their Axes and Gulsarms made upon their shields, it seemed as it had been thunder. At the encountering the battle was hot: Lycaon, Egeon, Caon, Tiphon,



Tiphon, Encheladus, were in the first front: Caon and Tiphon, at the beginning maintained themselves valiantly, and conducted their folk all within the battel by the rigour of their strokes, insomuch that whom they met of the Saturnies, they beat down. By their well doing they were known, and doubted of their enemies, insomuch that Saturn made his Chariot to be lead out of the way, for the great bruit and noise that they made about him. There was great effusion of blood, for the Titanoyes did what they could to have endured in their bruit and cry: but the Saturnies with Saturn laboured to abate and break it. And so the coming of Saturn was cause of prowess upon prowess, and of many slain, and they enforced one another so busily to their work, that the most part of the day they fought so that none might glory of victory, nor be troubled for discomfiture. But in the end, when the Titanoyes saw the Sun decline, as being covetous of glory and worship, at one cry that Titan made upon Saturn, Lycaon and Egeon, with many other, enclosed about him, (he being from his company, his Chariot broken by force of Hol-axes (and gave him many wounds: and finally they took him. And that which is worse, they were so discouraged, when they understood that Saturn was taken, that they lost the vigour and strength of their hearts, and the might of their arms and turned their backs and fled all out of order, so that the Titanoyes entred with them into the City, and took it, without any resistance, beating down the people with great murder of men women and children.

At this time men might see the Ladies and Matrons of Creet, take the dust, and cast it into the air, and run up and down the streets casting away their attire, and their little Children crying after them. The wise men of the Town seemed out of their wits, and the City was so troubled that there could not be more. Among all other, Cibell, Vesta, and Ceres, made great sorrow without ceasing: for Titan that never loved them, came then into the Palace, and put in Prison Saturn and his wife, and swore they should never depart thence, till they had put to death all their Sons that were come of them. And furthermore, Titan did cause himself to be Crowned King of Creet. So availed

not.



not the infinite prayers and orisons that Dame Vesta made to Titan, in the compassion of her Son Saturn, and of Cibel, for their deliverance, nor the fair speaking of Ceres, nor the tears were of no value. The more prayers they made unto Titan, the more they found him cruel and hard hearted. He did execute and put to death all them that held or were appertaining to the party of King Saturn, and by the space of four days, vexed and troubled Creet in robbing and shedding the blood of the Citizens, and he persecuted not only the men, but also women and children, and took their goods and parted among them that held on his party: when Vesta saw all those things happen in the City, and that her Son Titan governed himself so maliciously and alway worse and worse, without any compassion on the people, she came to the prison where Saturn and Cibel were, and said to them with a mouth voiding dolorous sighs. Alas my children what will ye do? What shall become of you? How shall ye be saved? The Land of Creet is not only drowned by the tears and weeping of your best friends, but with their blood, and with the blood of their wives and children. And the heart of Titan is so terrible hard and obdurate, that ye shall dye here in miserable grief, or you must put your Sons to death, Since it is so, it is better that they be put to death, and that ye send to seek them, when for your life is none other remedy.

The anger of Cibel was sharp, to hear these sorrowful tidings in so much that her heart failed, so as Saturn and her mother thought she would have died. When she was come again to herself, she cried, and said, Ha my Mother what say ye to us? Have we so great grief to keep our children, and that we should this hour abandon them to death? Shall I use treason to my Children that begin to flourish in most clear fame? That shall never be (if it please the Gods) I had rather dye. Jupiter my Son hath a great name, and hath won the love of the Pelagians and of the Epiriens: all the world praiseth him, and holdeth him one of the valiantest men in the world, he is my Son, I shall send to him, and let him have knowledge of the misery that I am in, by the Damocel that bare him, unto the mountain of Oson, and shall require him of succour, and I hope that he is a  
man



man of high courage, and so fortunate that he shall succour her that hath done him that merit, that is worthy to have his succour, and that saved him in his tender days: and my heart telleth me that he shall receive by this tyding great joy, in knowing the place of his Patibity. For more greater joy he cannot have come to him, than to know that he is the first Son of the ancient house of Creet: And this shall turn to him a sovereign gladness, when he shall see that he is required to come and make the recoverance of his Father and Mother, and of his Country.

### CHAP. X.

How *Jupiter* with the aid of King *Melliseus* of *Epire*, delivered *Saturn* his Father and *Cibel* his Mother out of Prison: and how he slew *Titan* in battel.

When *Saturn* and *Vesta* had heard *Cibel* to speak, *Vesta* said, that her advice was very good, and *Saturn* was all astonish'd, for he thought that *Jupiter* he had seen at divers times with King *Melliseus* should in no wise be his Son, so hardly he could believe it, and give faith unto the words of *Cibel*, and said if *Jupiter* would succour him, he were the man to do it, and that he was content that *Cibel* should send to fetch him. Then *Cibel* sent for the Damosel that knew all the guiding of *Jupiter*, and gave her charge to go unto him, to dispatch this business. This Damosel glad of this Embassage, departed secretly, till she came to the house of King *Melliseus*, and finding there *Jupiter* with the King, after reverence made, she addrest her speech to *Jupiter*, and said to him: *Jupiter*, rejoyce and be glad, I bring thee tidings of gladness. For among other sorrows, Fortune, that hath held thee long time ignorant, and not knowing the place of thy Noble Patibity, hath now certainly laid open the discovery and knowledge of the same, thou art the first Son, and Heir of the King *Saturn*, and of Dame *Cibel*, King *Saturn* thy Father, as every man knoweth, made an oath unto his brother *Titan*, that he would slay all the Children males that should come of his seed, for which cause the day of thy Patibity.



he commanded that thou shouldest be put to death: but thy Mother had pity of thee, and for to save thy life, she sent thee secretly unto this house, giving thy father Saturn to understand, that she had done execution on thee: And so to eschew the furiousness of thy father, thou hast been here nourished all thy days, and knowest not thy self what thou wert. What joy is this to thee? And thou oughtest to go joyously unto thy father and Mother, presenting thy self unto their grace: if it were not that after these tidings of joy, I must needs shew unto thee other tidings, and that is this. Thy Mother that hath saved thee, thy Uncle Titan holdeth her in prison with thy father Saturn, for that she hath nourished thee: and he hath overcome and vanquished thy father in battle lately, and taken from him his Realm: and yet more he will put them to death. Wherefore they pray and require thee, that thou have pity on them: and wilt employ thee to go and deliver them out of the danger they are in.

King Melliseus and Jupiter hearing the tidings of the Damocel, marvelled at them very greatly; and Jupiter was very joyous when he had understood, that he was Son of King Saturn: and on the other side, he was sore vexed at the troubling of Crete, and thanked the Damocel. And after he turned him unto the King, and said: Sir, ye may now know what I am, and of what house, as this Damocel witnesseth. My father and my Mother be in the hands of their enemies: I pray you in their labour, that ye will help me to succour them: and that wee go hastily oppressing him that hath oppressed them: and I have a singular hope and trust in Fortune, that she will help us. Fair Son (answered Melliseus) know that I have more joy in the remembrance of thy Linage than I can shew or make semblance of, and in sign of this I promise to help thee as much as in mee is possible. Then Jupiter assured the Damocel, and swore unto her, that he would put him in Arms against Titan: and bid her run unto Saturn and Cibel, and comfort them in hope of very short succour. The Damocel departed from thence, with the words of Jupiter, and returned into Crete, and told Saturn and Cibel all she had done. After the Damocel was departed, Jupiter sent for Archas his Son hastily with the Arcadians, and also  
 . sent



sent for the Epiriens and the Parthenians, with them of the City of Analcre. All these people loved Jupiter with great love, and came at his commandment in great number, Jupiter welcomed them as well as he could, and told them the cause why he had sent for them, that he was Son unto King Saturn. After these things he did cause to be made ready all things that were necessary unto his Host: and so they departed from the City of Oson, with a fair company of men of arms, unto the number of six thousand fighting men: and so well sped, that in short time he brought them within a mile of Crete.

And there Jupiter would tarry upon the top of a mountain, and called to him his Son Archas that then was but thirteen years of age, but he was wise and well bespoken, and gave him in charge, that he should go into Crete to give summons unto King Titan, that he should go out of the City, and deliver to him his Father Saturn, with his Mother Cibel. Young Archas (that was hardy and had his heart high exalted) with the words of his Father, went unto Crete to King Titan, to whom he got to be presented, and said unto him: Titan, I come unto thee in the obedience of my Father Jupiter, first Son of King Saturn, that thou holdest in captivity. He hath been advertised of oppression that thou hast done on the person of his Father, and of his Mother, and the death of their Sons: he signifieth to thee by mee, that he is Son of Saturn, and that he is as much thine enemy, as thou to his Sons art enemy. Upon which I summon thee as a legate, once, twice, thrice, that thou yield this City unto his Father King Saturn, and that as hastily as thou hast entered therein, likewise that thou depart: Child (answered Titan) thou tellest me tidings that be full of pleasure, and of exultation, by the which, I know by thy words that Saturn hath a Son yet living: for by this means I see clearly, and so seeth all the world that by good and just quarrel I am made King of this City. Let Jupiter thy father know that I doubt him not nor set nothing at all by his coming: and also that I will do nothing after this commandment. Titan (said Archas) forasmuch as thou abidest in this will, I will no more at this time trouble thee. Make good watch: Jupiter is here by, and carrieth



For none other cause but answer from thee, for to do his endeavour to recover this City.

With this word Archas departed from the presence of Titan, and returned again to his Father. When Jupiter heard the answer he was full of gladness, for he desired nothing but to be in arms and concluded with his people, that he would assault the City. Anon were their Tents made of boughs and leaves, and Tabernacles: the Osoniens, the Arcadians, and the Epi-riens, lay upon the green verdure, and made their host to watch: Titan was then in Crete. And when Archas was departed from his presence, he assembled all his Sons, and told them these tidings, which were to them pleasant and agreeable. For they desired nothing but debate: and assured themselves to have victory of Jupiter, as well as they had of Saturn, in the same hour they sent four Spies, to espy the number of their enemies, and made ready their harness, these spies went so far, that they saw the host of Jupiter, and made their report to Titan of the place where his enemies were, and of what number of people they were: after the report of the Spies, Titan concluded, forasmuch as his enemies were but a mile from the City, that they should make them ready, and go to the battel against them, in the morning early. And then about the sun rising, Titan mounted upon his Chair, that was very rich, and made his Titanoyes to range in battel, and left an hundred within the City, to keep it from Rebellion, and took all the other with him under his conduct, and of his Sons, and his spies.

Jupiter that was not idle, had the same hour set all his men in order: and brought all his men into a fair plain, hoping for battel. And this Titan had not far ridden, but he saw the host of Jupiter, for this plain was covered over, and as far as each might see other, each of them full of joy enforced to make shouts and cries, and with great courage they marched the one against the other. When Jupiter put himself in the front of the battel, and having his Bow in his hand, and his Arrows by his side, by his shooting began a skirmish that was very fierce. for on both sides were good Archers, and many Casters of polish'd stones that failed never: and that was the cause of the death of many.

When



When the shot and casting of stones failed, they began with spears and then began a mortal fighting hand to hand, that was so sharp: that the breaking of Spears and the Shields, resounded unto the walls of Crete, and came to the ears of Saturn, and of Cibel, at the noise whereof they began to rejoyce, for they had a good hope that Jupiter would obtain the victory against Titan, This hour Vesta went up upon a high Tower that she might see into the field, and there she saw the battel. Then held Jupiter his Sword in one hand, and his Shield in the other, and with his Sword he smote into the thickest of his enemies: and with his Shield he saved himself from their strokes. And with one stroke of his sword he divided the body of Enceladus, one of the Sons of Titan, and cast him on the ground at the feet of the Titanoyes. Jupiter assailed them sharply, and one cryed slay, slay, but he that so cryed was slain by the hands of Jupiter, that destroyed his adversaries. He was strong and young, and of high enterprize. He defended him vigorously as a Lion, mightily as an Elephant, and eagerly as a Tiger, and sought not only the defence of his body, but to save and rescue all them that were in peril under his charge: he did marvellous things, on all sides the noise and bruit doubled and redoubled about him. The Titanoyes began to be overthrown by great routs: one fell on his shoulders, another on his Shield, and he charged so sore upon them that his strokes might not be sustained of men, they were so strong.

This battel was cruel and hardy at beginning for both parties, and there were many of the Titanoyes, of Arcadians, and the Epiriens hurt, dead and cast underfoot, Archas was there, accompanied with fifty Arcadians, appointed for the guard of his body, forasmuch as he was young yet he put himself to arms, Melliseus failed not, nor Titan, Lycaon, Egeon on the other side also, each man did his best, I cannot say how many men lay dead upon the ground, nor how often one set upon the other: but there was none comparable to Jupiter in strength: there was nothing to him impossible. He overcame the overcomers, he slew the slayers, he smote down the smiters, he put himself so far forth, and in so many places in the battel of the Titanoyes that



that he came and found Titan in his Chair, that overthrew the Epiriens with stones and round plummetts, that he cast on them, and cryed, Titan, Titan, forasmuch as he supposed, hee fought well. When Jupiter knew that Titan was there, he drew toward him, and as Titan advanced his arm to smite an Epirien, Jupiter lifted up his Sword, and charged upon his arm, that he smote it off, and parted it from his body, whereof he had great joy, and cryed, Jupiter, Jupiter, and Titan so hurt fell down within his Chair.

At this time the Epiriens began to courage themselves, and the Tytanoys were discouraged. Lycaon and Egeon were by, where they saw their Fathers arm fly into the field: then they began to assail Jupiter, as men despaired, and began a new combat, where much blood was spilled. But notwithstanding the fierceness of Lycaon that Jupiter had long time in hatred, forasmuch as he had taken from him his Lordship, Jupiter followed so eagerly to put Titan to the foil, that he brake his Chair in pieces, by the help of the Epiriens, and with the Sword that he smote off his arm, he parted the life from the body of Titan, by a mortal stroke that he gave to his heart: and then bent he his endeavour to persecute Lycaon and Egeon, that had given to him many strokes, and he smote with his Sword upon the head of Lycaon, whereat Egeon fled, and saved him from the skirmish: in which skirmish the Titanoyes so unmeasurably had the worst, that all were put to flight in the fields: one of the Sons of Titan named Tiphon, seeing the discomfiture, came unto Jupiter, and said: Jupiter, see here thine enemy: fly not after them that fly: it will be unto thee more honourable to fight against me, than to run after the fugitives: Never yet was I found flying before mine enemies, nor yet will I. Thou hast slain Titan my Father, and My Brother is slain and banquished by force and strength, and so it behoveth that this Realm must be thine or mine: and now let us see who shall do best: If I may I will banquish thee: and if I overcome thee, certainly, thou shalt not dye by my Sword, but by the water of the flood that runneth red, and dyed by the blood of my kindred, to the end, that thou drinke of the blood that thou hast made run out of their bodies,



bodies, whereof I have great sorrow, for by the course of Pa-  
ture I ought to take displeasure, and to turn to great despight  
the displeasure thou hast done unto me.

## CHAP. XI.

How *Jupiter* vanquished in the field, *Typhon*, and cast him into  
the River.

**W**hen *Typhon* that was full of presumption and pride  
had said all that was in his heart, *Jupiter* said unto him :  
Mastail, hast thou no knowledge what reason and right the Gods  
and Fortune have done for me ? Thou art strong of members :  
and there proceeds from thy heart words more outrageous than  
wise, and forasmuch as thou demandest battel, thou art wel-  
come : make thee ready, and do the best thou canst. With this  
word, *Typhon* smote *Jupiter* so rudely upon his shield, that he  
bare away a great quarter, and made *Jupiter* to stoop with the  
right leg. There were many *Epiriens* that seeing *Jupiter* so  
smitten, ran and came to rescue him : but *Jupiter* would not suf-  
fer them, but had *Melliseus* and *Archas* that they should follow  
the chase of them that fled. And then he began to assail *Typhon*  
by great rigour and force, in such wise that he gave him many  
wounds in his body, and thus began the battle of *Typhon* and  
*Jupiter* : they were both strong and able in the craft of arms,  
they charged one another fiercely. Many strokes the one gave  
the other : but *Jupiter* smote his enemy, that he took from him  
his Sword and Shield, and when he was in at that point, he car-  
ried him upon his shoulders by force of arms, and bare him to  
the River that was dyed with the blood of dead men : and there  
he cast him into the flood with the head downward, forasmuch  
as he had menaced *Jupiter* with such a death. After the death of  
*Typhon*, *Jupiter* went again to the pursuit of his enemies, un-  
till the Sun began to decline into the West, and followed on  
with great slaughter : that *Titan* and the most people were so  
feeble and dispersed in the fields, that they might never rise  
again, he sounded the retreat, and assembled his folk, and took  
the right way to the City, having great joy of his victory. And  
he



he had not tarried long, but that four Citizens of Crete came unto him, and told him, that they of the party of Titan were fled; and that they had taken out of Prison his Father.

## CHAP. XII.

How *Jupiter* and *Saturn* reconciled themselves together, and how *Jupiter* by commandment of his Father, went to destroy King *Apollo* of *Paphos*, and of the Medicine *Esculapius*.

**J**upiter received these Citizens and their tidings in great gladness, and desiring with all his heart to be with his Father and Mother, did so much speed him that he entred into Crete, Saturn and Cibel with Vesta were at the Gate, which received him honourably, and brought him to the Palace, where he was feasted with the King Melliseus and Archas, in such fashion that it could be no better. At the coming of Jupiter many tears were wept for joy, by Dame Cibel and Vesta, Cibel kist and beclipt oftentimes her Son: and all they of the Countrey came thither into the Palace to feast and worship Jupiter, and also they gave him many great gifts. And it is not to be forgotten, how Saturn reconciled himself unto him, and gave him a state as to his Son. During these things, the body of Titan was searched among the dead bodies, by the commandment of Saturn, and there was made for him a solemn Obsequie, as it appertained to a King, and likewise unto his Sons that were found dead in the Battel. All the Sons of Titan were not perished and dead in the battel: for among all other, Iopetus and Briarius were left alive and fled: that is to say, Briarius was fled into the Isle of Greece, named Nericos, and Iopetus fled into a part of Libie where he inhabited: and he had with him three Sons, whereof the eldest was named Atlas, the second Hesperus, and the third named himself Prometheus. Atlas dwelled in Libie, and Hesperus reigned in Spain, and were both vanquished by Hercules, as shall be rehearsed in the second book.

When Saturn and Jupiter had done the obsequies of the Titanoyes, tidings came to Jupiter that Apollo King of Paphos had taken part with them that fled from the battel of the Titanoyes



tanoyes. This said Apollo had made alliances with Saturn, and was Son of Iupiter of Attick. When Iupiter and Saturn heard these tydings, Saturn required Iupiter that he would take vengeance on Apollo that was his allie, and that he would destroy his enemies. At the request of Saturn he enterprized the warre, and in haste went and besieged the City of Paphos, and took it with assault, and put to Sword all the Fugitives that he could find: and moreover, he spoiled Apollo of all his riches and of his Lordships, leaving him so nakedly, that he departed from Paphos, not as a King, but as a poore beggar: and Fortune was to him so contrary that he was constrained to keep the sheep of King Admetus of Thessaly. In this place some men say, that in the time that Iupiter began to mount in his Reign and to embrace honour. Esculapius Son of Apollo, which was expert in Medicine, and searching on a day his adventures, as he went by a wood side he saw from far, where an Herdsman with his little horn, fought against a Basilisk, that of his nature slew the people only with his sight. When Esculapius saw this, he greatly marvelled, he had not long abidden, but that the Herdsman had overcome the Basilisk, and constrained him to withdraw him upon a Rock that was there hard by. Esculapius was amazed with this thing, so that he knew not what to say: for he thought it was impossible for any man to overcome so mortal a Beast. When the Basilisk was withdrawn upon the Rock, Esculapius went hastily unto the Herdsman, and finding that he had on his head a Chaplet or Garland made of divers herbs and flowers, he judged incontinently, that in this foresaid Garland was an herb of such vertue that kept him from death, and also from the subtil venom of the Basilisk. Then he entreated so, that the Herdsman or Shepherd, gave him his Chaplet or Garland, as ignorant of the vertue thereof: and then, the said Herdsman went again to assail the Basilisk: and suddenly with one proper sight of his eyes, the poore Shepherd fell dead to the earth.

Esculapius was then well assured, that he had well thought, that in the Chaplet was an herb that sufficed to withstand against the malicious intoxication of the venomous eyes of  
 H Beasts:



Beasts: and with the said Chaplet he went to the Rock, and fought against the Basilisk that he slew him. When he had thus done, he went unto the Herdsman, and having pity on him took all the herbs one after another, whereof the Chaplet was made, and put them severally each by himself in his mouth. And at last he touched the leaves of the vertuous herb, and bruised it in his mouth, so putting it in the dead mans mouth, suddenly he rose from death to life. A marvellous vertue of an herb: men read that by the same herb, Hippolitus (which came unto his death by the means of his stepmother, who accused him falsely) afterward was raised to life again, and after he had been long dead and drawn through bushes, hedges, mountains and thorns, when his body was found, and they that found him laid him in a Medow upon a plat of herbs, like unto the herb whereof was spoken before, by the vertue of the same his wounds were healed, and his life was given and yielded to him again.

When Esculapius had raised the Herdsman or Shepherd, he took the herb and the Basilisk, and bare them unto the City of Paphos, telling his adventure, and from thenceforth he raised men from death to life, by vertue of the herb. And for this cause he got him so high a name, that Iupiter was displeased at his glory, and slew him: whereof his Father Apollo took so great sorrow to himself, that he enterprized the warre against Iupiter, but Iupiter overcame him, and constrained him to such an extremity that to hide his name, he went and served King Admetus of Thessalie. And thus when Iupiter had vanquished Apollo, he returned unto Creet with great glory, and found there Neptune and Pluto his Brethren, and Iuno his sister. This Iuno was the most beautiful woman and fairest Maid in all the Country. After the return of Iupiter she conversed with him a certain space of time, albeit they discovered not their minds at this time. And in process of time Iuno returned into Parthenie, with the other Virgins which she had been nourished with, and abode in many thoughts and desires: and made never other prayers unto the Gods, but that they only would give her grace to be wife unto her brother. And it is not to be forgotten, that as she was strongly set in love with her Brother Iupiter, as much



much or more was Iupiter in love with her. For to her onely (after that he had sent home all his men of war into their own Countries, and that he had established his Father Saturn in his Seigniority, and Lordship) under the colour of Devotion he went oftentimes into the City of Parthenie, and took pleasure to be with her.

## CHAP. XIII.

How *Jupiter* with great joy Spoused his Sister *Juno*. And how King *Saturn* began War against *Jupiter* his son.

**A**ND as Iupiter was busie to sollicite the Virgin *Juno* in Partheny, to have the better occasion to abide there, he builded a Temple and dedicated it to his mother *Cibel*, and did make an Image or Statue of a woman in Royal attyre, that gave meat to many small Images of little Childzen, in remembrance that she had saved the life of her Childzen. And when this Temple was perfected and made unto the Dedication, Saturn and *Cibel* came thither with all the Nobles of the Country, and made a great solemnity, that dured fifteen daies in great gladness. And at this great feast and merriment failed not Jupiter and *Iuno*, for about the end of this solemnity, the Nobles of the Country treated their marriage, and the Priests of the Temple of *Cibel* assured and betrothed them together. In the same Temple their Spousals were made and celebrated with great glory, not possible to be rehearsed. And Iupiter and *Iuno* lay together, and engendred a Daughter, that they named *Phebe*. The Parthenians for memory of this marriage, founded a Temple, wherein they set the Image of *Iuno*. And after Iupiter married *Iuno*, they made in that Temple an Anniversary Feast, which was held in manner of a wedding. After these things, Saturn returned into Creet, and Pluto into a part of Thessaly, where he founded the City of Hell, whereof shall be spoken in the second book, and Neptune returned into Athens, where the Athenians made him King, as well for his vertues as that he was Son of Saturn, at that time the most renowned King of the world.



In those days, when Saturn saw himself quit of Titan, and that he saw his children mount from low places to Reigne in high Chairs, all his sorrows banished away, and then began the clearness of his Reigne to be peaceable: all doubts, and dreads were put away: He had of goods of Fortune as much as he would: None was so hardy that durst conspire against his dominion: he found himself in peace generally. And it is to be gathered out of the Reigns of this time, that he was in so great peace and tranquillity, that he might have finished and ended his days in the same, if himself had not sought to begin and threaten war: for he had Jupiter his Son unto help, at that time the most valiant in arms that was in all the world. And when King Saturn saw himself thus in peace, it came to his mind, that Apollo Divinified, that this Jupiter should put him out of his Realm, suddenly there began to ingender in him a mortal hate against Jupiter that had done him so many good deeds. And seeing every man held him in love, and was busie to please him, he was the more incensed, and gave credence unto this cursed Divinification: and he returned unto his ancient sorrows, and fantasies, in such wise that he made them appear outward.

When they of Creet saw Saturn so troubled, his secret council endeavoured to comfort him: but it helped nought; for they could not get from his mouth the cause of his melancholly, till he had determined that he would persecute his Son Jupiter. And then he did assemble his Princes and Counsellors, and said to them: A charge and adjure you all; by the names of all our Gods, that ye advise mee what shall, or ought a King do with a man that he doubteth, by a divine answer that hath been said to him, that this man shall put him out of his Reigne and Kingdom. When they of Creet had understood the charge and adjuration of the King, they appointed one, to give this answer. Sir, the Council knoweth that ye had answer of your God, that ye had engendred a Son that Would put you out of your Realm. and that Dame Cibell was then engendred of Jupiter: the Council prayeth you that ye will consider, how ye were deprived of your Crown, and had lost it, and he delivered you, and quit you of  
your



your enemies. If the cause of your charge and adjuration touch not this matter, the Council is of opinion, that if the King have puissance and might over him that he doubteth, and that he have cause evident, he ought to make him sure from that man, and free from dangers.

Said Saturn, the advice of the Council is reasonable enough: forasmuch as I must declare to you, what I mean: I am the King that I speak of, and the man that I doubt, is Jupiter, my Son: him I fear and dread much more than death, insomuch that I may not endure, nor take rest for him: For sleeping I dream that he ariseth against me, and assaileth mee in arms, with a great multitude of Arcadians and Epiriens, and resteth conquerous and victorious over me: and waking, I have alway mine ears open to hearken, if he be about to come on me with men of arms: and thus I can have no rest, I am a man lost. This considered: I will that he be dead: and I take the blame and sin upon me. And, I will that ye know that I am your King, and that ye to me owe obeyssance, for that I command you upon pain of death, that there be not one man that is so hardy to gainsay any thing contrary to my will, that each of you be to morrow found ready in arms before this Palace.

## CHAP. XIV.

How they of Creet, when they heard the commandment of Saturn were sore troubled: and how he gathered his forces against Jupiter his Son.

**W**hen they of Creet had heard the resolution of Saturn, they were greatly ashamed: and he was a terrible man to offend: and they knew that wrongfully he willed the death of his Son Jupiter, that had restored him to his Lordship: And there were that went into another Kingdome because they would not be with the Father against the Son, nor with the Son against the Father. But there was no man that durst be so hardy to reply against Saturn nor say that he did evil, for they dreaded more his ire, than to offend justice. After the commandment of Saturn, each man withdrew him to his house, full of



grief and sorrow in heart. And there was not one man, but had his face charged with grief and heaviness,

The day then drew past: and on the morn, Saturn Armed himself and sounded Trumpets to arms. They of Crete arose this morning, and many there were of them that knew the intention of Saturn: And also there were many that marvelled of that, what the King would do, and could find no reason wherefore he made this Army: For all Crete was in peace, and all the Titanos were dispersed, and put unto destruction for ever. Among all other, Cibel knew not what to think: Seeing that Saturn sent not for Jupiter, she demanded of him oftentimes whither he would go, and for what reason he took not Jupiter with him in his company? Jupiter was at that time in Parthenie with his wife Juno.

When Saturn had heard the demand of his wife Cibel, all his blood began to change, and he said, that she should know the place that he would go to. Cibel was wise and subtil: when she heard the answer of the King, and saw the fashion of his countenance, her heart gave her that he had some ill will: and she had suspicion that he would do harm to Jupiter. Wherefore she went into her Chamber very pensive, and at all adventure sent hastily into Parthenie, and signified to Jupiter, that he should depart hastily from thence: and that she imagined that Saturn his Father would do him displeasure, for he made a very great assembly of men of Arms, and there was no man that could tell the cause thereof.

#### CHAP. XV.

How King Saturn with all his Host came before the City of Arcadia against Jupiter his son.

Here is to be noted, that Jupiter had his heart very discontent when he had received these tidings from his Mother, and although she warned him by supposing, as she that knew not verily the will of the King: yet when he considered that he was not sent for unto his army. he doubted him, and departed from thence, and said to his wife Juno, that he would go unto Arcadia,



dia, concluding in himself, that by this mean he should see the behaviour of his Father, and to what place he employed his Armie. But he was not farre on his way, when he rested upon a Mountain, and looked behind him, that he saw the City of Parthenie, full of the men of Arms of King Saturn: that gave to him a great proof of the advertisement of his Mother. And to see what way he bent his course, he tarried still on the Mountain, having his eyes always unto the City. And anon he saw his Father Saturn mount into his Chair, and all his Armie issue out of the same Gate where he came from and took the same way that he had taken: And that gave him verily to understand and know that his Father sought him. And so he departed from this Mountain, and went to Arcadia, and told his Son, and to the Arcadians the cause wherefore he was come, and prayed them, that they would furnish him with good Armour, to the end he might defend their City if need were.

The Arcadians at the request of Iupiter, made ready their Arms and their City, and sent out spies upon the way. And anon, after they were come from the Palace the spies affirmed to Iupiter and Archas, that they had seen the Champine country, and the ways of Arcadia all full of men of arms. Anon there was proclaimed in the City in the name of their soveraign Lord Iupiter, that every man should make good watch, and keep his ward. With this cry, the Arcadians armed them with Helms and arms of leather: and went upon the Walls, having in their hands axes, Swords, Guisarms, Glaves, and Dacres. And they saw come from far two men of Creet, which came to the Gate, and asked of the Porters if Iupiter were within? The Porter, when he understood what they asked, answered them, that Iupiter was in the City: and if they had any thing to do with him, they should find him in the Palace. where he passed the time with his Son Archas: and that he was newly come unto the Town to visit him. When they of Creet heard this, they were sore troubled: for they sought him that they would not find. Notwithstanding they went in, and passed forth with up to the Palace, where they finding Iupiter with the Nobles of Arcadia, after due reverence made, one of them spake, and



and said: Sir, we seek thee: and we have no will to find thee, for we come against our will, to execute a commission, by the which may sooner come ruine and trouble than peace to Creet and us. Saturn thy Father commandeth thee that thou alone come speak with him, he hath sought thee, in all the places of Parthenie. His Daughter Iano thy wife (not thinking evil) hath ascertained him that thou art come hither. He is come after thee in arms, and we know not what he thinketh to do: for he was never so angry, nor sorrowful, as he is now. We be his servants, force hath constrained us to his obeysance, and for this cause we will thee to appear in person before him this same hour, all excusations set apart.

When Jupiter had considered and well pondered in his mind the adjournment or summons, with his eyes full of tears, he made this answer, I marvel of the right strange demeanour of my Father: and peradventure it is not without great cause. His Realm is in peace. I have put and set him again in his Realm, he putterh himself in arms without my knowledge, and now he sendeth for me, that I would alone come speak with him: that is too strange a thing unto me. And he behaveth himself not as he ought to do: for men ought to praise them that have deserved it, and be of value. I have abaied him as much as his Realm is worth: and he hath at other times sent for me to make war. I know not what evil desire he hath or may have towards me. But here he is come with his Army, where he hath nothing to do. And being come he demandeth nothing but me only. All things considered: I have no reason to obey his commandment notwithstanding, that he is my Father: forasmuch as the suspicion is too much apparent. But I am content, if he have to do with me, to serve him. and to come to him, upon condition that I shall be accompanied with all my friends that I can get and not otherwise.

The two Commissaries, with this word returned unto Saturn, and told him the intencion of Jupiter, Saturn took impatiently the answer of Jupiter, and approached unto Arcadia, making his avow unto his Gods, that if he may have Jupiter, he with his hands would make sacrifice of him. And then he sent for his most



most wise men, and willed them, that with cruel menaces they should go summon the King Archas, and the Arcadians, to yield and deliver unto him Jupiter: declaring openly and plainly, that he was more his enemy than his Son.

The wise men departed from the Host, at the commandment of Saturn and did perform their debowze to summon the Arcadians: and said to the King and people of Arcadia: We be come unto you, forasmuch as ye sustain Jupiter: whom the King Saturn holdeth as an enemy, telling you, if ye deliver him unto Saturn ye shall be his friends: and if not, he doth give you to wit, that ye do keep good watch and ward, for he hath none in the world whom he reputeth greater enemies than you.

By this commandment Jupiter knew, it was he for whom Saturn made his Army. The Arcadians assembled to counsel without Jupiter, and spake of this Matter, and made answer to the wise men of Creet, how they were bound to serve Jupiter and they would keep him, and live and dye with him against all men, above all other. When the wise men had their answer, they returned unto Saturn, and told him the answer of the Arcadians, being enflamed with ire, he commanded the City should be assailed. Whereupon, went to arms they of Creet, and they approached the Walls and Forts. Now when the Arcadians saw their enemies approach, they sounded to arms and came to the fight, and plyed them to defend their Walls with great courage. Then was shot many an Arrow, and many a stone cast, and many beaten and hurt, as well within as without: there was no Guns, Bombards, nor great Artillery in the Realm. They of the City did cast upon their enemies burning brands and oyle, and waters boyling with ashes.

And to do this Jupiter had induced and taught the Arcadian people, men and women, that when they of Creet came most strong to the assault, and supposing to have entered the City, they were charged with fire, oyle, and scalding waters, which of force constrained them to go back, with great loss of people, and to sound the retreat. Saturn taking most sorrow, for that by the Walls lay more than four hundred of his men dead, returning into his Tent, after the assault, passing sorrowful: had so great  
A
grief



grief at his heart, that he could neither eat nor drink. But for all this notwithstanding he thought well on his hurt people and went to their Tents, and did cause Physicians to minister medicine unto them that were hurt.

## CHAP. XVI.

How *Jupiter* sent his Ambassadors to his Father *Saturn* for peace: and how *Saturn* would not consent to peace.

**T**he Arcadians were glad, when they saw how they of Crete ceased with shame their assault, and after the retreat on both sides Saturn applyed to heal and give medicines unto his hurt men. The Arcadians then assembled a Council, and by great deliberation they sent seven of their honourable Counsellors in Embassage to Saturn, of whom the one said, Saturn, thou knowest that every King ought to labour to live in peace: For the most fair thing in the world is peace: by peace are prospered men; Towns, and Cities, are united and knit together by charity, and made as one by amorous communication: by peace, Realms profit, in beautifying and building fair houses: and in length of life. By peace mens bodies be whole and quiet: and it is that, that causeth a man to demand sovereignty. O Saturn, it seemeth that thou regardest not this good vertue, for Reigning in peace and tranquility, there is no King, nor Prince that dare shew himself against thee. Thou hast not only troubled thy Realm, but art an abuser of war: to have peace, a man ought to order the war. Thou doest all otherwise: and regardest not that thy Son Jupiter hath delivered thee from the bonds of thine enemies, and hath set thy Diadem in a surety of peace, which thou mightest not do without him? Seest thou not, that by making him war, thou canst not have peace: and that thou destroyest and breakest this peace, seest thou not that this is thy Son, by warring against whom thou art a Monster in Nature? The Fathers naturally love their Children: and the rude and brut Beasts keep and hold this condition of Nature? Thou seekest and wouldest destroy thy Son. From whence cometh this unnatural appetite? Might it not suffice thy cruel purpose and  
old



old errour to think on the goodness and benefit that thou hast received lately by his restoring thee to Reigne? be thine interiour rancours permanent? Shall thy fantasies never cease? Wilt thou be in age more foolish than a Child? The more men grow in age, the more they be wise. Thou hast less knowledge now than thou hadst in thy wildest youth. From whence cometh this default? Is this by thy Heavenly influence? If it be thus: where is reason? where is equity? where is the love of the Father to the Son? and knowest thou not, that had not Jupiter thy Son been, thou hadst been in great darkness, languishing: I signifie to thee, as the advocate of Jupiter, that he loveth thee as his own Father: and furthermore, I pray thee that thou wilt be in peace. And if thou wilt wish him no good, yet at least will him no harm.

I should soon yield to your demand (answered Saturn) if the experience of the life of Jupiter come not to my sight. See I not, how he exalteth himself the most he can? See I not, how the people by his fair and fawning words, owe him more favour than mee? See I not, that he flyeth from me? If he be not culpable wherefore flyeth he? He will say to the people, that he is innocent. Say ye that he hath nothing done against me? I know not how the Arcadians take it: but if I may once set my hand on them, there was never such a great destruction as shall come unto Arcadia, and I have not as now any purpose to depart from this place, till I have utterly rased the City, that rebelleth against me and my commandments. Sir (answered the Arcadians) since that fair speeches may not restrain thy great ire, nor restrain thy war, beware, thou keep thy self from us, and us from thee, for the matter shall be decided by war. God speed the right and Fortune, we will not long draw forth time: it is concluded, that the Arcadians and Jupiter will issue to morrow out of the City: and if they find any assail them they must and will defend their lives.

This speech ended, Saturn turned his back to the Arcadians, shaking his head, and the Arcadians returned into their City, and rehearsed from the beginning to the end all that they had done: and by their report, it was confirmed, that the day fol-



lowing they should issue out of the City, as they had purposed among themselves.

Jupiter had great displeasure in himself, that he saw his Father was so grieved, and would not be content, yet notwithstanding he doubted not so much, but took courage, and said: he was more holden to keep his life, than to obey the evil will of his Father, that hated him at his birth. This night passed over. About the third hour of the day, Archas, Jupiter, and the men of war of the City, went into the field in good order: and they were not so soon issued out of the Gates, but they were seen of the Saturnians, that waited for them by the commandment of Saturn. And then began each against other, so great noise and cry, that it resounded unto the Mountains and Walls. And then they began to assail the Arcadians by shot and stones, so eagerly that when Jupiter saw there was no other remedy, but to fight, he put him forth foremost in the front, so began to say to them that fought him, crying with an high voice, loe here is Jupiter each man do to him what he may.

Thus began the dolorous battel of Saturn and Jupiter. There was the Father against the Son, there lost nature her fair and commendable properties. The Father sought to spill the blood he had engendred: and promised great gifts unto them that might take him. The battel was rigorous and cruel: and then wrought and fought well both Jupiter and Archas, and above all the noble Jupiter employed so bravely his sword tempered with Steel that he smote down both Shields and Helms, and cut off heads and arms, and there was no man might resist his invincible prowess. He made to tremble the hardiest that were there: he made them retire, and to go back, that had advanced themselves more than they had power and strength to maintain. He brake the wings of the battel: and in their most strength he met and encountred many times Saturn his Father, and it was often in his power to grieve him: but though Saturn laid on him, and gave him grievous wounds, yet hee would never smite again, but said to him oftentimes: Alas, my Father, to heretofore seekest thou the effusion of my blood? I am thy Son, and thy Servant: Thou hast no cause to persecute mee, I will not.



not lay my hand upon thee: but beware and put not affiance in the Arcadians, for if they may get thee in their power, thou shalt find in them little pity or mercy.

Saturn notwithstanding would not refrain his ire: but smote ever upon Jupiter as fiercely as he could. Jupiter of all his strokes took no heed, and set little thereby, and though he had occasion to fight and smite his Father, he turned his strokes, and had no conscience to occupy his sharp Sword upon them of Creet, yet sometimes he so laid on, that every stroke without fail was dyed with new blood. And this he did, meaning to shew Saturn that he fought against him in vain, and that to him was nothing impossible. All these things nothing dismayed Saturn. The cry was great about Jupiter, the arms were greatly exercised, the ground was all covered with the effusion of blood, and the dead bodies lay one upon another beheaded and smitten in pieces. O cruel and sore battel, Saturn was so sore entangled in his obstinacy; that the blood of his men wetting his arms by the course of the large wounds that Jupiter made into them, might not moderate his ire nor heat. And his eyes were so blind in his ire that he saw not his evident damage: nor how he fought the proper mean, by which he was put out of his Realm, that he doubted, and against which he intended to make resistance, and eschew it with his might.

CHAP. XVII.

How Jupiter vanquished in battel Saturn his Father: and Saturn fled by sea.

**I**F this battel, Jupiter oftentimes saved Saturn among the Swords of the Arcadians, and did good against evil, many of them of Creet fought against their will, knowing that Saturn was cause of the war: and notwithstanding they put their hands to work, yet the faint-heartedness that they had among themselves, was cause of the loss of a great number of people. They doubted Jupiter, and had no power to fight so well as they would have done, if they had known the quarrel to be good: and by this manner was the battel demeaned, to the great prejudice of the



Saturnians. Jupiter submitted himself to his Father, and oftentimes cryed in his ear that he should withdraw him, or the battel would be worse. He withstood his strokes a great while, waiting that he would convert himself from his evil opinion. But then at last when Jupiter took heed, and saw that he would in no wise hear him, he displayed his valour, and the great might of his arms, and of his Sword, and made such a fray upon his adversaries, breaking their Helms, and hewing their Harness, not in manner of a man, having all day sustained the fear of great strokes and conflicts of the Saturnians: but in the manner of a Champion fresh and new, of whom the strokes redoubled.

Thus then it seemed unto the Saturnians, that in multiplying of the strokes, the strength and puissance of Jupiter began to revive. His well doing and valiantness, gave unto the Arcadians strength upon strength: and unto his enemies great loss of blood, and also of life. The ground was bedewed with new blood: The dead bodies covered with new dead men. There was the Chair of Saturn smitten into pieces, Saturn held a long while the battel, as long as his strength would endure: and in no wise would fly. But in conclusion when his men saw that the war went with them from evil to worse, they began to retye, and turned their backs and fled: and Saturn turned and fled in person: then they were followed in the chase so sharply, that some were slain in the way, and some saved themselves here and there. Among all other, Saturn was so nigh pursued by Archas and some of the Arcadians, that he had no leisure to return into Crete, but was driven by force till he came unto a Wood of the Sea thereby, where he saved himself by means of a Ship that he there found: and he went unto the Sea, with some of them that fled, so pensive that he might not speak.

Thus this battel ended, both of the Father and the Sonne. When Archas saw that Saturn was saved in the Sea, he returned to Jupiter his Father, and assembled again his people, and told them these tidings, and also he assembled his Council, to know what Jupiter should do. And they of the Counsel were all of the opinion, that Jupiter should go into Crete, and that they would



would make him King: saying, that the Gods had shewed clearly that he should succeed as King in the Realm, when his Father was fled, forasmuch as they had then no head. To this counsel accorded Iupiter, and went to Creet, where he was received, King, the Citizens durst not say against it, And although Cibel and Vesta made great sorrow for the misfortune of Saturn, yet they turned their sorrow into gladness at the Coronation of Iupiter, and sent for Iuno. Then began Iupiter to Reign, in distributing and departing unto the Arcadians the treasures of his Father, whereof they had great joy, and for this cause (say the Poets) Iupiter was gelded, and cast his genitors into the Sea, of whom was engendred Venus: That is to say, he cast the treasures of his Father into the bellies of his men, whereof engendred all holuptuousness, which is compared and likened unto Venus.

## CHAP. XVIII.

How *Achrisus* had a daughter named *Danae*, which he did cause to be shut in a Tower, because he had an answer that she should have a son which should turn him into a stone.

**I**n those days when Iupiter of Creet flourished in honour, and baliance, in the City of Argos reigned King *Achrisus*, that caused his Daughter *Danae* to be kept in a Tower. To know the Genealogie of this King, it is to be noted, that of Iupiter, and of a Damosel named *Ilis*, came a Son named *Epaphus*: this *Epaphus* engendred a Son and a Daughter, the Son was named *Belus*, and reigned in Egypt, and the Daughter named *Lybia*, and dwelt in Affrick, where she conceived a Son named *Bufris*, that was an unhumane Tyrant, as shall be rehearsed hereafter in the deeds of *Hercules*. *Belus* then engendred two Sons, *Danaus* and *Egyptus*, *Danaus* had fifty Daughters, and *Egyptus* had as many Sons. And these Sons and Daughters were conioyned together by Marriage. *Egyptus* having married his Sons was deceived in his knowledge, for *Danaus* for envy and covetousness to have the succession, made his Daughters traitterously murther all the fifty Sons of *Egyptus*, the night of  
their



their Espousals, as they slept. And all consented to this horrible crime, except Hypernestra, which had a stedfast heart of pity: for when she should have persecuted her husband Linceus, she saved his life mercifully, and also conceived of his seed, a Son that was named Abas, that after was King of Argos: and he engendred the King Achrisius: whereof is made mention in the beginning of this Chapter. These were the Parents and Progenitors of King Achrisius, he was very puissant in riches, but he named himself poor: for he had no children but one daughter only, which he named Danae: and to have a Son he went day by day, to the Oracles of the Gods: and there made prayers and sacrifices, alms and other suffrages. All these things might not help nor bring to pass the accomplishment of his desire. His wife came unto her barren years, and he was out of all hope to have any Child male, and then he comforted himself in Danae his Daughter, and set his love so greatly on her, that he had no pleasure, but only to behold her: and he purposed that never man should have her, except he were the most noble and valiantest man in the world. But forasmuch as in this world is nothing durable, this love was of little enduring, and that by the procuring of the King Achrisius: for that the love he had in Danae, grew of natural jealousy, he went to the Oracle of Belus his old Grandfather, and searching what should be the destiny of his Daughter, he did cause him to be answered that of her should come a Son that should turn him into a stone.

By this answer, Achrisius began to fall from the great love that he had to her, returning sorrowful into his house, and became very melancholly, without taking joy or pleasure in any thing that he saw, his Daughter was then young: he saw her oftentimes, otherwhile in cruelty, and sometime in pity. The remorse of that, that he looked to be transformed into a stone, by him that should be born of his Daughter, moved him to cruelty, that oftentimes he determined to put her to death, and spoil his blood, to remedy his misfortune. But when he had taken in his hand the Sword wherewith he intended to slay her, Nature began to put her self between them: and from this cruelty made him to condescend to pity, and put away his Sword.

This



This King Achrisius from thenceforth took his rest, crossed with many sighs, and could not be assured of himself. His daughter grew and became a woman: she was very fair, and many Kings and great Lords desired to have her in Marriage, and would have endowed her with noble Crowns. But the King Achrisius refused all them that required her, and imagined, that his Daughter, for her great beauty, might be taken away and ravished, by which she might by adventure have a Sonne that should turn him into a stone. And to the end, to eschew this peril and danger, he thought, that he would make a Tower the strongest in the world, and in the same Tower should his Daughter Danae be shut during her life, without coming of any man to her: for he was so jealous of her, that he believed her not well when he saw her. In the end he sent for workmen, and forgers of Steel and Copper, from all parts, and brought them unto a strong place, all environed with waters, where was no entry but in one place.

When he had brought thither all his workmen, he said to them, that he would have a Tower made all of Copper, with a Gate severall from the Tower, to put in four and twenty men of Arms, to keep the Tower if it were need. The Workmen agreed with King Achrisius, to make the Tower and the Gate, and set on hand to the work: the Tower was made in short time: and when all was achieved, Achrisius brought thither his Daughter without letting her know his intention. And as soon as she was in the Tower, he said unto her: My only Daughter it is come unto my knowledge, that in searching thy prosperity to my God Belus, I have been advertised, that of thee shall come a Son which shall convert and turn me into a stone. Thou knowest that every man naturally coveteth to live in his life. I love thee passing well, and nothing in the world so much excepting my life. But certainly my life toucheth me nearer to my heart, than thy love: wherefore I seeking and requiring the remedies against my predestinate misfortune, would never give thee in marriage to any man that hath required thee. Also, to the end, that generation descend not of thy body, and that thou shouldest have no knowledge of man during my life,



I have made to be framed this Tower of Copper, and will that thou be closed and shut therein, and that no man see thee. I pray thee my Daughter, accord thee unto my will and desire: and take patience in this place for to pass thy time. I will provide to accompany thee with many noble Virgins, that shall give unto thee all that thou canst or mayest think needful.

When the noble Damosel Danae understood the will of her Father, she beheld the Tower of Copper made to keep her shut fast therein. And further, when she considered that she should never marry during the life of her Father the King. She was sore troubled about these things, and by great bitterness she began to weep, and said: Alas my Father, am I bozn under so unhappy a constellation, to be a martyress and Prisoner not in the end of my years, but in my young time? Put in a Prison of stone but in a Tower of Copper, in such wise as I should dwell therein perpetually? Thou enterpretest evil the sentence of the God Belus, saying that of me shall be bozn a Son that shall turn thee into a stone: by this sentence ought none other thing to be understood, but that I shall have a Son that shall reign after thee, and shall turn thee into a stone. That is to say, into thy Sepulture. Behold then, what simpleness shall it be to thee to behold me thus enclosed, and shut in this Tower. My Daughter (answered Achrissus,) thou enterpretest the Prophecie of our God Belus, after what liketh thee to thy joy and profit. It troubleth me, that if thou have a Son, he shall put me to death, and that is my judgement and fear. Gain-say no more to me, I am thy Father, Lord, and Master over thee, thou shalt abide here, either by love or otherwise. At this conclusion, when Danae saw that she might not content her fearful Father, as wise and sage as she was, she agreed, to do his pleasure, yielding to it with the mouth, but not with the heart. And then the King sent for Virgins and also old Matrons in all the Realm about: and delibered his Daughter unto them, to accompany and keep her, and made them all to be shut in with her. After he took his leaue of them, commanding them upon pain of death, that they should not suffer any man to come and speak with his Daughter without his knowledge. When  
he



he had thus done, he returned into the City of Argos, and assembled forty strong women, which he gave wages to, and sent them to keep the Gate, at the entry of the Tower. And then spread the renown of these things, in so great a sound and noise, that all Creet was full of the tydings, and there was no King nor Prince, but complained for the loss of fair Danae, named the most fair of all the Greekish Maidens, Daughter to the King.

## CHAP. XIX.

How *Jupiter*, in guise of a Messenger brought unto the Tower of *Dardan*, to the Damosels, and to *Danae*, many Jewels, feigning that he came from *Jupiter*.

**B**y this Tower, and by this means *Achrisius* thought to overcome this predestinate mis-fortune, and was well pleased that his Daughter was in so sure and safe a place. All the world spake of her, and her Tower by compassion they complained of her estate, and it was so much spoken of this cause, that *Jupiter* had his ears full thereof: and not only his ears, but also his heart: for in hearing the recommendation of the excessive perfection of this Virgin *Danae*, he was enamoured of her greatly and desirously as soon as the marriage of him and *Juno* was consummated. And then he began with all his heart, to think how and when or in what manner he might come to see the Damosel *Danae*. And so much he thought and studied in this matter, that there was none other thing that he would hear of, nor no conferences of his men, save only of them that spake of the Prison of *Danae*. And he spake of it chearfully, and talked with all diligence, coveting instantly to be with her, and that as well in the presence of *Juno*, as otherwise, saying many times, that he would that the Gods would give him grace and power to bring this Damosel *Danae* out of the Tower.

By these speeches *Juno* began to feel the first sparkle of jealousy, casting infinite curses and maledictions upon *Danae*, and upon all them that had sown these tydings before her husband. This she shewed not only in secret and in her stomach, but more



openly in the presence of her Husband, shewing evidently, that she had the attaint of jealousy. Notwithstanding, Jupiter was nevertheless desirous to see Danae more than he was before. The maledictions nor curses might not let nor withdraw his affections which grew more and more. In the end he found himself so ravished with her love, that there was no more continence found in him. To conclude, he purposed to go unto the guardians of the Damasel Danae, and that he would bear unto them so many Bracelets of Gold and Jewels, with money of Gold, that he would turn them with his gifts, to accord with him, and let him enter into the Tower of Danae. Then he sent for the Jewellers, that were wont to serve his Father Saturn, and made them make the most rich Jewels and Bronches, that were ever seen or thought. When the workmen had made a part, Jupiter took them, and being cloathed like as he had been a servant, he alone departed from Creet, and drew him to Argos. seeking the Tower of Dardan, which he found in an evening, and saw the walls shining, and came unto the Gate, where he found many of the Matrons sitting at the doore for recreation.

When Jupiter came, he saluted the Matrons, and said unto them: Noble Dames, the good night come to you. What Tower is this, of so noble and so strange a fashion? Fair Son said the eldest, ye be not of this Country, forasmuch as ye know not the name of this Tower. Know ye certainly that it is named the Tower of Dardan, and this is the proper place that the King Achrisius hath caused to make to keep his Daughter the Virgin Danae in, which is a Damasel so furnished with all virtues and honourable manners, that her like is not in all this world: but the poor Maid is so much infortunate, that her Father Achrisius holdeth her in this Tower shut, for that he hath an answer of his Gods, that of his Daughter Danae should be born a Child that should turn him into a stone. This is the cause wherefore we keep her that no man may converse with her: and her Father is the King Achrisius, which is so sore smitten to the heart with jealousy, that if he knew of your being here, he would send to destroy you. And therefore withdraw you, and go forth on your way. Jupiter hearing the answer of the Matrons,



man, gave no regard unto her words, saying that he heard with his ears: for he employed his eyes unto the marking of the Tower: and seeing that it was impregnable for any assault, as for that it was nigh the City of Argos, which was right strong: he considered in himself, that for to come and see this Maid he could not obtain but by the means of these women. Then thus he answered the old Woman: I thank you of your good advertisement: I am much beholden unto you, but I shall yet say more unto you, if it please you, I am sent unto the Damosels of this place from the mighty King Jupiter of Creet, &c. to deliver to them certain presents on his behalf. Wherefore I pray you that it please you to give me your assistance to speak with them. When the old Matron understood of Jupiter, that he had brought presents unto the Damosels: she made him to enter into a little Chamber (which was by the Gate, for to speak therein to their friends when they came to visit them.) And then she went into the Chamber of Danae, and there assembled all the women of the place, and said unto them: my fellows, the King Jupiter of Creet, greeteth you well by one of his servants, whom I have put into the Chamber of the Gate: he said to me, that he hath brought certain presents. See ye now whether ye will receive them or not: and what I shall answer to the Messenger.

The Damosels were joyful when they heard these tidings, and took their Counsel together, and concluded, that they should receive these presents of King Jupiter. Then they descended unto the Chamber and feasted the Messenger, which did them reverence, and said to them: Ladies and Damosels, your renown is so great, that it hath moved the King Jupiter to desire your love. In sign of which, he hath sent to you all these Jewels, and prayeth you to receive them in good part, and he recommendeth him unto the right noble grace of your Mistress the Kings Daughter. With these words, Jupiter opened his sack of leather wherein were his Jewels, and delivered them unto the Damosels. When they had received them and saw what they were, they were all abashed for to see things so precious, and said, that they would go and shew them to their Mistress. And



forth they went up into the Tower. and shewed their presents unto Danae : signifying to her, that the King Jupiter had recommended him unto her noble grace. So soon as this famous Virgin had seen these Jewels, she said, that it must needs be, that Jupiter was rich, and liberal : and said moreover, that the gift that he had given was more of value than all the Realm of Argos: and also, that she would that the man that had brought these Jewels, were feasted as it appertaineth, and also willed that King Jupiter should be thanked in her name. Then the Damosels by the commandment of Danae, went to feast the Messenger of King Jupiter, in the best wise they might ; spending the most part of the night in eating and drinking. And then came the aged woman that had first spoken with him, and said to him: My Son, the Maiden Danae thanketh the King Jupiter of the courtesie that it hath pleased him to do her Damosels : and she thinketh herself greatly beholden to him, and to you that have taken the pains to bring them : and if there may please you any thing herein, spare not this house.

Dame (answered Jupiter) ye do me too much honour by the one half : If there be any thing in Creet for your pleasure, ask you it, and certainly you shall have it. And thus they talked so long that it was time to with-draw him thence. Jupiter took leave of the Damosels, and concluded that he would return into his Country, on the morrow early. So Jupiter took this night as much rest as he could, but had his heart so surprized, that he awoke more than he needed : for the hour was not come that he attended to speak to Danae. He returned secretly into Creet, and caused to be made new Jewels, much more rich and more precious than the others were, for to go again, and present to the Damosels. And as soon as it was possible, he loaded an horse with these Jewels, and without meeting of any person, with the same he came to the Tower, and there assembled the Damosels, saying to them, Ladies and Damosels. the King Jupiter hath you so in grace, that knowing by the report of me, what feasting and welcome ye made lately for his Jewels : he hath sent unto you other, and in his name, I present unto you these Jewels that I have now brought : praying that the pre-  
sent



sent may be acceptable and well thought of: and that it please you to do so much unto your Mistresse that I might a litle speak with her, for to advise her, if it please her, of certain secret things that touch her nigh, and wherewith I am charged by Jupiter.

## CHAP. XX.

How *Jupiter* in the guise of a Messenger, with many jewels came the second time to see *Danae*: and how he spake, and gave her knowledge what he was: and how he lay with her that night.

When *Jupiter* had achieved his purpose, he shewed forth his merchandise, and when the *Patrons* understood, that he desired to speak with *Danae*, they went unto the *Maid*, by the counsel of the old woman, for to have her opinion: and coming to her, the old woman spake for them all, and said: my Daughter, King *Jupiter* hath sent hither the burthen of an horse, of the most fairest Jewels that ever you saw. Truly it is a gallant sight to see them: notwithstanding we durst not receive them forasmuch as the Messenger requireth to speak with you, which is forbidden us by your Father. Consider, what we shall do: we be greatly beholden unto King *Jupiter* for his courtesies, but when we think on the strict commandement of your Father, we know not what to do. When the *Maid Danae* had heard these words, she was very pensive: but for all that, she thus answered: My mother, ye know well, and it needeth not to tell you, that he that doth shew love and courtesie, ought to be thanked by kindness. The King *Jupiter* (as ye have said) hath oftentimes done for us. And seeing the first good cometh from him, mee thinketh, under all corrections, that wee may well suffer him to speak with mee. It is a small matter for his servant to speak a word with me. The King my Father shall never know it: it is no need that he know all that shall ensue: but first shew to him how it is charged you upon death, that no man speak with me. And make him promise and swear that he shall keep this matter secret.

The



The Damofels and the old Woman, joyful of the answer, went down from the Tower to the Gate, and finding Jupiter busie to open abroad, and unbind his Jewels, the old Woman said unto him: Fair son, King Jupiter hath found more grace amongst the Maids of Danae, than all the men in the world. Nevertheless, you must know, that upon pain of death it is to you forbidden, and to others by us: And we be also charged upon the same pain by King Achrius, that we shall let no man living speak with her. The Commandment of the King is so great and your request is not little. We dare not bring you unto her all things considered: For if it were known, without fail we should be all put into the fire. And peradventure, if ye were found here within, by the King, that cometh oftentimes hither, he would put you to death. Wherefore we pray you excuse us against your Master,

At hearing of this answer, Jupiter found not that he sought for, and then he held him more near in despair, than he did in hope: But he remembred, that a Beggar should not go away for once warning, and said unto the old woman, Dame, ye do well if ye fear the King, which is to me no marvel; yet his commandment is not so strait, but that ye may enlarge it if you please: He hath commanded that none shall speak with her, King Jupiter requireth that his servant may say to her certain things in secret, touching her honour, and in truth if ye grant him his request, the accord shall not be prejudicial to you in any thing. For King Jupiter is no prattler, and knoweth so much of the world, that unto you he had not sent me, if he had not found me secret. And thus if ye will do to him any pleasure, ye have none excusation reasonable, for none knoweth thereof but I. If I speak unto the Maid by your consent, who then shall accuse us? it shall not be ye, for that the matter toucheth you. And surely it shall not be I, nor King Jupiter, for certainly, we had rather dye than disclose it.

Fair Son, answered the old Woman, ye speak so sweetly that we may not refuse your request. We dare well affie and trust you. Alas Dame (answered Jupiter) doubt you? When



I shall fault against you or any other, I wish to be smitten with the Thunder, and Tempest, I would verily that you had the prerogative to know my inward thoughts, to the end, that in judging of my mind, ye might be assured of me, not to have by my cause any inconvenience: with these words, Jupiter drew to his will the old woman, and all the Damosels, as well by his subtil language, as his riches. For to use short process, the old woman accorded to Jupiter, that he should have the grace to speak with the Maid, and brought him before her with all his presents: Jupiter had then more joy than I can write.

And when he was thus aboue in the Tower of Dardan, in beholding the beauty of Danae, his joy doubled, and he knew her well by her beauty, and made unto her reberence, saying: Right noble and accomplished Damosel, King Jupiter saluterh you by me, and sendeth unto the women of this house, of such goods as Fortune hath given to him: if it be your pleasure they shall receive them: and after I will say unto you certain things in secret which King Jupiter your servant hath charged me to say unto you. My friend answered Danae, saving your honour, the King Jupiter is not my servant, but I my self am his, and thank him for his bounty, it seemeth, as he had rained gold in this place. It is acceptable to me, that the women of this Tower have your presents. And it pleaseth me well also to hear your charge, to the end that King Jupiter should not say that I were unkind.

The Matrons and the Damosels were present at this answer, Jupiter delivered unto them the Jewels, which they received with great gladness. After that, Danae took the Messenger by the hand, and led him apart unto the beds side, where she made him to lean by her. And when Jupiter found him all alone with Danae, he said unto her: noble Damosel I no more call you Damosel but Lady: for you are my Lady and only Mistress, which hath Mastered my heart, and also hath overcome me under the sound of your glorious reports. For to advertise you, verily I am Jupiter, of whom now I have spoken to you at the presentation of the Jewels, and it is truth, that it is not long since, when I was in my Realm, for to hear re-

I

ported



ported the manner how your Father held you shut up within this Tower, (with little good that may accord unto your honour) as well for to get your grace, as for pity therewith, I have deliberated with my heart to employ my self unto your deliberance and also for to get your gracious favour. And for to execute this deliberation, I have taken part of my treasures, and have come hither to present them unto your Damosels, and so departed: and of new am come again in hope to have your love, giving thanks to mercy and fortune. Alas Madam if I be so hardy as for to have put my self in adventure of my life, to them the great love that I have to you. Excuse me, if I have enterprized a thing so high, that I need hold worthy to obtain, but in the affiance of Fortune, and inso much as she will favour in this party. Madam then in consideration of my words, ye may see my life, or my death, and ye only may lightly make the judgement. If your humility condescend in the knowledge of pity, that I have had of you, exposing my self into the danger, where I might be sure, I am now nigh unto the jeopardy which you may save, and if not, I must yield me to be your prisoner. Notwithstanding, the shining splendour of your renowned Beauty, whereof the meed passeth the renown, and the triumph of your incomparable Excellency hath enraged mine heart, and brought me hither into the prison of your will. Alas Madam, behold and see with your eyes full of sweetness, and of clemency, me which see not at this time, but languish for want of rest, in continual sorrow, in furies redoubled, and sighs upon sighs, which may not be purged of remedy, but by your benignity and amorous good will.

At the beginning of the first recommendation that was made of you in my presence, I enterprized to deliver you out of this Tower, and beheld my self happy, because of so high an enterprize: but seeing the perils that I find my self in since, I know never what I may say of my self. For by moneth upon moneth, week upon week, and day upon day, your name hath had domination on me. And oftentimes hath constrained mee to be ravished, and yet more in a trance by desire to speak to you, and to imagine how I should come to the point whereat I now am, and



and not only in this, but also to find mercy in you. And I pray you right humbly, that out of the amorous gift of mercy ye will to me accord, and in this doing, ye shall do mercy to your self, and have pity of your young days, which you have consented to lose, by the foolish fantasies of the King your Father. We know well (that during his life) he will not suffer you to be married to any man. It is not impossible that your Father may live as long as you, for he is strong & boysterous. Also ye ought to conceive if ye will believe me, that your life hath no wealth nor pleasure. Only the pleasures come unto the people by the sight, and by beholding of diuers things. The women singularly have their principal pleasures in their Husbands, and in their Generation and linages. We may come hitherto, but then you must have mercy on your self. Is it not in your conceit and knowledge that no man hath but his life in this world. Forasmuch as ye obey the foolish commandment of your Father the King Achrisius, ye shall be a woman lost: being in this place, it is not possible to have patience. This is too hard a thing unto a young heart, to be put in prison without demerit. I know the humane affections, and understand that naturally every creature loveth his profit before the profit of another. This is against your prosperity and utility, from which ye be shut here within. How may you have love unto him which is cause of two evils. The less evil is to be chosen, since that you feel your self condemned here unto the end of the days of your Father, doubt you not, but his end is oft desired for your sake: and his death may not be effected without great charge of conscience. We thinketh that better it were for you to find way to issue out of this place, and to take to husband some noble and puissant man, that would enterprize to carry you away secretly for his wife into his Countrey. By this means you shall be delivered from the pain that you be in: you may eschew the death of your Father, and less evil you shall do in breaking his foolish commandment, than to abide in the point where he hath put you. (I have said unto you) I am your servant, and if it please you to depart from this place, you shall find no man readier than I am, for to save you: I give my self unto your noble commandments, to nourish your will



to my power, as he that beareth alway the remembrance of you in the most deepest place of my mind: in sleeping I see you, and waking I think on you. I have had no rest in my self, nor neuer shall have, but if it please you. My fortune, my destiny, comes of you. If you take me unto your mercy, and that I find grace with you, I shall be the most happiest of all happy. And if ye do otherwise, it may be said, that among all unhappy, none shall go before me. But if such fortune shall come to mee by your rigour, I will take it in patience, for the noblenesse that I see in you alway, I require you, that my heart be not depriued, nor put from your heart, forasmuch as it toucheth me nearly. All the tongues of men cannot expresse the quantity of the love that I have for you, no more than they can pronounce by proper name all the Stars of Heaven. By this love I am alway in thoughts, labours, in sighs, languishes, and oftentimes in great fear. At this hour, I know not whether I live or not, because mee thinketh I am here to receive absolution, or a mortal sentence. These things considered, alas will not ye have him in your grace, that for to deserve your love and mercy, hath abandoned and adventured his life as ye may see, leaving his Royal estate, the better to keep his cause secret. Unto an heart well understanding, few words suffice. For conclusion, I pray you to give your heart to him, that hath given his heart unto you: and that ye consider from henceforth for the ill conceit ye now be in after the common judgment.

With this Iupiter held his peace, and lent his ears for to hear what should be the answer of Danae. The right noble Damosel, when she saw that he had given her space to speak, she was resolved and changed colour and said unto him. Sir King, alas know ye well, what would be the renown that would abide with mee, if I should believe your counsel? What would the people say? Madam, answered Iupiter, the worst that they may say, shall be, that men will name you disobedient unto the foolish commandment of your father, which as all men knoweth, holdest you fondly in this prison. And if ye will thus help your self and convey your self away, men would but laugh, for your youth would excuse your doing, and ye should be reported to have



have done this deed by great wisdom. Ah, Sir, said Danae, ye go about to deceive me by your fair words: I know the speeches of the Argiens, and also know that I am bound to obey my Father: Furthermoze, I am not so ignorant, but that I would well have some noble man to my husband, so as mine honour were saved: and also, I confesse that I am greatly beholden to him that hath sent so liberally and so largely of his treasures and Jewels, and in likewise unto you, if it be truth, that ye be him that ye say that ye are. But when I have considered, and understood and seen visibly, that the Argiens would defame me to perpetuity, and that my Father would send me where mine honour should strongly be abased and put underfoot, by your proper declaration, I will in no wise deal hardly with you, neither shall you have any disturbance for my cause. But I pray you to think on the other side, of mine honour, and that ye suffer me alone with my company and friends.

Dame (answered Jupiter) be ye in doubt of me that I am not Jupiter King of Creet? If I be any other, all the Gods confound me, and the Thunder fall on me, the swallow of the Sea receive me, and that I be given to be meat unto the most benemous beasts of the world. O Madam, put no suspicion in my doing: as I have said to you, I am come to you not in Royal estate, but in simple array for to order my matters more secretly: then accord ye this request. Take ye day of advice, and grant to morrow I may speak once to you, and counsel you well this night.

The noble Maid Danae had then her blood so moved, that she durst not behold Jupiter: for shame smote her in the eyes. This notwithstanding, her heart commanded her to try what man he was, and whether he had the state of a Noble man or a King. At last she took day of advice, and accorded to him that she would speak again to him on the morrow. After this, she commanded the Tables to be covered by the Damosels, and said, that she would feast the Messenger of the King Jupiter. The Damosels hearing that, answered they were all much bound to feast him, and shewed to her the riches that they had all along in the Chamber, whereof the walls shone and were bright: The Da-



mosels arrayed with the Jewels of Jupiter, garnished the Tables with meat. Danae and Jupiter were set the one against the other: the service was great and rich, and they had enough to eat, yet Jupiter nor Danae gave little force of eating, Jupiter eat less bodily than spiritually, he was in trances, in doubts and fears: He had an answer by which he could not gather any thing to his profit, save only that he hoped that Danae would discover it unto the Damosels, as the young Maidens be of custom to discover the one to the other, and as when any requirerth them of love, that they should shew favour to him, the more for his gifts. In this estate was King Jupiter for his part. The Damosels beheld him enough, and said, that he had not the behaviour of a yeoman or servant, but of a man of very noble and great estate, and above all other, Danae, to whom Jupiter had given cause to be pensive, cast her eyes upon Jupiter, upon his countenance, his gesture and beauty, and then it seemed that he had said truth, as well then as the night before: she began to feel the sparkles of Love, and seeing his riches that he had given in the house, she determined to give him her heart and love. On this resolution, to which her heart concluded, she was firmly settled, yet her mind was interlaced with abundant thoughts. Many Noble-men had required her love before time, that she was shut in the Tower, and could never turn her heart, nor cause her once to sigh or think on their requests. The only words of Jupiter were so effectual and happy, that they constrained her to hear them, and to become pensive, breaking all doubts and contrary opinions.

## CHAP. XXI.

How Jupiter came from his Chamber by night, and lay in the Tower of Dardan, with the Damosel Danae, on whom he begat the noble Persens.

SO long dured the Feasting of Jupiter that it was time to withdraw from thence. Then Danae took leave of Jupiter and did convey him into a secret Chamber by her Damosels. When Jupiter was departed, she entred into her Chamber, accompanied



accompanied only with the old woman that was her Mistresse,  
 and as soon as the old woman had her privacy in her Chamber:  
 as she that was suspicious, said to her, my Daughter, tell me  
 of your tydings, I must needs know what thing this Messenger  
 hath said to you. Dame answered Danae, will ye know, yea,  
 said the old woman: then answered Danae, he must come him-  
 self, and make the report, for he hath said to me so many things  
 that the tenth part is not in my mind. My Daughter (said the  
 Old Woman) I think well he is not come hither without cause.  
 What hath he said? If ye have not all in mind, tell me at  
 least that abideth and resteth in your mind. Dame (answered  
 Danae) ye know well that I never mistrusted you, and that the  
 secret of mine heart hath alway been open: I will now  
 make no new customes: for to shorten this matter, he that na-  
 meth himself servant of Iupiter, is Iupiter himself (by report  
 who hath made great Oaths that he hath made these presents)  
 and gifts for to speak to me. Indeed, he hath shewed to me how I  
 lose here my time, and hath required me to be his wife, to  
 which I have not yet consented, but have taken time for to give  
 him an answer, hoping to take your counsel, and therefore I  
 pray you, that you counsel me in that I have to do, and what an-  
 swer he shall have of me. We know how I have suffered his  
 gifts to be received: he must therefore be satisfied either by faire  
 speeches, or otherwise.

The Old Woman had been beforetime in the house of King  
 Melisseus, and there had seen Iupiter in the time of his return  
 from his conquest of Arcadie, and had partly known him since  
 the first day that he came thither. Notwithstanding she doubted  
 of his person, forasmuch as men divers times belike one to ano-  
 ther: and she had alway her eye upon him. When then she had un-  
 derstood by Danae, she was sure that it was he in person, and  
 had great joy, saying: My Daughter, certainly I know him  
 that we speak of, and have talked with him a long time past.  
 And for his person, I assure you, that it is he that hath given  
 you to understand this. But for to perswade, or counsel you, if  
 ye take him unto your Husband, I can say none otherwise to  
 you but that he is one of the most valiantest men of the world,

and



and his enterprizes be great. And if I had a Daughter, the most best mannered of the world, there is no man living, that I would give her sooner unto than to him. Ye see that notwithstanding his simple attire, he is a goodly man, he is noble, rich, and wise, he is a King. If you will use and observe the commandment of your Father, you may not with him hold conference or Parliament. If you will absent you from this place by good means, there is no man but Jupiter that may help you. I counsel you neither to the one nor the other, but chuse you, and take you the best way you think fitting.

Ah my Mother (said Danae) how should I chuse my self? there is in me neither wit, nor reason, to take that I should chuse nor to discern the good from the evil. And as for me, I shall put it all into your deliberation, and will that ye know, that out of this Tower would I faine be, (mine honour saved, and the honour saved of my company.) With this, came in to them, all the Damosels of the house, and said to her, that they had made right good chear to their Guest: and thus failed the secret conference of Danae and the aged woman. The Damosels went and fetcht their Jewels newly presented to them, and parted to each of them her portion, saying: that to King Jupiter was none like, but that he was among all other the most bountiful, and most honourable King of Kings. The Maid Danae took great pleasure with all these things: when the Damosels had parted among them their Jewels of gold with great joy, they brought Danae to bed: and departed from her Chamber, which they left open by forgetting, as they that had set all their mind and thought on their riches, and so went to their beds. Jupiter lying in his bed at this hour, found himself so surprized with covetousness of love, that he was constrained to arise, and to look out at a window, to behold if the day approached, lifting his eyes again to the Stars of Heaven, and was ravished in his heart, by the remembrance of fair Danae, said: O noble Danae, that hath more beauty than the Stars shining: alas, where be ye this hour, the pain that I endure for your cause, you know not, nor the great jeopardy, and the perillous case that I have put me in, to attain your love. Unkindness may he have place in



in you, with disdain and fierceness, which be mine enemies, envenomed with mortal venom. O Danae, remember your self of me. And thou Fortune that hast succoured me in all my affairs, help me in this present need.

With this word his complaint ceased: This thought was great and touching a right adventurous enterprise. When all was done, he determined in himself to assay if he could come to the end of his thought, and cloathed himself, and went out of his Chamber unto the Tower, where he saw the dooz open to his seeming, and finding it true that it was open, he went up as softly as he could that he should not be heard, and came to the Chamber of Danae, whereof the dooz was open: in which chamber was a Lamp burning, Jupiter being full of gladness put his head into the Chamber to see if any Damosels were with Danae: and he saw that there was none, but that Danae was alone in her bed: he adventured himself to go unto her, where he found her sleeping, and awoke her by kissing.

Danae was so sore abashed, when she felt her self so kiss, that she crept within her bed. Jupiter drew nearer so that he discovered her face to speak to her, whereof she being afraid, opened her eyes, and when she knew that it was Jupiter by her bedside, she gave a very great shriek and cry. When Jupiter heard this cry, he was much troubled: nevertheless, he purposed to adventure, turning her toward him, and comforting her by his sweet speaking, he declared to her in the end, that it must needs be that she must be his wife. And so long he held her in such talk that he uncloathed himself, and in speaking to her, he sprang into the bed, and lay by her side, notwithstanding that she withstood it with all her might. Then said the Maid that she was betrayed. And weeping tenderly she thought to have fled, and did her best, to have gone away. But Jupiter took good heed, and at the leap that she supposed to make, caught her by the arm and made her to lye down again; and he clipt her, and kiss her again, and so appeased her in such fashion, that she left her weeping. And on the morrow when he arose up from her, he left her with Child of a young Son. Jupiter by this hardiness achieved his purpose, and had his will on fair Danae, and made

¶

the



the peace for his offence. The night passed over, and the day came, that Jupiter must needs arise and depart from her, and then by necessity constraining him to keep the honour of Danae, he arose, and took up his cloathing trussed together, and returned into his Chamber, where he went to bed, and slept so fast and sorely, that he did not awake till the hour and time to go to Dinner.

At the hour of Dinner, Danae asked where was the Messenger of King Jupiter? and said, that she would eat with him, and that they should bring him up into the Tower secretly.

With the word of Danae, two Damosels went down out of the Tower into the Chamber of Jupiter, and finding him asleep, awoke him, whereof he was amazed and ashamed. For the Sun was at that time mounted high. And then he arose, when he knew that Danae had sent for him to come speak with her. And so came to her, which began to wax red, and to lose her colour when she saw him: And the reverence made, they went to eat together and made great cheer: yet Danae was ashamed, and was strongly surprized for the cause that was happened to her: and she might not abstain to set her eyes on the beauty of Jupiter, which also failed not on his side to behold her by so ardent desire, that the eyes of the one and the other, pierced each other oftentimes. In this beholding they passed part of the time of the dinner. When they had taken their refection, Jupiter and Danae drew themselves apart, and held a long Parliament of their work. And it was concluded between them, that Jupiter should go into the Country, and that he should return thither with a certain number of people, to take away the fair Danae. And with this conclusion, Jupiter departed and returned into Crete, leaving Danae in the Tower, of whom I will cease for this present, and return to speak how Tantalus the King of Phrygie fought against the Trojans, and had battel against them, which was the first battel that ever was in Troy.



## CHAP. XXII.

How King *Tantalus* of *Phrigie* assailed the King *Troos* of *Troy*:  
and how *Ilion* and *Ganimesdes* his Sons discomfited him in  
battel.

**W**hen King *Troos* had named his City *Troy*, and was  
exalted in so high renown, that the Kings his neigh-  
bours, as to his regard. were but in little reverence, and less  
glozy: many thus losing their honours, by his great wor<sup>th</sup>ship, be-  
gan to murmur against him in deed, and also in thought, and  
among all other, King *Tantalus* of *Phrigie*, Son of the Arcadian  
Jupiter, King of *Attick*, took in great despight the excel-  
lency of *Troos*, and considered against him, and made a great  
assembly of men of Arms, and so departed out of his Realm,  
with intention to destroy King *Troos* and his City of *Troy*.  
This *Tantalus* had a son in his company named *Pelops*: and  
left a Son at home named *Thiestes*, forasmuch as he was young.  
And this *Thiestes* had a Son named *Philestines* the Father of  
*Menalaus* that reigned in the time of the third destruction of  
*Troy*. But to return to our purpose, this *Tantalus* behaved  
himself so, that he conducted and brought an Host upon the ter-  
ritory of *Troy*, and did destroy all things that was in their pu-  
issance, unto plain destruction. Wherewith the cry and cla-  
mours of them that fled was so great, that in short time King  
*Troos* was advertised of it, whereof he was not afraid: for he  
had the City well garnished with people. Also he made ready to  
resist his adversaries, and that by such diligence, that when he  
had heard the tydings in the morning, within four hours after  
he issued out of *Troy* with thirty thousand fighting men, and  
drew unto the place where the *Phrigians* were entred.

This noble King *Troos* had in his company two Sons, of  
whom the eldest was called *Ilion*, to whom came down from  
Heaven the *Paladium*. And the younger was called *Ganimes-  
des*. These two Sons valiantly came into the field, and re-  
quired their Father *Troos* to part his Army in two: and that he  
would grant to them his Command, to prove their might upon  
their enemies.



Troos considering that by separation of his people, they that were beaten or put back might be succoured when it should come to strokes, he granted the request of his two Sons, and gave unto them twelue thousand fighting men, Ilion and Ganimedes thanked King Troos their Father, and took leave of him, and went forth with their fighting men, in such wise, that they were a mile before the Battel of the King. And so King Troos followed the Battel of his Two Sons, Ilion and Ganimedes. And he had certain Riders between both, appointed for to report to King Troos, when his Sons had found Tantalus their enemy: and also the two noble Sons had before them divers Espies, and Watches that were sent out into diuers places, to see and discover the state, and order of their enemies, which found them about the evening: and after, they returned unto Ilion and Ganimedes, and bid them make chear, and that they had seen the enemies of Troy, in a certain place that they named, and that there they had seen them lodged: and that they might well be numbred by estimation about thirty thousand fighting men.

Of these tydings had the Trojans great joy, it was that time about mid-night, and they were lodged in the end of a Valley: Ilion and Ganimedes the same hour assembled all the People-men of their company, and told them what the Espies had reported, and demanded of them counsel. All were of opinion that they should suffer their host to rest yet a good hour, and after that they should break their fast a little and lightly, to the end to have the better and longer their breath, and also to be the more courageous, and to cause them to be the better awaked, and this done they should depart, to go and assay their enemies. This opinion seemed good unto the Sons of the King. And they signified their intention by the Riders unto their Father Troos. After this they withdrew them to take a little their rest, and gave charge to them that kept the watch, to awake them when they saw their time: and so they had but little rested, when they were awaked and called, and that each man should take his arms and follow on. The Trojans obeyed, and knew well it was time to make ready speedily. They were never so glad



glad as they were when they knew they should go to battel, they eat and drunk temperately all with one good will, they garnished them with their arms: and shewed the one to the other, how they would fight the battel, and confound their enemies, and menaced them of an evil conflict with them.

At this hour, the Moon shone bright: by which light, Ilion and Ganimedes put their people in good array. When they had took the short refection, they began to march toward them, and put themselves before all other: they came so nigh by Moon-light and by their guides, that they were heard of them that kept the watch of their enemies that they sought: the which fled into the Tents of King Tantalus, and awoke him, and told him that the Trojans were come to assail him: and that they had seen them in great number. But Tantalus believed not lightly his watch, and deferred his arising more than need was. He had not long bidden, but the Trojans came upon his Host, and laid load upon the Phrigians so unmeasurably, that the resounding of their strokes fell into the ears of Tantalus, which arose terribly afraid. With this fray were awaked all the Phrigians in general: some by mortal wounds, and some by their cries, and some hurt grievously. In coming on thus, the Trojans damaged greatly their enemies: and the more, because many of them were not furnished with their arms, which were smitten down by the Swords of the Trojans, and they were beaten down, maimed mortally, and wallowing in their blood. This notwithstanding, though that the coming on of the Trojans was sharp, and that Ilion and Ganimedes appozed themselves sharply in their work. Tantalus and his Son Pelops, gathered their people that withdrew them about their Tent, and there mustered them together, and when they found them in number sufficient to enter into battel, Tantalus cryed Phrigie, Phrigie: and after he did cause his people to march against the Trojans that beat down all before them in the place where they were arrived, and then began the noise to be great: For on all sides were cries made, and at the joyning, the skirmish was so horrible, that it seemed the world should end in the same place.

Ganimedes and Pelops encountred together, being full of



great courages, they fought together a great while: by the wounds that were seen upon their heads, they were like the one to slay the other, and the one had slain the other, had not Tantalus and Ilion been by. For Tantalus smote upon Ganimedes, and Ilion smote Pelops: and the Trojans and Phrigians medled the one with the other: and there began the slaughter and murthre, there was fighting as Champions, shewing each man his vertue and his prowess so strongly, forasmuch as they saw the Moon go down. And yet was not the day come, when they found in the Morning the place all covered with bloody heads of men dead: but the number of the Phrigians, that there were put to the worst, was the much greater number, ten against one, than of them of Troy. As long as the Moon gave her light, there was no fault on the one side, nor on the other, each man did his part: the Moon chancing into a dark cloud, and then the middle began to cease fighting, and the retreat was cryed. The Phrigians withdrew themselves at the cry of Tantalus, and the Trojans at the cry of Ilion and Ganimedes. And there was none but would have abidden the end of this skirmish and fight.

#### CHAP. XXIII.

How King Troos chased in battel King Tantalus, and how Saturn came by Sea, sailing to the Port of Troos, and how King Troos received him worshipfully.

**A**fter this aforesaid battel, when Tantalus was withdrawn, he began to cast his eyes upon his people, which were all on a Hill, to know how they were in number, and how they had bozn themselves, and how much people he had lost: and he went all about them with his Son Pelops, and to him seemed well that his power was made less than he had thought, whereof he had in his heart heavy displeasure, and visiting his Host in this fashion, the day began to arise, and in the dawning two things appeared & came to the knowledge of the people of Tantalus: one was the great loss of people, and the other was the battel with King Troos, that they saw him far discovered and approach. But when Tantalus considered his evident damage,

nad



and saw that his enemies, because of the succours that came to them, were stronger than he was, he found nothing in the resolution of his enterprise but despair and shameful end, and all discomfited, he called his Son and his principal friends, and demanded of them what was best to do. They counselled him that he should labour to save himself, and said to him if he abode and attended the Trojans, that would be cause of his destruction, and of all them that were left of his people.

When Tantalus understood this, and knew that he was desperate and nigh his shameful end and flight and abode that, that he might not extinguish and put down the name of Troy: he took himself by the beard that was long, and impatiently said, smiting himself with his fist: O cursed end, thou didst promise me of late to put Troy under my feet, and hast made me to rise presumptuously against her: How see I well the contrary, and that by me Troy shall flourish, and that is more, by my cause her name shall grow and shall be exalted, and that all Kings shall tremble before her, in my sight and beholding. O false traitorous Fortune, accursed be thou, that I ever believed on thee. These words finished, he said to his Son and to other of his Counsel, that they should cause his people to withdraw a little and little. At last he commanded that each man should save himself, and then they put them all to flight. Ilion and Ganimedes took heed and ran after, and chased them out of the territories of Troy, with great occision, and slaughter of the people of the Phrigians. And after that they had chased them, they said that they had done them shame enough, and left pursuing them and returned; and came and met King Troos their father, that followed them: who had great joy, when he saw that they had quit them so well upon his enemies, by the good conduct of his two Sons.

The joy that Troos made Ilion and Ganimedes after the battle, was great and of good love. Troos brought them again unto Troy with great worship. The Trojans, men and women received them worshipfully, and blessed the womb that had born them and the breasts that gave them suck. These were two noble Sons of the King, of whom the names were born into all the



the Marches thereabouts, with so great a bruit and noise, that not only the neighbours of Troos came to make alliance with King Troos and the Trojans: but there came also Kings of many far countries of the East, which could not magnifie enough the puissance of the King, and of the City of Troy.

In these days when Troy shewed the rayes of her puissance and nobleness through the universal world. Saturn late King of Creet, sailed by the Seas with little company, not as a King and Possessor of the Realm, but as banished and dispurbeied of all Land and Country, so pooe that he had no place to withdraue him to, nor knew not whither to go, but only by desarts and by the depth of the Sea. When he had been in this point a great while; thinking without end how he might persecute his Son Jupiter, fortune brought him into the Sea of Hellespont, and then beholding about him he espied Troy, which was a City passing fair and rich and of marvellous greatness. And then he thought to take a little rest, and to put away his melancholly and to revictual his ship, and people, he sailed into the City and landed at the port. When the Trojans had seen the Ship of Saturn, that was better and more of value than all the Ships, that they had ever seen, the Masters of the Ships of Troy, went, hastily unto the King Troos, and said: Sir, be of good cheer, and make ready thy house, I assure you, that there is come right now unto your Port, the most rich Ship that ever was seen on the Sea, and it seemeth this considered, that in so noble a ship, must be some Noble or great earthly Lord that cometh unto you.

Anon as King Troos heard these tydings of the Master Mariner, he desired to see so fair a ship, and accompanied with his two Sons went to see it at the Port. This King Troos was courteous and honourable. When he came unto the Port, he found that Saturn made ready his Ship, and disposed him to go unto the City. And seeing the Ship, he marvelled much: for the utensils that were within were richly made: furthermore, Saturn and his companions were armed and had no Parriners. He beheld their behaviour at his coming, and knew that they were men of war: so he thought in himself, at the beginning to  
arm



arm himself, and to send for the Trojans : But afterward, when he had seen their little number, and that no ship followed nor came after these strangers from the coast, he changed his purpose, viewed and approached unto the Ship, and called Saturn that was better arrayed than any of the other, and asked him what he sought, both he and his fellows, and of what Nation they were, and from whence they came. And Saturn said, Sir, albeit I know not at what Port I am arrived : forasmuch as my heart giveth me that ye are courteous of your nature, I will not hide nor cover any thing touching your request : I was late King of Crete named Saturn : now I am but Saturn, for my Son hath put me out sorrowfully, so that of all the riches of my people, and all my goods temporal, there is nothing left me but this only Ship that ye now see, wherefore I pray and require you, that it please you to direct me to some Lord of this Country, to the end that I may require license and leave to enter into his Lordship, and to take that that shall be necessary for the relieving of me and my company.

When King Troos heard the case of Saturn conspired, in brief words, he said to him in compassion, King Saturn you are welcome into the house of Troos : I have great grief in my self for your first annoyance, for your glorious renown, and for the goodness that is in you, as oftentimes I have heard it recounted. But with this enjoyment, two things glad and joy my heart, the one proceeding of the accomplishment of desire, for I have desired many days only to see you, and this desire is now accomplished in me : and the other proceedeth of hope, and in this part I say to you, that I King of this Country have an intention to comfort and to counsel you, to my power, and also to give you so good aid, that ye shall correct your Son, and shall punish his person, as it shall appertain for his offence.

Saturn began to sigh, and to take a little comfort of the great proffer and good cheer that the King Troos made to him, and thanked him for so high and noble offers, and at the coming out of his Ship, he beclipt himself in his arms, and kist his hand. The King Troos brought him into his Palace with all his men, and feasted them as it appertained, for the love of Saturn.



Like wise the people being advertised of Saturn, that it was he that found the manner of labouring of the earth, of melting of mettals, and of sailing and rowing by Sea, they made so great and plentiful feasts at his coming, that they could do no more, at that time during this feasting, when Saturn felt him in the gracious favour of the Trojans, on a day he called Troos and his two Sons and addrested his words to them, saying: Lords of Troy, ye have done so much for me, that I can never deserbe it: but as I have said to you, my Son is exalted and lift aboue me, and hath taken from me my Regal Dignity, I intreat you, as much as I may, that ye will counsel me what thing is most convenient for me to do. And how I shall suffer and bear the injury done to me.

My Brother (answered King Troos) this is against nature, for a Son himself to rebel against his Father: the sin and crime is foul and worthy of reprehension, for every Son is bounden by the Lawes to serbe, worship, dread and obey his Father. And it is not reason that any man should approve or hold with a Son disobedient. Your Son is in this condition, cursed and very evil: and I am of opinion, that ye shall not deserbe well, unless ye do to your power, to master and overcome his evil manners. And to the end ye shall not excuse your evident harms and losses, when ye will, I will deliver you my Son Ganimedes accompanied with twenty thousand Trojans that shall succour you, and shall set you again in your Royal Tribunal. Saturn was well recomforted, when he knew the love that King Troos shewed to him: and after many thanks, concluded, that he would return into Crete with Ganimedes, and would begin again the pitious war of him and of his Son. And following this conclusion (from thenceforth on) he did cause to appoint the Shipping of Troy, and all things appertaining, and gathered together men of arms with great puissance, by the introduction of Ganimedes. And when all the assembly had mustred, he took leave of King Troos and of Ilion, and went to Sea, and Shipped all his Paby, and knowing the scituation of the Countreys by the Seas, he directed his Vessell into the Sea Egee, whereas was Egeus Son of Titan the great Pirate, which durst not have



have to do with them in no wise: and from this Sea of Egeë, he travelled, and arrived at the first port and Haven of Creet.

## CHAP. XXIV.

How Saturn, by the aid of *Ganimedes*, and of the *Trojans*, returned into *Creet*, to fight against *Jupiter*, where he was overcome and vanquished, and *Ganimedes* taken.

**A**T that hour, when Saturn arrived in Creet, the Sun was turned into the West, and on the Heaven began to appear the Stars. Saturn knew the Port: and took Land, hoping to enter the Country secretly, and went a little way, and lodged his people in a place convenient, and made them rest and eat and drink by the space of four hours, and then he awoke the Host, and made the Trojans arm them, and enter into the Realm. But they were not far gone, but approaching a strait passage, the Espies and discoverers, came unto Saturn and Ganimedes hastily and told them, that they had seen King Jupiter strongly accompanied, which kept the passage. Upon this place it was, that when Jupiter was departed from Danaë, and from the Tower of Dardan, and was come into Creet, desiring to accomplish his promise to Danaë, he did cause to assemble his men of war concluding in himself, that faithfully he would go fetch the fair Danaë, and bring her into his Country by force of arms. His army was all ready, and came the same night, where on the morrow he hoped to have departed, but as he was in his bed that night in his City of Parthenie, tidings came to him, of the arriving of the Trojans. Wherefore he was constrained by force to change his purpose: of which he was marvellous passing heavy. Notwithstanding, suddenly as these tidings were freshly brought unto him, he arose and took his men of arms that he had assembled, and hastily brought them unto the strait whereof above is written, and there abode his enemies. And it is not to be forgotten, that in this Army among his men was the King of Molosse, which had late found the industry and craft to tame and break Horses for to be ridden, and to ride them. And there was come he and his men, to serve King Jupiter for his good



Aeneas, accompanied with an hundred men that ran as the wind. And for this cause they were called Centaures: and these Centaures were so terrible, and cruel, that they doubted not the puissance of any King, nor of none other whatsoever they were.

When Saturn knew that the passage was kept, and that Jupiter was then advertised of his coming, he caused his Host to stay, and said unto them: My Children, it behobeth that this morning ye so do in Crete your endeavour, not only in mustering and shewing your courages: but above all that ye be redoubted and dreaded like the Thunder. Assure your selves of your quarrel, Jupiter mine enemy is here, where he abideth our coming of the battel ordained: if we will come to the end of our Enterprize, it is necessary that we draw thither. Let me hear what ye will say.

Then answered Ganimedes: we be come into Crete, for to correct your Son, and to set you up again on your Throne. We will do the best we can by our power, and fight freely without doubting or fear. And to the end that no reproach may be laid on us, I will send and summon your Son before any Sword is drawn, to the end that he yield himself to your obedience: and that he come and amend his misdeeds. Then Ganimedes called forth his Trojans by the consent of Saturn, and set them in order of battel: and when he had so done, he sent one of his Knights a Noble man unto Jupiter, and gave him charge to make the summons, such as is before said. The Trojan departed from the Host at the commandment of Ganimedes and came before Jupiter, and said unto him: Jupiter, thou oughtest to know that every Son oweth duty to his Father, thou doest contrary to these things, and shewest that thou art not Son to a King, but of perdition, for thou despisest thy father: instead of reverence, thou hatest him, and makest him war where thou shouldest honour him: and thou puttest him to great dishonour thy self, where thou art bound only to honour him.

O Jupiter, who shall give thee absolution of thy life, living in envy? Who shall excuse thy sin? Thou art thy Fathers enemy. The case is so grievous, that there is no mercy nor curation, unless it proceed from the natural clemency of thy Father:



ther. Behold Jupiter, behold a period of thy pride. All law positive, and all law written, condemns thee. It is great pite, thou art a goodly young man: Know that thy Reigne may not long endure, and that thou shalt more sharply be punished, than thou knowest peradventure at this time. For Ganimedes one of the Sons of Troy is here by, in the aid of Saturn thy Father with twenty thousand fighting men, which summoneth thee by me; that thou return to the mercy of thy Father, and yield him his Regal Dignity, all excuses set apart.

Messenger (answered Jupiter) if I were such a one as you say, with just reason you and others might give sentence and condemnation upon me: I were then guilty for both parties: And I think if Ganimedes, (of whom ye have spoken) had understood and heard my excuse, he would not be mine enemy. I answer you that I love my Father Saturn, in as much as he is my Father. But I say to you on the other part, that he hath oftentimes sought to put me to death, he shewing himself my mortal enemy, and not my Father. (For every Father naturally loveth his Son) and for that regard I will keep me from him, as from mine enemy: And therefore let the Trojans understand, that if they come and assail me, I will defend me with all my puissance.

With this answer, the Trojan returned to Saturn and Ganimedes, and told them the answer of Jupiter. Saturn and Ganimedes then swore the death of Jupiter, and approached so nigh the strait, that they came within a Bow-shot of each other, and from as far as they saw each one nigh the other, they made great cries and shouts. Jupiter had set his puissance in two Rings, whereof he was chief in the foremost, and Ixion, and his Centaures were governours of the second. When Jupiter saw there was no way but to skirmish, he said he would begin the battel: and after that he had encouraged his people, he pricked his Horse forth and then happened a most marvellous accident. For from the high Clouds above, came down an Eagle upon his head, and after began to fly about him, making him greatly rejoyce, and departed not nor left him during the battel.



By the flying of this Eagle, Jupiter and his people received a hope of good success. And Saturn and the Trojans fell in a fear and doubt, which they could not drive out of their conceits. When Jupiter saw the Eagle, he rejoiced greatly in his heart, and as a man well assured of victory, he entered among the Archers of the Trojans, that shot thick at him, and flying like a tempest passed by their Arrows, and carried not for resistance of shot, till he came amongst the men of Arms of the Trojans.

The Trojans had never seen man on horse-back before, and when they saw Jupiter, they thought it had been half a man and half a horse: and there were some that fled at his coming, and some abode and fought valiantly against him: thus began the battel of that day. They of Crete followed Jupiter with a great noise of Labors, and Clarions, and began to skirmish with the Trojans, they did their best on both sides. Jupiter bare to the ground many Trojans, and well employed his horse on which he rode. Ganimedes and Saturn, on the other side failed not. Alwayes Jupiter proved himself in arms the most expert above all other. And adventured his body and life in fight with his enemies, and there was no man that durst abide his strokes, but was slain or put to flight, by the valour and prowess of this worthy Champion.

Cruel and fierce was this Battel, the Trojans were without fear, and did great promises, and manly, by the leading of Saturn and Ganimedes. Saturn met Jupiter oftentimes, as he that sought his life: but Jupiter that knew him well, would never abide him, saying that he would never lay hand on his person, but eschewed and fled his death. Yet notwithstanding, he sought the death of his helpers, and made no sparing of their Harnesse, nor armour of Leather, of their heads, nor of their lives, of young, nor of old, of valiant nor of hardy, it was to him all one: he yielded neither to one side, nor to other, for stroke of Sword, of Mace, nor of Gulsarme. Yet he had oft remembrance of the fair Danae, and desired to be quit of his enemies, for to go about her deliverance, like as he had promised unto her, he smote off heads and arms. Unto him was nothing impossible. At every stroke he dyed his Sword with



with new blood, and the Eagle did fly always about him, sometimes low, other whiles high. Wherefore the Trojans were greatly perplexed in their minds.

Ganunedes the noble Trojan was of little stature, yet notwithstanding he was of greater courage than any other, vigorously he fought against them of Crete, as he that minded nothing but to win honour and renown. What shall I say? they fought manfully on both parts, from the morning till the evening, not getting any advantage one of the other, then Saturn withdrew his people on the one side, and Jupiter returned with King Ixion, and the Centaures, and still followed him alwayes the Eagle, and sat upon his Tent, which was made of boughs and green Rushes. For at that time, Tents and Habillions of Cloth were not invented, howbeit the making of linnen Cloth, and Cloth of gold, and Silk was found before this time. In this night they of Troy, and also of Crete, made great cheer in their Tents, and prepared themselves to begin the battel anew in the morning, each one perswading himself with hope of victorie. The wounded men were dressed, and the harness broken was made again and amended: they spake largely of the valours of each other, but principally they held their speeches of the Eagle, and spake so much of him, that Jupiter the same night took a piece of Crimson Satten, containing a yard and a half square, and made therein the resemblance of an Eagle of gold and set it on a Spear, and made a Banner, saying, that he would bear that banner in all Battels eber after. And said further that he understood by the Eagle, that it was a token to him, that he should triumph over his enemies. And that he should be the Sovereign King of Crete, like as the Eagle is King of all Fowls.

#### CHAP. XXV.

How Jupiter discomfited again King Saturn in battel, and how Saturn was put to flight by Sea.

These were the speeches of King Jupiter in this night, which he passed as merrily as he could: he visited the wounded men,



men and comforted them, and concluded with Ixion, that the day following the Centaures should have the battel, and they that had fought the day before should rest them. After this, he slept on the green, and rested until the time the Centaures put them in array, and went to horseback. And so did Jupiter, for he had rather have eyes, than to be idle. At this time Saturn slept not, nor was there any more slackness found in him and Ganimedes, than was in Jupiter, for they were sure they should be met withal, and assailed of their enemies again. They prepared and arrayed themselves the best they could, and about Sun-rising they went unto the host of Jupiter, encouraging each other to fight victoriously, and assail their mortal enemies hardily, for to avenge the blood of their fellows, that were dead in the battel the day before.

To make short, the Trojans were soze inflamed with desire of revenge, and were the first in the field, wherefore they rejoiced greatly in their hearts, and made an extraordinary shout, but this joy was anon abated unto them: for suddenly as Jupiter and the Centaures heard their cry, they took the Banner with the Eagle of gold, and their Spears and Shields, and with a joyful sound of Trumpets, Clarions, and Tabours, pricked forth their horses, which ran swiftly through the air, and running as they that held not of Heaven nor of earth, upon their enemies. When the Trojans saw the Centaures mounted on Horseback, running as the wind, they were soze amazed. Nevertheless, they took courage and withstood them, and the Centaures fought so valiantly, that each of them bore to the earth a Trojan with the point of his Spear. And among other, Ganimedes was also borne down to the earth: and some were hurt, others relieved after hurting, and some without hurt. When Ganimedes felt himself among the Horses feet, he said, that he would be shortly revenged. And he arose suddenly, and took his Sword and seeing the Centaure that had overthrowen him, doing marvellous feats of arms among a great many of his men, who mightily withstood his unmeasurable strokes, he gave him a stroke (as he was leaning on the right side to have smitten a Trojan) that he deeply wounded him, by which he was so astonished



nished, that he fell from off his horse, and he himself leapt up into the saddle. This Centaure was named Eson, and being young, was afterward father to Jason, that conquered the golden fleece. When he had receiued the stroke that Ganimedes gave him, he made so great a cry, that ten Centaures came running and defended him from the press. And casting down one another, they beat the Trojans and owerthrew them and so sprinkled their blood, that all the place was dyed red: then they found Eson and Ganimedes one nigh the other, and beheld Ganimedes practise to manage and govern his Horse: and seeing their fellow had lost his horse, they were greatly surprized with mortal hate, that they pursued Ganimedes with great strength. The Trojans approached and fought manfully against the Centaures, and the Centaures still pursued Ganimedes.

The Centaures were strong, huge, and lusty: the Trojans had more courage than strength of body. In this place Ganimedes shewed enough of prowess and valour and well defended him a while: but in the end fortune was to him aduerser, in such wise, that after he had suffered many assaults, and had lost more than a thousand Trojans, he looked about and beheld Saturn retire in plain discomfiture: after he saw his Trojans driven back and slain, without turning or resisting, and that all brake and turned their back: also he saw them that were about him, turned their backs and fled: and then knowing in this discomfiture that he had no remedy nor recoherance he betook himself to flight, and fled after the other, and sustained as he might the pursuit that the Centaures made upon his men and in the end he guided them unto the Port where the shipping was.

Saturn then in despair entred into his ship, with great loss of Trojans, and Ganimedes entred into another, so full of wrath and anger that I cannot rehearse. At the entry of the Ships, part of the Trojans that were left perished in the Sea, part by the sword, and the other took shipping. Jupiter and Ixion thanked the Gods greatly for this victory, and concluded together, to pursue their enemies by sea, forasmuch as they were yet great in number. And Ixion said, that it was expedient to bring them to utter destruction, forasmuch as they had



Fortune with them, and to the end that they should neber gather force moze against them. Jupiter yielded to this pursuit, greatly grieved, because he had tarried too long, and yet should tarry longer, if he put forth to Sea, that he should not be with Danae, at the day that he had promised her. This notwithstanding, hoping always to excuse himself unto her, he made him ready hastily to go to the pursuit of his enemies, and sent for the Mariners and after went into a Temple that was there by dedicated unto the God Mars.

### CHAP. XXVI.

How Jupiter after he had sacrificed the Eagle, pursued the Trojans: and of the strong battel that he had against Ganimedes.

Jupiter was no sooner in the Temple, but the Eagle entred also, and sate upon the Altar. When Jupiter saw that, after many thoughts he took the Eagle, and made sacrifice: and anon after came tydings, that his Mariners were ready: so he went out of the Temple, after he had paid his Drifons to Mars, and came to his Mariners that had made all things ready, and went to Sea, accompanied with the Centaures, and two thousand Cretans, and sailed after his enemies as he desired: for the Trojans fled apace, and made all the sail they could. In these two days Jupiter oftentimes wished him with his fair Danae and thought that his long tarrying would be irksome unto her.

The third day about three of the clock, they of Creet, and Troy began to meet together upon the Sea. They of Troy were sorrowful, but they of Creet rejoiced greatly. At this time Saturn was not with the Trojans, as he that durst not return with them for his shame that was befallen, and was utterly discomfited and in despair: and fying from Creet, sailed towards the East. When Ganimedes espied the Ships of Creet from far, he supposed first, that it had been Saturn, and tarried a while at Anchor: but when Ganimedes saw the Ships approach nearer him, and saw the banner of King Jupiter appear, he knew for certain that it was Jupiter and his enemies, and not Saturn that he abode for.

Then



Then was Ganimedes sore troubled, and called his companies, and shewed them the Banner with the Eagle of gold, and asked them what was best to do? They answered him and said: That Saturn had abandoned them and given over, and that they ought not to abide and tarry, but only every man to save himself by flight. Ganimedes would fain have tryed a battel, to probe if they were as fortunate and happy on the Sea as they were on Land: but when he knew the mind of the Trojans, that they desired nothing but rest, he made to weigh up anchors and sail forth, flying and withdrawing from them of Creet, as much as in them was possible. Jupiter and his Centaures then seeing the Trojans lying at anchor, began to furnish and fit them for the fight: and when they saw their enemies take up their anchors they began to shout and follow. The pursuit was strong, and dured three days and three nights: and the fourth day in the morning, Ganimedes and his company espied Land (which was Troy) they drew to the Port with great joy, but that was soon mingled with sorrow. For when they had taken land, they looked back and saw their enemies follow them, and came to the Port all provided and ready for battel. This shame and loss strook Ganimedes unto the heart, in such manner, that he called unto his men, and said as followeth:

My Brethren, and my Fellows, Fortune hath done to us a grace, by which we are brought and conducted hither, but this grace is to us little profit as we may plainly perceibe. For here is King Jupiter, which hath done to us great shame, for to chase us into our own territozy: and what shame will it be to him that will now fly? and moreover, who is he that now will not hold the bridle by the teeth? now it behoveth us not to fly, but to fight. It is meet and necessary for to revenge our losses and blood, and to recover our honour. Of succour we cannot fail, for now the Trojans be upon the Walls and go upon the high Edifices of the City, and behold our Landing. And many there are that make them ready to welcome us. And who that now is not well couragious, never fare he well: let every man enforce the vertue of his strength. And as for me, I will rather be hewed in pieces, I will no more flee: I pray you that



ye take courage and abide with me.

Two things happened while he spake and uttered these speeches unto his people, the Trojans were advertised of the coming of their men, and of the following and landing of their adversaries, they disposed them to resist and withstand them. And Jupiter and his men approached the Host, and with that Ganimedes left warning his fellows, and ran unto the Host, holding in his hand a strong spear: His company took example by his high courage, and followed him. Then began both the parties to make their cries, that went up into the air. Jupiter and his Centaures enforced them to take Land. Ganimedes and the Trojans enforced them to defend, and to put them from the Land. Great and sore strokes were given: Many of them were perished in the Sea, and many there were that their blood was shed on the Land. Jupiter that had no fellow in the place, got Land in a little space, and sustained the fierceness of the skirmish, by help of some of the Centaures, so that he made Ganimedes to retire back to his fellows, and so exploited by the hewing of his sharp Sword, that made all his men to take Land, and had lightly put Ganimedes and his men to the fople, if out of Troy had not issued King Troos and his Son Ilion, with a great multitude of people that ran unto the rescue and help of the valiant Ganimedes, who to save his men, offered and put his body to the incredible perils.

King Troos and his Son Ilion, then made a sally out of Troy in fair order, and exposed them to bear a part in the travail of their blood. Jupiter with Ixion and the Centaures, left them that he esteemed vanquished and overcome, and directed their forces against King Troos and Ilion, and them that followed them, notwithstanding that they had been feeble by the air, and being on the Sea, which did them little good. The Centaures were great and huge, and strong as Elephants. At this time the weather was fair and clear, the sun shined bright, when they began to skirmish: it was a brave sight to behold the bickerings, and a great noise to hear the cries: There was many a Spear broken, and many a staffe and Guisarm shivered, Helms enough crushed, and many skins of Lyons, Bears, and Horses.



Moyses smitten and torn in pieces. Troos and Ilion were fierce in the rescue of Ganimedes, Jupiter and Ixion were valiant and desirous to get honour, and so fought, and laid on the Trojans on the right side, and on the left, that before them was no resistance, nor order holden.

The Banner of the Eagle of gold was alwaies in the most sharpness and fury of the battle. King Troos that had never seen Banner used in battel, greatly marvelled what it should signifie, and oftentimes did what he could to fight against them that held it, and would faine have put it down and smitten it in pieces, but always he found there so great strokes, and so well laid on, that he was constrained to retire as far back as he came nigh. He was valiant for his person, and well knew the art of war. Jupiter approved him many times and often, and fought with him in many places, and noted him in his mind for a notable man: there was in him no fear nor dread, nor also in both his Sons Ilion and Ganimedes: they yielded unto arms their devoyzes. They did worshipfully deal with their bodies, unto their puissance without end. They fought with their enemies, making their swords red in the blood of the Cretans. They followed with great fury, that they fought all that day, otherwhiles afore, and sometimes behind. And it was so in the end, that when the sun began to go down. Ganimedes thinking on his great losses, and desiring to recover his honour, took a terrible and mighty are, and endamied with a noble courage, fought about the Banner of the Eagle of gold where was most strength, and smote down on the one side and on the other, so unmeasurably, that his Are changed colour, and he cryed with an high voice, Troy, Troy.

Jupiter had alway an eye on the Banner. When he heard the cry of Ganimedes and saw his behaviour, he knew him, whereof he had great ioy, for he sought no man but him: he gave over the place where he was in, and joyously addressed him unto him, and said, O valiant Trojan, thou hast shewed thy prowess all the day, and now thou manifestest and shewest thy self by haughty feats of arms, and of great shouts. Thou art only he that I seek among the valiants of Troy: not onely that I pre-



THE FIFTH BOOK OF  
sume to be more haliant in arms than thou, but forasmuch as thou art he that hast assailed Creet, and that I have pursued thee hither. Thou hast assailed and fought with me army against army, and now let us fight body against body, and let him take it that may get it.

Ganimedes with this word lifted up his Axe, and casting his eyes on Jupiter, made him this answer: Happy King of Creet, I know that thou art worthy to have grace of Fortune, and that thou art more wise than strong. Thou seest that Fortune is with thee, nevertheless now thou enhansest not thy self above me. I allow and praise thee: in as much as thou doest worship and honour to thine enemy, and dispraised him not, but imaginest that he hath courage at his heart, know thou that thou dost thy self honour and worship. For to dispraise, and blame another man, no man ought to advance himself. I would that it pleased the Gods that thy Father Saturn which is wandering on the Sea, were now here, for it is mine intent, that by his help we would have reason of thee, and I will come thereto; if it be for me possible, for I should be satisfied for all my hurts and losses, if I might conquer and overcome thee. And without more words, Ganimedes let fly his Axe, and smote on Jupiter, Jupiter covered him with his Shield. which was smitten in two pieces by the cutting of the Axe, then Jupiter bestirred himself, who all that day had abstained and spared from fight and the fears of Arms: and commanded his folk that they should let him alone with Ganimedes, forasmuch as he was alone. And now he defended himself against the Axe of Ganimedes, and belaboured him with his Sword, the best wise to him was possible.

Thus began the battel of the two Champions of Creet and of Troy. They were both right expert, to do the feats of Arms, the cries were high and fierce, they smote each other fiercely, the fire sprang out of their helms by the might of their strokes. But when Fortune was on the part of Jupiter, what might Ganimedes do? his strokes were great, and gave unto Ganimedes many wounds: and indeed took away his Axe, by the mean of a great wound that he had in the right arm, and might have



have put him to death, if he would. But he had pity on him, and saved his life, and caused him to be kept by four Centaures: Anon after it began to wax dark, the Trojans withdrew them into their City, and they of Creet unto the Port of the Sea.

## CHAP. XXVII.

How King *Troos* and *Ilion* his Son, made great sorrow for *Ganimedes* for they wist not where he was. And how *Jupiter* went to the Sea to go to *Argos*.

When *Troos* and *Ilion* were withdrawn, they abode at the Gate until the time that all the Trojans were come again into the City, as they that knew not where *Ganimedes* was become, whom they sore desired to have found. All they that were in the battel of the Trojans were entred, and there was no man could tell the King where *Ganimedes* was. And when he saw he had no more men left in the field: he returned into his Palace sorrowing, and sent for them that were come again from Creet, and enquired of them all the tydings, and what they had done with his Son. As touching his Son, they answered: that in the evening he was in the press among his enemies, but they knew not what was become of him. And as touching the tydings of Creet, they told him how they had sped in their journey against them: and how the Eagle appeared unto *Jupiter*: and how they were overcome by the strength of the Centaures. And how they knew not where *Saturn* was become.

These tydings gave unto King *Troos* sorrow upon sorrow, and to *Ilion*. And the tears fell down from their eyes, and in special *Ilion* wept sore, bewailing his Brother in this manner: Alas my Brother, alas *Ganimedes*, where is become the glory of *Troy* by the unfortunate and unhappy *Saturn*, which hath fallen thee in thy need. At the least, if thou hadst come again, we together would have done our best, to have been avenged of this loss, we would have assayed our bodies, by fraternal love, for to have recovered thine honour. How is it, art thou perished by venturing, what hard grief and sorrow is to thee befalln,



befaln, for to lay all the mis-adventure and mis-hap is too prejudicial unto the house of Troy. Ilion, fair son, answered Troos, for one adversity it behobeth not to be abashed in the war in any wise, but to have firm conrage: war giveth this day victory to one, and on the morrow taketh it away, and giveth it to another, and so putterh each out. A vertuous and a manly man unto his death, ought not to be afraid. If Ganimedes be dead in the battel, or if he be taken, what remedy, it is then expedient, either to avenge his death, or to succour him: but our enemies be in little number, we will to morrow fight with them again: and let the Gods do their wills of us, and if I fail herein, I shall be quite discouraged.

Ilion and the Nobles of Troy comforted them with these words of King Troos, and confirmed his resolution, to go on the morrow to assail his enemies, whilst these things were in parley in the City, Jupiter was in the field and made great cheer with Ixion and the Centaures: and being set at supper upon the ground, all about a great stone, Jupiter sent to fetch Ganimedes, and made him to sup with them. Ganimedes was sore moved, and had in his heart great trouble: yet he took a short refection with them, for he felt great ach and smart in his wounds. And there Jupiter communed with him saying, that he was the valiantest man that ever was seen among the most valiantest of Troy, and forasmuch as he was in his mercy, and that it was he that sate with his Father, descended into Crete, where he had gladly planted his name in worshop, if Fortune would have suffered him: therefore (said he) I will no more war before Troy, but I will enter again to morrow unto the Sea, and will go and put in execution, a thing that lyeth me now sore at the heart: And I will give you to know, that I have intention to go unto the Realm of Argos, unto the Tower of Dardan, for to deliber, according to my promise past, out of the same Tower the fair Danae, whom the King Achrisius holdeth fast shut in, without any reason. This conclusion pleased King Ixion and the Centaures, forasmuch as they had heard speak of the Tower of Dardan: and they thought well that the Argiens might not hold against thair strength. When that they had



had eaten, they entred into their Ships, and thought among other things, on the wounds of them that were hurt, and also of Ganimedes. And after they laid them down on the straw to sleep, and about two hours before day they weighed Anchor, and departed so secretly, that the Trojans had no knowledge thereof. And on the morrow betimes, when King Troos and Ilion issued out of Troy to battel, they ranged in good order, and found no man to have to do withal, nor they could not see nor perceive their enemies on no coast of the Sea, for they had so far sailed from the Port, that by that time they were out of sight. Thus they had great sorrow marvellously, and came unto the place where the battel had been, and buried the dead men. But now I will leave speaking of them, and of Jupiter, and will turn unto the History of Danae.

## CHAP. XXVIII.

How King *Achrisus* when he saw his Daughter with Child, sent her to exile, and put her in a little Vessel into the Sea, at the adventure of Fortune.

**W**hen the noble Damosel Danae abode with Child by Jupiter, as it is said before. After that Jupiter was returned into his Country, she abode long in hope, that he would come and fetch her by strength of people, and would lead her into his Realm, as he had promised. In this hope she mounted oft times into high windows of the Tower, and casting her eyes, now hither, now thither, upon the mountains, ways and streets, for to look if he came, or that she might see his men of Arms, and his people of war, and without end, she had always her ears open to listen if she might hear the Trumpets, Labours, and Clarions. This hope dured long, unto the last day that Jupiter had promised: and soze she complained in this time of his abiding: and said unto her self, that he would come. But when evening was come of the day he had set, and she heard no tidings of him, and that the fruit of her belly appeared: she went down from the window of the high Tower, and all surprized with despair, to behold her great belly, said: poore belly, I may no longer



longer hide thee, I haue covered thee unto this time, hoping the coming of Jupiter: the day is come and past that he should haue come, and there is no redings of him. Alas, and hath he also forgotten mee? Where art thou Jupiter? Art thou dead or aliue? If thou be dead, speak to mee in spirit, in excusing thee of thy default. Tell me what shall I do with thy seed? And if thou be aliue, what mischieuous evil aduenture holdeth thee? Art thou weary of Danae, that thou enforcedst by raining gold? of her that thou so much desiredst? Alas, thou promisedst mee thy love, and gavest it unto me: and I receiued the gift in good part, and gave unto thee mine heart. And what shall this be, Jupiter, my love and friend? Art thou of the nature of false men, as hypocrites that go about to deceive pooe Women, and then leave them in dishonour? Alas, thou art one verily, thou hast brought mee into perpetual shame, and hast abandoned and giuen me over. O mischieuous man, O false lyar, be thou cursed with thy riches, and accursed be the hour that euer I saw thee. I am for euer by thee put to shame: and may no longer hide thy works, Where shall my child become? every man shall see and know my trespass. Alas, my Father will put me to death, I may not fail of it: and as for death it shall not grieve me, save for the fruit that I bear, yet shall I keep it as well as my self, at all aduenture, come what may come thereof.

In these and such like words, Danae passed over this night, without rest: from thenceforth she began to be all melancholious, and took this so sore to heart, that she fell into a grieuous malady. When the Maideus that knew nothing of this cause, saw her so evil disposed, they signified it unto the King Achrisius, and then came the King to visit his Daughter, and betook her to the cure of his Physicians and cunning men, and demanded of them what malady she had. They answered him in the presence of Danae, that she was great with Child, and that in short time she should be delivered. Danae answered that they failed to say the truth, and that she had never known man: and denyed her fact as much as in her was possible, hoping alway to liue: for she well knew that her Father would condemn her to death, if he knew that she were with Child. And about this, all the  
Maideus



Maidens of the house strobe with the Mistresse, saying : that they had well and surely kept the Tower, that no man sawe the King had spoken to her, (unless he had come invisible) since that they had received her into their governance. Whereat the King was greatly abashed, and soze wondzed.

When the King heard these words, and saw the state of his Daughter, he was soze troubled. For by experience he saw well, and it appeared that Danae was with child. And to know the truth, he sent all the Maidens of the place into Prison to Argos, and betook Danae in keeping to other women, and commanded them upon pain of death, that they should tell him if she were, or happened to be delivered of Child or no.

Within a certain time, when Danae saw her self in this case, she began to fall into weeping. King Achrisius, from this day forth, came every day to know how she did. She wept without ceasing : she spake not, but unto her heart : and she bewailed her lobe, and complained on Fortune sorrowfully. But when she had laboured long in these weepings, and that her fair eyes were made great and red, about fifteen days, before the time of her childing, she began to remember the cause why she was put into the Tower. And that the Gods had prognosticated that she should have a Son, that should be King of Argos. In this remembrance she was comforted little : and when the time came that nine months was expired, she brought forth a passing fair Son, which the Ladies and Women received and named him Perseus : And after that signified it unto the King. But at the birth of this Child, she excused and put out of blame all the Damosels, and said that they were all innocent of her fact.

Anon then, as the King Achrisius knew the verity of his Daughter, and that she had a fair Son, he had in his heart more of sorrow than of joy, and condemned her to death indeed, and commanded two of his Mariners, that they should take the mother and the Child, and put them in a little Boat both together, and that they should carry them far into the high Sea, that after that, never should men see them nor have knowledge of them. The Mariners durst not refuse the commandment of the King : but went to the Tower Dardan, and took Danae, and



her Son Perseus, and said unto the Damosel all that they had charge to do, praying her humbly that she would pardon them: and this was about midnight, when Danae understood that she should be cast into the Sea, and her Son with her. Yet she had hope to escape this peril, by the means of the Fortune of her Son. This notwithstanding, the tears ran down from her eyes, and weeping tenderly, she took her leave of the Ladies and Damosels that had her in keeping: and they let her be carried upon the Sea, making complaint and pitious bewailings. When the Mariners had brought her upon the Sea, they left her in a little Boat, and put in her lap Perseus her fair Son, and as hastily as they might, they conducted her into the deep Sea without meat or drink, and without sterne or governail, and gave her over to all winds. Then was there many a tear wept among the Mariners. The Mariners bewailed with great compassion to see such a Damosel abandoned to peril of death: Danae wept in considering the rigour of her Father, and the fault that Jupiter had done to her, and also for the peril which she might not resist: and Perseus wept for the blowing of the wind and for the gross ayr of the Sea, that his tenderness might not well suffer to endure. In this fashion the Mariners returned to Argos, and Danae went forth upon the waves of the Sea, at the agreement and will of the winds. The waves were fearful, and lifted themselves into the ayr as mountains, the winds blew by great storms, the little Boat was bozn and cast upon the waves, and oftentimes Danae supposed to have perished: but she had alway hope in Fortune. And so well it happened, that in this adversity and trouble, she was cast into the Sea of Apulia or Naples. And there she was found by adventure of a Fisher, that for pity and charity took her into his ship, and her Son, and brought her on Land.

At this time the noble Danae was as a dead body, and half gone: when the Fisher-man had brought her on Land, she took a Ring of Gold that she wore on her finger, and gave it unto the good man, praying him, that he would bring her into some house, where she might warm and cherish her, with her Child, for he was nigh dead with cold, and was all in a trance. The

Fisher-



Fisher-man took the Gold King, and brought the Damosel, and the little Child into his house, and made them a good fire, and brought them meat and drink. As soon as Perseus felt the eye of the fire, his heart came to him again, and he began to laugh on his Mother. When she saw that, all her sorrows turned to joy, and she took hope of good Fortune. She then made ready and arrayed her Son, and her colour came again: the Fisher-man seeing in her so much beauty, that the like to her he saw never none, he went unto the Court of the King of Naples, and told him his adventure, praising so certainly her beauty, that the King sent hastily for to fetch her: this King was named Pilonus, and was Son to the ancient Jupiter. And when Danae was come before him, suddenly he was enamoured of her, and demanded her name, her Country, and the cause why she was adventured on the Sea. At beginning she excused her self of all these things, unwilling to tell all, and began to weep. When the King saw that, he comforted her and said, that he would take her to his wife for her beauty: and spake so fair to her, and so graciously, that she told him all her life, how she was Daughter of King Achrisius, and how she was shut in the Tower, and how Jupiter had deceived her, and how her Father had put her in the Sea. When the King Pilonus heard all these fortunes of the Damosel, he had pity on her, and wedded her with great honour, and did put to nurse Perseus, and got on her a Son, which was named Danaus: but of this matter I will cease, and turn again to the History of Jupiter.

## CHAP. XXIX.

How Jupiter returning from Troy by Sea, Encountred the great Thief Egeon, which he fought with, and overcame; and of the tydings that he had of Danae, whereof he was passing sorrowful.

When Jupiter was departed from Troy, he made his mariners to sail and row with all diligence, to with-draw from the Wozt, and to approach Crete, for he knew well that the time of his promise made to Danae was expired, and that



displeased him greatly. His mariners did all that they could do by the space of a day natural, but the day being past, there arose a tempest in the Sea so terrible, and out of measure, that it bare many Ships with their furniture under water, brake their sterns and helms, and drowned all the Ships, save only that Ship which Jupiter was in: wherefore he wept outrageously. The tempest dured three days and three nights. They saw not that time in the Heaven, Sun, Moon, nor Stars. Jupiter and they that were with him thought never to have dyed other death, yet they escaped the death, and took Land the third day when the Tempest was ceased, not in Creet, nor in the Sea of Europe, but in the Ocean so far, that they knew not the language of them that inhabited the Port where they came to Anchor.

When Jupiter saw the strangeness of the people dwelling in this Port, he knew they were far from their Region, and then was Jupiter discomfited, that he wished he had not been there, nor come on the Sea, forasmuch as he knew well that he might not accomplish his promise made unto Danae his Love. He made many great bewailings touching this matter, and more than I can say: and also made complaint for his men that he had lost in the storm and tempest, as well as he complained for the default of his promise. But when his companions, Ixion, and the Centaures and Ganimedes, had refreshed and victualled them, and had well put all things in order, they weighed Anchor, and departed from the Port, and took their way into the East: and so laboured day by day, that they entred into the Sea Egee. And they had not long sailed when they met with Egeon the great Thief and Robber, which held at his will all this Sea: then they disanchored from the Port of the Isle of Desart, and he accompanied with six Gallies, and with a thousand men of arms, came before Jupiter, providing them to battel, in purpose to have destroyed them.

When Jupiter and the Centaures, saw the behaviour of the Thief, they knew straight ways that they might not fail of battel, and saying each to other they would defend themselves unto death. They had not long held Parliament among them, but



but they furnished themselves with their Arms, and displayed the Banner with the Eagle of Gold. And in the displaying they made a great joy, as they had been in Paradise. At this time had Ganymedes his wounds healed. When he saw that each man prepared himself to fight saving he, which was prisoner, he came and kneeled down on his knees before Jupiter, and required him right humbly, that he would command to deliver him his Harness, for to help to maintain his honour, and also to defend his life, promising to do his true endeavour.

Jupiter took up Ganymedes, when he saw him submit himself, and began to set his love on him, that it endurad even unto the death: and that more is, his Harness and Arms were yielded unto him, saying: that from thenceforth they would be brethren and fellows in Arms, and Ganymedes answered to him that he would alway abide and dwell his servant.

During these speeches, Egeon and his Gallies boarded the Ship of Jupiter, and fought with them. Egeon was in the front before as Captain. Jupiter beheld him and knew him by his arms that he bare, and ere that any stroke was smitten, he called to him, and said. Thief and Robber: How darest thou pursue to death him that made thee to tremble, and flee before him at the battel of Creet, by seeing of his Sword dyed and made red with the blood of the unhappy Titanoyes? Behold and see mee, I am Jupiter, the mortal enemy of all thy Linage. Thou likewise art my enemy, and now art come in battel against me. It may be well said that we shall run each upon other, by great force, and that this conflict shall be damageable for thee or for me, and let the Gods do their pleasure.

When Egeon understood what Jupiter had said to him, and that he was the destroyer of his Linage, he had his heart so incensed with ire and impatiency, that he could not answer one word: And grinning with his teeth, he began to smite so hard toward Jupiter, that if the stroke of his Axe had been right, there had never been remedy of his life. But Jupiter knew the fears of war, and when he saw the stroke he aboyded it: and lifted up his Sword, and charged it upon Egeon so surely, that he could not aboyd the stroke, which was so forcible, that he was so astonished.



nied that it made him fall down upon the planks of the Galley. When made the Pyrates and Thieves a great cry, and furiously fell upon Jupiter and his company. Ganimedes held his Axe in his hands, and was not then tole: he fought and wrought most balliantly after his power, and so did the Centaures. The skirmish was great, and many were stricken down, not of the party of Jupiter, but of the Pyrates, and then laboured the Centaures, so that they dyed the Gallies with the blood of their enemies: And that the Pyrates, albeit they were ten against one, they neither could, nor might not abide before them.

Thus began the mortal battel of the Pyrates, and of the Centaures, when the one Galley had fought as long as they might, another came on. Thus Jupiter and Ganimedes had enough to do to fight, and they failed not what to do, for the more they smote, the more displeasure had the Pyrates. Each of their strokes was the death of a Pirate. In process of time, Egeon came again into the press dismayed, and filled full with impatience, he put himself forth to fight, in the most strength, all desperately, to win all, or to lose all. At this time the battel was so deadly, that all the Gallies closed the Ship of Jupiter, and smote on it: but this was to their mis-hap and ill fare, for the most part of them were slain: then Ganimedes and Jupiter entred into the Galley of King Egeon, where he fought so sore on the one side and on the other, for envy who should do best, that of all them that were within, there was not left one man, but he was slain or cast into the Sea, excepting only Egeon, which Jupiter took with his hands, and bound him with an hundred chains of Iron.

With these chains of Iron Egeon had a custom for to bind his Prisoners, until the time they had done his will. When the Pyrates saw the mischief that came upon them, and that their master was overcome and bound with the chains, they intended to save themselves, and withdrew from the Ship of Jupiter, saying, that those that they had fought withal, were no men, but Devils, and that they were unhappy that came into their hands. Jupiter had but one ship. The Pyrates dispersed abroad one here, another there. And when the Centaures saw that,



that, they said to Jupiter, that it ought to suffice to have this victory over his enemy, and that it was no need to make pursuit after the unhappy Thiebes. Jupiter accorded to the same, and entered again into his Ship with Ganimedes and Egeon, and after made his Mariners to take their course again. And all day he had in his memory Danae. He was a year long sailing by the Sea: and in the end of the year, he arrived in his Realm, and there found four hundred Horses, which they of Creet presented unto him for his welcome.

The Queen Juno his Wife, made great cheer, for she loved him with all her heart, wherefore she feasted him, and them that presented to him the Horses. And he put in prison Egeon, and let Ganimedes go free where he would: they loved then together ever after as two brethren. When Jupiter had been there three days, he took four hundred of his men of the most puissant, and made them Knights, giving to each of them one of his Horses: and perfected them in the feats of Arms, after the discipline of Ixion and the Centaures. And when they had done this, he assembled a thousand foot-men, and two hundred Archers, and with them he departed from Creet fifteen days after his return: and sent not for Pluto, nor for Neptune, and took his way unto the City of Argos, meaning to have taken away the fair Danae. But he had not far gone, when he met one of the Citizens of Argos, a Gentleman and most wise, that recounted and told him all the life of Danae, forasmuch as he demanded of him tidings. And assured him on his life, that the King Achrisius had set her on the Sea, forasmuch as he had brought forth a little Son against his commandment.

When Jupiter heard the case and misfortune of Danae, he began to sigh sore: the sweat came into his face, and tears into his eyes, he called Ganimedes and Ixion and told them, that his voyage was broken: and that the King Achrisius had cast her into the Sea, for whom he made this Army. Ganimedes and Ixion comforted him the best they could, and brought him again to Creet, he held him there solitary a while: and lay by his Wife Juno, and Juno and her Aunt Ceres made him good cheer oftentimes. And so oft came Ceres, that once he asked the cause



of his sorrow. He beheld the beauty of her: and for that she was alone, he used the matter so that he had to do with her and knew her fleshly, and after he had determined in his mind, that he would go into Sicil: and taking leave of King Ixion and of the Centaures, his shipping was made ready, and he went to Sea, and came into Sicil, and conquered it unto the Isle of Lemnos. And when he had so done, he went into Italy, and came into the house of King Janus, which received him, and made him great cheer, and told him that his Father Saturn was come newly to dwell thereby, and that he was singularly loved of all the people, forasmuch as he taught them to labour the vines, and to sow corn.

All the blood changed in Jupiter, when he heard that Janus spake to him of his Father Saturn: nevertheless he went to see him, and saw him, and found his Father making and founding a new City, in the place where now stands the Capitol of Rome. And in such wise he submitted him to his Father, that Saturn took him to his grace, and made peace with him: and also accorded to him that he should enjoy from thenceforth his Realm of Creet: At the accord and making of this peace were King Janus and King Evander, and they dwelled the one nigh the other, that is to wit, Janus in a City named Laurence, and Evander in a City being nigh the mount Aventine: and so was there King Italus of Syracuse, that made in this time a new City named Albe, upon the River of Tybre. All these Kings made great cheer for the agreement of the Father and the Son. And thus Jupiter, abiding there he acquainted himself with the Wife of King Evander named Nicostrate, forasmuch as she was right expert in the science of Pigromancy, and of her he learned this science. Jupiter after this took leave of her, and of his Father Saturn, and of his neighbours, and left there Saturn, that was married again to a Woman called Philiris, by whom he had a Son called Picus, that was Father of King Tanus, Husband to the Queen Fatua, of whom Hercules was amorous, and returned into Creet, and there found that his wife was delivered of his Son Vulcan, and that his beloved Aunt Ceres was delivered of a Daughter, named Proserpina, where-



of Juno was displeased and discontent, and complained to Iupiter of the dishonour that he had done to her. But Iupiter set nought thereby, but laughed and was more joyous of his daughter, than of his Son: For his Daughter was marvellous fair, and Vulcan his Son was foul and crook-backed. Notwithstanding, to live in peace with Iuno, he married Ceres to another man named Siccam, and gave to them the Realm of Sicil and the City of Syracuse, and sent them to dwell there with Proserpina. And it was not long after that, but he sent his Son Vulcan into the Isle of Lemnos, whom he betook to be governed by three men, named Berotes, Seropes, Pyragmon: and kept him so well that he came to age: and that he was a man of a noble mind, and learned all Sciences, in especial Pigromancy, Geomancy, and Pyromancy, and made many marvellous things, that be past credit to speak: wherefore I will tarre now of him, and of Iupiter. And will treat of his Son Perseus, forasmuch as of him came Alcumena.

## CHAP. XXX.

How Queen *Medusa* came to *Athens*, to worship in the Temple of the Goddess *Pallas*. And how King *Neptune* waxed amorous of her: and how she deceived him.

**I**N this time when Iupiter lived peaceably King of Crete, and that his Son Vulcan waxed great, and learned the craft of Pigromancy, in the Land of Hesperie, there passed out of the World a King named Porcus, a man of great valour, which the Hesperians called God of the Sea of Spain, anciently called Hesperie, as is said. This King left three Daughters, lovers of the earth, forasmuch as they intended unto vices, that hold of earthly things. Of these Daughters one was named Medusa, the other Euriale, and the third Senno. Medusa, that was the eldest of all the other succeeded in the Realm. And the Poets say, that she had the head of a Serpent, giving by this, to understand, that she was wonderful wise and subtil. After the death of King Porcus, this Medusa governed mightily her Realm, and maintained Pyrats and men of war, and in her be-



ginning she occupied and haunted the Sea of Europe, at pleasure, and with great triumph. And landing on a day at the Port of Athens, she sent unto King Neptune to require him that he might enter into his City, for to worship in the Temple of the Goddess Pallas, which was newly made. Neptune did great honour unto the Passengers of Medusa, and accorded unto her, that she should enter into his City, and into the Temple, upon condition that she should have none with her but her Damosels. When Medusa heard the answer of King Neptune, she concluded that she would go into the Temple. And she was accompanied with many Damosels so richly arrayed, that it was a gallant sight to see. She entred into the Temple, and into the City, and there she turned into stones not only the men that beheld her, but also the Women, and among all other especially a Queen that was named Ida.

By this it is to be understood, that this Medusa was of so excellent beauty, and so passing rich, that all they that beheld her gave themselves over wholly to covet her beauty, and her riches. And therefore wrote the Poets that they were turned into stones: for they that dispose themselves, and give them to the delights of the world, be likened and compared unto hard stones, whereof may no good come. Thus then Medusa entering into Athens, converted and turned into stones many men: insomuch, that Neptune heard these tydings, and desiring to see this Queen, he went into the Temple, where she was in contemplation. And he had not long beheld her, but he said to himself, that she should be his Wife, and that she should never escape from him.

This Medusa was long space in contemplation, during which Neptune desired her beauty more and more, and his heart gave him, that he should obtain his purpose. And after, he a little paused, considering the excellency of her; grief, and thoughts traversed, and arose in his mind. that constrained him to say these words that follow: Alas, in what matter, and in what enflaming pain be they that are burning in love, by long space of time, that I already begin to find me in so many great sighs and pains, that I know not how I may in time come unto this

Lady.



Lady, to require her to be my wife. She is shining in all beauty, and in right abundant riches. This is it that I lack: she beholdeth me otherwhiles in her prayers; it may happen so well, that love may turn her heart, to make alliance betwixt her and me. And what is this? men say that love hurteth no man, but by his eyes. If the eyes be not made to see, I will say that my desire shall hap well. Where am I? where am I? put me out. Where is my heart? where is my desire? I know not what I think, my thought may be abused, and my abuse may well be reversed: mine eyes peradventure think they see that they see not. Mine ears imagine to hear, and yet they be deaf. I find my self in a great perplexity and very attairder: and yet more, in a superfluous error, more than any man may have: For when I see this Lady more excellent than all other, in riches and beauty, reason telleth me, that she is not come hither for me: and when I behold that she is alone without men in my City, who shall gainsay my will? I will require her to be my Wife, after that she hath done her Devotion: and if she accord to my request, my labour shall do well. And if she gainsay and withstand it, then I must be of force and authority Royal.

Thus, when Neptune came to this conclusion, Medusa arose from her contemplation, and Neptune went to her, and did her reverence, and after prayed her, that she would go to his Royal Palace to refresh her. Medusa thanked him for his courtesie, and said, that she might not well tarry there at that time. When Neptune understood that she was to return, without staying longer in his City, he was displeased in his heart, yet he held her in parley, and drew her apart, and said unto her (changing colour.) Madam, I am sorry that ye refuse to take harbour in my house. I am King of this City, the Gods have not given me so great hap, that I have yet any Wife, any Lady or Damosel: it is now so happened that the Gods and Fortune have inspired you to come hither. Certainly it is your beauty hath prepared the eye of my heart, and hath made me so desirous of you, that I give unto you, heart, body, and goods, and all that a Lover may give unto his Love or Lady, or any King



his Queen. Wherefore I pray you that ye will go unto my Palace, to the end that I may have communication moze secretly there, and tell you of the great love that I have to you.

As Medusa understood the request of the King, she began to frown, and not willing to be otherwise entreated, she answered to him. Royal Sir, if it were so that my heart desired acquaintance and communication with one man moze than with another, in truth, if I so found me disposed, I would hold my self happy, finding my self in the grace of your eyes: but the matter goeth with me far otherwise, I love as much one man as another. I have a purpose to abide and continue in my virginity: Ye be a King: you have given to me safe conduct to perform my Pilgrimage. I desire that you bear your self in such wise, as if ye had never seen me. Madam (said Neptune) how shall I do that you say, when my heart is all given unto you? Sir (answered Medusa) it behoveth first to know, and after that to love, I have told you here, that I have a purpose to abide a Virgin, what may it profit you to say, that you have given me your heart? these be but lost words. Dame (said Neptune) the Diamond shineth not till it be polished: ye were never peradventure desired or requested of love before now: wherefore you have no moze love to one man than to another. Therefore you must understand that acquaintance breedeth love: and if you will come and abide with me, I make no doubt but that your mind will change. Sir (answered Medusa) my will is unchangeable. Notwithstanding (said Neptune) it must change, be not abashed. Sir (answered Medusa) I see nothing that giveth me cause of abashment, for I feel my heart firm and stable in his operations. You be a King, and have given me safe conduct to finish my Devotion at the Temple of the Goddess of your City. Reason and honour should govern your courage. Dame (said Neptune) if your beauty surmounted not the beauty of other women, I would willingly consent to your return: But when I conceive how you are formed in so high a degree of Nature that nothing lacketh in you. And further, when I see that the great Goddess Pallas hath inspired you to come to this my City, reason may have no place: howsoever it be



be by love or by force, ye shall be my Wife: I had rather dye, or run into all the dishonours of the world, than for to fail to have you love.

When Medusa that was wise, had understood the words of Neptune, and saw well that he was courageously entamed with her amozons desire, and that she might not escape his power, for her beauty, unless it were by an adventure: then she changed her hair into colours: that is to say, that where force reigned, she wrought by subtilty, and said unto the King. Sir, I know you are a great and puissant Lord, and that love hath moved you by force to take me to your Wife. Since your pleasure is such, I am content to do all as you have demanded, and that this same day be solemnized the marriage between you and me: but the more solemnly to adozn the Feast of our Wedding, I require of you two things: First, that I may return unto the Port, to my People, for to array and dress me with my costly Jewels, for I cannot employ them to more great glory, than to use this day of my marriage: and Secondly, that ye will cause to array and dress the Ladies of this City, to receive me as it appertaineth: for I will that ye well know, that in all the remnant of the Ladies of the world, ye shall not find any that hath more moveable goods and riches than I have.

Neptune was then as one all ravished with joy, when he heard this answer of Medusa: and he sent again this Medusa unto the Gallies, hoping that she would return again to be his Wife: but when she by the subtilty of her wit, was delivered again at the Port where Neptune had nothing to do: instead to return to the City, she caused to weigh Anchors of all her ships, and hoyst sail, and in all hast withdrew them from the Port: and instead to array her in vestments nuptial, she took her arms, and made all her men to Arm them. And thus she escaped from Neptune, who was in great sorrow, and in great anger said, that she had the head of a Serpent, and that her hairs were turned into colours, to the end to hide more graciously the malice of her heart: he repeated the manner how she had deceived and beguiled him.

How then escaped Medusa the hands of Neptune by the means



means of her head serpentine: and Neptune abode converted and turned into a stone: of this thing was the renown through all Greece. And the beauty of Medusa was so commended, that from those parts went every day many Knights to see her, and many of them were turned into stones, and many lost their treasures: innumerable enforcing themselves, by arms to conquer this Lady, who withstood alway their assaults and endeavours and alway abode conquerour of them.

Medusa set nought by King nor Prince, that would have her to wife: she was all set to get and gather the treasures of the world. Whereas her Father had been very covetous, yet was she more covetous: and coming again from Athens into her own Realm, after that she had brought under subjection the Greeks that rebelled against her, she was so plunged in the deep swallow of covetousness and avarice, that she made war against all her neighbours, and conquered them, constraining them to pay her yearly large tributes. Whereby her state and name arose, and was so great, that the fame thereof ran into many far Regions.

In the time that the renown of Medusa was in this credit, Perseus Son of Danae and Jupiter was in the valour and prime of his strength: and he daily required his mother and the King, that they would give him leave to seek his adventure. When then Pilonus heard speech of the mightiness of Medusa, of her rapines and avarice, he thought that his Son in law should do a vertuous work, if he might correct her: so he told to Perseus that he would send him thither. Perseus thanked him and said, he would employ thereto all his puissance. Then King Pilonus sent for men of Arms, and made ready thirty Gallies for the Army of Perseus, and dubbed him Knight, for the order of chivalry began that time to be used in all the world. And it was decreed that same day Perseus should go to Sea.

And when the King had accomplished all the Ceremony to the case required, Perseus took leave of the King Pilonus, and of his mother Danae, and of the Damoisels, and entered into his Galley: afterward they weighed Anchors, and departed from the Port of Naples with a great noise of Trumpets and with

Banners



Banners displayed, and sailed into the deep Sea. There was many a tear wept: every body loved Perseus for he was humble and courteous. The Apulians departed not as long as they might see him: and then after they returned home, praying unto the Gods, that good and happy might be the Fortune of Perseus. And the noble Knight went by the Sea coasts at all adventure. He so hastened on his way that he came to Affrick that was named Lybia at that time, and there would have refreshed him at a port, beside the strait of Gibraltar whereas was King Atlas the great Astrologian. But this King put him from landing at this Port, and came in Arms against him, and shewed by signs a far off, that he would keep his Country with his Sword. Then Perseus which would not there employ his Army, but withdrew him from the Port, meaning to avenge him another time of that hard usage, if Fortune would help him. He passed the strait, and sought so long the Realm of Medusa, that after he found it, and had tydings by certain Merchants that she and her Sisters sojourned in a City which stood on the Sea Coast.

Great was the joy of Perseus, when he understood these tydings: his folk had great need of victual, wherefore he called them all, and bade that they should make them ready, for they were nigh the place that they sought: and then, as they sailed away forth about three hours before the evening they saw the City where Medusa was, and moreover they saw Medusa and her sisters with a great number of men of war, that were trained on the Port, richly arrayed and furnished. When Perseus saw this, he divided his Army in three equal battels, each had ten Gallies, and ordained and put in Captains of war: and wisely informed them how they should come nigh and approach the Port. And after he put himself in the first battel: and the Poets say, that the Goddess Pallas gave to him then a Shield of Chrystal: that he approached wisely the Port that was upon the great Sea of Spain, and that he conducted himself by such prudence which is likened to Chrystal, that he came and fought hand to hand against the puissance of Medusa: and that by the shining of the clear Shield of his prudence in receiving and  
 R giving



giving infinite strokes, he got Land and constrained Medusa to return to her City, by force of Arms, and with a good ordering and fighting of his Souldiers. At that time the head Serpent-like of Medusa might not withstand his first fortunes, for she that was accustomed to put under foot and overcome all them that exposed them in Arms against her, at this time was put to the same extremity, that she had put others unto.

CHAP. XXXI.

How *Perseus* vanquished in battel the Queen *Medusa*: and how she fled into her City.

**N**OW such was the beginning of the war, that was between *Perseus* and *Medusa*, where the Gorgons which *Medusa* had cherished dearly, fell down from the Wheel of Fortune, which wheel had consented that the prudence of *Perseus* should be cause of their humbling. This notwithstanding, *Medusa* took courage in her self, and re-entred into her City, and gave charge to one of her men, to go unto her enemies, and to enquire of them who was chief and Caprain of them, and what thing he sought in her Country? The *Hesperian* departed from the City, and came to the Host of the *Apulians*, that were busie to lodge them that night: and he hailed so much that he came to *Perseus*, who took his refection upon a Table that he had made of a great stone of marble, and said to him in this wise: Sir, the conquerers of men hath sent me to thee, to enquire what thing thou wilt do in her Country, to the end she may know what she hath to do? Messenger (answered *Perseus*) I have a purpose to enfranchise and make free all men from the servitude that thy Distress holdeth them in: and to make her that hath but one eye, that she convert and turn men no more into stones, and that her riches shall be no more the causes of the loss and perdition of Knights which should have her in marriage. For against her malice of the Serpent, I will be armed with prudence, and will that she know, to morrow, without longer delay; I will give assault unto the City, in case she come not against me in battel.



With this answer the Hesperian returned unto Medusa, and recounted unto her all that he had heard. Medusa assembled then all her men of war, and said unto them: it is no marvel though I have my heart so troubled, when after that I have vanquished great companies of men of Arms, I see that shamefully we are driven back and with-drawn into this City; by the prowess of a handful of men. What grief is this to them that have been accustomed to triumph in all manner of wars? Where be the high enterprizes, by which we made all the Western Seas to fear? Where be the Swords that have been given to us by the Kings our Tributaries: Where be the Armies and strengths that have made to tremble the mountains and Rocks of Lybia? Where be they that this day have taken fear for Prowess, dread for Hardiness, dishonour for honour? At least since this thing is so handled, it behoveth to deal the best wise we may: but now it behoveth also, that every man encourage and shew himself valiant, and that to morrow it be recovered, that by us this day is lost. The enemies of the City to morrow will give us assault, if we furnish not them with battel. And forasmuch as they be travelled on the Air of the Sea, it is much better that we furnish them with battel at this time, than that we should abide longer. Our enemies be strangers, here lyeth our triumph, or ever mortal misadventure. If we overcome them, it shall be a memory for us far and nigh in all honour. If the case go contrary, we shall run with the loss of our lives into derision and mockery of all people. And what is this, all the blood be spread abroad of them that have made the ground red with the blood of others? Shall the honour be wasted and lost, and also the name that we have gotten with so great labour? All the world take to them courage and hope: these two things be as needful in war, as the Arms, and without them shall never man attain to the crown of victory. Ah then take heart to you, and make ready your harness and Arms: to morrow must be the day that ye must needs make to shine your deeds the best wise yemay, and that for to keep your renowns, and your titles of honourable prowess.

Adam (answered one of the Captains) it is great pity,  
 R 2 that



that ye were not a man, for if it had been so, it is apparent that you would have brought under all the Monarchy of men. As ye say, we must needs keep our renown, if Fortune hath been to us this day forward, to morrow she shall turn to profit. The wounds that be made in our honours and blood, we must bear it, and take it in good part. And our promises and honour shall to morrow put from us all notes and shame, we will so behaue ourselves. Can ye not rise so early that we might be in the front of them well arrayed and proved to fight for the prosperity of your Land? We will do your request. When Medusa heard the good will of her Captain, she was joyous and concluded with them, that she with all their puissance, would assaile their enemies at Mid-night, in hope to come upon them unawares. This conclusion was thought good unto all: and each man withdrew, to take their rest, and to make ready their Harness. Medusa slept not much this night, as she that had the heart alway great and sore charged with greedy desire of vengeance: and at mid-night, she sounded to Arms, and made them to be ready. She took her Banners that were rich, and her men were diligent enough to Arm them, for in that art they were well instructed. And when they were all ready and assembled before the Palace Royal, Medusa and her sisters issued out of the Gate in rich Equipage, and giving good morrow to her folk, with as little noise as she could, she divided them into two companies, whereof she made one company to depart by one of the Gates of the City, and she her self conducted the other by the Gate that was against the Port of Haven.

At this time the Ayre was pure and clear, and the Stars twinkled: and anon the Moon shone, and put away the darkness of the night according to her celestial office. When Medusa was in the field, she went along by the Sea shore, and supposed to have taken Perseus and his folk, but she failed: for as soon as she issued out of her City, it was perceived by the watch men of the Host of Perseus, and they signified their coming to Perseus and his men that slept in their Harness. And thus, when she approached unto her enemies, and had supposed to have distressed them, she found them ready furnished, where-  
with



with there arose a great cry on both parties, and with this cry there grew a great skirmish, so eager and fierce, that it was need unto all men of valour, to shew forth their prowesses and their strengths. There was many a man cast down dead upon the Sand. When began the second battel of Medusa, making a great noise in joyning the battel, and then had they of Naples a strong party for to master.

In this Tempest Perseus gave himself no rest: he had alway his eyes open, his ears bent to hear, his arms ready to smite: he was quick in his green youth, his Sword flashed and cut desperately: he smote no man nor Shield, but he brake it, and flew all down right. Medusa, that alway put her in the most strength and affairs, and most press, by mighty courage, to entertain and hold together her men: seeing oftentimes the practices and the noble feats of Arms of her enemy Perseus, had great sorrow, for with his only valour, he held the Apulians in estate and ray, and there was none that might resist his strength or at least that had might to resist him. This thing turned to great displeasure unto Medusa, yet she corrected it, and used her prowess the best she might. She did great hurt to her enemies, and smote down here and there so valiantly, that she seemed much better to be a man than a woman: and better became her to brandish a Sword, than to spin or turn a spindle.

## CHAP. XXXII.

How *Perseus* in this battel slew the mighty sister of *Medusa*, and vanquished her in the battel.

**T**his skirmish then dured long, the envy that Medusa had at the valour of Perseus, gave to her Arms more force and strength, than nature had given her; she was full of malice, and yet she could keep her well from the sword of Perseus. And alway she was environed with the best men she had. They fought in this fashion until the day, before that any knew to whom he should ascribe the victory: but even as the Sun began to shew his beams and rayes: in like manner, Perseus began to shew the rayes of his prudence, and brandished his Sword. And seeing



on the one side the Banner Royal, he thronged into the press, and drew to that part, casting men down dead to the Sands, more than an hundred. This Banner was square four foot, made of Crimson Satten, and in the middle was an image painted, whereof the body was a figure and fashion of a woman, and the head was of a Serpent.

Medusa was never far from this Banner, for she drew her alway thither for rescue. When Perseus was come thither with a great company of his folk, he cryed Perseus, Perseus. And lifting his Sword that was tempered with blood from one end to the other, it happened that the first stroke that he gave in this place, fell upon one of the Sisters of Medusa, that she fell down dead. Then they of Naples smote on the Hesperians with all their force. Then smote Perseus long and overthwart; his strokes were so mortal, that they afraied not only the most feeble of his enemies, but all the most strongest, and also the most courageous Medusa.

Great was the slaughter: and being at that point, Medusa enforced her power to withstand the great force of Perseus. Notwithstanding, she that before had overcome many men, was then overcome: and having late the greatest courage, and the heart more fierce than any man, she was banquished with despair, by the only chivalrous dealing of Perseus that had broken her Banner, that had smitten her men in pieces, partly slain with his Sword, and partly fled. And he had not only made red his Sword and right hand with her blood, but the Sea by small gutters was made red with warm blood: through which Medusa lost her ferocity, all her presumption, all her strength, and all her vigour: so evil went the game on her side, that when she had seen her Banner destroyed, when she had seen the most victorious of her Knights confounded by fight, and her men of Arms leave the battel and flee before Perseus, as before the Image of death. Finally, she saw all her puissance turn into destruction generall, whereof the end was that each man gave it over, and every man that might save himself saved him by caves, and bushes, here one, and there another, so sore afraid, that it was a pitious thing to hear their cries: and many saved them in



in the City, and many were slain in flying, by Perseus and his men.

### CHAP. XXXIII.

How *Perseus* conquered *Medusa*, and her City, and smote off her head. And how he went to fight against the King *Atlas* of *Septe*, a mighty and puissant Gyant.

**A**T this discomfiture, *Perseus* pursued *Medusa*, flying into her City, and entred with her, and the most part of his people with him, that failed him never to put to death all the men defensible that they found, but they spared the blood of women and little Children, by the commandment of *Perseus*. And among others, *Perseus* found *Medusa* hid in a Cistern and smote off her head. And of the blood that issued out, there engendred *Pegasus* the flying Horse. By the head that *Perseus* smote from *Medusa*, is understood, that he took from her her Realm, and deprived her of it, and banished her poore and naked. And by the flying Horse that was engendred of the blood that issued from her head, is meant, that of her riches issuing of that Realm he made a Ship named *Pegase*, that is as much as to say Good Renown: and this Ship was likened unto an Horse flying, forasmuch as the good Renown of *Perseus* was then born from region to region, as upon a Horse flying. And forasmuch as *Perseus* went in this Ship, into divers Countries, where he got him a great name.

By this fashion *Perseus* conquered the head of *Medusa*, and did make *Pegase*, the most swift Ship that was in all the world, and abode there a certain number of days, seeking the treasures of *Medusa*, and the riches on which she and her sisters had set their delights.

There found *Perseus* stones precious, and things marvellous. When his Ship was made, he filled it with choice ornaments, and leaving in this City, men to guide it, he went to Sea, and took for his Arms those of *Medusa*, and rested not till he came to the Port of the City, where reigned *Atlas*, saying that he would subdue him, before he returned into his Country.

This



This City had to name Septe. Atlas knew well the Arms of Medusa, and from as far as he saw Pegase the ship, he knew the Arms that were within: and he thought that Medusa had been banquished by these strangers, and doubted soze their coming, notwithstanding he did put his men in Arms, and bewailed much Philotes his Brother, otherwile named Hesperus, he that kept the garden with Apples of gold, with his Daughters. When his folk were Armed, he trained them in good order, and after came to the Port, where he was assaulted with diuers and sharp conflicts. Atlas was young, strong of body, and puissant of people, he defended him valiantly, and kept the Port with the point of his Sword, that by this assault Perseus conquered nothing on him in two days that the assault endured, but that was moze by the strong nature of the Port, than by the strength of the Sword.

Then when Perseus saw that he had not folk enough to take this Port, he withdrew him into the deep Sea, and sent into Naples unto King Pilonus half the treasures of Medusa, signifying to him his high adventure, and required him, that he would send him a thousand souldiers: the King and Danae had great joy of these tydings: and at the request of Perseus assembled fifteen hundred fighting men, which they sent into Lybia with his Son Danaus, whom they ordained chief and Captain of the Army: when Perseus saw come these fifteen hundred fighting men, he knew that it was flying succours that came to him; and took his flying Horse and went to meet them, and found there Danaus his Brother, to whom he made the most great cheer in the world, and entred into his Ship, and there abode all that day feasting him: and after when it came to be night, he commanded his Mariners, that they should sail toward Septe: And they said to him, that on the morrow they would deliver him at the Port. With that the Mariners laboured to do their best cunning: so that after the night was past, about the Sun rising they shewed to Perseus the Haven and Port of Septe.

Then was Perseus full of gladness, and calling Danaus, said, my Brother, we are now come to the Port, where thou shalt get this day honour if it please the Gods, for if the good adventure



adventure help us, the honour shall appertain to thee before me that durst not enterprize this alone by my puissance. Then in the name of our Gods let us employ here the head of Medusa, for my mind giveth me, they of this City standing before us, will be constrained to abandon their Port, and flee between the stone Walls of their City. My Brother (answered Danaus) I have good hope in Fortune, that she will be thy helper: but for the honour and worship of this work, it shall not turn to my profit, but unto thine, that art the Author of so honourable a work: and I desire nothing in this part but the name of a souldier: for as thy souldier, moved only by the love of our fraternity, I come to serve thee. And as for the riches of Medusa, had they not come into Naples with thy good fame, these Warriors had not come into Lybia. Then for conclusion, it is to be said, if in this work be honour, that it must turn unto thy glory and praise: but this notwithstanding, I will not fail thee: but for thy love and honour, I will endeavour to assault all that I may, and will serve and obey thee as my Lord and natural Brother. And I pray bestow on me the order of Knighthood.

With this word Perseus drew out his sword, and gave to Danaus the order of Knighthood: and afterward commanded that each man should furnish him with his Armours, and then made to display the Banners, Ensigns, Penons, and other Cognizances and Ensigns of war. After he did cause to sound his Trumpets, and then prepared all his Gallies, and set them in good order, and sailed so much that he came to the Port, which was all full and environed with Lybians, that they were ready to cast on them Spears, Darts and Stones: for they of that Country were expert in war. And to come a Shore at this Port there was a grievous conflict. Perseus was in Pegase, and assailed the Lybians at one end, and Danaus was in the Galley and assailed them in like manner. And they put them both in the most danger of the assault, they had great Shields and large, wherewith they covered them.

They dreaded no stroke of Glave nor Sword, but they put themselves into the midst of the Port, and there they gave the  
S
assault:



assault: where many were dead on the one part, and on the other, there were plenty of fighters in such wise, that at the end there were many Apulians overthrowen and put back, for they were then hot and eager: but after this, when they had gotten Land, Perseus and Danaus began to smite so unmeasurably upon the Lybians, that they beat them down without remedy. Also Perseus gave so great a stroke with his Sword unto Atlas, that purposed to have come and broken their ranks, that never after Atlas had no hope, nor durst not come among the strokes, though he was strong and puissant.

Too much covetous of victorie were Perseus and Danaus: the Lybians had not been accustomed to find so fierce and mortal arms, as them of Perseus. King Atlas knew not what to say: he encouraged his people the best he could. Notwithstanding, he saw them beaten down of his enemies without number, and saw further that they of Naples won alway. And when he had seen all this, and also beheld that these men had vanquished the Queen Medusa, he judged in himself that he was not puissant enough to resist their strength, and that the hardiness of this battel should be to him more dangerous than available: so sounded he the retreat and fled, not into this City, but into a very high Mountain that was there by: therefore say the Poets, that Atlas by the sight of the head of Medusa was turned into a Mountain. And from thenceforth was this Hill called Atlas, and bears the name unto this day. And forasmuch as Atlas saved him among the stones, he founded afterward a Castle there, where he dwelled until the time of Hercules.

#### CHAP. XXXIV.

How Perseus turned King Atlas into a stone: and how Queen Auria, Wife to King Prius waxed amorous of the Knight Bellerophon that refused her, wherefore he had much pain.

**W**hen Perseus and Danaus saw Atlas, and all his folk put to flight, first he chased them unto the Mountain, dying with their blood the Caves, Bushes, Trees and Herbs. And secondly when they had put them unto utter foil, as much



as they could, they drew to the City, and entring in, they found none but a little number of Matrons, and young children, which made a terrible lamentation. All the young men and women were fled unto the fields, and had abandoned the City with their folk and goods: when Perseus and Danaus were within, and saw that it was left to them and their people, they took all that they found, and passed that night with great joy and gladness, making great cheer, and thanking the Gods for the victory that they had given to them: and on the morrow, Perseus made to be beaten down the Gates of this City, after he commanded that every man should take his spoyle, and when they were laden with all, Perseus and Danaus went to the Sea into their Gallies, and sailed forth, leaving Atlas in the mountain, where he gave himself to the study of Astronomy.

In this time Jupiter made alliance with King Troos, by the means of Ganymedes: and in sign of love and friendship, he gave unto Ilion a picture of gold, which was set in the Palace of Ilion, as it shall be said in the third Book. And it was not long after that King Troos came to the course and end of his Reign and his obsequie was hallowed, and kept solemnly at Troy. And then Ilion was crowned King of the City, where he lived in amplification, and encreasing of his Seigniozy, and Lordship, and wedded a noble Lady of the City, of whom he received a Son named Laomedon. Forasmuch as I find not that Ilion did any thing after his Coronation, nor made other thing, save that he finished and made his Palace, I will speak henceforth of Laomedon his Son, that Reigned after him. And here I will leave the noble deeds of this Ilion: and yet ere I write of Laomedon, I will pursue my matter of Perseus. And to come thereto, I will recount an History that fell after that Perseus had turned King Atlas into a Mountain.

In this time then that Perseus began to give his life unto worthy deeds, and works of noble fame: Achrisius Grandfather of this Perseus, and natural Father of Danae, was put out of his Kingdom and Realm, and all the Seigniozy of Argos, by a conspiracy that Pricus his Brother had made against him. And there was left unto Achrisius of all his Realm, no more but



only the Tower of Dardan, whereto he fled for refuge. This Achrisius and Prycus, were natural Sons of Abas, lawfull Son of Linceus, that was only left alive, of the fifty Sons of Egeus, by the mercy of his Wife Hypermnestra, Daughter of Danaus.

Prycus then having usurped from his Brother Achrisius the Seigniorie of the Realm of Argos, had a wife named Aurea, that was so brought up, as of custom she had no delight, but to live in voluptuousness. And on a day she beheld among her servants so comely a Knight, that nature had forgotten nothing in him touching his body: of whom she was enamoured. She was young; and her Husband Prycus was ancient, and much less desired carnal concupiscence than his wife did, though they were both very near one age. This Knight thus beloved, was named Bellerophon. When Aurea had begun to love this Knight, she solicited him with her eye glances, and with her countenances, drawing him to delight and fleshly lust. But the true Knight, that had his heart firm and stable, which perceived well her countenance, dissembled, and feigned that he was blind in this part. And in the end when the Lady saw that by countenance nor sign amorous that she shewed, he employed him not once, to please her, but fled her company: in the most evil wise that she might, she intended to turn her love into hate, and her fair countenances into fiery malice, so envenomed, that for to make him to die, she accused him before her Husband the King Prycus, saying: that he would have enforced her, wherefore she required justice instantly.

At this accusation made, Bellerophon was present, and being astonished at the beginning, but hearing the Lady speak, at length he cleared himself, and excused him, saying: Madam, never please it unto the Gods, that for to cover mine honour, I do discover the dishonour and fault of another. Let never man advance himself by defaming another, I will say the truth, and if there be any man that may worthily prove this against mee, I will stand to the judgment of all Noble men that have known my behaviour. Alas Lady, from whence is come this accusation, for to charge me that I should have willed to enforce you?



you? When or in what place was it done, or where be the witnesses of the cry that you made at the affray, where be the proofs that shall say that eber in my life I was with you alone? It maketh me to marvel from what heart departed this dishonour? that ye note in me? and for what cause it is imagined against me? for I will well that all the world know, that I have served you truly and loyally, and that I never thought dishonour to you nor unto the King, to whom I pray that he will take and make information upon my living, and to understand in likewise yours. And if it can be proved and appear that I have trespassed, that I may be punished: but I pray also, if I be found innocent, that I may have speedy absolution.

Sir, said the Lady, that strongly was obstinate in her error, I make me party against him. If then I accuse him, it is truth, it ought not to demand witnesses of his folly. In this case I am worthy two witnesses: for all the world knoweth, that when an ill man will dishonour a woman, he calleth no witnesses nor no proofs thereto, but doth his damnable will the most secretly that in him is possible. And so thought Bellerophon to have done with me, wherefore I require sentence and judgment of him. With these words, Prycus assembled his Council, and it was judged that the Lady should be believed, and that Bellerophon should be culpable of death. Then spake Prycus to Bellerophon, and said. Fair Son, thou knowest and hast found that I have loved and nourished thee lovingly: thou understandest the accusation of thy Lady, the case is so foul, that it may not be purged by denying. For if it were so, the evil Wops and bad fellos, would all day dishonour as many of our women as they could find. In this case the Ladies have a prerogative for to be believed, and need not to bring forth witnesses. And forasmuch as thy Mistress hath banished thee, and required judgment of thy trespass, thou art condemned to dye. But forasmuch as that I know thee a valiant man of thy body, I will mitigate this sentence in this wise, that thou shalt go fight against the Chimere of Sicil, and if thou mayest overcome her, I will give thee thy life, and the plain absolution of all, upon condition, that never after thou renews, nor rehearse this trespass.



Sir (answered Bellerophon) sith that fortune consents, that I be attainted of any infelicity: and that the pꝛiviledge of the Ladies take place, and go aboue reason: I had much rather be vanquished by wrong cause and evil, than by iust and good cause, and thank you of the moderation of your judgment, and make bow here, that in all hast, I will go into Sicil, to pꝛobe me against the Chimere, and will see if Fortune will help me to get again my life, which she hath made me lose by your judgment. Then the Noble Knight departed, and took leaue of the King, he took also his Armour, and bargained with certain Mariners, to bring him to Sicil. When they were agreed, he went to the Sea, with little company, and was eil at ease in his heart, when he saw that Fortune was to him so contrary, yet he comforted himself in his good quarrel: and sailing on a day on the Sea of Hellespont, his Mariners looked into the west, and saw come a great float of ships of War, and they awoke Bellerophon that at that time slept, and said, that they were but dead and cast away.

Bellerophon comforted his Mariners, and told them that discomfort could not help them: and as he was thus speaking, a Galley of advantage went out afoze his fellows, and flying on the Sea like unto a bird, addressed her unto the ship, wherein was Bellerophon, and boarded it. And who that will demand what the name was of that Galley, and what men were therein: I will say to them that this was Pegase, and that Perseus was within it. As soon as he might speak to the Mariners that carried Bellerophon to Sicil, he asked of them, what they were, and into what region they would go? When Bellerophon heard Perseus speak, he beheld his behaviour and countenance, and iudged in himself that he was of a good house, and said to him: Sir, I have great joy, for that I see the Ship and Mariners be so well addressed, and in so good readines as yours be, for ye seem well a Knight of a noble house, and therefore I tell you my case after that you have made your asking. First then, where ye enquired what we be, know ye that in Argos we have taken our birth: and as to the second, I answer you, that we have a purpose to go strait into Sicil, to the which I



am constrained by the rigour of a mortal judgement, cast upon me at the instance of a Lady called Aurea, that unjustly and untruly hath complained upon me, saying that I would have enforced her. This Lady that I speak of, is Wife to King Prius, which newly and of late hath banished and exiled his Brother Achrisius out of his Realm, and this King, for to please and satisfie the accusations of his Wife, hath condemned me to be put to death, yet for the good and the acceptable service that I have done to him, he hath granted me to live, if so it please the Gods, that I may by possibility vanquish and overcome a Chimere that is in Sicil, unto the which I go, so I pray you that in our misfortune, we be not let by you, neither by none of your company.

Valiant Knight (answered Perseus) it is true that the heart of a noble man taketh pity and compassion in the distress and passion of his equal: the weighing of your case hath pierced mine heart, with a charitable mercy, by which ye may surely understand, not to have by us any hinderance during your unfortunate life. And forasmuch as the hearts of them that would be induced at calling to the deeds of Arms, singularly delight them in adventures of great worth and weight to get credit by, I will accompany you for two causes.

The first is, to expose my self to the disputation and destruction of the Chimere, if it happen that you overcome her not, which I suppose ye cannot. And the second is, that after the Chimere be vanquished, I may be guided by you unto the Realm of Argos. For from now forth I will be enemy unto King Prius, for the sake of the Father of my Mother, King Achrisius. And to let you have greater knowledge of this matter, I tell you that I am Son to Dame: that very same Son that was conceived in the Tower Dardan, of the seed of Jupiter and that same in person, that King Achrisius made cast into the Sea. But notwithstanding, I shall take no vengeance on his demerits, but for the honour of the blood, and of the womb of whom I issued, I shall succour and aid him, and pray you that ye will be my fellow and Brother in Arms, and that ye will come into my Valley, and send home again your Parriners into their Countries, if it please you

When



When Bellerophon had heard the good words and answer of Perseus, he made alliance with him, and entered into his Galley, and gave leave to his Partners, and accompanied him with Perseus and Danaus, that for love of him took their way into Sicil: where they shortly arrived: and the same day Bellerophon armed him, desiring to find the Chimere, and took leave of Perseus, in such wise, that he put him in peril of death. The Poets write that this Chimere, had the head of a Lyon, the womb of a Goat, and the tail of a Serpent, but for truth, it was a mountain inhabitable, that had in height above, a passing great Cae of Lyons, and in the middle of the Hill it was full of Goats. And at the foot beneath, it was environed and set round about with Serpents. These Lyons and Serpents were passing dangerous and noysome unto the Countrey about. When Bellerophon saw the Mountain, he went thither, and Perseus and Danaus followed him. They had not long marched, when they saw more than a thousand little Serpents, with many great Dragons; of whom some came about Bellerophon and cast out their venome, and the other passed forth, and came running upon Perseus and Danaus, who had promised to Bellerophon, that they would there perform nothing, unless they were constrained to defend themselves.

When as these three valiant Knights saw these cursed Beasts, they took their Swords, and smote upon them, and beheaded many of them, but with this they had great pain and travail, for these Beasts were cruel and full of pride, and hardened them eagerly to them, and if they had not been well provided with habiliments of War, they had there sooner found death than life. Bellerophon went alway before, and smote in pieces many. Perseus nor his Brother Danaus fought not, but with the Beasts only that came upon them. When Bellerophon had a little ceased the fight against these Mermines, and had found it more sharp and more biting, (for the point of his Sword was made terribly blunt, with striking against their hard scales, and skins) then there leapt down, and out of their holes the Goats, and the Lyons, and came down for to assail the



the Knight in so great number, that he was environed with them.

Some of these Beasts escaped from him and came to Perseus, and gave him his hands full to employ his strength and powers: the Lyons leapt about the neck of Bellerophon, sometimes in such number, that in no part he might be seen. Yet by his ability he could well save himself, but he had never escaped, there came so much venom upon him there, and beasts, and on Perseus and Danaus, which so fiercely assailed them: and if he had not won a Rock, upon which he got up with great pain. For to go upon this Rock, there was but one strait way, then compassed him the Lyons, and with them the other beasts, which stayed on the way of the Rock, and at the foot, roaring and making great noise about him, so that Perseus and Danaus had none other hope of the Knight, but that it had been his last day, for he had so many beasts about him, that it was likely that the edge and cutting of his sword might not long endure, without it were worn or broken. Then the Lyons when they might not touch his body bit the stones, and did tear them with their claws: the Serpents flew up into the ayre, and lifted up their bodies upon their tails, and cast fire and smoke out of their throats unto the Rock. And the most hardiest of the Lyons, one after another, trained themselves in battel against him, and shewing their teeth, received his strokes stoutly: And they fled not, but abode as beasts familiar, and sore covetous of mans blood, in whom reigned exceeding great fierceness, as much as in any wild beast at that time.

Hard and marvellous was the battel as Perseus and Danaus beheld, and thought in what fashion they might succour Bellerophon. The noble Knight defended him to his power, and seeking how he might save him from this peril he cast his eyes upon a great stone that hanged over the way of the rock, whereupon he was mounted, and then he thought if he might make that stone to fall down, that he should kill the most part of the beasts. Then he began a little and a little to move the stone, and to seek the jointures that held it, and so much laboured, that in the end he made it to fall upon the Lyons, Serpents, and



Goats, in such wise, as in the falling he made all the Rocks to tremble and feared in general these unhappy Beasts, so that they were there all bruised, like as the Thunder had come upon them, and yet that more is, with the tumbling down, it made the Rock that Bellerophon stood on, so shake, that he tumbled down thereon, and was so astonished, that he knew not whether it was day or night,

The stone was great, and brought down many stones with it. Perseus and Danaus thought at the beginning that all the Mountains had tumbled down, and were not very well assured in themselves. This notwithstanding, they beheld plainly in the end, and seeing after the noise of the Tempest, that their fellow lay upright all along upon the Rock, they supposed, that he had been dead. Then they made great sorrow, and approached the Rock, where they found the Beasts lying under the stones dead, and they went upon the Mountain, and then knew that Bellerophon was not dead: whereof they recovered great joy, and ceasing their sorrow, they took the Knight between their arms, and Perseus demanded how it stood with him, and how he felt himself.

#### CHAP. XXXV.

How *Perseus* vanquished the Monster of the Sea, and exposed himself against him for the love of *Andromeda*.

**T**hen Perseus and Danaus waited gladly the answer of Bellerophon, and held him for the most accomplished Knight that eber they saw. Perseus and Danaus searched this Mountain, and went into the Caves of the Beasts, but they found none, and still saw Bellerophon upon the Rock, for he might not go for the hurt of his foot. And then as the two Knights had fetched a compass and gone about the Hill, they returned to Bellerophon, and then Perseus said to him: My Brother, how well art thou worthy to have of me praise and commendation? Thou hast this day done a good and holy work, by thy worthy behaviour, thou hast gotten unto thy name the Crown of glorious fame, thou hast passed the strait way and passage of



of misfortune, from whence thou art issued clear as the Sun : And not only thou hast laboured for thy weal and utility, but for the good and profit of this Region ; for thou hast slain the Warders of the Serpent, and the Woosters of the Lyons, that kept this Country inhabitable, which shall from henceforward be inhabited, and occupied with people. Bellerophon was all abashed, when he heard the gloze that Perseus gave unto him, by meekness and humility that was in him ; and answered, If there be any woosthip in this woost, that it shall turn as well unto them as unto him, and they began to praise each other, and they eat upon this Hill the same night, after they had made Sacrifice unto their Gods. And thither came all the Apulians, where they made great chear. Afterward they took all the skins of the Lyons, and the heads of the Serpents that were dead, in sign of victoery, and laded them in their Galley, and they bare them with them into their Galley with Bellerophon, finally they went unto the Sea, and sailed toward the Port of Achæmes, but when they thought to have drawn unto this Port, suddenly there arose a tempest on the Sea, that they were constrained to abandon them unto the Wind, and passed forth by the Haven, and their fortune was such, that they were brought into Syria, upon the Sea of Palestine ; And they came into the Port and Haven of Joppe, where reigned Amon, and in Palestine reigned Cepheus and Phineus.

The same time that Perseus arrived there by means of this Tempest, the Port was full of Men, Women, and Children, that it seemed that all the world had been assembled. Perseus came thither alone, for his folk were dispersed upon the Sea. When the Syrians saw him arrive by force of the Wind, they assembled in a great number about his flying Horse. And King Amon seeing that it was laden with the heads of Lyons, he was sore abashed. For to know from whence was the Galley come, he enquired who was the Master ? At which inquisition answered Perseus, and demanded of the King in what Country he was arrived ? The King told him, that he was in Syria, and that the Realm appertained to him. When Perseus knew that he spake to the King, he said, Sir, I am driven unto this Port



by distress of weather, also my men are sore trabelled; by the tempest of the Sea, that hath been long troublous unto them; I require thee that thou be content, that I and they may come a Land here for to refresh us. And if it happen hereafter, that thou or any of thine have need of like courtesie in Naples, which is the place of our Dominion, I promise thee, by the promise and word of a Noble man, that the like merit and thanks shall be rendered unto thee. The King answered; Noble Knight, there be so many Spies now adays sailing by Realms and Countries, that a man may not well know to whom he may give credit or trust: Yet notwithstanding, I see well by your behaviour, that I trust ye will not give us to understand any other thing than truth. I tender to you the use of my Country, and pray you that ye will come and refresh you in my Palace: Furthermore I counsel you, that you come forth of your ship: for if ye stay there long, ye shall be in great peril: forasmuch as we know into this Port will come anon a Monster of the Sea, that will devour a right fair Virgin and Maid, which is here by, bound unto a stone, for the crime of her Mother, and by my sentence; and if ye tarry here till his coming, it is to be feared ye will hazard your lives. Boccace in the Genealogy of the Gods, toucheth not otherwise the cause why this Maid was thus exposed to the Monster, Wherefore I pass it over: And the said Virgin (as Boccace saith) was known by the name of Andromeda.

When Perseus had understood the hard fortune of the damo-  
sel, he desired to see her, for the marvellous judgment that was  
given upon her: and craved him with rich vestments, and then  
issued out of the Galley, and took out also Bellerophon, which  
might not yet help himself, and after he went unto Andromeda.  
There were her Parents and Cousins, in a great number,  
which laboured in sorrow and great plenty of tears. When Per-  
seus saw this Virgin, that was passing fair, which never saw  
her like, he had great pity of her, and said to himself, that if it  
were possible, he would deliver her from this peril. Then he  
called her friends, and said unto them in the presence of Amon,  
I have certainly great pity and compassion of this fair Dama-  
sel,



sel, and also am amazed how the Gods suffer that she should fall into this peril in her tender years. And if it chauce that she should have a Knight or Noble-man that would unbind her, and for charity expose his body against the Monster for the love of her, should she be quit? They answered yea: Ah then, said Perseus, if I would for her sake adventure my self in this work; and if it so fortune that I had the grace to overcome the Monster, will ye be content that the Maid be my Wife? they answered, yea, yea: And I promise you, said Perseus and swear, that she hath found me a Knight that shall put his body and life in jeopardy for her.

With this word Perseus sent to fetch his Arms; and after went to the Damosel and unbound her from the stone, and delivered her to her friends and kinsmen. Saint Augustine in the Book of the City of God, rehearseth, that yet in the same Port is the stone that Andromeda was bound upon, that they of Joppa kept for a sign and memory of the victory that Perseus had of the Monster. All they that were there, marvelled greatly at the enterprise of the Knight, and knowing the Monster, they judged him to be but dead, allowing his hardiness to them that seemed was too great. One and another spake of this matter, Perseus armed him joyfully: When he was armed, he came to Andromeda, and kist her, taking leave of her, and said; Fair Maid, pray ye unto the Gods for your Champion, that for your love submitteth himself unto the peril of death, to the end that by your only means I may come to the enjoying of Love, that we together may be joyned in Marriage, which I buy at the price of my life. Noble Knight, answered the Maid, I am more beholding to you than to all my kinsmen: know ye, that if my prayers may obtain of the Gods, ye shall return safe from this enterprise: then Perseus went before the stone, and Andromeda kneeled with great humility, with both her knees upon the earth, in calling on her Gods to help her Champion, and there were many Patrons upon the bank of the Sea, that for compassion put them in contemplation, and by this example of them, all the Syrians began to pray for the prosperity of the Knight, excepting only the King Phineas, which prayed for his



his death; and that for this cause, forasmuch as before this judgment given on Andromeda, he had affianced and betroathed him to her, so as he wished that the Monster might devour Perseus, to the end, that the Marriage of him, and of her might have been ended: When Perseus had put himself forth by the stone, he looked toward the Sea, and held in his hand a strong Sword, and he had not long beheld the Situation, and taken leisure to see the place, when there sprang out of a swallow or depth of the Sea, a Monster so horrible, and so dreadful, that it seemed he had been made for to destroy all the world, he was rough and went on four feet like a Beast, and his form was so disfigured, that none could tell whereto he might be likened.

When as the Syrians saw him put his head out of the deep, there was none so well assured, but he trembled for fear. And many were so afraid, that they fled into their houses, notwithstanding Perseus as soon as he saw him rose up, he came to him right well assured, and smote him with the point of his sword, so full upon the right eye, that on that side he made him blind, whereat the Monster came out of the Sea with an open mouth, and thought to have swallowed Perseus. And Perseus went back a little, and put his sword between his jaws into his throat. so far forth, that he could not draw it out again, and so it abode in his throat more than four foot.

At the second stroke, the Monster made a marvellous cry, lifting up his head, and thought to have cast out the piece of the sword, but it could not be. Alway the Monster assailed Perseus, and thought to have swallowed him into his throat: and Perseus alway strook at him with his sword, and put him at defence, and strook alway at his throat, and about, nigh his other eye, and so well intended the work, that after he had given him many wounds; he made him blind on the left eye, like as he did on the right. And then as the Monster went here and there, and made many walks without seeing or knowing where he went, pursuing his enemy, Perseus gave him twenty wounds, searching his heart, and at last he found it. And finally he bestirred him, so that he pierced the heart, with which stroke he made him fall down dead.



## CHAP. XXXVI.

How *Phineus* would have had *Andromeda*: and how *Perseus* answered him she should be his Wife.

**A**ll the Syrians were passing ioyous, and astonished, when they saw the good fortune of *Perseus*, and said one to another, that such a Knight ought to be praised above all other men. King *Ammon* took great pleasure to see his dealing, and seeing the Monster labouring in his death, he went down to him, embracing him and said, Sir, the Gods govern thy fortune, and since they have received thee in their labour and grace, there is none that may annoy thee: In a good hour wert thou here arrived, demand what thou wilt, and I will cause thee to have it. Sir, Answered *Perseus*, I have preserved from death the *Damocel*: I desire none other thing but her. O valiant Knight, said *Phineus*, thou dost much glorifie thy self: for thou hast gotten in a half day more honour, than any other Knight shall get in a hundred year. But beware that the beauty of this Maid deceive thee not: know thou that I have betroathed her, and by right she ought to be my Wife. And that in the presence of our Bishop, we promised to take each other in Marriage. This misfortune is after come to her, thou hast relieved her, and wouldst therefore have her. The beginning is fair, but the end is foul. And if so chance, that thou do me wrong, I let thee know that I will not suffer it, for in this Country I am a King, and have great powers: all the glory that thou hast gotten, shall here be quenched: wherefore I pray thee that thou forbear in this case, and that thou suffer me to take that which is mine.

During these words, *Perseus* looked toward the Sea, and saw from far his Gallies coming one after another, directing them towards the Port. Whereof he had great joy, and said unto *Phineus*. King, I make no doubt but thy power is great in this Country, but know thou, that I know no man living that shall cause me to leave that which belongeth to me. When I came hither, I found this Maid condemned unto death. At that



that time she was free from all men by her sentence. I have saved her: and I say to thee she shall be mine: But if thou wilt combate, and fight for her, assemble thy power, and make thee ready in thy battel. Lo here come my Gallies ready for to receive thee: and although I have not people enough, yet I have in my Coffers the most part of the treasures of Medusa, for to send for men of Arms in all places where I may get them.

When Phineus knew that he was the Knight that had vanquished Medusa, whereof the renown was very great, he could not otherwise answer to Perseus, but that he might do his pleasure. All the Kinsmen of Andromeda were angry with Phineus for his folly, and made him so ashamed, that he departed thence, and went into the City. After they went to behold the Monster, and then came sailing and rowing the Apulians unto the Port, and being come they brought Perseus and Andromeda into Joppa with great triumph: and Perseus and Andromeda were espoused that same day, and lay together. And the solemnity of their wedding endured fifteen days. During which time the Syrians came to the Port daily, for to see and behold this Monster. Plinius rehearseth, that of this Monster was born to Rome, a bone of forty foot long, as big as an Elephant. Let them then that read this History, search how great and huge this Monster was, when only one of his bones was so great. The Romans kept that bone in honour of this marvellous Exploit. At the end and expiration of this feast of the wedding of Perseus and Andromeda, Perseus took leave of the Syrians, and furnished his Gallies with victuals, and departed from Joppa, and went to the Sea, leading with him his Wife Andromeda. And Fortune was to him so good, that in a little time he passed the Seas of Syria, and came to Land at the Port and Haven of Thebes. Where he was received courteously of King Creon, that then reigned a young Child.



## CHAP. XXXVII.

How *Perseus* re-established in his Realm the King *Achrisius*, and how he slew the King by misfortune.

**I**F Thebes there refreshed them these Apulians, and made alliance with the King, after they departed from thence, and took their way by land towards Argos, under and by the conduct of Bellerophon, that then was healed of his foot, who knew well the Country. When Bellerophon had guided them so nigh Argos, that in an hour they might run before the Gates, he signified it unto *Perseus*: and then *Perseus* made his Host to tarry in a Valley, and sent *Danaus* unto King *Prycus*, to summon him that he should yield the Realm unto King *Achrisius*. *Danaus* went to Argos and accomplished the summons: King *Prycus* answered to him, that he was King, and that he would keep that title. *Danaus* returned unto the Host of *Perseus* with this answer, and made to him the report. *Perseus* then hoped that King *Prycus* would come to him, and give him battel, and had thereof great joy and pleasure, for he desired nothing in the world more than to be in Arms: and for to be the better able to withstand his Foe, he ordained that night that he would part his battel in three, whereof he gave charge of the first battel to Bellerophon, and he himself held the second battel; and to *Danaus* he betook the third: and thus when he began to set forth Bellerophon on his way, he had not far gone, when he saw from far King *Prycus*, that knew of their coming by his Espies, and had set battel in good order.

Bellerophon had with him but two thousand fighting men. When King *Prycus* saw him come with so little a company, he supposed that it had been *Perseus*, and thought to have utterly overthrow them at the first encounter and made his people to set against them, by which within short space began a cruel and hard battel. And of this battel was *Prycus* right joyful at the assembly. and well employed his Arms and Sword, but at that time as he supposed by force to remain victorious, he cast his eyes towards Thebes, and saw *Perseus* and his battel, that he wed  
 them,



themselbes: wherein his fortune was such, that in the beholding the head of Medusa, which he bare painted in his Shield of Chryssal, he and all his folk, in a moment, were turned into stones; that is to say, that he and all his men had lost their strength and courages, and that they might no more lift their Swords, than might a Statue or Image. Then Brycus fled, and all they that could fled, some into the City, and some into the fields at all adventure. Perseus would not follow the chase, because of their pooz case. And thus Prycus escaped the death, and abandoned and gave over the Country, and went with them that fled into Calidonia, where he was afterward put to death by Hercules. And Perseus went into the City of Argos, the Gates whereof were open, and there was no man resisted them. When he was in the City, he made an Edit, charging upon pain of death, that none be so hardy to use any violence or force there. After that he sent to seek his Grandfather Achrisius, and told him who he was, and so delibered to him again his City and Realm.

For this courtesie, Achrisius held himself greatly beholding unto Perseus, and asked him, and enquired of his daughter Danae, and of their adventures. Perseus told him all that he knew, and then Achrisius was sorry at that hard usage that he had done, and for to amend all, he adopted Perseus to be his son, and gave him the full power to govern the City, and himself withdrew him into the Tower of Dardan, and then sent again unto Naples Dardanus his Brother, with whom went Bellerophon, and he gave unto them, and to their company, great treasures at their departing. Perseus sent many Argiens into Lybia, and made them to inhabit the Country. And thus abode Perseus in Argos with his wife Andromeda, of whom he got many children; that is to say, Sthelenus, Blache, Demon, Erictus, and Gorgophon, which all became men, and betook wives, King Achrisius yet reigning. And among all other, Gorgophon had one wife, of whom he had two sons, Alceus and Electrion, Alceus engendred Amphitrion, and Electrion engendred Alcumena, of whom came Hercules. I will not say much of the facts and of the generations of this Perseus: he governed passing well the Realm.



realm, and loved much King Achrisius: but there fell an hard fortune unto him, for as he went on a night alone unto the Tower of Dardan to go visit the King, the Guarders of the Tower knew him not, and fell upon him, and hurt him; when he felt him smitten, he put himself to defence. The noise waxed great, the King heard the noise, and came running down to part the fray, thrust into the press, in such wise that Perseus knew him not, and with his Sword he smote him, that he slew him, and all the people with him: and anon after, when he came in, and found him dead, he remembred and thought he had put him to death, after the Prognostication of the Gods, and made great sorrow, and did ordain his Obsequie right solemnly. And at this Obsequie happened to be there, Jupiter and his Son Vulcan, which at that time practised together the Science of Magick, and Pigromancy.

At this time Vulcan forged and wrought the Thunders unto Jupiter; that is to say, he busied himself with troubling by fire and Sword, the Realms of his neighbours: Perseus then did great honour and worship unto his Father Jupiter, and likewise did Jupiter unto Perseus: and each rehearsed to other their adventures: but when the Obsequie of King Achrisius was performed, and Jupiter saw Perseus so heavy that he could have no joy, he returned into Creet unto his wife Juno, and there he exercised himself in the Art of Magick. And then when Perseus found himself alone in Argos, and saw that he could have no joy, he departed from thence and went to the City of Misene, but he reigned there not long, forasmuch as the death of Achrisius renewed always, and he could not put it out of his mind, and so departed thence, and withdrew him with a great Host into the Orient, where he got and conquered by Arms a great Country, which he named Persia, after his own name, and there founded the City called Persepolis, after that he had vanquished and put to death Liber Pater which made him war. And then when he had so done, he provided for his children, that his two Sons Alceus and Electrion, with Amphitrion and Alcumena, dwelled in Thebes, and Brachman reigned in Persia, Erictus upon the red Sea, and Stelenus in Misene: But



to speak of them all I will cease at this time, and will tell only of Amphytrion and Alcumena, that loved so well together, that they were contented to wed one the other. And the cause that mooveth me to write of these two, is forasmuch as of Alcumena came Hercules, who first destroyed Troy.

## CHAP. XXXVIII.

How *Jupiter* lay with *Alcumena*, and how *Queen Juno* sent two Serpents to slay *Hercules*, and how *Hercules* strangled the two Serpents.

**I**N this time when Jupiter came again into Creet, and that he with Vulcan his son, and Juno practised the Art of Magick, after that Vulcan had forged the Thunders of Jupiter, Amphytrion wedded the fair Alcumena in the City of Thebes, with a great company of Kings, Queens, and Ladies. The feast of this Wedding was great. Jupiter King of Creet, and Queen Juno were there. During the feast, Jupiter continually beheld Alcumena for her great beauty, (for Alcumena was the most fair woman that ever was seen) all his delight, and busie care was in beholding the Ladies. He desired nothing but to be always among the Ladies, and always had his eyes first on them: but in the end he beheld Alcumena seriously, in whom he had a singular pleasure. He so sore fixed his eye on her Excellency, that his heart began to be troubled, so that he was amorous of her love. In this his greedy covetousness, he let pass the solemnity of the Wedding, and returned into Creet; but he had not long sojourned, when the said covetousness wrought so vehemently in him, that on a day he began to speak of Alcumena in the presence of Juno, and said unto Ganimedes his Esquire, Ganimedes, what think you of the beauty of Alcumena? Sir, said Ganimedes, I think she shineth in all manner of Excellency, and to comprize all her Virtues, there is no King so great, but he may be of alliance with one that is of less beauty than she is.

When as Queen Juno understood that Jupiter talked so much of Alcumena, at that same time she was sore moved with new  
jea-



jealousie: For she had oftentimes been jealous of Jupiter and thought in her self, that if she might, she would cause to slay and put to death Alcumena. Jupiter found himself sore entangled and overcome with love, and to overcome it, he took his Bow and Arrows, in purpose to go to the wood for to slay some wild Beast, and went forth accompanied only with Ganymedes; but as soon as he was issued out of the Gate, there met him one of the Knights of Thebes, and did reverence unto the King and said unto him, that King Creon of Thebes sent him unto him, and required him that he would aid and help him to war against King Thellipolis, that had trespassed against him. When King Jupiter had heard the message of the King, he was very glad of the request of the King of Thebes, and took the Knight by the hand, and brought him to his Palace, and there feasted him, and after he said, that with very good heart and will he would succour and help King Creon in his war. The Knight of Thebes with this answer took leave of King Jupiter, and returned unto Thebes, where preparation and Ordinance was made to go unto Thellipolis. It was not long after that, King Jupiter made his Army, and made as much hast as possible he could, that shortly after he might come to the house of Thebes, where he hoped to find Alcumena. When all things was ready he took his way, and sped him in his journey, that he came to Thebes, where he was honourably received of the King, the Queen, and the Ladies. King Jupiter at his coming forgot not to look if he might see Alcumena, but he saw her not; wherefore he was in great grief, and knew not what to do. And he looked after Amphitrion, but he could nowhere see him, whereof he was more abashed than he was before. In this abashment he approached to King Creon, and demanded of him, where Amphitrion was? King Creon answered him, that he would shortly come, and that he assembled his men of Arms at the Castle of Arciancy, which he had given him. This Castle stood between Thebes and Athens upon the River, and was a passing fair place. Anon as Jupiter had understood, that King Creon had given Arciancy to Amphitrion, he imagined that Alcumena was in that place, and was minded to have gone thither, if it



had not been he dreading the talking of the people, and also he feared to make Amphitrion jealous. This considered, King Jupiter abode in Thebes, and passed there the time the best wise he could, till Amphitrion and other were come. Then they departed from Thebes, and went to lay siege to the City Thellipolis, accompanied with King Jupiter, and many other. During the siege, they of the City assailed oft times by battel against their enemies, but they of Thebes had alway so good fortune, that in the end, they of Thellipolis yielded them in all points to the will of King Creon. And thus when the King of Thebes had overcome and subdued the City, he returned unto his Country with great ioy.

When Amphitrion saw that their enemies were overcome, and that there was no more peril, he had great desire to go see his wife Alcumena: and to hast him the sooner to be with her, he departed from the Host, with leave of the King, accompanied with an Esquire only. When Jupiter saw Amphitrion so depart upon his way, he began to think of a great subtilty, to come to his intent. And he departed from the Host with Ganimedes only; and as soon as he was in the field on the way, they two being together, Jupiter entred into conference with Ganimedes, and said to him, I have great affiance in you, and more than in any man that lieth, wherefoze I will tell you a thing secret, which I shall accomplish as I hope: and ye must keep it secret. Truth it is, that I am amorous terribly of Dame Alcumena; by no means in the world I may yet forget her, nor put her from my desire: She knoweth not the pain that for her love aboundeth in me, for I never was so hardy to discover to her my case, nor never durst shew it to her, forasmuch as I know her wise, chaste, and virtuous. This considered, I confesse my folly, for I am in a manner in despair, fearing I shall not find the like answer of love in Alcumena. But the sudden departure of Amphitrion, yet giveth me in a manner an hope, for at the time that I saw him depart from the Host, to go see his Wife, accompanied with his Esquire, I imagined that in all hast I would go unto Arciancy, by a more near and shorter way; for I know the passage long since, and that I would



would transfigure myself into the form of Amphitrion, and you into the form of his Esquire, for to go unto Alcumena, and to make her understand that I am Amphitrion. Ganimedes, upon this intention, I am come on the way, to go thither with you, we must needs win upon Amphitrion, this way, a night and day, and therefore let us go now merrily: Methinketh that Love should help me; and when Alcumena shall see me transformed into the shape of Amphitrion, and you as his Esquire, she shall not be so wise to perceive my enchantment.

Ganimedes hearkened diligently to the will and purpose of Jupiter, and promised that he would employ him in this affair as much as in him was possible, and so they rode with great desire the readiest way, and in riding Jupiter went about his enchantments, and sped him so, that he arrived in an evening at the Castle of Arciancy. When he was there arrived, he transformed himself and Ganimedes, as he had before purposed, and then at the same hour that Alcumena slept, and that each man was abed, they came to the Castle, and so knocked at the Gate, that they awoke the Porter. The Porter came to the window, and looked down beneath, and saw Jupiter and Ganimedes by the Moon-light, and it seemed to him to be Amphitrion, and his Esquire, wherefore he opened the Gate and received him, as it had been his Lord Amphitrion. After, he brought him unto the doore of the Chamber where Alcumena slept, and awaked her, saying, that her Lord was come. After he returned to keep the gate, by commandment of Jupiter, and Alcumena opened her Chamber unto Jupiter, who entered in with great joy, and at the entry into this Chamber, Jupiter and Alcumena took each other in their Arms, and kissed; Alcumena thinking it had been Amphitrion: and when they lay folded in each others arms, Alcumena demanded from whence he came: Jupiter answered; he came from Thellipolis; and after the giving over of the Town, and yielding of their enemies, he departed from the Host, for the love of her, accompanied only with his Esquire, to come hastily to her: then Alcumena was well content with the words of Jupiter, and asked him, if he would eat or drink: Jupiter answered, that he would nothing but go to bed with her.



her. So he lay with her: and Jupiter had neber so great joy in himself. And going to bed-ward, he bade Ganimedes go to the Chamber dooz, and abide there without. And Jupiter approached to Alcumena with great love, and rejoyced in his heart, with excess of pleasure. In this manner came Jupiter unto the secrets and joy of love, so that to acquaint himself with this Lady, it seemed expedient to Enchant all them that dwelt in the place. And then he slept with Alcumena, and afterward he arose and came unto Ganimedes, which kept the Watch at the dooz, and told him, that for to do this matter secretly, he must enchant all them of that place, in such a manner, that they should not awake until the coming of Amphitriton. And he desired Ganimedes to go unto the Gate, to wait if Amphitriton came. And if (said he) it happen that he come by the day light I shall deliver to you a powder, that ye shall cast in the ay against him, and this powder hath such virtue, that it shall keep Amphitriton from approaching this place as long as the day endured: and then when it is night, and he knock at the Gate, ye shall come to me, and we will open the Gate, and bring him to his Wife, and after that we will return from hence.

The King Jupiter with these words wrought in his Science, and made his charms so, that all that were in the place could not awake, without a remedy against his enchantment. When he had so done, he transformed Ganimedes into the likeness of a Porter, and appointed him to keep the Gate. After he returned into the Chamber of Alcumena, and shut fast the windows, that no light might come in, and went to bed, and lay with the Lady, and there spent all the residue of the night, and all the day following, taking his pleasure with her so long that he begat on her a fair Son, conceived under the reign of the best constellation of Heaven. In the end, when King Jupiter had been with her a night and a day, and that he thought Amphitriton would come, he made by his Art Alcumena to sleep. After he arose up, and attized himself like one of the servants of the place, and he had not tarried long, but Amphitriton and his Esquire came knocking at the Gate, for it was then night. When Ganimedes heard him knock, he came to the Gate and opened



opened it, Amphitryon thought it had been his Porter: so he saluted him, and demanded of him where his Wife was: The haughty Porter said to him, that she slept, and so brought him into her Chamber: and Iupiter following, charmed him that he had no desire to eat nor to drink. When he came into the Chamber he awaked Alcumena, that was all abashed when she saw Amphitryon, for she verily supposed for truth, that she had seen him a good while before, and she groped about her in the bed, and when she found no person there, then she was more amazed than before. Notwithstanding, she arose and came to Amphitryon, saying to her self, that she had supposed to have seen him before: notwithstanding she made cheer to her husband, saying to him, that she had all the night dreamed of his coming. After they talked of many things. Finally, he went to bed with her, and lay with her that same hour, and then Alcumena conceived yet a son of Amphitryon. Iupiter and Ganymedes departed then from the Castle, and there left all sleeping, that were within the place, that none awaked till it was morning, and they had thought they slept but one night, but they slept a day and two nights, and this matter was handled so secretly, that no person could ever espy it. By this means the fair Alcumena conceived two sons, the one of Iupiter, and the other of Amphitryon.

By space of time, the fruit of her Womb began to appear, the tydings were bozn all about, and also into Creet, to the ears of King Iupiter, and of Queen Iuno. Iupiter hearing this, was passing joyful, in the presence of Queen Iuno. He beheld Ganymedes, and began to wax red, and after shewed a good countenance, and gave praises to the Gods, for the conception of Alcumena, and spake much good of her, so that the jealousy of this old Queen renewed, and she planted in her heart a great envy, and deadly hatred against Alcumena.

With the renewing of this envy, Iuno concluded, (being devilishly jealous) that she would slay and cause to dye Alcumena, by enchantment of sorcery: for in that craft she was an experienced Mistress. O old cursed woman, she held musing in her heart her cursed jealousy, and laid her ears to hear Iupiter,



pitier speak of Alcumena, without any thing replying again.

But finally, when she knew the time of the deliuerie of Alcumena, she departed secretly from Crete, and told Jupiter, that she would go disguised on certain secret Pilgrimages: then went she unto Arciancy, where was a Temple standing nigh the Castle, and was erected in remembrance of the Goddess Diana. Then Iuno entred into the Temple, not for deuotion, but to espy if any came from the Castle, of whom she might enquire the state of Alcumena. She was disguised by her craft. This Craft used afterward Simon Magus in the time of Saint Peter, and of the Emperour Nero. When she had been there a little, Galantis that governed Alcumena, was there a long time at her Orizons befoze the Image of the Goddess. And when she had done, she arose from her contemplation, and returning, this old Queen came and saluted her, and to come to her purpose, she said to her faintly: Dame, I pray you what do you call this place? It is (said Galantis) Arciancy, and this Temple belongeth to the Castle, and standeth between Thebes and Athens. Is not this (said Iuno) the place that Amphitrion and Alcumena dwell in? Yes said Galantis: And how fare they said Iuno? My Lord Amphitrion (said Galantis) is in good health, and my Lady Alcumena is ready to bring forth a Child, this is the last day of her expectation, and therefore I may no longer tarry: It is time that I return to her. The Gods protect you.

Galantis with this word went to Alcumena, which began to fall in travail, and Iuno remained in the Temple with intent to murder Alcumena. Then instead of saying her Orizons, she began to make certain deuillish Enchantments. This done, she laid her legs cross, one over the other and sate in that manner, and then the same moment and time that she had so done, Alcumena by the force of sorcery, began in the same manner, as Iuno did. In such sort, that there was no man nor woman that might make her do otherwise. The poor Alcumena felt then the most grievous and sharp pains in the world, for her fruit would come out, but it might not in no wise, forasmuch as her legs and thighs were so cross one over the other: she cryed  
and



and complained pitiously, and was in grievous Martyrdom. The Midwives could find no remedy; she was three days holding in this pain, alway her legs crossed one over another. During these three days, Galantis and the Ladies, and Women, one after another, came to the Temple of Diana, for to pray for the deliverance of Alcumena, and alway they found Juno with her legs crossed, and one over another. But they found her never in one likeness. For at each time she transformed her into divers likenesses, and figures, of Beasts, or of women, to the end that they should not perceive her, nor her Craft. Nevertheless, she could not transform her self, but Galantis coming oft into the Temple, perceived her, and found always there a beast or a woman, set in the same manner as Alcumena did. Alcumena had been then three days in pain. The fourth day, Galantis waxed angry at that she saw in the Temple; then she assembled the women, and said to them. Surely fair Dames, it must needs be, the pain that my Lady suffereth, cometh by Witchcraft, for the cause of all her sufferings, is because she cannot unfold her legs. This is mine advice, and I counsel you speedily to put in practice: For I have seen in the Temple, at all times that I have been there for this three days, a Woman, or a Beast, with legs crossed or folded, as my Lady hath hers: and truly I think, it is some evil creature, that beareth ill will to my Lady, and by her sorceries constraineth her to sit as she doth. If it be so, I will deceive her: For one of you and I will go into the Temple, feigning our selves right joyful, and glad, and will thank the Goddess Diana, saying all on high, that my Lady is delivered of a fair son. And then when the creature that always is there, and changeth her into divers forms, hath heard our Orisons, if it be so that she beareth any ill to my Lady, I doubt not but she will change countenance, and troubled in mind will depart, thinking she hath failed of her enchantment. And then if it be truth that I suppose, my Lady may have some manner of deliverance from her pain.

The women hearing these words, remembered them that they had seen in the Temple, the Women and Beasts that Galantis



lantis spake of, and were of opinion that Galantis should do as she had supposed. Then Galantis and one of the women went to the Temple, and entring therein, they saw on the one side where Iuno sat, as she had wont to do, and had transformed her self into the guise and form of a Cow. They passed forth confidently, without making any shew of sorrow, or other thing save only joy: and when they were come before the Altar, they kneeled down, and ioyned their hands together, and said: Diana, soveraign Goddess, thy name be praised in Heaven, and in earth, for thou hast given this honour to my Lady Alcumena, and helped her to bring forth into this world the most fairest Child in the world. With these words they rose up and returned again: and as they went, they saw the Cow suddenly depart out of the Temple, and ran up to the Fields, and in the same time and instance Alcumena arose, and was delivered of two fair sons, before Galantis and her fellow were come into the Chamber.

When Galantis was come unto Alcumena, and found there two fair sons, she was full of joy, for that she had deceived the false old Iuno. She told then unto the Ladies, and to Alcumena, how she had seen the Cow, and how she was departed from the Temple, and assured them that it was some evil person, and that she had held Alcumena in this danger by sorcery. The Ladies sent after to seek the Cow, but they heard never tidings of her: Of these twain the one of them was great and fair, and of exceeding excellency, and the other was little and feeble. The great Child was the first that was born, and was named Hercules, and the other had to name Ypecleus. Hercules as some say, was the son of Iupiter, and was like unto him, and Ypecleus was the son of Amphitrion. The tidings of this story was presently spread all about, and all them that heard thereof, were glad, save only Iuno: for she had never joy in her heart after she had heard it in the Temple that Alcumena was delivered, and had brought forth a son. She departed from the Temp'le, as is said in the form of a Cow, ceasing in her heart the Goddess Diana, and was so troubled that she had neither wit nor understanding, and thus  
sorrow.



Sorrowing, when she was a little withdrawn from the Temple,  
 she took again her own form of a woman: and went upon the  
 Mountain of Olympus, there she wared pensive, and began to  
 think what she should do: then she smote her self on the breast  
 and said: What a baileth it me to be bozn of the Royal blood of  
 Saturn? What a baileth me my Patrimony of the World of  
 Gold: what a baileth me the Diadem of Creet, and what a  
 baileth me the science of the World, that I have learned by  
 great study and labour, when the Gods be against, and contra-  
 ry me in all things. The King my Husband careth not for  
 me, no more in my old days, than he did in my youth. O For-  
 tune wilt thou never turn thy wheel? I behold of all my desires,  
 there is not one that may attain to effect, all shame and vexa-  
 tion redoubleth in me, and I am so put in despair, that my mis-  
 fortune must needs be cause of shortning and lessening the na-  
 tural course of my days: With these words she beheld the  
 Earth, and not the Heaven, and paused a while, and said: And  
 am I not well infortunate, and bozn in an evil hour: my craft  
 and sorcery a baileth not against mine enemy Alcumena, I have  
 failed against her, but surely I will prove my self against her  
 Son, to the end, that his Mother may be my fellow, and bear  
 me company to make sorrow. For I will slay her Son, and  
 by that means, she being the Mother, I shall give her cause of  
 grief and displeasure.

A cursed old Virago, conspiring then against the poor inno-  
 cent: then she imagined that she would take two Serpents  
 charmed to work the death of the Son of her Enemy, and that  
 she would some night put them into his Chamber, to the end  
 that they should strangle him. With this Conclusion, she de-  
 parted from the Mountain, and returned into Creet. There be-  
 ing, she so laboured by her science, that she did assemble on a  
 day secretly, all the Serpents of the Countrey. When she had  
 assembled them all, she chose two of the most felloneous, and  
 most enbenomed, and put them in her lap, and bare them home,  
 and after waited a day when King Iupiter had gone into a far  
 voyage: and then feigning that she would go on some Pilgri-  
 mage, she departed from Creet, and in disguise she came into



the Castle of Arciancy. The King Eugeus of Athens, and King Euristeus of Attick, were at the same time come into the Castle to make good chear: And it was in the evening when Iuno entred. She made her self invisible by her Craft, and sought all about to find the Chamber, wherein was the Son of Alcumena. She sought long, till she came to the Door of the Chamber, where there was a Window open. She went to the Window, and saw two Purles, and two Sons, whereat she was all abashed. Thus as she was pensive, Alcumena came to see her Sons, and feasted them in such fashion, that Iuno perceived and knew that both of them were her Sons, whereof she had great joy. For she concluded in her false and evil mind, that she would strangle them both by the Serpents.

Alcumena departed from the Chamber, by the space of time, and Iuno let the night wax dark. The Purles laid the Children in their Cradles to sleep, and they slept. And after they laid themselves down and slept, leaving a Lamp burning in the Chamber. Then when they were asleep, at that time that Iuno would accomplish her work, she opened her lap, and made to leap out the two Serpents, charmed and enchanted to work the death of the two Children, and put them by an hole into the Chamber. When they were within, they lifted up their heads, and smelling the two children, made unto them, giving the first assault unto Ypocleus, that they murdered him. After the death of Ypocleus, these two Serpents came to the Cradle of Hercules, that was awake the same time. When the Serpents were come to the Cradle, they went the one on the one side, and the other on the other side, and mounted on the cradle, but this was to their evil case: For as soon as they came up, Hercules perceived them, and was afraid, because they were fierce and dreadful, he then bestirred himself, and his Arms with such might and force, that he brake the bands in which he was swadled, and so laboured that he had his hands at large, and then when the Serpents ran upon him, he put them back by natural strength and force many times, and fought with them with his fist right long: but at last, when Hercules saw that the serpents oppressed him more and more, and ceased not



not to assaile him, he took in each hand one, making a great cry, and held them so fast, that he strangled them both.

The Purses awaked at the cry that Hercules made, and went to the Cradles to see their Children, and they found Ypecleus dead, and they found that Hercules held yet the two Serpents in his hands. Suddenly as they saw the marvail, they cryed pitiously. With that Juno the false Witch and Sorceress, had seen all, fled her way soze troubled and terribly angry at that, that the Serpents had not wrought and atchieved her purpose, as well on Hercules, as they had done on Ypecleus. And Amphitrion with Alcumena awaked, and came into the Chamber where the two Purses were, which made sorrowful and pitious cryes: and entring therein they saw Hercules at the one side still holding the Serpents, and on the other side they beheld Ypecleus all swoln with venome and dead: then deep and grievous sorrows entred into the bottom of their hearts, Alcumena to weep by natural pity, and Amphitrion was all afraid. Many Damosels and other folk came to the Chamber, which were all afraid to take away the Serpents for fear of hurt: And there was none so hardy that durst approach to Hercules, for the Serpents that he held in his hands which were swoln with venome. Alway Hercules made no heavy nor worse chear, but laughed to one and other, and was there in that case so long that Physicians and Chirurgeons came, and by their Science took from his hands these venomous beasts. When Amphitrion saw Hercules deliuered from the Serpents, he recomforted Alcumena, that was nigh dead for sorrow, and made to burn and bury Ypecleus. All they that were there had passing great marvel of the power and strength of Hercules, that was so young a Child, that by excessive strength and might had strangled them.

The Night passed in this fashion and manner that I have rehearsed. On the morrow betime, Amphitrion would shew and manifest his marvellous and glorious victory, wherefore he did cause to take Hercules, and made him to be born to Athens, into the Temple of the God Mars, with the two Serpents: And he in person went accompanied with King Euristheus.



steus. The false old Witch Juno, followed afar after in a dis-  
 sembling form and shape. When Amphitrión was come in-  
 to the Temple, he sent for King Egeus, and assembled the  
 people, and after took Hercules, presenting him unto the God  
 Mars, thanking him for the victory that he had sent to Hercules  
 against the Serpents. After this he lifted him up, and shewed  
 Hercules unto the people, recounting and telling to them his  
 marvellous adventure. And thus when Hercules was shewed  
 in the view and sight of the people, and that every man gave  
 him laud and praise: the false old Juno being in the press with  
 others, after she had long beheld the noble Child, that in all his  
 members he resembled and was like to King Jupiter, for to put  
 Amphitrión in jealousy of his Wife, she said unto them that  
 were about her; Certes Amphitrión is a very fool if he thinketh  
 that Hercules is his son: behold the members of King Jupiter,  
 and the members of this Child, ye shall find no difference. This  
 Child and Jupiter be both of one semblance, and have like fa-  
 vours and shape. And every man saith, that this child is the  
 Son of Jupiter, and none other. When this old Juno had sown  
 these cursed words, she withdrew her apart, and took another  
 shape to the end she should not be known: and then these words  
 were soon abroad, and told forth of them that heard them, in  
 such wise, that a great murmuring arose touching Amphitrión.  
 And it was reported to him, that men said so by the advertise-  
 ment of old Juno, when Amphitrión heard those new tidings,  
 he began to behold the Child, and in the beholding him thought  
 verily that this Child had wholly the very semblance and like-  
 ness of King Jupiter. And then began to enter into his heart  
 a great sorrow, and thus after he entered into a jealousy: yet he  
 kept silence, made as good countenance as he could to eschew  
 the slander. And after that the people were withdrawn he cal-  
 led King Euristeus and prayed him that he would bring up Her-  
 cules saying, that never after he would see him, and that he be-  
 lieved verily that he was the son of Jupiter. Euristeus comfort-  
 ed Amphitrión the best wise he could, meaning to have put  
 this jealousy out of his mind, but he could not. Euristeus enter-  
 prised to keep and nourish Hercules, and made him to be born  
 into



into his house: Amphitruon returned into Arciandie, where he found Alcumena sore discomfited for these tidings which she had received; and for to excuse her self to Amphitruon, and the false old Queen Juno, he went unto Crete. Of which matter I will stop now, and will come to speak of the first adventures of Hercules.

### CHAP. XXXIX.

How *Hercules* began the Olympiades, and how he waxed amorous of *Megara*, the Daughter of the King of *Thebes*, and how he shewed his strength in all manner of Games and Exercises.

**T**hese tidings of this Adventure of Hercules were spread through all the Provinces of Greece: some said that he was a Bastard, and the Son of Jupiter; and so recounted Plautus in his first Comedy, and other held that he was the very son of Amphitruon, as recounteth Boccace in his Book of the Genealogy of Gods: but whose son soever he was, Euristeus had him in keeping, and nourished him hardly, and not tenderly, without the City of Attick: for the King, and the Citizens, and Townsmen, in their time, made their children to be nourished out of good Towns, and made them to lye upon the bare earth, and naked, for to be more strong, without entering into Cities, until the time that they had power and strength to exercise Arms. Lycurgus had ordained this Law, and many other that follow. First, he ordained that the people should obey their Prince, and that the Prince should be firm in Justice, and live soberly, and that Merchants should do their Merchandize, giving one ware for another without any money, and that each man should revenge himself openly, and that a young man should have in a year but one gown, and that one man should not be more gallant and brave than another, and that no man should renew the memory of wrong passed; and that men of Arms should have no wives, to the end that they might be more eager and fierce in the war: and to content the fragility of men, he ordained, that in the night in the Hosts, should be cer-

rain



rain women common, in places called Fornices, whereof cometh Fornication. These were the Laws that the Greeks used in the time of the beginning and coming of Hercules. And for to come again to my purpose : Hercules was nourished in an house that stood in the plain fields, and was oftentimes put out into the rain and wind, and lay the most part of that time upon the earth, without any other bed : he lay oftner so than upon hay or dry straw. With this nourishment he waxed and grew in all beauty, strength and wisdom : he was humble, courteous and gentle. All good manners began to grow and shine in him : he was sober in eating and drinking : he slept gladly in the fields : he shot and drew the Bow. When King Egeus of Athens had heard speech of him, he commanded that his Son should be nourished with him, that was named Theseus. Hercules and Theseus were both of one age, and loved right well together. Theseus was strong and mighty, and a fair Child, and he had wit enough. Hercules passed him, and shone as far above him, as the sun shineth above the stars. When he was seven years old, he exercised wrestling, and overthrew and cast the greatest and strongest that came to him. Not one and one at once, but five or six, or as many as he might set his hands on : and did so great feats of strength, that out of Thebes, Athens, and Attick daily came men, women and Children to see him. The more and elder he grew, the more enforced he his strength. When he was ten years old there might no man stand or abide in his hand ; at thirteen years of age he began to handle and use Arms, and of his proper motion, he thought he would go to the Mount Olympus, and there he would abide and answer all manner of men thither coming for the space of fifteen days, and receive them in Arms, or in wrestling, or at any other proof or assay of strength : and for to come to the effect of this Enterprize, he waited a day when Euristeus came for to see him, and said to him : Sir, ye have nourished me unto this time, like as if I were your own Son, if Fortune were come as contrary as Fortune, I acknowledge that I should be the most unfortunate Child ever was born. For some say, that I am Son to Jupiter, and others say of Amphitryon, howbeit I have



have no Father but you only, that have nourished me with your substance. Wherefore I yield unto you as to my Father, and advertise you, how that I am purposed for to be on the Mount Olympus, in as short time as I well may, and there I will abide all them that thither shall come, fifteen days fully together: and for to deal with them at the Spear, at Sword, at wrestling, and at running, alway foreseen, that it be by your licence, and leave, and that it please you of your courtesie to give unto him that shall do best some prize, to the end, for to encourage the hearts of noble men unto valiantness, that they might attain to renown. Euristeus answered and said: Hercules fair Son, ye can require of me nothing that is honest and worshipful, but I will be thereto agreeable. Ye be young and yet ye are strong and puissant, and I know well that there is no man that is able to stand against you. Since it is so, that ye have the will so to do, I am very well content that you shall make the proof, and shew the strength of your youth: and for to effect and bring this Enterprize unto your credit, I will array you as richly as if you were my proper Son. My Father, (answered Hercules) I thank you of this grace and kindness, and since it is so your pleasure, it behobeth you to chuse a man of great understanding and authority, that shall go unto all the Realms of these Coastes, for to shew unto the Kings, Princes, and Gentlemen, the purpose and Enterprize that I have taken in hand: Fair Son (said Euristeus) you say the truth, you shall make your Letters containing your intention, and send them to me, and then when I have received them, I will use so good diligence, that ye of reason shall be content.

After these speeches and many other, King Euristeus went home, and Hercules took ink and Parchment, and set him to write in Letters the form of a Proclamation, which he made, that contained in this wise.

Greeting be to all Kings, Princes, Knights, Gentlemen, Ladies and Gentlewomen, from the Esquire unknown, and well Fortuned. We let you have knowledge, That the first day of the Month of May next following, the Esquire Unknown, will be on the Mount Olympus, for to shew himself in habiliments conve-



nient unto Arms, at the pleasure of the Gods and Fortune, and for to receive all them that be of noble houses and name, that will & shall come thither to try masteries in the manner as followeth. In the beginning of the first three days, he shall hold exercise of wrestling, and he that shall do best, by the judgment of the Judges thereto committed, shall win an Elephant of fine gold. The fourth day he will run a furlong or more against all them that will run, and he that best runneth shall win a fair Courser. At the fifth and sixt days he will shoot with the hand-Bow, first at the most straight and nigh marks, and after at the most long marks, and he that shooteth most straight and nigh at short marks, shall win a Glove of gold: and he that is best at long marks, shall have a Bow and a sheaf of Arrows. At the seventh, he will cast a stone against all men, and he that doth best thereat, shall have a right good Diamond. At the eighth day, and other following to the fifteenth, he will exercise Arms: and if any will prove himself one alone against him, he shall be received (foreseen that during the first six days he shall come and present himself unto the Judges) and he that so doth best shall have a rich Sword. And if it happen that they that shall come to this Feast will turney together in manner of a Battel, in Justing with Lances or Spears, and fighting with Swords or Barriers, the Judges shall ordain Captains, such as shall seem convenient, and who that best doth in this exercise or fight, shall win a Garland of Lawrel.

All these things before written, the said Esquire unknown promisseth to accomplish, and prayeth unto all Noble men, Ladies and Gentlewomen, that they will vouchsafe to come and see this meeting of Nobles, which shall be performed by the pleasure of the immortal Gods, who will give unto the accepters of this worthy Challenge, multipliance of honour, and encreasing of good Fortune.

When Hercules had written this Proclamation, and engrossed it, he sent it to Euristeus, who read it, and it seemed to him that the invention of the Authoz and maker was good, and very worthy to be kept in memory, and called one of his knights, and



and gave him the charge and office to go publish this Proclamation in the Courts of all the Kings of Greece.

The Knight enterprized with right good heart to do the said office: (and this was the first Officer of Arms that ever was) He went to Thebes, Argos, Lacedemonia, Arcadia, Perrelie, Magnelie, Crete, Ephese, Pepos, Tripoly, and Thessaly, and all about he published the Proclamation, without declaring who it was that should keep the Exercise: They that heard speak of the Squire unknown, and understood his Enterprize, judged him that this came of a noble courage, and that he might not fail to get Honour and Fame. The Knight for to finish this voyage, had four moneths time to accomplish it.

During this time, Hercules disposed him for to furnish his provision for the Exercises, and so did the Kings and Noblemen, for to come thither. When the even before the first day of the Exercise was come, King Euristeus brought Hercules upon the Mount Olympus, and from all parts came thither so many Noble men, Ladies, and Gentlewomen, that the number might not be esteemed; the mount was full on all sides. All this night there was great ado, and noise of one and other, for to make their Tents and Lodges of Boughs and Leaves, and to pitch their pavilions. And it ought not to be forgotten, when the even was come, how the Knight that had published the Challenge, assembled in a common Tent, all the Knights that were come thither, and required them in the name and on the behalf of the Squire unknown, that they would chuse among them such as should be Judges, and give the prize: when the Kings that were there, heard and understood the request of the Noble Squire, they thanked him; and they chose three Kings to be their Judges, that is to say, the King of Thebes, called Creon, the King of Argos, named Gorgophon, and the King of Myrmidon, named Elon, which was father of Jason, they were wise and discreet, they enterprized the office with a good will. and that night they passed over with great joy, for they assembled in a Tent which was made for to dance in, and the Kings with the Knights young and old went together: and thus began the Feast, which endured till midnight in Dances and Songs.



The King Jupiter and Amphitruon were not at this assembly by the Counsel of King Euristeus, that let them have knowledge secretly, that Hercules was he that should hold this sport or exercise, for to eschew all words and languages, that might grow or rise up because of the possibility of Hercules: for Amphitruon on the one side believed not that he was his Son, and Jupiter on the other side said that he appertained not to him. He sent them word therefore, that they could do no better than not for to come to this solemnity, which was a most special thing, and the most strange that ever was spoken of before that time: the first day of May, at the hour what time the Sun casts his heat upon the Earth, Hercules did cause to sound a Trumpet, to make the Ladies go up into the Scaffold and places appointed: and after they being mounted and set, Hercules leapt out of the Tent apparelled to wrestle, and came into the midst of the place or field, making reverence unto the Judges, Kings, and to the Ladies: he was then fourteen years old full accomplished: and as he had done the reverence, the Knight that was Officer of Arms, made a cry and said: High and Excellent Judges, We let you have knowledge, with all Kings, Knights, and Gentlemen of Arms, Ladies and Gentlewomen, that here is the Squire Unknown ready present in his person, upon the Mount Olympus, and offereth himself to fulfil the Contents of his Challenge, by order, and after the manner that the particulars thereof make mention. Wherefore if there be any man that will prove and assay him at Wrestling, let him come, and he shall be received.

Theseus of Athens, at the end of this Proclamation, and at the commandment of King Egeus his Father, entred then into the field: he was a passing fair Child and a gentle, at his coming he saluted Hercules, and said to him: Master of all bodily Exercise, I am come hither, not of presumption, but for to learn those things that I have need of, and therefore I recommend me unto your Grace. My Brother Theseus, answered Hercules, I may more learn of you, than you of me: wherefore let us endeavour to win the prize, it must be begun by some body. These words accomplished, the two Noble Esquires approached



proached, and seized each other. Theseus employed his puissance, and Hercules suffered him to do as much as he would or could, without shewing and putting out his force and might again to him. And so they shook and lugged each other, but in the end Hercules cast Theseus, the most softly and favourably that he could. Whereat the laughter was great among the Ladies and Gentlewomen. Theseus then departed from the place, and went among the Ladies and Gentlewomen, praying them that they would take in good part what he had done: then came unto the place many young Squires, of whom I know not the names, and they endeavoured and travelled all that they might for to get honour and worship, but their labour profited little unto them, in regard of getting the prize: for Hercules cast and foyled all them that came, and the wrestling dured four hours continually: At the last, at the request of the Ladies, the Judges made the wrestling to cease for that day, because that they saw that Hercules was young, and that he had done a great work.

When Hercules had understood that the Judges had made cease the wrestling, he was sorrowful, for in his wrestling he had a singular pleasure. The Judges then with Euristheus came to him, and made him do on his cloaths and array him. After they brought him into the Common Hall, whereas the Ladies were dancing and singing joyously: and it was said to him, that he must dance and sing like as others did. Hercules excused him much, but his excuse might not avail. He was set on to dance in hand with Megara a fair Gentlewoman, of young age, being she was well furnished with understanding: and she was daughter of King Creon.

When Hercules saw him in the hand of so noble a Gentlewoman, he was sore abashed and ashamed. The Gentlewoman on the other side was also shame-faced: for as soon as she had seen Hercules wrestle, she had set all her love on him. And they knew none of them both what to say: howbeit instead of words, they used pry and covert countenances. Hercules took a singular pleasure to behold the Gentlewoman; and the more near the Gentlewoman was to Hercules, the more he set his heart:



heart on him. Love in this night enforced and constrained them to love each other without speaking, and their beauty was cause thereof: men could not have found in all Greece so fair Children, nor of better qualities. They were enough beholden and looked on, and in especially Hercules for his prowess; and every man marvelled at him, and at his behaviour.

By space of time, when Hercules was brought from the feast into his Tent. His Tent, and the Tent of the Kings, and of the Ladies, were made but of branches, with leaves and herbs, giving good odour and savour. It was not known how to make Tents of cloth, nor of silk then. Hercules passed this night, more intending to think on the beauty of Megara, than for to sleep. The day following, at hour convenient, he came to the sport, and there were many young men strong and active, the strongest of all Greece, but Hercules with one arm threw and cast them; and that day, and the day following, he cast and flung to the earth, more than three hundred, and there could not so many come to him, but he cast them down, and put them to foil, without any chafing himself or grieving; and at that time he got very great glory and honour there. Megara oftentimes beheld him, and in likewise did the Ladies and Gentlewomen, and many there were that set their love on him. And thus he passed the exercise of wrestling to his honour three days. At the fourth day he assembled all them that were come thither for to run, and he made them that were most feeble to ride upon the Coursers that were in Greece, and after he shewed them the furlong or stade, and made them take their way and run, and he run after the Horse and men, but he passed all them that ran, and without taking once his breath he ran the furlong, and came thereto before all the riders and runners; wherefore he was greatly praised, and had a great laud; and some say, that he ran as swiftly as a Hart. Of this course that Hercules made, all the world wondered, and held it for a marvellous thing, and wrote it in Books, among other things worthy to be put in memory.

At the fifth and sixth days following, Hercules took his Bow and his Arrows, and went unto the place that was ordained for



to shoot in with the Boto, and the Ladies and the Gentlewomen were there. Hercules and many other shot at a most straight, and near mark, but that by shot he exceeded all the highest: for he shot always in a little ring of Gold, and as for shooting at a long mark he passed the furthest in the field twenty four strides: his Bow was so great that it was the burthen of a man. No man could bend it but himself. It was a pleasure to see him, for he got great praise and fame two days, and yet he got more the day following, which was the seventh day of the Sports: for when it came to the casting of the stone a far, one after another, then he cast it employing his strength in such wise that he passed six paces further than any man that at that time employed himself in that Exercise.

Then they that were come to this Feast cryed with a high voice, the Esquire unknown is neither the son of Amphitri- on, nor the Son of Jupiter, but he is the Son of the God of Pature, which hath garnished him with double force and redoubled it an hundred fold: in his infancy he banquished the serpents, and in his youth he surmounted in wit, force, and valour all the world. Blessed be the womb that conceived him and bare him, for to glorifie Greece: For certainly the time shall come once that he shall be the glory of the Greeks, and their triumph, and well shall help them if they have need.

Such were the words of the Kings, of the Ladies, and of the Damosels, of the Nobles, and of the Valiant, each man praised him in his guise. The fair Megara heard gladly the commendation, and praising that men gave him, but yet she saw him more gladly do his feats and valiancies, and it is no marvel though she saw him gladly, and gave her to behold him: for in Hercules was that, that was not in other: his beauty surmounted the measure, and the great portion and quantity of his force and strength. After that each man that would cast the stone had done, he went into the common Tent, where many an amorous man was with his Lady, and there he began to put himself forth a little, and his speech with one and other became him: for he had a right high and clear voice. Megara and Hercules in this evening oftentimes beheld each other secretly, and  
Z  
their



their countenances were fixed on each other often, and then of force they changed colour. In this changing of colour there was not a vein in them but was moved. And by this moving grew amorous in abundance, with deep sighs, which were nourished in the Abissins and bottoms of their hearts.

Among all other things, for to speed the matter, the Kings and ancient Knights assembled them in council, for as much as they had many young Knights that were come, and had abidden from the beginning of the feast, for to do feats of Arms against Hercules. The puissance and strength of Hercules was well considered of in this Council, and forasmuch as it was very likely, that no man might stand against him, it was ordained that he should do no deeds of Arms hand to hand, and that the days that were yet to come of the residue of the feast from two days to two days, they should turney in manner of battel, whereof should be Captains two Kings that were there, to wit, Tandarus that was Father of Menelaus, Husband of fair Helen, and Ixion that was King of Thessaly. These two Kings took on them with a good will this charge, and it was ordained, that Hercules should let them all Turney until the time that the one party were at worse, and that then he might help that party of suffering the worse, unto the time that he had brought them to match their betters. This ordinance was shewed in the Tent by the Officers of Arms: They that were afore-named to fight man for man against Hercules, were right joyous of the new ordinance. The feast then ceased and one and other withdrew them unto their Tents: on the morning they came to the fields for to begin the first Turney, and there were five hundred Esquires, and three hundred Knights all Armed as to go into battel, saying that their Swords were rebates and not sharp, and that their Spears had Rapiers of tree, or of wood. The King Tandarus and the King Ixion were richly arraged, and well horsed, and armed well with barded curets, and ran in the most hardiest place of this assembly: there was no more but an hundred Knights on horseback, for horses at that time were but little known nor used: all they on horseback, and they on foot were parted into two companies, and delibered



libered to Tandarus and Ixion, and had all they ought to have, they that had hozses, at the sound of the Trumpet were ready to run, and ran one against another, so couragiously, that they troubled all the Air with Dust and Powder that arose by their Hozse feet. At the bickering each met with other ofentime, and there were some overthzown under the hozse, and tumbled up side down at joyning : and some there were that brake their Spears Knightly and Chivalrously, for there were plenty of valiant Knights. But in the end when the Knights on hozseback had done their endeabours, and that they set their hands on their Swords, the footmen began to renew the Turney with so great a stir and noise, that all the Mount redeounded, on the one side, and on the other, there were many spears broken, and Shields unjoynted, they joyned with their Spears eagerly, their strokes and foyties were great: each man shewed the quantity of his force, it was joyous to see the spears fly in the Air by pieces, there were great cryes, none spared other, ancient nor young. The ancient fought with the young : the young men by great courage learned and shewed the old men. When their Spears were broken they took their Swords, wherewith began a new ado, joyous and pleasant, they cutting their Helms, and hewing on their Shields so couragiously, and in especial they of the part of Ixion, that they of the part of King Tandaros were constrained to call for Hercules unto their rescue.

When Hercules heard that they cryed after him, he was passing joyous,, for it was a grief to him to be idle, and to see others labour. He was nigh by the Turney beholding them that did best : he had also his sword in his fist. At the cry of them that were put to the worse, he went unto their aid, and began to turney on the side where were the greatest strokes given, so pleasantly, that it was joy to behold. The King Ixion came against him to maintain his prowess, and to hold together his folk : but for his welcome Hercules smote him on the Shield, that all astonished he bare him to the Earth, and down from his hozse. Then began there a great shout, and laughter, and as well one as the other began to apply them to the rescue of Ixion, Hercules put himself into the press, and made



heaps on all sides, so great that Tandarús and his folk recovered, entred into the battel with their counter-party. At that time began again the Turney strong and sharp: they that fled, took heart, force and vertue to them again, by the well doing of Hercules, and recovered vigour and strength. Hercules of all them that were there was taken heed of, his strokes surmounted all other without all measure, and he brought again Tandarús to match his better with little labour. Finally he did shew so great promises that day, and in the days following, that he was commended above all the men in the world. There were three great Turneys and notable, at each Turney, as soon as it happened that one party was put back, and to the worse, Hercules by his well doing recovered them, and put them up again. No man took heed but to his glory: every man said well of him at dances and at feasts, every man loved him, every man worshipped him. there was no tongue of noble, nor of base, but that gave him laud and praise, whereof the conclusion was such, that all the prizes abode with him, and also there were given unto him many gifts of the Kings that were there. The days of this solemnity drew over, and the last night the Kings and the Ladies, and Nobles assembled in the common Tent, and of one common accord they would that from year to year, they and their heirs should hold and renew the feast that Hercules had begun and Established, for they saw that it was the most honourable pastime that ever was made in Greece, and named the feast Olympiades, because of the Mount Olympus, And they had it so in estimation that from thenceforth they dated their Edicts, and their Letters of continuance, with the year of the first Olympiade, &c. In such wise, as we say the year of the Incarnation. These things ordained, given and promised, the Officer of the Arms of Hercules, thanked all them that were come to this Olympiade. After that each took leave of other and departed on the morrow, and thus finished and ended this feast.



## CHAP. XL.

How Hercules sailed by the Sea into *Hesperie*, and how he vanquished the Isle with the Muttons or Sheep, and vanquished *Philotes*, and slew his fellow.

**A**T the departing, Hercules passed not greatly for the departing of all them that were there, saving for the departing of *Megara*: he knew not the malady of love, until the time that he saw her depart into the Countrey. *Megara* went unto *Thebes*, and Hercules drew him to *Athens* pensive, and thinking much of his Lady: and soze desiring to see her, he went in the company of *Euristeus* unto *Athens*, where they feasted them four days long. At the fourth day tydings came, that unto the Port and Haven were come strange folk by fortune, which were cloathed in very pleasant Robes and Garments. When King *Euristeus* heard these tydings, he sent to fetch these strangers to him, and asked them from whence they were, they answered, they were of the West, and of the Region of *Hesperie*. Where is the Region of *Hesperie* said *Euristeus*, and what manner of Countrey is it? Merily answered one of them, I think that in all the world is no better Countrey, for there is abundance of all things that be necessary for mans life, and I can tell you, that in the places of our dwelling, and where we have our haunt, there be many Islands lying about the furthest parts of *Mauree* beyond *Ampolesie*, where groweth all the best things that men can think, and there is a King named *Philotes* Son in Law to a King named *Atlas*, which is of the generation of the Greeks: and it is not to be forgotten, how the King *Philotes* accompanied with the Daughters of King *Atlas* lately found an Isle very pleasant, as was his adventure. This Isle is all plain, without Mountain or Valley: and there be therein so many Sheep and Muttons, that it is marvel, which he kept and cherished there as if they were of fine Gold. Of these Muttons that I speak of, we have our Robes and Gowns made: we and they that may have them must buy them at a great price of fine Gold. We eat the flesh and cloath us with the skins. And know ye for certain, that



into this Ile is but one entry, and he entreth not therein that would, for the King Philotes and another Gyant which be subtil, and marvellous strong, alway keep the entry of the Ile and alway the one waketh, while the other sleepeth.

Surely (said King Euristeus) by that, that I have understood of you, the Ile that you speak of, is of great Excellency. This Philotes that you make mention of: what man is this Philotes? The stranger answered, that he is the most redoubted and dread King of the West parts: he is a Gyant that by his force and strength hath conquered the Ile with the sheep, and hath put out them that dwelled and inhabited there before. He is so strong, that it is but late ago, that he said, if he could find a man stronger than he is, he would never after bear Arms to fight in battel, during the life of that other.

The King Egeus then gave leave to the strangers to depart from his presence, and commanded that no man should hinder them in their returning toward their Countrey, and they departed. Euristeus abode with Egeus, and Euristeus came to Hercules, and Theseus, and wished by a great desire to have of those Buttons, saying to them, that he would that it cost him as much gold as a pair of Buttons weigh: and that he had a Ram and an Owe, for to ingender in his Countrey. In that time were no sheep in Greece. When Hercules had heard the desire of King Euristeus, suddenly he said to him. Sir, you have a desire to have a pair of Buttons, appertaining to the Daughters of Atlas, by the conquest and Arms of the strong Gyant Philotes. I promise you here for truth upon my Gentleness, that by this day three weeks, I will depart by water or Land to fetch them: and I will never return into Greece, until the time that I have found the Ile, and that I shall oppose my self against the Gyants that keep it, and will assay if I can get the Ile from them, like as Philotes had gotten it from another. When King Euristeus had understood the enterprize that Hercules made, he was passing sorry, for he loved Hercules as well as if he had been his own son. He dissuaded him from that Enterprize, thinking to have broken it: but Hercules answered him so discreetly, that Euristeus was content to let



let him go unto this adventure, and Theseus with him.

The renown of this voyage was spread abroad in all the Countrey. Egeus and Euristeus made ready for their two sons a very goodly Galley, and furnished it well with all manner of things. At the end of three weeks they went to Sea, and with them many Noble Greeks, and rowed till they came into the deep Sea, where they sailed and rowed many days, without finding of any adventure to speak of. For at that time the Sea was but little used, neither of Thieves, nor yet of Merchants. Their Master or Pilot, in process of time brought them unto Hesperia, that afterwards was called Spain, and there sought so long the Isle with the sheep, that at last they arrived at the place. The Giant that was appointed to keep the entry of the Isle, slept not when the Greeks landed. He then issued out of his house, and came armed unto the strait passage where no man could go up, but one at once, that he cryed unto the Greeks and said; Sirs, what seek you here? Hercules answered, we seek the Buttons that be in this Isle, for to carry some of them into Greece. Have ye (said the Giant) money enough? if ye have, ye shall have enough. Shall we (said Hercules) not have them otherwise? No said the Giant. Then said Hercules, let us have them at the price that ye got them? How (said the Giant?) the King Philotes did conquer with his Sword, the Isle and the Buttons. Hercules answered: my intent is likewise to conquer the Isle from him. If you will defend it, hast you: ye shall have the battel against me, or else let me have the Isle, that I may do therein my will.

When the Giant understood the conclusion that Hercules made, he made him ready to defend the place, and blew a great horn that hung there upon a Tree. At the sound of the Horn, the Daughters of Atlas awaked Philotes, and told him, that some were there to get the place: and that the Giant had blown the horn. Philotes with these words arose up, and saw that Hercules by main force had put back the Giant (what except Philotes, was the best man of Arms in all Hesperia) he was soze abashed, and very sorrowful: But notwithstanding  
this,



this, he had not tarried there long, when Hercules smote the Gyant on the right shoulder with such force, that the Gyants shield fell from him, and bruised his Arms, and his Sword entred into his body so far, that it pierced his heart, and he fell down dead at his feet.

When Philotes saw the Gyant dead, he came unto Hercules, for to defend the place, saying: He would be reuenged for his Gyant, if he might. Hercules rejoyced when he saw Philotes come to the place, and said to him: King thou art welcome, I rejoyce at my heart, that I shall probe my self against thee. Then say there is no stroke but of the Master: Now let us see how we shall work together. And happy be he whom Fortune shall labour. Philotes hearing these words, came unto the place, and with a great Wole-axe he smote soze upon the Shield of Hercules, and made him to stagger a little. Whereat Phylotes began to laugh, and thought to haue smitten again Hercules with that Wole-axe, who was ashamed of the other stroke. And he then guarded him well, and Philotes striking at him, he caught it, and plucked it from him, and threw it into the Sea. Which made Philotes wonder at the force of Hercules: And losing this his Wole-axe, he took his Sword, and renewed the battel afresh. Philotes had the advantage for Hercules was under him. They assailed one another fiercely, and well defended their bodies. All this day they fought without ceasing, so long as the day endured: the night drew on, that they must cease, then they both laid them down upon the place. They slept not, for it was no time, but they both kept a watch, and they endured it well, for they were accustomed for to wake, Then being awake, Philotes had many words with Hercules, and demanded from whence he was: And Hercules told him the truth. Then they talked of their battel: and at the desire and request of Philotes, they promised each unto other, that if any of them both were banquished and overcome, for saving his life, he would serue the banquisher all his life after.

During these speeches and promises, the Day-star that the Poets call Aurora began to arise in his Reign. The Air was fair and clear, the Stars shined. At this hour Hercules cast his eyes



eyes among the Stars, and seeing there Aurora to shine above all other, he began to remember his Lady Megara, saying: Alas Megara, where are you now? I would it pleased the Gods, that you remembered me, as well as I remember you. In truth the light of this same Star inflameth the amorous fires wherewith I was late seized by the administration of your beauty. Be be as far shining in beauty above the maidens of Greece, as this Aurora shineth above all the other Stars, of whom the number is so great, that no man can tell them. O noble Megara, the right clear Star, your remembrance illuminateth mine heart, like as the Star illuminateth the Heaven and me thinketh that by this remembrance, when I come to the Battel, I shall prevail the better. Wherefore I promise you, if Fortune help me to my desire, you shall have part of all that I shall conquer.

Hercules was glad of the thinking and remembrance that he had of his Lady, and took his Sword, and said to Philotes, we have paused long enough, lo it is day, and the Sun riseth, it is better that we exercise deeds of Arms now, than when the rapes of the Sun are greater: let us take our time before the great heat come and let each of us do his best. Philotes that was all ready, was joyful when he heard Hercules, for he thought in his mind, that he should soon, and in little space speed this matter, and he said unto him: Hercules I am ready, and was since yesterday, to obtain this battel; guard you as well as you can, you have slain my Giant the stoutest and hardiest man that was in all the west, wherefore I am much displeased, but at the least, since his death cannot be recovered by the death of another, I will do my endeavour to get a new souldier, and that shall be you, or else my Sword and Fortune shall fail me. Shall I so said Hercules? And if your Sword and Fortune shall fail you what then? By my honour said Philotes, that besel me never. And if any ill fortune and misadventure run upon me, that I must needs be your servant; let it be on condition, that I shall never go after into battel at my own adventure or none other during your life: neither for you or any other will I fight, unless it be in mine own defence. With-

A a

out



Put other words the two Champions assailed each other, and fought together so valiantly, that the place redounded with their strokes. In a little space they had their Shields unfastened by great blows. Philotes laid great strokes on Hercules: but yet his strokes were not so great, but Hercules might bear them well enough without grief or suffering great damage.

Thus began the battel again of the two Gyants. Hercules was as high as a Gyant, he was right fierce in Arms, he did much to get the standing, but yet he might never attain to strike Philotes a full stroke forasmuch as Philotes was above on the passage, which contained well two cubits of height. When Hercules saw and knew that Philotes kept his standing without adventuring to come down, he would feign himself weary, and so by little and little he began to strike moze feebly than he did before: after that he recopled himself, and struck from far as if he had fainted, and been weary. The Greeks were afraid, and thought he had been weary: and then Philotes sprang down from the standing, thinking to have put him to the fople: but then when Hercules saw him before him, and that one was no higher than another, then Hercules came to his place again, and gave so great a stroke to Philotes, that he made him recopl and go back more than four foot.

Philotes was then abashed, and repented that he descended from the standing: but that helpt not, for it might not avail. Then he took courage and lift up his Sword, and wounded Hercules on the left Arm, that the blood sprang out.

When Hercules saw the Arms of Philotes besprinkled with his blood, he made none other countenance, but that he would suddenly be avenged of the stroke. In giving to Philotes three strokes, with the first he brake his helm, and struck him on the head, and with the second he gave him a great wound on the right shoulder, and with the third stroke, he made his sword to fly out of his fist: and then he caught him in his arms, and after long wrestling he cast him to the earth, in such wise that Philotes yielded him servant unto Hercules, and promised him to serve him truly all the residue of his life, and also that he would bear his Arms after him in places where he shall go.

Hercules



Hercules received to mercy Philotes: And then called Thefeus and his company, who came, and were joyful of the victory that he had obtained. Then Hercules, Philotes and all the other went into the Isle, where they found the Daughters of Atlas, greatly discomfited for the death of the Giant. And forasmuch as Hercules had also conquered Philotes their keeper. Hercules and Philotes comforted them the best wise they could, and there the Greeks refreshed themselves for three Days.

The fourth day he took 30 Rams and 30 Ewes, and brought them into their Ship, after they went to the sea, without any harm doing in the Isle, for the love of the Gentlewomen: they departed thence accompanied with Philotes, which was conquered by Hercules, as is said, and after loved Hercules well, and truly, and served him ever after. But of their journeyes I will cease for this time and will speak of a Monster of the sea, that the Gods sent to Troy, to devour the fair Exione, Daughter to King Laomedon.

## CHAP. XLI.

How Hercules fought at the Port of Troy against a Monster of the Sea, for the Daughter of King Laomedon.

**N**OW in that time, as Boccace rehearseth in his genealogy of the Gods, in the third Chapter of the sixth Book: Laomedon the King of Troy was busie to fortifie his City with Walls and Towers. He was not well furnished with Treasures, nor with money: for to accomplish his desire, he went unto the Temple of the Gods, of the Sun and of the sea, that were passing rich, and took all the money that he could find, promising to pay it all again at a certain day present. By means of this money, he fortified the City of Troy with Walls and Towers: the work was costly, yet in little time he finished it: and it was not long after the Work was finished, but the day came in which Laomedon should pay and render unto the Temples of the Gods the money he had taken and borrowed. At which day the Priests of the Temples came unto Laomedon



medon, and demanded of him, if he would render the obligations and offerings he had taken out of the Temples? Laomedon scorned to speak to the Priests, but sent them word shamefully, that they should return and keep their Temples, wherefore he was after sore punished, for the same night after he would not hear the Priests, the great Winds began to rise and beat one against the other, and caused the Sea to rise in such wise that it came so far into the Town that it filled the streets full of water, and drowned a great part of the Town. Beside this, in eight days following, the Sun shined so ardently, and gave so great heat, that the people durst not go into the air by day time, and that dried the superfluity of the Water of the Sea, that was left, whereof rose a corrupt and mortal vapour that infected all the City, whereof engendred so great a Pestilence, that the most of the Trojans were smitten to death by the great influence of the corrupt air.

By this Pestilence, they of Troy, fell in great desolation, the Citizens dyed (without speaking,) suddenly. The Father could not, nor might not help his Child in necessity, nor the Child the Father. At this time reigned in Troy, neither love nor charity: for each man that might save himself, fled away for fear of this mortality, and left the City, and went to dwell in the fields, and among all other, the King Laomedon seeing the Destruction of his Realm, went into the Isle of Delphos, unto the Temple of the God Apollo, for to have counsel of Apollo, touching the health of his City. With Laomedon went most of the Nobility and powerful men of Troy: When they were come into the Temple, they put them in contemplation and Devotion before the Idol, and the Devil that was therein, answered them and said. The money which was taken out of the Temples, and not rendered and paid again, is cause of the malady and vengeance of Troy. And let all the Trojans know, that Troy shall never be free from this malady: unto the time that the said City provide to appease the Gods in this wise: that every month they must chuse one of the Virgins and maids, which must be set on the Sea side for to be devoured by a Monster, that the Gods shall send thither: and the said Virgin shall be



be chosen by lot or adventure. And in this wise must the City do to appease the Gods, until the time that they find out one man that by force of Arms shall overcome the said monster.

When they heard this answer, Laomedon and the Trojans assembled to council, and concluded, that for the Commonweal and health of Troy, they would put their Virgins in that jeopardy and adventure, to be devoured of the Monster, without exception. Then they returned to Troy, and took their Virgins and cast lots among them, and on her that the lot fell, she was brought to the Sea side, and anon after was seen to come out of the Sea so great a Tempest, that it was sore troubled, The Sea wrought and a great flood of Water lifted out the Monster by times out of the Sea: He was as great as a whale, or a Hulke, and then he took the Virgin and swallowed her, and went again into the Sea: and ever after the Pestilence ceased. Thus Troy was delivered from their sickness by the oblation of their Virgins, that were offered unto the monster from Month to Month: and thus (as is said) the Virgins were devoured up. It happened in the end of a Month, that the lot fell to one of the Daughters of King Laomedon named Exione: this Damosel was young and fair, and well beloved of all people. When this Lot was faine on her, she was not only bewailed of Laomedon her Father, and of his Son Priamus, and her Sister Antigona, and Kinsmen and Allies: but of all the Trojans, men, women, and Children: notwithstanding their weepings, nor the good renown of her, could not save her, she was put to the disposing of the Monster. The Noble Virgin was ready to obey the King her Father, and went forth with to the Sea-side accompanied with Lords, Ladies, and Gentlewomen, with a great train of Citizens and Merchants, all which bewailed her hard Fortune. At that time that she was brought thither, Hercules (by chance) arrived at the Port of Troy with his Button: and willing to refresh him there, made his men to cast Anchors, and going out he saw the Trojans weeping and bewailing Exione in casting abroad their arms, and wringing their hands that he had pity to see it. And Desiring to know the cause, he put himself into the press, and



saw where they bound the fair Exione in the rout, attired with  
 Royal attire. Hercules moved with compassion to the Dama-  
 sel, addrested his language unto King Laomedon, for as much  
 as it seemed, that above all them that were in the place, he  
 was a man of authority: and demanded of him, wherefore the Da-  
 mosel was bound there? Laomedon casting his eyes bedewed  
 with tears on him, and was all abashed to see his greatness, and  
 beauty: answered him, what art thou that art so hardy to de-  
 mand of me my misfortune, which is common to all in Troy?  
 Sir, (said Hercules) I am a stranger, and I love the honour  
 of Ladies, and there is nothing that I can do for them, but I  
 will do it unto my power: and forasmuch as I see this Gentle-  
 woman thus intreated, in the favour of all Ladies, I have ask-  
 ed of you the cause, and I will know it, or put my self in ad-  
 venture for to dye with her. And therefore I demand again,  
 what trespass or sin hath she done, that these men thus bind  
 her? My son (answered Laomedon) I see well that you are ig-  
 norant and know not the reason: there is no man but he may  
 well know it, for she shall dye for the safety and health of Troy:  
 and I will tell you the cause thereof. The Gods of the Sea  
 and of the Sun have plagued and grieved Troy, with a great  
 Pestilence that took his beginning with a super-abundance of  
 the sea, whereby the streets of Troy were full in every place  
 of Water. After this Deluge and Flood, the time was mar-  
 vellously and outragiously hot, by the great heat of the Sun,  
 whereby this sea was dried up. Of this dryness or drought  
 engendred a vapour infected, and of this vapour issued a pesti-  
 lence. And for to resist this Pestilence, I have been at the Or-  
 zacle of the God Apollo, where I have had answer, for to cease  
 the pestilence, the Gods of the sun, and of the sea, command  
 that from month to month, be taken in Troy, one of the Vir-  
 gins by sort or lot, to be exposed and offered, in this place, unto  
 a Monster of the Sea. The Trojans were content to fulfil  
 the will of the Gods, and I with them. We have cast our  
 lots upon our Virgins, whereof many be swallowed and devour-  
 ed by the monster, and now the sort or lot is fallen on my daugh-  
 ter, & will she or not, we must needs obey, and appease the Gods,  
 After



After her shall come another, there is no remedy : and this shall endure upon the Virgins of Troy perpetually : for it is the Destiny that Troy shall be never quit of this hard servitude and thralldome, till the time that they have found a man, alone shall vanquish and overcome the aforesaid monster, by his valour and prowess : which will be impossible, for he is of that strength, that all the men of the greatest City in the world, cannot find any way to vanquish him, he is so great and dreadful. So my Daughter shall dye for the Common-wealth of the place of her Partibity. She was bozn in a good hour, when the Gods will, that by lot and this Fortune she is offered to them. Sir, (answered Hercules) truly I think there is no City under Heaven so bound and thral as yours: it ought to be understood that the Gods will not suffer that this judgement shall hold and endure for ever. You must live in hope, If Fortune and the Gods will do me the grace, that I may vanquish and overcome the monster, and make Troy free from this servitude, what reward would you give me ? Truly said Laomedon, I think it impossible for you to vanquish the monster. For who is he that will expose him to so great a folly ? Hercules answered, unto a valiant heart is nothing impossible. If I triumph over the monster, and save thy Daughter what reward shall I have ? Laomedon answered. If thou canst do as thou sayest, I have two horses, the best in all the World, which I love as well as half my Realm, I will give them to thee as to the best Knight of the World, Sir, (said Hercules) it is enough for me, and I desire but the Horses. Let me alone with your Daughter. For I am confident that this day I shall labour for the Common-wealth of Troy, and that I shall enfranchise and set free the Virgins and Maids of this City. But I pray you if there be in your City any great Bar of Iron or Metall that you will send for to fetch it to me, for to defend me withal.

The King Laomedon and the Trojans were all abashed, when they knew the enterprize he undertook: and at the request of Hercules, the King remembred him of a great Club of Iron, that lay at the entrance of his Palace of Ilion, that was so heavy



heavy, that the strongest man of Troy had enough to do to lay it on his shoulder. He sent for it, and presented it to Hercules, and Hercules lifted it up as it had been a little blade. Philotes and Theseus were present at all these things. Hercules took leave of them, and of the people, and recommended him unto their prayers, and forthwith the Sea began to roar terribly. Laomedon and the Ladies, and they that were there took leave of Exione and Hercules, and recommended them unto the mercy of the Gods, and went upon the Downs to see the event. Thus abode Exione alone and despaired on the grabel: but Hercules kneeled on his knees upon the grabel, turning his face unto the East, and made his prayers unto the Gods that made the Monsters and terrible Beasts, requiring them that they would give him force, strength, and vertue of power for to deliver Exione from her misfortune of the Monster. His Prayers accomplished, Hercules entered into a little Boat, that Exione was in, and anon after the Sea roaring more and more, it grew and arose in such wise that the Boat floated and was lifted up, and bozn by divers Waves. After this, in great trouble of Mind, when the Sea was risen in great abundance of waters, Hercules and the Trojans saw coming the great horrible Monster, bringing with him a tempest so terrible that it seemed that all the Monsters of Hell had been with him. He made the waves to redouble hideously, he lift him above the water, and put out his Posel unto his Shoulders, so that by swallowing of the water, there sprang out of his mouth great floods of the Sea, and mounted so high that it seemed to be a gulph that had pierced the Clouds. For to say the truth of this Monster, he was so horrible and fearful, that the most hardy and absolute of Troy, trembled to look on him. Notwithstanding Hercules was nothing afraid, but comforted Exione who was almost dead for fear. The Monster came by the Boat, and cast his Posel unto Exione, thinking to have swallowed her, as he had done the other Virgins before. But Hercules took his Club, and smote so vehemently on his Posel that he gave him a great wound, so sore and heavy to bear, that he made him to recoil back into the bottom of the Sea. Then by  
the



the falling of the Monster into the Sea, the waves arose high into the Air, whereby Hercules and Exione were all wet with the washing and sprinkling of the Waves: and their Boat was bozn by the Waves upon a Bank of Sand, where the Sea was so low, that the Monster might not well swim with ease unto them. Then the Monster made after them, and coming nigh to them, lifted up his head, and in the lifting up, there issued out of his throat so great abundance of Water, that the Boat was full, and sunk, in such case that Hercules was in the Sea unto the great of his thighs, and Exione stood in the Water unto the middle.

When Hercules saw him in this case, he had great displeasure in himself, more for the pain and grief that Exione had, than for any fear he had of himself. The King Laomedon, Theseus, and Philotes, and all others, supposed that Hercules and the Damofel without redemption, had been deboured of the Monster: the Monster then seeing his prey, leapt against Exione with a terrible Wave. Hercules had his Club ready on his neck, waiting for nothing but the Monster desiring to avenge him of the displeasure that he had: he then discharged his Club on his head so mightily, that the Bar entred therein, and the blood sprang out: then was the Monster enraged against Hercules: so he ceased the assault of the Damofel, and assailed Hercules, and always as he lifted his head out of the Water, he disgorged upon Hercules great floods of the Sea. Yet notwithstanding, he could not do so much harm to Hercules, but Hercules did more to him. Hercules followed him with his Club, and made him to sink again into the bottom of the Sea, by the huge weight of his strokes.

The Battel endured long between Hercules and the Monster. If the Monster had once touched Hercules, he would at one mouthful have deboured and swallowed him. He had a wide and a great throat out of measure: he made a great noise and cry, he was fierce in exercising his fury. But Hercules fought with him boystrously, and held the Virgin by him. And do what the Monster could, he did no sooner lift up his head out of the Water, but with one stroke of his Club he was driven



back alway unto the bottom of the Sea. And Hercules was oft times in peril of drowning. The peril was great, and more than I can rehearse. Fortune was with him and the Damocel, so that he fought and beat the Monster valiantly, and so endured in smiting continually on his Pel, and on his head, that the Sea withdrew, and took from him the spirit of life, then he all to bruis'd his brains, and so vanquished him and slew him. And after when the Sea was withdrawn and far ebb'd, he took Exione by the hand, and brought her upon the Ditch, and delivered her unto her father King Laomedon.

## CHAP. XLII.

How Laomedon shut Hercules out of Troy: and how Hercules swore that he would avenge him.

When Laomedon saw his Daughter thus delivered from the Monster, and Troy made quit from the dangers, he bowed and thanked Hercules: after he came to the Sea side, accompanied with Hercules, Theseus, Philotes, and with the Trojans. And went to see and behold the Monster, that was so great, that three hundred Horses could not move him from the place where he was. They all looked to see the strokes that Hercules gave him, yet they could not see all. But at that they saw they marvelled: for Hercules had broken bones, that it seemed not possible to break, and they had found the head hurt in so many places, that they could not tell whether he had a head or no. Of this high and incredible victory, the Trojans rejoiced marvellously, and honoured Hercules more than any man in the World. When they had seen and beheld the Monster enough, they departed, and brought Hercules into Troy. When they came to the Palace, and found Exione clothed with new array and vestments: And as for Hercules, all that he had upon him was wet. Laomedon would have had him to change his wet cloaths, and put on dry, but Hercules refused; saying, that he had been accustomed not to be at any at his ease. Then Laomedon brought Hercules unto the Castle of Ilion and his Greeks with him, and feasted them as it appertained. Hercules and his Greeks did triumph four days in Ilion. During these  
four



Four days. The Trojans went out in great numbers to see the Monster and gave so many praises to Hercules that Laomedon envied thereat, and feared the people would love Hercules better than him. He sent Hercules and his Greeks out of the Town to hunt: and as soon as they were out of Troy, he drew up the Bridge, and shut the Gates against him. When Hercules thought to have entered, Laomedon spake and said to him from far that he had moved the City against him by conspiracy, and that he would receive him no more into the Town. Hercules was exceeding wroth, when he understood the accusation of Laomedon: and answered him, that he had never any thought of ill towards him, and offered to prove himself clear by battel, and to venture his body against thirty other, if they would prove or maintain the contrary: which offer Laomedon would not accept. Then Hercules desired him to deliver the Horses that he promised him, for the victory of the Monster. Laomedon answered him, he would deliver none. Why said Hercules? Forasmuch (said Laomedon) as it is my pleasure not to do it. False and unworthy King (said Hercules) dost thou withhold from me the reward due to my desert and reward me with evil for good? I swear to thee by the Gods, that as I have delivered Troy perpetually by my Club from the Sea-Monster: in like manner, by the same Club, I will yield and deliver up Troy to the Desolence of war and death, if the Gods withstand me not: and I do intend to make the Trojans say, that they were happy that died in the Desolence.

Hercules (full of wrath) with these words left Laomedon, that set little by what he had said: for he put all his confidence in the strength of the Walls of the City: and he thought that no man might annoy or grieve him. And then Hercules went again to his Ship, and sailed away with his Club, and his Sheep and his fellow Theseus. Philotes thought himself happy to be vanquished of so valiant a man as Hercules was, and he took on him the Office of his Harness bearer, in all places where he went. From Troy unto Thebes fell nothing worthy to be put in memory, that is of Record. In the end he arrived in Greece, and was certified that Euristheus was in Thebes:



whereat he rejoyced greatly, for he thought he should see the Lady Megara, who he greatly desired to see. He went then unto Thebes, where he was solemnly received of King Creon, that had him in great estimation for his valour, one and other came and welcomed him: he sent his Sheep and Muttons unto King Euristeus by Philotes, who recounted, how Hercules had conquered them, and him also, and how he had slain his Giant at the passage: of these tidings was King Euristeus passing joyful, and so were all they that were there, or heard speak of it. Every man glorified Hercules, Ladies and Gentlewomen came and welcomed him. Among all other Megara failed not, she came to Hercules, and welcomed him, and it well became her to welcome him. She was wise and of good manners, and surely her coming rejoyced Hercules more, than all the honours and praises were then given him, albeit that all the world praised and exalted him for this voyage, above all the Greeks. And the Sheep were so desired, that Kings bought them for their weight in Gold: wherefore the Historiographers and Poets put this Conquest in perpetual memory, writing among his deeds in this manner. *Subtulit mala aurea*, that is as much as to say, that he bore away the Muttons of Gold, forasmuch as they were esteemed worth their weight in Gold. For *Mala* in Greek is as much as to say, Sheep in English: or Muttons in French: thus saith Boccace, in his Genealogy of Gods, and so approveth Varro likewise, in his Book de Agricultura.

By this conquest, the name of Hercules began to fly in honour through the world. The Poets feigned upon this History, that the Daughters of Atlas had a Garden kept night and day by a Serpent waking, wherein grew Apples of Gold, and that Hercules slew this Serpent, and gathered and bare away the Apples. By this Garden is understood the Isle: by the Serpent waking, the subtle Giant committed to keep it, that alway waited at the passage. And by the Apples of Gold are understood the Sheep, esteemed to the value of their weight in fine Gold. Then after this presentation made to Euristeus of the Sheep and Muttons, each man marvelled at the prowess of Hercules, but Philotes added and gave to his overcomer Hercules.



Hercules, praises upon praises, and added honour upon honour : For because Kings and Princes, Ladies and Gentlemen heard him, and seeing that Hercules held his peace when he might have embraced honour, he declared from point to point his adventure against the Monster of Troy, and shewed the Club wherewith he had put him to death : but after that he rehearsed the honour and grace that he had gotten in Troy, and the wrong that Laomedon had done to him : he said so much thereof, that they promised to make War against Laomedon, for to take vengeance of the wrong, he had done to Hercules.

## CHAP. XLIII.

How Hercules entred battell against Laomedon : and how he vanquished and destroyed Troy the first time.

**I** Think it is impossible for my pen to relate the honour that Hercules got in Greece at his return from Troy. Those Kings and Princes thought themselves happy that reigned in his time. Amphitryon his supposed Father, began to receive him into favour, and into Thebes to him : His Mother Alcmena came also, and surely she rejoiced greatly, when she saw her Son, which was so greatly renowned. The Noble Lady had not seen him in a long time before : but now she saw him triumph in honour and prowess : so that the annoyances, griefs, and troubles she suffered for him, being supposed the Son of Jupiter, (whereof she thought her self innocent) were then all forgotten, and put in oblivion. The Feast was great in Thebes for the love of Hercules, and the general report was only of the valour of Hercules. Creon, Euristheus, Egeus, Amphitryon, and many others, assembled together : and made ready their forces for the siege of Troy. By space of time their Army was ready, and they took their leave, and Hercules was made Captain of this Army. He went to the Sea accompanied with the Kings abovesaid and ten thousand men all chosen for the purpose. At the time convenient the Mariners dis-Anchored and set sail. And they arrived in Phrygia, unto a Port of a City named Laryse being nigh to Tenadon. This City was



of the confines of Troy: for which cause the Greeks assailed it and took it by force, and after that rised it, and took all that was therein. And when they had spoiled it, they went to Tenadon, which was a rich City, they assailed it, and took it, and they set it on fire, and burned it, and the air was enflamed, that it was seen in Troy, how the City burnt. The assault of Tenadon dured not long, because the Trojans were not adber-tised thereof. When they saw the air so enflamed, for to see from what place the flame came, they mounted and went upon the high Towers of Ilion, and looking towards Tenadon, saw that the City was all on a fire, whereat they that saw it were greatly abashed. About this they looked into the Sea, and saw coming towards them a fleet of Greeks, whereof they were more abashed than before. And without any longer tarrying, they descended and went down into the Hall of King Laomedon, and said to him, Alas Sir, what is best to be done? the Greeks come upon us with an exceeding Army: we have seen them and know them. The strong Hercules menaceth you for to destroy your City. Surely, I believe it is he. For he hath burnt Tenadon, and that is it that causeth the air to be full of fire.

King Laomedon hearing this news, began to tast of the evil trespass that he had committed and done against Hercules, notwithstanding to give courage unto his men and to his son Priamus, that was at that time of the age of 20 years, he did cause to sound to Arms, and made him ready, and with his arms shewed a fierce semblance. This done, he armed Priamus his Son, that never had been in battel before, and dubbed him Knight, after he took him by the hand, and issued out of Ilion; In issuing out he met many Trojans, that told him, that at his Port were landed many Greeks, and had destroyed Tenadon, and that unless he hastied him, they would soon take Land.

Leomedon without speaking any word, passed forth by them that had brought him these tydings, and came unto a place that was there by Ilion, where he found more than twenty thousand Trojans armed. And seeing them he began to joy in himself, and called the Principals and said to them: Lords, ye be renowned



noted in all the World by the high prowess of your ancestors: Before that Troy was Walled, they defended it with the Sword against their enemies: the renowned King Jupiter of Crete, could not get this City, nor the Thessalonians by their War, could never subdue this City. At now happeneth this day, that a new assembly of enemies come upon this City, and as men say, they have put the fire in Tenadon: let us go and receive them courageously, and let us make them like as our Fathers have made others.

When the Trojans heard these words of their King, they answered all, that they would live and dye with him: and that they had intention to keep his honour, and to make grow their ancient glory. Without holding of long process, the King Laomedon did then display his Banners. After he issued out of Troy. And then as he began to conduct and lead them forth, suddenly he heard at the Port, a passing great noise of Trumpets, Clarions, and Tabors of the Greeks.

Then his blood began to chafe, for he knew that they were his enemies: And as soon as they knew they were Greeks, without holding of any order or measure, they dislodged them, and began to run to the Port, one before another. When they approached the Port, they espied the Greeks. Then they challenged them unto the death, and ran upon them sharply. The Greeks were furnished with good Armors, and put them to defence, and began to skirmish the one with another so unmeasurably that in the boarding and meeting there were many slain and hurt. Hercules was there among the Greeks. He began to fight sharply among the Trojans, and had his Club. Surely, he welcomed them, that the most of his enemies burst not abide him: he fought fiercely in desire of revenge, in seeking of worship, and to get him a name. Lifting up his hand, he shewed to the Trojans his Club, and made them to feel the weight thereof, and the strength of his arm, and he laboured so earnestly, and did so valiantly, that they that saw him doubted him more than death, and said one to another, behold Hercules, but come not near him. All that he reacheth he slayeth, and breaketh to pieces. **Woe** do evil to fight against him:



him : This is the deliverer from the terrible thraldome of Troy, how should we resist his Club, when the huge dreadful Monsters be by the same put to the foyl.

Such were the words of the Trojans. Hercules fought against them fiercely : he went befoze, all the Greeks followed him, and took pleasure to behold him. The cry was great about him. He fought until the night, and never ceased until the going down of the Sun, and then the Trojans sounded the retreat, and then departed both parties. And they concluded, that on the morrow they would furnish their enemies with battel. And the Greeks furnished them in the Champain, and made good chear, for they had lost but little of their people at their coming on Land. When the day appeared to the Trojans and the Greeks, each in his manner made him ready to the battel: many of the Trojans would gladly have broken this battel, and prayed King Laomedon that he would render and deliver to Hercules the Horses that he owed to him. Laomedon would not do it, but answered, that he doubted nothing his enemies. He had then about fifty thousand fighting men, all ready, of these fifty thousand he made two battels, one of twenty thousand, and that he led himself, and the other of thirty thousand, of which he made Priamus Captain. This done he issued out of Troy, with twenty thousand fighting men, and came unto the fields entring upon the Greeks.

When the Greeks espied King Laomedon coming, they were full of joy, as they that were ready for to receive them : at the point of their Spears and with hewing of their Swords, They had made of their Host four battels, in the first was Hercules, and in the second was Amphitrion, and Theseus. And in the third was King Creon, and in the fourth was Euristeus. Hercules then that had the first battel, marched when it was time against Laomedon, and he had four ancient Knights, well appointed in the feats of Arms, that set and conducted his folk in array. They marched so nigh the one to the other, with great noise of Trumpets and Tabours, that the Archers and Cross-bows began the battel, after that Hercules summoned Laomedon to pay him that he had promised him, and that  
Laome



Laomedon had made refusal thereof. The Greeks were furnished with stronger bows and shot than the Trojans were: and by that means they slew abundance of their enemies: and especially Hercules bare him so well with forty Arrows, that he himself shot one after another, that he slew forty of his enemies such as he would chuse without let or hinderance.

Hercules was at that time the best Archer, and the most sure of mark that was in all Greece. He and his men (as is said) cast many of the Trojans to the ground by the shot. When the shot failed, Hercules delivered his Bow unto Philotes, that bare his harness, and took a strong sword and sure. When it came to the swords and breaking and joping with spears, Hercules that was alway in the first front, leapt against the King Laomedon that was departed from his Host, afore all other, forasmuch as he rode upon one of the Horses that he had promised to Hercules. And running one against the other, as swiftly as they had flown in the air, met and smote each other so sore, that their spears shivered in pieces, which sprang about them. Hercules passed forth, and smote amongst the Trojans, and Laomedon likewise entred into the Host of the Greeks: they began to handle their swords, and to hew each upon his enemy. Then arose there a marvellous noise. The fight was great, the strokes were hard, the battel was general, for of the one party and the other many men were distressed and beaten notwithstanding that the Greeks were most boystrous and hardy in arms, and more valiant than the Trojans, and better held them together, than they of the battel of King Laomedon. Hercules wrought and bestirred him fast with his sword that he had conquered from Philotes. At every stroke and every step he killed a Trojan, and smote off their heads and arms in great abundance, that it seemed that they that he touched had not been armed. Laomedon was busie on the one side, and failed not but bare him well upon his horse, and ran from rank to rank among the Greeks: he rested not but conducted his people, and his people were great in number: he set upon his enemies so eagerly, that he inclosed them and then was the murther so great, that on all sides a man should not

C c

have



have seen any thing but blood and heads, and arms fly, in the place and field.

When Theseus and Amphytrion beheld the battel of Hercules so enclosed with the Trojans; they berthought them, and came to his helpe ere he had need. At their coming they made a great uproar, thrust their Swords upon the Trojans, which were too far forward, and joyned to them with such prowess, that they smote down the most stable and strong, and went so far among them, that they made them to retire again, and go back by force. In this going back and rejoycing, the Host of Laomedon was all afraid and abashed. The three Swords of Hercules, Theseus and Amphytrion, were seen brandishing above all other in well doing, and in short space they began to vanquish and overcome their enemies, and would have brought them to the spoil and shame. Then young Priamus with his thirty thousand appeared to come to the assault, making so great a noise that all the earth trembled, and gave a marvellous sound, and they that were upon the Walls and Edifices of Troy, made a great cry. Hercules, Theseus and Amphytrion beholding Priamus coming, and the puissance of Troy, set their people in array, with a great train of Greeks against them, for to withstand their Enterprizes. Theseus was the first that spied Priamus, who couched his Spear against him, and he came with great courage mounted upon the second Horse of King Laomedon his Father, and charged with so great might upon Theseus, that he bare him to the ground turned up side down, bruising him upon his Shield. When Theseus being angry at this fall, he entered among the Trojans, smiting and hewing on them with his Sword in such fury, that he smote off the heads of more than thirty Trojans ere he ceased. The noise was great about him, the Trojans would have rebenged them of his Sword, but their force was not so great: they had work enough to save themselves, many Greeks came to the aid of Theseus, then they began to renew the battel.

At this time Hercules and Amphytrion were not idle: for they were on one side, and Theseus on the other: at meeting many were hurt and slain. Priamus did marvels to the Greeks

at



at the beginning, he bore him so valiantly that he found no man that did him any harm. He made his sword to tast the blood of his adversaries; then as he was in this case, he heard about Hercules a great piercing cry of people, crying Troy, Troy, in despair to have prevailed, then Priamus thinking to have smitten down dead all that were before him, ran to the rescue to his misadventure, for as soon as he was come before Hercules, and he saw him, he remembred him that it was he that had overthrown Theseus, and said he would avenge him, and lifting up his sword, he smote Priamus upon his Helm, that he was astonished, and there fell down both Priamus and his Horse.

When Priamus was so overthrown, he wist not where he was, Hercules was advertised that it was Priamus Son of King Laomedon, then he had pity of him, and took him Prisoner, and sent him out of the battel. The Trojans seeing this, were grievously troubled, and for to rescue him they endeavoured themselves, so that Hercules could not sustain the rigour of the battel, and the Greeks were constrained to lose place. King Creon then displayed his Banner and his battel, so likewise did Euristeus, and put them in two wings, one on the right side, and the other on the left: and they came running in upon the Trojans with so great noise, that all the Trojans felt well their coming, for at that time they did not know which way to turn them. They were smitten before and behind so sore that they lost the company of Priamus, and knew not where he was become.

At this intermeetin: Laomedon was out of the press and refreshed him; when he heard say that his Son Priamus was taken: he was therefore passing sorrowful, that the sweat came to his heart, and from thence unto all his members: wherefore he went himself again to battel, half out of his mind: the battel was then fell and embroiled, and there was hard fighting. But to augment and encrease the sorrow of this, Laomedon, he found that his folk had the worse, and but little list to fight. On the other side, he saw the horrible strokes of the Greeks, so unmeasurable, that his men were brought out of



rank, and the arrays broken, and charged with such strokes of their swords, that they turned back, and began to fly: when it came to the discomfiture, Laomedon abode not with the last, but entered into his City as hastily as he could. The Greeks pursued the Trojans eagerly and so nigh, that they entered in with them, with great effusion of blood. Hercules was the first that won the Gate: and as for the Greeks he was Master, and put in all them that were of his knowledge. Many Trojans passed by the edge of his Sword, and many fled away by the fields and bushes. When Laomedon saw that by force his City was taken, and brought into the hands and governance of the Greeks, soze discomforted and all in despair, he took his daughters Exione and Antigona, and his most precious Jewels and Gems, and fled away privately, thinking his enemies would make there a great destruction and pillaging, as they did: For when Hercules had put his men within the City, he let them rob and pill. Thus the Trojans were persecuted, the channels were tempered with their blood, the Houses were beaten down, and the great riches were put into preys: and of all the goods of the City, there was left nothing whole, but the Palace of Ilion, whither the Ladies and the Maids were withdrawn. Hercules would in no wise destroy this Palace, forasmuch as the Ladies made to him a request to spare it. At this prize Hercules sought Laomedon long in the Palace of Ilion, and in all places of the City, but he could hear no tydings of him, whereof he was sorry, and when he had beaten down the Walls that had been made with the money of the Gods, he departed thence, and returned into Greece with great glory. And in this wise was Troy destroyed the first time. Therefore I will thus now make an end of this first Book, and begin the second, where shall be shewed, how Troy was reedified, and how it was destroyed the second time. And how Priamus raised it, and made it again. And in continuing the Noble Labours of Hercules, now new begun.

Thus endeth the first Book of the Destruction of Troy.

F I N I S.



# The Table of the First Book of the Destruction of TROY.

Chapters.	Pages.
1. The Linage of <i>Saturn</i> , and how for inventing the Sowing of Corn, Planting, &c. He was honoured in <i>Creet</i> as a God.	1
2. How <i>Saturn</i> was crowned King of <i>Creet</i> : found divers Sciences, and was honoured as a God.	5
3. How <i>Saturn</i> went to <i>Delphis</i> , to the Oracle of <i>Apollo</i> , who answered he should have a Son should chase him out of his Realm. And how he married his Sister <i>Cibel</i> , &c.	7
4. How <i>Saturn</i> had commanded to slay <i>Jupiter</i> , and how his Mother <i>Cibel</i> sent him to King <i>Meletus</i> , where he was nourished.	14
5. How after the death of King <i>Corinthus</i> of <i>Corinth</i> , his two Sons <i>Dardanus</i> and <i>Jasius</i> , strove which of them should reign; and how <i>Dardanus</i> slew his Brother by treason, wherefore he was forced to depart the country.	16
6. Of the great war that was moved between the <i>Pelagiens</i> , and <i>Epiriens</i> , and how King <i>Lycaon</i> was destroyed by <i>Jupiter</i> , because of a man put to him for hostage, which he did most cruelly murder and cause to be roasted.	20
7. How <i>Jupiter</i> after the discomfiture of King <i>Lycaon</i> , transformed himself into the shape of a Religious Woman, waiting on the Goddess <i>Diana</i> , for the love of <i>Calisto</i> , Daughter to the said <i>Lycaon</i> , did obtain of her his will.	26
8. How <i>Calisto</i> because she was with child, the Goddess <i>Diana</i> put her out of the Order, and of her company.	32
9. How <i>Titan</i> assailed by war his brother <i>Saturn</i> , forasmuch as he had not put to death all his Children males.	34
10. How <i>Jupiter</i> with the aid of King <i>Mellisens</i> of <i>Epire</i> delivered	vered



## The Table.

Chapters.	Pages.
vered <i>Saturn</i> his Father, and <i>Cibel</i> his Mother out of Prison; and how he slew <i>Titan</i> in battel.	41
11. How <i>Jupiter</i> vanquished in the field <i>Typhon</i> , and cast him into the River.	47
12. How <i>Jupiter</i> and <i>Saturn</i> reconciled themselves together, and how <i>Jupiter</i> by commandment of his Father, went to destroy King <i>Apollo</i> of <i>Paphos</i> , and of the Medicine of <i>Esculapius</i> .	48
13. How <i>Jupiter</i> with great joy espoused his Sister <i>Juno</i> . And how King <i>Saturn</i> began war against <i>Jupiter</i> his Son.	51
14. How they of <i>Creet</i> , when they heard the commandment of <i>Saturn</i> , were sore troubled: And how he gathered his forces against <i>Jupiter</i> his Son.	53
15. How King <i>Saturn</i> with all his host came before the City of <i>Arcadia</i> , against <i>Jupiter</i> his Son.	54
16. How <i>Jupiter</i> sent his Ambassadors to his Father <i>Saturn</i> for peace: and how <i>Saturn</i> would not consent to peace.	58
17. How <i>Jupiter</i> vanquished in battel <i>Saturn</i> his Father: and how <i>Saturn</i> fled by sea.	61
18. How <i>Achrisius</i> had a Daughter named <i>Danae</i> , which he did cause to be shut in a Tower, because he had an answer that she should have a Son which should turn him into a stone.	63
19. How <i>Iupiter</i> in the guise of a Messenger brought unto the Tower of <i>Dardan</i> , to the Damosels, and to <i>Danae</i> , many Jewels, feigning that he came from <i>Iupiter</i> .	67
20. How <i>Iupiter</i> in the guise of a Messenger, with many Jewels came the second time to see <i>Danae</i> : and how he spake, and gave her knowledge what he was: and how he lay with her that night.	71
21. How <i>Iupiter</i> came from his Chamber by night, and lay in the Tower of <i>Dardan</i> , with the Damosel <i>Danae</i> , on whom he begat the noble <i>Perseus</i> .	78
22. How King <i>Tantalus</i> of <i>Phrigie</i> assailed the King <i>Troos</i> of <i>Troy</i> : and how <i>Ilion</i> and <i>Ganimedes</i> his Sons discomfited him in battel.	83
23. How	83



## The Table.

Chapters.	Pages.
23. How King <i>Troos</i> chased in battel King <i>Tantalus</i> , and how <i>Saturn</i> came by Sea, sailing to the Port of <i>Troos</i> , and how King <i>Troos</i> received him worshipfully.	86
24. How <i>Saturn</i> by the aid of <i>Ganimedes</i> and of the <i>Trojans</i> , returned into <i>Creet</i> , to fight against <i>Jupiter</i> , where he was overcome and vanquished, and <i>Ganimedes</i> taken.	91
25. How <i>Jupiter</i> discomfited again King <i>Saturn</i> in battel, and how <i>Saturn</i> was put to flight by sea.	95
26. How <i>Jupiter</i> after he had sacrificed the Eagle, pursued the <i>Trojans</i> : and of the long battel that he had against <i>Ganimedes</i> .	98
27. How King <i>Troos</i> and <i>Iion</i> his Son made great sorrow for <i>Ganimedes</i> , for they wist not where he was. And how <i>Iupiter</i> went to the sea to go to <i>Argos</i> .	103
28. How King <i>Achrisus</i> when he saw his Daughter with child, sent her to exile, and put her in a little Vessel into the sea, at the adventure of Fortune.	105
29. How <i>Iupiter</i> returning from <i>Troy</i> by sea, Encountred the great thict <i>Egeon</i> , which he fought with, and overcame; and of the tydings that he had of <i>Danae</i> , whereof he was passing sorrowful.	109
30. How Queen <i>Medusa</i> came to <i>Athens</i> , to worship in the Temple of the Goddess <i>Pallas</i> . And how King <i>Neptune</i> waxed amorous of her, and how she deceived him.	115
31. How <i>Perseus</i> vanquished in battel the Queen <i>Medusa</i> , and how she fled into her City.	122
32. How <i>Perseus</i> in this battel slew the mighty Sister of <i>Medusa</i> , and vanquished her in the battel.	125
33. How <i>Perseus</i> conquered <i>Medusa</i> , and her City, and smote off her head. And how he went to fight against the King <i>Atlas</i> at <i>Septe</i> , a mighty and puissant Gyant.	127
34. How <i>Perseus</i> turned King <i>Atlas</i> into a stone: and how Queen <i>Auria</i> , wife to King <i>Pricus</i> waxed amorous of the Knight <i>Bellerophon</i> that refused her, whereof he had much pain.	130
35. How <i>Perseus</i> vanquished the Monster of the Sea, and exposed himself against him for the love of <i>Andromeda</i> .	138
36. How	



## The Table.

Chapters.	Pages.
36. How <i>Phineus</i> would have had <i>Andromeda</i> : and how <i>Perseus</i> answered him she should be his Wife.	143
37. How <i>Perseus</i> re-established in his Realm the King <i>Achrisus</i> , and how he slew the King by misfortune.	145
38. How <i>Jupiter</i> lay with <i>Alcumena</i> , and how Queen <i>Iuno</i> sent two Serpents to slay <i>Hercules</i> , and how <i>Hercules</i> strangled the two Serpents.	148
39. How <i>Hercules</i> began the Olympiades, and how he waxed amorous of <i>Megara</i> , the Daughter of the King of <i>Thebes</i> , and how he shewed his strength in all manner of games and exercises.	161
40. How <i>Hercules</i> sailed by the Sea into <i>Hesperie</i> , and how he vanquished the Isle with the muttons or sheep, and vanquished <i>Philotes</i> and slew his fellow.	173
41. How <i>Hercules</i> fought at the Port of <i>Troy</i> against a Monster of the Sea, for the Daughter of King <i>Laomedon</i> .	179
42. How <i>Laomedon</i> shut <i>Hercules</i> out of <i>Troy</i> : and how <i>Hercules</i> swore that he would avenge him.	186
43. How <i>Hercules</i> entred battel against <i>Laomedon</i> : and how he vanquished and destroyed <i>Troy</i> the first time.	189

---

F I N I S.

---



# THE DESTRUCTION OF TROY.

## *The Second Book.*

### CHAP. I.

How *Hercules* fought against three Lions, in the Forrest of *Nemee* : and how he slew them, and took their Skins.



IN the first Book is begun the Deeds of the puissant  
Giant *Hercules* : how he first destroyed the City of  
Troy, and vanquished the King *Laomedon*, after  
which Conquest, he returned into Greece, where he  
remained a certain space of time, without doing any  
thing that is found in History. In which space *Juno* (bearing  
inward malice against him) berthought how she might work his  
downfall. And hearing that into the Forrest of *Nemee* were come  
Lions, among other, one sixteen foot high, that destroyed all the  
Countrey : She thought by these Lions to bring her purpose  
about. And having War with *Euristeus*, she concluded a peace  
only to be acquainted with *Hercules*, and sent for him into  
Crete, to confirm it. *Euristeus* fulfilled her desire, and brought  
*Hercules* with him. The peace was made, *Juno* acquainting  
her



her with Hercules, they came to speak of the Lions of the Forrest of Nemeë. And so much spake Juno, that she said to Hercules, it were an act would gain him honour, to go to the Forrest of Nemeë, and conquer those Lions, Hercules thinking Juno counselled him to assail the Lions for his honour & profit, he enterprized to go into the Forrest. Juno required him, that when he had banquished the Lions, he would return unto her. Hercules promised her that he would. After that he departed from Creet, and went into Thebes to see Megara, and to make his Harnes and Arms ready. When the Ladies of Thebes knew that Hercules would go against the Lions of Nemeë, they all complained of his youth: and thought that he would dye there, for the Lions were cruel and terrible. Megara above all other, was passing sorrowful, and required the Ladies, that they would pray Euristeus, to keep Hercules from going so dangerous a voyage. The Ladies accomplished the request of Megara, and thought to have broken the voyage of Hercules, by the means of Euristeus. but they could in no wise: For Hercules answered Euristeus, and the Ladies, that it was the first enterprize he had taken in hand at the request of any body, and for as much as the Queen Juno had desired him to do it, he had intent to accomplish it, by the pleasure of God and Fortune.

Hercules was great both of heart and courage, being exalted with honour, he had rather have dyed, than have done any thing whereof should follow any dishonour. When his Arms were ready, he armed him. Taking leaue of King Creon, Euristeus, Amphitrion, of the Ladies and Gentlewomen, accompanied only with Philotes, which would never leaue him. He departed from Thebes, proceeding in his journey, that he came unto the Forrest of Nemeë, which stood not far from Argos. In approaching this Forrest, he went two days without finding Beasts or Men, at last found a Pastor or Herdsman named Melorcus. This Herdsman was mounted upon a great Tree. When he saw Hercules entred into the Wood, he called to him, saying: Sir, you are dead, if you go any further, return quickly, for the fierce Lions will destroy you: or else come hither up to me. Hercules hearing the words of Melorcus, looked upon the Tree,  
and



## The Destruction of Troy.

3

and demanded what he was? Alas, said the Pastoz, I am the poorest man of all other, the Lions of the Forrest, at their coming have eaten a great Herd of Beasts that I nourished here: besides they have eaten all my Family and men, and have devoured all save me alone, which have by adventure, a great while saved my self upon this Tree, where I eat nothing else but Leaves and Acorns, and dare not descend down, for fear of three Lions which are here by, who will soon assail you unless you depart and flee.

The Pastoz finishing his words, there came leaping out of a Bush the three Lions, and marched against Hercules, roaring and crying, opening their eyes with so great rage, as if they would pierce Hercules with their sight. The great Lion came first, his hair standing up, he was as high as an Elephant, and great after that proportion, his head was twice as big as the head of a Bull. Hercules seeing them come, took his Sword and Club that Philotes bore. Philotes, notwithstanding his promises, was so afraid, that he went on the Tree to the Herdsman. Hercules set his Club to the Tree, and betook him to his Sword: the Lions at the approach brayed in their throats. Hercules struck one of them between the eyes, and fell'd him to the earth upon his buttocks. The great Lion thinking to have sprung upon Hercules, and to have taken him in his Claws, made a terrible leap. When Hercules saw his intent, he turned from him, and struck at the third Lion, which was light and nimble, and struck his Sword right into his throat, that he reacht his heart, whatsoever resistance he could make in biting the Sword, and left it in his body in such wise, that he fell dead to the earth. When the other Lions saw their fellow so used, they set their Claws on the earth, and howled cruelly, that it seemed Thunder had sprung out of their stomachs. All the Forrest sounded thereof. Hercules took his Sword, and the two Lions approaching again, ran upon him with their Paws, hurting him unmeasurably, that losing his Armour, their Pails entring into his flesh, they drew them out all dyed with his blood.

Hercules had his heart so troubled, when he felt his wounds that the Lions had made: then he lifted up his Sword, and smote



smote on one and other, but the great Lion had his skin so hard, that his Sword might no more enter therein, than it might on a great Rock. Thus began the battel of the Lions and Hercules. The little Lion was eager and fierce, he lanching him forth oftentimes against Hercules, always thought to have hurt him with his Claws, that cut like a Razor: but he lanch'd so often, that it was to his disadvantage, for Hercules after many great strokes, divided from the body, his right leg, very nigh the shoulder, and stroke him down by the feet of the other Lion that lay dead.

When Hercules saw that he was deliver'd of the two evil Beasts, and that he had to do with no more but the great Lion, he began to have an hope of good fortune. He had then comfort in himself of the battel which was strong to sustain: the great Lion gave him great strokes with his Paws, and put him oftentimes in peril of death: but the Sword of Hercules would never enter into the skin of the Beast, it was so hard. The Lion took his Sword between his teeth and his nails, that with great pain he pulled it from him. Finally, when he had long fought with his Sword, and knew well that thereby he might raise no blood of the Lion, he would assay if the Club were to him more profitable. Then he took it, and the first time that the Lion came upon him, he gave him a stroke with his Club on his mouth, that all the teeth brake and fell out before him. The Lion feeling the stroke, made a great and marvellous howling, and lifting up his Paws, thought to have pulled down Hercules. But he fled the coming of the Lion: and the Lion fell to the ground, with fierceness of running, and failing of Hercules. When Hercules saw that he was fallen, he leaped upon him forthwith eagerly, and held him with his hands about the throat so fast, that he brought his Jaws out of joynt, and making his eyes fly out of his head, he slew him.

In this Exploit Hercules shewed a singular hardiness, and incredible force: for he strangled with his hands a Lion, with the skin so hard, that Spears nor Swords might not do any harm, he put him to death by wonderful valour: and when he had so done, he went to the other that lived yet, and all brake and



and toze him, as if it had been a little Lamb. After he called Philotes to him, and the Herdsman, that were marvellous ioyful and glad of so high a victoꝝ. And Hercules found the manner how to flea the Lions, and took their skins by the help of the Herdsman. When they had fleaed them it was night, Hercules demanded of the Herdsman, if there were any house or lodging thereby, where he might have accommodations? The Herdsman bzought him to his house, where they found provision of Meat and Drink, wherewith the good man feasted Hercules to his power, and he thought he was in Paradise. Thus Hercules passed the day and the night, and forgot not to think on his wounds that were fell and smarted, so that he little slept that night. Yet notwithstanding when the day appeared, he took leaue of the Herdsman and so departed, and took his journey to go into Creet, to shew unto Juno the thzee Lions skins, and thank her for her good adbertisement.

## CHAP. II.

How *Juno* sent *Hercules* into *Egypt*, to be slain of the Tyrant *Busire*, and how *Hercules* slew the Tyrant, against the hope and will of *Juno*.

**K**Now about this time reigned in *Egypt*, King *Busire*, Son of the Queen of *Lybia*: and the Land of *Egypt* was dry, not fertile, but barren. *Busire*, to remedy this, called his Clerks, that held the Science of *Zoroastes*, and asked of them what he might do for the health of his Realm? They asked counsel of the Gods; and had answer, that they must sacrifice unto them mans blood. When *Busire* (that naturally was evil, and had never done good) heard this answer, he begun to tyrannize more and more. And began first with his people, taking and plucking from the Mothers, their little Childzen, from Men their Wives, from Wives their Husbands, burning and defiling the Temples with their blood. For all these Homicides and Slaughters, the Drought ceased not, but augmented more. The Clerks demanded of the Gods the cause why they had no dewes nor rain? They answered, that they would not have the iust blood of *Egypt*, but the



the strange blood, that they should take and sacrifice thereof. The Gods by this answer, would have in sacrifice the blood of Busire, for he was a stranger to vertue and goodnes. And the Clerks understood they would have the blood of strangers. Busire aduertised of this answer, ceased to persecute the blood of Egypt, and turned his Sword upon the blood of strangers, and made an Edict, that no stranger should enter into his City, but should be sacrificed unto his Gods: in this manner he murdered all the strangers he could get. By this Edict many strangers, both Nobles and others were sacrificed, by the cruelty of Busire. Among others, one Nobleman of Creet (of the Linage of Juno) perished in this misfortune, by the Sword of Busire. The tydings came unto Creet, where was made great lamentation. As they continued their mourning, Hercules and Philotes came to Queen Juno, and found her overcharged with exceeding grief. At that time were an hundred Cities in Creet, and King Jupiter absented himself from Juno for many reasons. When as Hercules was returned to his Step mother Juno, he revered her, shewing her the Skins of the Lions that he had slain, and thanked her for the high adventure. He admonished him of.

The cursed Step-mother for the return of Hercules, was more perplexed than before: yet she feasted Hercules, and made to him (faintly) the greatest Chear that she could, being about Dinner-time, she made him to dine with her. As they sate at Dinner (after diuers speeches of the Lions) she advised how she might work the death of Hercules, and thought she could not compass it better, than to send him to Egypt: And to bring it to pass, she changed the discourse of the Lions, and said to Hercules; your coming again in safety, is to me most joyfull, for that your name shall enjoy perpetual Renown among the most Worthie and best of the world, for you have atchieved many Enterprizes: In your Infancy you made all the World to wonder at the victorie of the Serpents, by you strangled. After you made your sword to flourish in the West parts of Phrigia, and now in Nemea. The Adventure of these exploits have gain'd you exceeding honour, whereof I am glad, for each person ought to reioyce in the well doing of another, especially of a Noble man, and principally such a one



as labourer to excel in valour, every person is bound to counsel him to his honour and welfare. Wherefore, since it is so, that ye endeavour your self from day to day, and seek perils of the Sea, and dangers of the earth, to overcome them: I advertise you, that in Egypt is a Tyrant, that sacrificeth all strangers that come into his Countrey, without reserving Noble or base; So (I think) if Fortune be still favourable to you, you shall gain great honour to your self, and profit to all the Nations of the world.

Madam, answered Hercules, I am not, nor never in all my life, shall attain to such an exceeding height of honour as ye report: notwithstanding, forasmuch as I have great desire to perform adventures to the benefit of all Nations, that they shall concern. I promise you, and swear, that to morrow without further delay, I will make all things in readiness, to go into Egypt. And I will never return again into my Countrey, until the time that I have seen the Tyrant. If he lay hand on me, to sacrifice me, I have intention he shall not without great strokes. Juno hearing the enterprize of Hercules, rejoiced in her heart exceedingly. That day they passed in many conferences. Hercules took the skins of the Lyons, and delivered them to a certain workman, to make of them a garment in manner of Armour, to Arm him withal. On the morrow he took leave of his Step-mother, and departed from Crete, so journeyed on the way with Philotes, (without finding any adventure worthy the remembrance) on a day he came to the Gate of the City Memphis, in Egypt, where the Tyrant Busire held his residence.

When Hercules was come nigh unto the Gate, he took his Club that Philotes bare, and entered himself into the City. He had not been long there, nor far gone, but Busire which was advertised of his coming, came against him with his complices, without speaking any word, ran upon him. Hercules was well appointed, for he knew the Tyrant by his gesture and the sign that was told him: he lifted up his Club when he saw him come, and as the Tyrant would have smitten him with his Sword, without any word speaking; he stroke the Tyrant on the right side so vehemently, that not only he fell'd him to the earth, but



also all the ribs of his body were broken, that he could never relieve him after. The Egyptians seeing Busire overthrowen some ran to relieve him, and the rest assailed Hercules. Then was all the City in an uproar. Hercules was ioyful he had overthrowen the Tyrant, and began to make the Egyptians to know his Club. He slew many of them, and the remnant he made to fear. His strokes were so forcible, that the Complices of Busire that were accustomed to shed mens blood, had their blood shed abroad, and could not remedy their mischance, which was so great, that Hercules filled all the place with dead bodies. And after a long battel, he found himself alone, for there was no man so hardy that durst be seen before him. The people and the Commonalty of the Egyptians, minded not the rescue of their King. When they saw him beaten, they all hated him, and beheld the Battel from far by very great routs. When Hercules had then laboured so much, that he found no man to fight with him, he set down his Club and addressed him unto a great company of Egyptians that stood there, and assured them he would do nothing unto them, and asked what people they were that had assailed him? They answered him kneeling on their knees, they were Men slayers, Hangmen, and people of vicious and evil life: that their King which he had first beaten down, was the worst of them all, and had purposed to put him to death as a stranger, to make Sacrifice unto the Gods. And they prayed him to Sacrifice their said King.

Hercules granting their petition, accorded it unto the people: and took this cursed Tyrant Busire, and bore him upon his Shoulders unto the Temple, which the Egyptians shewed him. The false Tyrant cryed after help terribly: but his cry availed him not. The Egyptians cryed unto Hercules, sacrifice, sacrifice him. When Hercules came into the Temple, he sacrificed him, after he had shewed him his cursed and evil life. And then when the fire was put unto the sacrifice, it began to rain, and the great drought began to fail: whereof the Egyptians were so ioyful, that none could express. They did sing praises unto Hercules, and brought him and Philotes unto the Palace, and constituted Hercules King over them: but he refused, and ordained

Judges



Judges to govern them. Then he returned unto Queen Jano, who had great sorrow, and to King Creon who had great joy at the rehearsal of his good Fortune.

## CHAP. III.

How Hercules espoused Megara : and how he was made Knight in Thebes.

**I**WAS as the young Vine, by the industry and labour of the Husbandman, groweth in height, and his boughs spread abroad full of fruit : so Hercules labouring vertuously, grew in fruit of Nobleness : his Works, his Branches, then began to sprout abroad, and spread from Realm to Realm.

The secret conspiracies of Juno, and her cursed enbies could not hurt nor diminish the vertue of Hercules. The more she thought to harm him, the more she was the cause of his exaltation. As he was puissant and strong of body, he was yet more strong of vertue : for vertue was set in him, as the precious stone is in Gold, as the sweet smell is in the flower, as the ray of the Sun-beam is in the Sun : He was beloved of Kings, Princes, Ladies, Gentlewomen, Poles, and all others. especially of Megara, the Daughter of King Creon. And verily she was not deceived, for Hercules loved her also, and was never hurt but he thought on her. Yet durst neither of them speak to other of this matter, they were ashamed to discover that, whereby they had hope to have honour, and often they bewailed to themselves desiring the day they might take each other in marriage.

So much they wished after that day, till at last it came. For on a morning, as Hercules was gone into the Wood to take a wild Beast, he remembred him of his Lady, and began to speak to him softly : Shall I be always in pain ? Shall mine heart never be eased, but always languish in Love ? I see all men in great joy, with their Loves and Ladies, and I think never how to come to the point of one only, whom I have chosen above all other, I know not how to begin, I dare not speak to her, nor I have not assayed if she would condescend : Shall I speak to her ? I know not well how : If I speak to her and she refuse me, I



shall fall in despair, I shall dye for very grief of heart, I shall never after dare to come in any noble assembly, if all her friends were of one accord. to give her to me in marriage, and she were not content and pleased, all were lost. The most jeopardy is, to have her good will, for without her grace I can do nothing: then it is necessary that I seek her good will, since it is so; for if I sleep thus, and speak not, I shall never achieve, nor come to my purpose.

Hercules resolute in his purpose, and enflamed with great desire of Love, came from the Wood, abandoned the Wild beast, and gave it over to come to Megara, thinking how and by what words he might come, and shew unto her that which lay on his heart. He went so far, that he came to the Garden of the Palace, where she was with many Ladies and Gentlewomen. He made to them reverence, until he espied the time that he might speak to Megara, and he waxed so pensive that it is marvel: he intermitted nothing to confer with the Ladies, but therewith he drew him apart into the Garden. When the Ladies beheld him so pensive, divers of them came to him, and talked with him, to put him from his thoughts and pensiveness, but they could not, at last Megara came to him. As soon as Hercules saw her come, he began to sigh, and come against her. And she said to him, Hercules why are ye so pensive? Put away from you such melancholly, and tell me of your news I pray: Lady (answered Hercules) I thank you for your good visitation, since it pleaseth you to hear of my tidings, and to know them, I will tell you apart: First, the cause why I am brought into such perplexed melancholly as you now see, is, by beholding your perfections: for as I went to the Wood to Hunt, the remembrance of your right Noble Beauty, continually being in mine imagination, came unto me, and made me enter into a secret perplexity, to wit, whether I should always live unrewarded of Love, and (if I durst say so to you) I have set my heart and love wholly on you. Madam, this perplexity was great, but in the end I concluded to come unto you, to know the conclusion of my Fortune, whether it be life or death: Being in this deliberation (thinking how I might speed with you) in this point and doubtfulness,

your



your coming hath put me out of a great thought of pensiveness, for I knew not better how to come to the point, to speak to you apart (as I do at this present) than to apply the matter in time, for I say to you in truth, that since the time of my Olympiades, I have desired you night and day, and at that time I set my heart on your service, resolving to love you for ever. Madam, I know very well, that I have enterprized a thing that I am not worthy of: Notwithstanding, I continue at your mercy, and require that you will be pleased to receive me into your favour, in such wise, that shortly we may appoint our nuptial Day.

When Megara understood the words of her love Hercules, she rejoiced in her heart exceedingly, and received great comfort; notwithstanding she was abashed, being shamed, he answered thus. Alas Hercules, by what fortune am I ordained to be beloved of so worthy a Gentleman? Your excessive promises, your glorious labors, your resplendant virtues are of such value, that you are worthy to have to Wife, the most beautiful Lady in the world. With these words, the Gentlemen came to them, and said unto Megara, that it was time to withdraw her to dinner, which brake off their discourse. Megara sorrowful of hasto departing, that she might not achieve her purpose, by constraint took leave of Hercules, and went into the Hall, full fed with love and Hercules remained in the Garden, joyful of the sweet answer he had received.

When the Ladies had left Hercules in the Garden, he assembled Euristeus and Amphitrion, and said to them he had a great desire to be married, and prayed them to go to King Creon, to know if he would give him his Daughter Megara. They spake to King Creon of this marriage: The King heard them speak right gladly, for the matter pleased him: and he answered, that he might nowhere better bestow his Daughter, than to the most noble man of the world Hercules, whom he loved as his own Son, which was so valiant and noble, and had no fellow like unto him. He was content to give to him his daughter, and with her what he would demand. Euristeus and Amphitrion, thanked the King for his courteous answer. Megara and Hercules were  
sent.



sent for, the King made them betroth each other, with great joy of both parties. Afterward in process of time, the day of their espousals was celebrated with triumph, honour, and joy. And then they lay together without more ado, and lived together right honestly.

After the solemnity of this marriage, Hercules came to King Creon, and desired he would bestow upon him the Honour of Knighthood, forasmuch as the Nobles of the Realm of Icony were come unto him, and with a general consent, had chosen him to be King of their City, for his good renown. King Creon (joyful of that) answered, that he would accomplish his desire: but would that it should be done at a certain day assigned, saying, that then he would make a noble Feast, where men should Fight, and Tourney, and that he would cause to come thither all the Kings and Princes of Greece. Hercules accorded and agreed, and the King sent his messengers unto all the Kings of Greece, and prayed them to be present at the Knighting of a Noble-man, that should hold a solemn sport, at a day named and appointed, to answer all them that shall come to the Fights. The renown of this Feast, was born unto all the Kingdoms of Greece: The provision and Ordinance was great in Thebes, one and other disposed them to be there; the time passed and the day came, many a King and Knight was come at the time to Thebes. Theseus and Jason the Sons of King Eson, was there amongst the rest. The Kings made a great stir, and pompous shew about ten of the Clock before noon. The King Creon went into the place that was ordained for the Fights. At a corner in the same place there was a Tent, in which was Hercules all alone: At that time the Ladies and Gentlewomen mounted upon the Scaffolds the Fights came into the place, and no man knew or wist who should be this new Knight. When King Creon saw the Knights were in on all sides, and the Ladies were seated on the Scaffolds, he sent for Hercules, and made him Knight after their Statutes. Then Hercules mounted upon his Horse, took his Spear and Shield, and challenged them that were there, that each man should do his devoyze. Then one and other that desired to win honour, took their Spears and ran against Hercules, and began a Fight.



Justing that was hot and sharp; their Spears were strong, and brake not easily, but they met oftentimes, and some were overthrowen and struck off their Hozles. They that might not Just against Hercules, assailed each other like to like.

Jason and Theseus justed often against Hercules, and Pyrothus, Son of King Ixion likewise: All bare themselves valiantly, notwithstanding Hercules above all men, no man could abide his strokes, but he bare them all down except Jason, which encountred him divers times, and gave him great strokes. Hercules bare down Theseus to the earth, and Pyrothus, and nigh fifty strong Knights. He did shew so much valour, that no man abode in the place, but Jason and he, then he ceased the Justs, for the valour that Hercules found in Jason, he ever after had a special love to him, and took acquaintance of him, and made him great chear. At the end of the justing, Knights, Ladies, and Gentlewomen went to the Palace, there was Hercules made Knight of Icony. The feast was very rich, more than I can rehearse, the strangers were highly feasted, and thanked. When all the feast was ended, with honour and glory of Hercules, there was no more to do, whereof any memory is to speak. Pyrothus prayed them that were there, to be at his Wedding in Thessalonica, at a certain day named, each man promised him to go thither. Where one took leave of Hercules when time was come of departing: each man returned into his Countrey, and they could not marvel enough at the glory abounding, and likely to abound in Hercules, which was courteous and humble, not proud for the grace that he had in temporal honour, He was so vertuous, that he was not the more high-minded therefore, nor exalted himself, but the more meek, and submitted himself.

#### CHAP. IV.

How the Centaures ravished Hypodamia at the Wedding of Pyrothus, and how Hercules recovered her again, and vanquished the Centaures in battel.

**T**O continue our matter, when Hercules saw the day of the Wedding of Pyrothus approach, he disposed him to go thither.



ther by space of time, and took Philotes with him, and at all adventure took with him his Armour of the skin of the Lion. When Megara saw him depart, she was sore troubled for his departing, and more for that he took his Armour with him, for she thought, if Hercules heard of any great exploit, he would go thither, and assay himself against it. With great sighs she looked after him, as far as she might, praying to the Gods, that they would bring him shortly again. Hercules and Philotes went forth into the Countrey, and hastened on their journey as much as they could, until they came into Thessalonica, where they were received with great joy of Pyrothus and his friends. They found there a very great assembly of Noble men, Ladies and Gentlewomen, Theseus and Jason were there. The friends of Jason desired that he should be made Knight, wherefore they presented him to Hercules, who gave him the order of Knighthood. And Hercules said, he had seen in him a good beginning of a Noble man, and if he may live, he shall attain to things high and noble. Among other things, the Wedding day came, the City was full of Nobles, and the Centaures were there, they were an hundred Gyants armed, that ran as the wind, which King Ixion had got in Thessaly, of whom some dwelt in Molosse, and other in Aphure a City of Epyte, Hypodamia the Queen thereof, was the Lady and Bride of the Wedding. There were come many Kings and Princes, of whom I have not the names: The Queen Hypodamia and Pyrothus were married together, after their Law. When the time of the dinner was come, they set the Lady in the Hall, where a general feast was made. At this feast all the comers were amply served with all manner of wines and meats, especially the Centaures made passing good cheer, and drank so much wine, that the chief Captain named Euricus, and some of the other, had words together, and troubled the feast. Then they fought together, and cast at each other, pots, platters, wine and meat, so that many were slain. Then was there a great noise in the Hall. Euricus and fifty of his Gyants issued out of the press, and went to fetch their Armour: And being armed, they entered the Hall, and not content with the trouble they had made (albeit Hercules and others endeavoured to appease them, that slew each other)



other (they took Queen Hypodamia and ravished her, then fled: When the Ladies saw this outrage, they cryed out. The fray was so great, that Hercules, Jason, Pyrothus, and Theseus, ran unto them, and when they knew that the Centaures had ravished the Lady, they went presently and armed them.

Hercules put on the skin of the Lyon, and took his Sword, his bow, and his arrows, and went after the Gyants, without staying for any other company. They were placed under a Tree, and there trained them in battel ray, because they knew, the first that should come after them would be Hercules. They hated him secretly, and envied his glory, and they swore the death of him. At that time when they were in these terms, Euricus espied Hercules a far off, and shewed him unto his company, He was all alone, and came not a slow pace like a man, but ran as nimbly as a Hart in the Valley, he seemed to fly in the air. The swiftness of Hercules, frightened not the Centaures, for they were about fourscore, and were all of great courage: They took their Spears, Bolears, Swords, and other Weapons, and some of the strongest went against Hercules: But as soon as he was come so nigh as to shoot at them, he bent his bow, and with an arrow smote a Centaure named Grineus, so that the arrow fastned his head to a Tree, with the second arrow he smote another Gyant named Petreus in the breast, through his Armour quite through his body, with the third he hit Dorillus a terrible Gyant, and nailed his hand to his face, of which stroke he dyed.

He shot many more Arrows, as long as he had any, and he shot none, but with it he hurt or slew one or other of the Gyants, when his shot failed, the Gyants being grieved for the death of their fellows by the shot and strong hand of Hercules, they ran upon him, and environed him on all sides. Sisacus, Nessus, Lincus, Stillo, Lodeuin and Piseus, were the first that smote upon Hercules with their swords, then he took his sword, and came against Pheotones, that had an Axe, so great, that it was an ordinary mans burden. Pheotones presently lift up his Axe, and thought to have smitten Hercules, but he knowing enough of the War, turned him from the stroke, so that the Axe fell to the ground, then Hercules caught the Axe, and plucked it out of his hands,

C. and



and forthwith gave him a stroke with it, that he smote off his right arm at the shoulder.

Thus began the battel of Hercules with the Centaures, Jason and Theseus came to the battel, and well proved their power. For to encourage the other, Hercules thrust himself among the Gyants, and so wrought with the Axe, that they cursed Phootones that brought it thither, and beating down all before them, Hercules began to seek for Hypodamia, and found her nigh to Euricus. Then he spake to Euricus, and said, thou evil glutton, thou hast this day troubled the Feast, and stoln the Lady of my friend Pyrothus, and now I will trouble thy spirit, with this be up with his Axe, and smote Euricus on the head, that he fell dead to the great grief of all the other Gyants, for beholding the Axe dyed with the blood of Euricus their Captain, they were all abashed: Then began Hercules to smite more and more upon the Gyants, there was none then so resolute but was afraid, nor so hardy but began to hide himself, his strokes were not to be bozn, he put all his enemies to flight: Finally with the help of Jason, Theseus and Pyrothus, that were marvellous valiant, they banquished and chased them to a river, where twelve of them saved themselves by swimming over, and all the rest were slain, save only Lincus that Hercules held prisoner, because he prayed for mercy, and yielded to him. Thus were the Centaures destroyed, more by the hand and strength of Hercules, than by any other: When he had cleared the place of all the Centaures, he and his fellows returned to Hypodamia, and brought her again to the City with great triumph. The Ladies rejoiced for the recovery of Hypodamia, and renewed again the Feast, that endured afterwards eight days, very great and sumptuous.

#### CHAP. V.

How *Pluto* ravished *Proserpina*, and how *Orpheus* went for her to Hell: how *Queen Ceres* came to the wedding of *Pyrothus*, and how *Theseus* and *Pyrothus* fought with *Cerberus* the Porter of Hell.

**A**T this time, a little before the Wedding of *Pyrothus*, *Pluto* the King of *Molosse*, Son of *Saturn*, and Brother of *Jupiter*



pitier sailed by Sea, seeking adventures, so long he sailed that he arrived in Sicil, and found there nigh to the water side, a very great assembly of Sicilians, that halloved the feast of their gods. When Pluto saw this feast, he armed twenty of his company under their robes, and went in this manner to see the feast, and try if he could find any booty. This Pluto was the greatest thief, and the most lecherous man in the world, and had with him a Gyant named Cerberus, enough like unto Pluto in condition and courage, but he was more strong and puissant of body, all the other were great as Gyants, and had learned nothing but to practise mischief, and could do nothing else.

When the Sicilians saw Pluto come and his fellows, they supposed it had been some of their neighbours that came to see their plays, and sports, forasmuch as they came cloathed in their garments, and saw none of their Armour or harness, and they forced them to sing and dance, but their Songs and Dances did not continue long, for in coming to them, King Pluto cast his eye aside, and saw the Queen of that Countrey, that beheld the feast, and by her, her Daughter that made a Garland of flowers: The Mother was named Ceres, and the Daughter was called Proserpina and was married to a Nobleman, named Orpheus, that late by her and played on a Harp: this Proserpina was marvellous fair. And anon, as Pluto had seen her, he desired and coveted her and advertised his folk secretly of her, and after came nigh unto her, that he set his hands on her, and laid her on his back, and bare her away.

When Orpheus and Ceres saw Proserpina taken away, they cryed out pitifully unto Pluto; with this cry the Sicilians left their feast, and ran after Pluto in great numbers, Men and Women, hoping to have rescued Proserpina. But when Cerberus and his companions saw the uproar, they drew their Swords, and shewed their weapons, and smote upon them that approached them, slaying them abundantly, they retired, and went unto the Port, in despight of the Sicilians and Orpheus. They guided Pluto to his ship, and after they disanchored, and carryed away Proserpina. The Sicilians were then unprohibited of arms, and could not withstand the taking away of Proserpina. At the de-



parting from the Boat, was made a most sharp lamentation. Proserpina wept on the one side most pitifully. Ceres on the other side, with the Sicilians made no scarcity of tears. Orpheus also failed not to furnish his tears with deep sighs, for he loved Proserpina, and she loved him as well. At their departing their hearts were brought to a grievous distress, with so great anguish that Proserpina fell down in a swoond, and Orpheus raved with anger, that he returned to his Palace, when he had lost the sight of Proserpina, and kept himself close in his chamber, without speaking to any in two days.

At the end of two days Ceres came to visit Orpheus, that would neither eat nor drink, and said unto him, she knew well the ravisher of her daughter, that it was Pluto King of Molosse, and that he dwelt in a part of Thessaly, in a low base City, called Hell, forasmuch as in this Isle, King Pluto and his fellows did so much harm that they were compared to Devils, and their City named Hell. When Orpheus understood that Proserpina was in Hell, he took a little hope in himself, and ate and drank, and made a Vow he would never rest in peace until he had been in Hell to see Proserpina.

After he had eaten, he sent his Mariners and bade them make ready a Ship: When the Ship was furnished (after leave taken of Queen Ceres) in disguised habit he entered into the Ship with his Harp, and made his Mariners to sail forth on the Sea, in such wise that he arrived at one of the Ports of Thessaly, Orpheus went there on Land, and commanded his Mariners that they should abide for him in that place, till a certain time by him appointed. He departed and went from Country to Country, so long till he came to the Gate of Hell, which Cerberus kept, there he began to play on his Harp most melodiously.

When Cerberus heard the Musical sound of the Harp, he lifted up his curled head, and came out of the Gate, to know who he was that played so melodiously? And by the sound of the Harp he found Orpheus; and thinking that Pluto would gladly hear him, (to rejoyce Proserpina that always wept) he caused him to enter into the City, and brought him before the King. Orpheus then began to play again on his Harp. When King Pluto heard him



him, he took great pleasure therein, and so did all they that were there. When Pluto sent for Proserpina, when she was come and heard him play with his Harp, she knew it was her Husband, then was she sore abashed, whereas she had wept sore before, she wept much more now. Pluto was sorry for the grief of Proserpina, and said to Orpheus, if he could play with his Harp so as the Lady should cease her weeping, he would give him what he should ask of him. Orpheus promised him that he would, and Pluto swore to him, that he would keep his promise, if he did so. When Orpheus tuned his Harp, and played divers Songs so sweetly, the infernal Cerberus, and many other fell asleep, and Proserpina, by means of certain signs and tokens that Orpheus made with his eyes, ceased her weeping.

When Pluto saw Proserpina cease her weeping, he was right joyous, he then awoke Cerberus and the other that slept, and said to Orpheus he had well Harped, that no man could do better: and that he should demand something, and he would give it him without fail. Orpheus hearing the words of Pluto, had great perplexity in himself to know what he should demand; in the end he said to him, Sir, I am Orpheus the Husband of this Lady, and for her love I have enterprized to come hither in this case, now I pray you that you will render her again to me, that I may bring her again to her mother that dieth for sorrow. When Pluto had heard the request that Orpheus made, he was all amazed at the hardiness that he had shewed: Howbeit, he said to him, Orpheus, you have demanded Proserpina, she is the Lady that I most love in all the World: Nevertheless, to accomplish my promise that I have made unto you take her, upon condition that you bring her out of this City without looking behind you; and if it happen that you once look behind you, ye shall lose her. At this answer Orpheus was content, and it seemed to him that his wife was as good as recovered again, he and Proserpina passed over that night in good hope. When morning was come, Pluto delivered Proserpina to Orpheus, upon condition before rehearsed. He and his Wife took leave of King Pluto, and thanked him: After they went on their way, but he had not gone half way to the gate, but he looked privately behind him, to see if any  
man



man followed him, and there he found Cerberus at his heels, that took away his Wife from him, and delivered her again unto the King.

Orpheus seeing by this unhappiness he had lost his Wife, began to curse the day that he was born and he followed after her, and began again to Harp, and offered great gifts to recover her again, but it was said to him he should never have her again, and also, that if he had used the feats of arms, as he had the strings of his Harp, he should have died. With this conclusion Orpheus departed from Hell, full of sorrow, and returned into Sicil, unto Queen Ceres, telling her his adventure. The Queen being assured that her Daughter was in Hell, and being advertised that in Thessaly should be allowed the feast of the wedding of Pyrothus: where were many Knights of great fame, she went to the Sea, and came fitly to Thessalonica. while the feast endured. In approaching the City, on an afternoon Pyrothus and Theseus were in the field, they met her. Her attendance was great. Theseus and Pyrothus saluted her, and she saluted them again, and asked them the estate of the feast of the Wedding. They told, and recounted her all. After she demanded of them if there were no Knights of great name, and high enterprizes: when they understood that she enquired so far, they would know what she was, and demanded her name? I am (said she) the Lady Ceres of Sicil. Then spake Theseus and said, Madam, you are welcome, for what occasion demand you if in the feast be any Knights of Enterprize? I can tell you that there be, notwithstanding I do wish you, and also require, that you declare unto us the cause why you have thus demanded?

Sir (said the Lady) since it pleaseth you to enquire of my estate so far: Know you for certain that I have made my demand, forasmuch as Pluto King of Hell, hath ravished my Daughter Proserpina, by which I am hurt unto death. And I would gladly find some Knight that of his courtesie would employ him to get her again, and assail the cursed Tyrant: who I pray God may be damned everlastingly for his demerits. Wherefore I pray you if you know any that will be merciful to me, that it please you for charity to direct me unto him. Madam (answered



ed Theseus) be you no more inquisitive to find such a Knight as you seek: for in the favour of all Ladies, I will be your Knight in this Work, and promise you upon mine honour, that I will transport me into Hell. And King Pluto shall never have peace with me until the time he hath restored your Daughter.

When Pyrothus heard the enterprize of Theseus, he began to break off his words, and said to him, My Brother, what think you to do, when you enterprize to go into Hell? You know not the bounds, nor the situation of that place. Hell standeth behind the Inner Sea, between Mountains and Rocks, so high, that the Citizens therein be in continual darkness and shadow: and the entry is so difficult, that it is impossible to come within the City, unless the Porter consent: For here befozetime, many have gone thither, that be there left and abiding: there goeth no man thither that ever cometh again. It is right an hell, and each man nameth it Hell, as well for the situation thereof in so dark and unlightsome a place, as for the inhumanity and terribleness of the Inhabitants that wait to do evil to all the world. Theseus answered unto Pyrothus, and said: There is nothing impossible unto a valiant heart.

King Pluto is cruel and strong, his folk and people tyrannous. His City standeth in a Countrey environed with mortal perils. Notwithstanding surely the doubt and fear of these things, shall never daunt my courage, but that I will do my endeavour to achieve this enterprize, and will perform my promise, or will have reproach of all Knights. For a man to keep his own honour, ought not to doubt any peril whatsoever it should be.

When Pyrothus had heard the noble answer of Theseus, he allowed it greatly and said unto him, that his words were to him so acceptable, that he would hold him company in this adventure. The Queen Ceres thanked the two Knights: so they brought her into the City, and to the Palace, she being there received and feasted. The stealing away of her Daughter was told, and the enterprize of the two Knights. By the report of this adventure, and the enterprize that Theseus and Pyrothus had made, all the feast was troubled again on anew. Among all o-  
ther



ther Hypodamia considering that her Husband that was so newly married unto her would go in this perillous voyage of Hell, her eyes began to weep, and would receiue no comfort unto her heart. The feast ended in great sorrow, Jason and Hercules would gladly haue gone with Theseus and Pyrothus, and spake thereof to them, but they would not suffer them. Then departed Hercules, and entred into a Ship, as if he would haue gone into his Countrey: each man likewise departed, and Theseus and Pyrothus took their way to go unto Hell. And then about their departing, whereof Hercules was advertised, Hercules made soz to direct his ship unto the marches of Hell, and there went a land alone, concluding in himself that he would go after Pyrothus and Theseus his loyal and true fellows, and gave Philotes charge to bring Lincus unto Thebes, and put him there in Prison until his coming again. After he departed and Philotes shipped in the Sea, where he had a dolorous adventure as shall be said hereafter. But at this time I must cease speaking of that matter, and will recount of Hercules how he went into Hell.

#### CHAP. VI.

How Hercules found Pyrothus dead at the Gate of Hell, and Theseus in danger: and how Hercules vanquished Cerberus: and how he rescued Proserpina from Pluto.

**I**F this place it ought to be spoken, that when Theseus and Pyrothus were departed from Thessalonica, to try if they could recover the fair Lady Proserpina: they travelled so much that by their diligence in short time they arrived in the Valley where was Proserpina, full of sin and cursedness. Pyrothus that knew the Countrey, found the direct way that went into the City, and entred first therein. This way was so strait, that there could but one at once go neither on the right side nor on the left, the Rocks were so high, that no man might go on either side. When they had passed this way, they found a Rock that was cut into stairs, hewed out with Chisels. Then they saw beneath them Hell, a City strongly environed with waters that fell down



Down fearfully from the Rocks, and made a terrible roaring: for they fell from high into a low vault in the earth. This City was inclosed with Mountains. A very Hell, having no more but one Gate: then to come down to the Gate, Pyrothus and Theseus descended down by the stairs made in the Rock. In the descending, suddenly they saw come out of the Gate, a marvellous great Gyant, that had an head marvellously misshapen, fierce, black and ugly. He had his nose high and wide, his chin long, his teeth as great as Horse teeth, his eyes like unto an Ore, his ears hanging like a hound, his shoulders large and broad, his belly swollen, his legs and thighs were strongly boned and mighty. This terrible Gyant was Cerberus, whereof is touched before.

The Poets named him the hound with three heads, considering his grievous and unhappy living, which is compared unto three singular vices: to wit, to Pride, Avarice and Litchery. By Pride, he glorified himself, and exalted him above all the men in the world, with his strength, he was so strong that no man could withstand him. By Avarice and covetousness, he had an appetite insatiable to gather treasures together, and take away all that he could find. By Luxury, there was no man living of more foul life than he was: for he had never done other thing in all his life, than defile and ravish women and Maidens, Ladies and Gentlewomen, so the Poets rightly named him an hound with three heads, for he was foul, as a hound that lieth in multiplication of sins, and taketh therein his felicity. When Theseus and Pyrothus had espied this Cerberus come unto them, all armed, making the wheel in marching proudly unto them, Pyrothus said to Theseus, my Brother, behold what enemy this is, he that putteth him in such perils for the love of Ladies, setteth but little by his life. It behobeth us now to live or dye, let us now atchieve joyously our enterprize, to the end that you may not think but that I had rather dye than have reproach, I will be the first that shall begin the battel. Theseus had no space nor leisure to answer, for Cerberus came to them, and called to them, saying: what seek these fellows in Hell? Come (said Theseus) to seek Proserpina, whom Pluto hath taken away from



the Queen Ceres. We will neber return into our Country, until the time we bring her with us. Aculy (said Cerberus) if ye will return into your Country, you shall render again Proserpina, but I will forbid you the return. And this day I will present unto Proserpina, my Sword dyed in your blood, and here you shall be buried: you shall neber see Proserpina, nor come no nearer then you be now. With these words he lifted up his sword, and gave so great a stroke at Theseus upon his shield, that he did bear away an half quarter of it.

When Pyrothus saw his fellow smitten, he took his sword and smote Cerberus on the one side, and Theseus on the other side, and they gave him two very great strokes, that they made Cerberus to be chafed so sore, that he began the battel unmeasurably, that he brake their Shields and Harness, and also made his sword to be dyed with their noble blood, as he had befoze said. The battel was hard and mortal at the beginning. Theseus and Pyrothus received many wounds by eager strokes, their Arms were all bebeton and broken. The battel endured very long, and Pyrothus behaved himself very well: but Cerberus smote upon him so unmeasurably, that after many wounds given to him, he brake his helm, and cleaved his head into two pieces unto the stomach.

When Theseus saw his fellow dye, he struck Cerberus so fiercely that he made him stagger, and go back two paces, Cerberus would have avenged him of his stroke, and smote Theseus so that if the noble Knight had not turned back, Cerberus had smitten him unto death. This stroke of Cerberus fell to the earth and entered therein, and Theseus smote again upon his enemy, which began to roar like an old Lion, and struck Theseus so fiercely with his sword, that he broke his shield, and so bruised his helm, that he was astonished at the stroke. But always Theseus abode in the place: and then Cerberus would have brought him to destruction, following the evil adventure of Pyrothus, if Fortune had not brought Hercules thither, who came so stry to rescue Theseus that he knew not else how to save himself.

At this point when Theseus was so astonished, Hercules that was departed from the sea (as is said) came to the stairs that



were cut in the Rock, and beholding Theseus all covered with blood, and Pyrothus dead, he began to descend down, crying to Theseus that he should not be afraid. When Cerberus saw and heard Hercules, he began to cry again and roar to be quit of him: Theseus was recomforted with the voice of Hercules, but however he began to run here and there before Cerberus.

So much then hastened Hercules down the stairs, in entering the place, and as hastily as he might, he cried to Cerberus, cruel Giant, let the Knight run and come to me: thou hast put to death my good friend Pyrothus, whereof I am sorry, but I will take vengeance of thee for him. Cerberus hearing the sentence of Hercules ran no more after Theseus, but tarried and beheld Hercules with a fierce look, and answered him, So meaneth he to revenge his shame, that so beliebeth: I have destroyed thy fellow unto death, and unless thou exceed him in skill of arms and in bodily strength an hundred fold double, it is folly for thee to come hither; For I am Cerberus the Porter of Hell, that at report of my name all the world trembleth.

Thus ended his answer, Hercules was at the foot of the Rock, and he had his Club upon his shoulder. Cerberus came against him, they smote each other lustily, and thus they began a very hard battel: then Theseus, that was weary late by, and rested him, drying and cleansing his wounds of the blood that came out of him.

Hercules beheld Theseus cleansing his great wounds, he began to employ the force of his strength and might, by such marvel, that with a stroke that he gave him on his helme, he made him to stoop under his Club, and so kneel to the ground with the left knee, and at the second stroke in pursuing him hastily, he made his sword to fly out of his hand, then he made him to fall on his arms to the ground, and with the third stroke, as Cerberus thought to have relieved him and gotten his sword, Hercules smote him upon the body, that he made his head reel against a great stone: after that he sprang upon him, and bound his legs with the strength & force of his hands in despite of the Giant, and he tore the helm off his head, and would have slain him, but Theseus prayed him that he would not put him to death

D 2

there,



there, but that he would bring him into Thessalonica, to dye by the sentence of the Queen Hypodamia.

Cerberus was not then put to death. at the request of Theseus. Forwithstanding, Hercules bound his hands behind his back, and after he made him arise, and took him by the beard, and made him go up on the Rock, and there he laid him down, and bound his feet, his hands, and his neck together, in such wise, that he durst not remove. When he had done so, he went down, and entred into the Gate of Hell, and leaving there Theseus, he went so far that he found the Palace of King Pluto, and there came into the same Hall where Pluto was with Proserpina. All they that were there, marvelled at him, when they saw him entred: for they knew not of the overcoming of Cerberus, as they that left all the charge and keeping of their City to him, without having any doubt or suspicion: also they were so far from the Gate, that they might not hear of the battel, nor knew of nothing that befel their Visitor. Then when Hercules had found Pluto and Proserpina, he had great joy, and knew him by certain marks, he addrest him towards Pluto, and said: Pluto, by thy treachery, Sicil is now full of heaviness, for the ravishing of this Lady, which thou hast not granted to yield, and render again to her husband Orpheus. I know not what pleasure thou hast therein, but I will make thee to repent this injury, in following the evil adventure of Cerberus, whom I have vanquished. With these words Hercules lifted up his Club, and gave such a stroke to Pluto, that he overthrew him to the earth, so that he moved neither head nor foot. When he had so beaten Pluto, thinking that he had been dead, he assailed them that were there murmuring, and put them all to death lightly with his Club, in the presence of Proserpina, who trembled for fear. Then he comforted Proserpina, and said to her, he was come unto that place to deliver her, and to bring her again to her Mother, and that she should boldly follow him. Proserpina hearing this, was comforted with the words of Hercules, and followed him.

Hercules opened the dooz, and went out, and Proserpina with him. After he addrest him unto the Gate of the Palace, it hapned



happened that there he found a great company of Citizens, that were advertised of this fray, and they ran upon him unmeasurably pursuing him to death. When Hercules saw that, he willed Proserpina to get her apart. After that he lifted up his Club, and began to skirmish with his enemies with such valour, that he covered all the entry of the Palace with those miserable Tyrants that he slew, for he put to death more than four hundred. So that the other fled and gave it over: and then when he saw his enemies dead and scattered, he took Proserpina by the hand and led her out of the Gate of the City.

Theseus (that carried at the Gate, as is said) rejoiced greatly when he saw Hercules come again with Proserpina: he arose and met them and saluted the Lady, and presented to Hercules a Chain of Iron, that he had found at the Gate, and many prisoners bound by Cerberus. Hercules unbound the prisoners, and took the Chain and bound Cerberus therewith. And when he had buried Pyrothus, he departed from Hell, and took his way with Proserpina, Theseus and Cerberus, and journeyed till he arrived in Thessalonica, and delivered Proserpina to the Queen Ceres: and to Hypodamia he presented Cerberus, rehearsing to her and the Ladies, how he had slain Pyrothus. Hypodamia had so great sorrow for the death of Pyrothus, that to recount it is impossible. All they of Thessaly likewise made great sorrow for their Lord. And to revenge his death, Hypodamia did cause Cerberus to be bound to a stake in the Theatre of the City, where young and old tormented and beat him three days, drawing him by the beard, and spitting in his face; after slew him unhumanely. And when Hercules and Theseus, Ceres and Proserpina had tarried there a while in comforting Hypodamia, they took their leave and Hercules went accompanied with Theseus toward the City of Thebes. But I will leave them, and speak of the adventures of Philotes.

#### CHAP. VII.

How *Andromedus* delivered *Lyncus*: And how he slew in battel the King *Creon*, and took the City of *Thebes*.

When Philotes had received into his guard and keeping *Lyncus*, Hercules was gone to the succour of Theseus, and



and Pyrothus, as befoze is said : the Mariners took their Ship and sailed all that day without finding any Adventure. But on the morrow betimes in the morning. For tune that always turneth without any resting, brought to them a great Ship, that drew his course unto the same place that they came from. Andromedus King of Calcide, was Captain of this Ship. This Andromedus was Cozen to Lyncus. When he had espied the Ship where Lyncus was, he made his Galley to row thitherwards, and said : he would know what people were therein. In approaching the Ship of Thebes, Lyncus beheld the Galley of Andromedus, and knew it by the Signs and Flags that it bore. Andromedus demanded of the Mariners to whom the Ship belonged ? When Lyncus saw and heard Andromedus, he broke the answer of the Mariners, and cryed to him, Andromedus, loe here thy friend Lyncus, if thou give me no succour thou mayest lose a good friend in me : for I am a Prisoner, and Hercules hath sent me into Thebes.

Andromedus hearing Lyncus, had great anger, for he loved Lyncus well, and called to them that brought him, and said to them, that they were all come unto their death. And also that they were under his ward. Philotes and his folk, were furnished with Arms and Harness, and made them all ready to defend themselves, and with little talk, they of Calcide assailed Philotes, and Philotes, and his folk employed them at their defence. The battel was great, but ill fortune and mishap turned in such wise upon the fellows of Philotes, that they were all slain. Andromedus had two hundred men in his company, all Robbers on the Sea. These Thieves smote fiercely upon Philotes, and hewed his arms, striking, and giving him many wounds. But his strong resistance profited him but little, for in the end he was taken and bound, and Lyncus was delivered and unbound from the bonds of Hercules.

Lyncus had great joy of his deliverance : thanked his good friend Andromedus. After this he told him how he was taken, and how Hercules had dissipated and destroyed the Centaures. And among other he named many of his friends that were dead, whereat Andromedus had so great displeasure, that he swooze incontinently



continently he would revenge it. That as Hercules, had slain his friends, in like manner he would destroy his kinsfolks. He said to him, that Hercules was gone into Hell. And after demanded, how he would revenge him upon the friends of Hercules: and thereupon they were long thinking. In the end, when he had taken advice. Andromedus concluded, that he would assail the City of Thebes, and if he might get it by assault, he would flea the King Creon and all them of his blood.

With this conclusion, came thither all the Gallies of Andromedus, in which he had eight thousand fighting men. Andromedus made them to return towards Thebes, and as hastily as he might, he entred into the Realm, wasting and destroying the Countrey by fire and sword so terribly, that the tidings came unto King Creon. When he knew of the coming of the King Andromedus, and that without defiance, he made him War, he sounded to Arms, and assembled a great company, and knowing that Andromedus was come into a certain place, he issued out of Thebes all armed, and brought his people upon his Enemies, that received them joyfully. And set themselves in order against them, and joyned their Battels. The cry was great on both sides, spears, swords, darts, guisarms, arrows and poieaxes were set on work. Many Nobles were beaten down. Lyncus and Andromedus fought valiantly: King Creon and Amphitrion failed not, there was blood abundantly shed on both sides. The battel was cruel and sharp, so that Andromedus and his people, got ground from them of Thebes, and constrained them to retire: whereof King Creon had great sorrow, and put his men again in array, casting himself in the greatest press of the battel, where he fought mortally, and made such slaughter among his enemies, that Lyncus and Andromedus heard of the skirmish, and came together. As Lyncus saw the King Creon do marvels at Arms, he gave him three strokes one after another, and with the fourth stroke, he burst his Helm in pieces, and slew him: whereof they of Thebes were sore afraid, and dispaired so, that they were utterly discomfited, and fled: which sight Amphitrion could not remedy, albeit he was strong and of great courage.



Of this overthrow Thebes was hastily advertised. Megara was gone up upon an high Tower of the Palace, and beheld the battel: and saw them of Thebes slain without remedy, and also turn their backs. The sight of the beating down of the King her Father and the view of the others, made her to cry out of Fortune, and said: Unhappy Thebes, what mischief is befallen thee? Where is Hercules? Alas what is become of him? That he is not here, to defend the Countrey of his nativity, to keep his Wife from her foes, and like a Bulwark, to defend this City from her enemies.

When she had said this, she fell into a swoond, and so lay a great while. Then they of Thebes flying, Andromedus and Lyncus followed them so close, that they entered the City with them. And forasmuch as the Thebians were without head and put out of array, and Amphitrion had so many wounds upon him, that his strength failed: so the unhappy Lyncus and Andromedus took the City, and slew all that might bear Arms, except Amphitrion, whom they found not in the heat. Afterward they went into the Palace, and there they found Megara and Amphitrion in great desolation, with many Ladies and Gentlewomen.

When Lyncus saw Megara (she was so fair and pleasant) he became amorous of her, and came to her and said, Lady weep no more: Hercules the bastard Son of Jupiter is gone into Hell, and there he is dead. You have been wife of a man gotten in adultery, from henceforth ye shall be Consort and Wife of a man legitimate, and born in lawful marriage: for I will marry you, and yield you more pleasure than ever you had. Megara answered, false Traitor, thinkest thou I am so foolish to give credit to the murderer of my Father, and enemy of my Lord Hercules? Know thou that I am his Wife, and that I will never have another Husband but him: he is no Bastard, but Son of the Lord Amphitrion, and the most noble man that is in all the World. Lady (answered Lyncus) I am King of this City, you are now at my command, will ye, or will ye not, I shall do my will with you, but I will take respite in my sufferance till to morrow. After these words Lyncus sent Megara into a Tower, and made



made her be kept there. After he sent Philotes into a low Prison, and finding there in bondage and misery Priamus the Son of King Laomedon, he had pity of him, and sent him again to Troy, where he was received with great joy of the Trojans.

## CHAP. VIII.

How *Hercules* entred into *Thebes* in an unknown habit : and how he put to death the Giant *Lyncus* and his Complices, and his Wife *Megara*.

While by the Sword of *Lyncus* and *Andromedus*, *Thebes* was taken, *Lyncus* exercised there many tyrannies. For *Andromedus* departed, leaving *Lyncus* there, with four hundred men of War, to keep the City, and to hold it under his command. Thus were the *Centaures* rebenged. *Juno* coming into *Thebes*, rejoiced greatly when she found it desolate, full of Widows and Orphans, and in the hands of *Hercules* his enemies : then great were the lamentations of *Megara* : but *Amphitryon* being nigh her, comforted her. *Lyncus* came many times to her into the Prison, and requested her love in the best manner he could. Yet his fair words availed him not, for he found her constant and firm, always keeping inviolable her chastity, and gave him many vertuous answers, whereof this is one, and the last : *Lyncus* thou hast conquered *Thebes*, and Fortune hath given it unto thee, whereby thou hast enriched thy self with vices. Thou now hast power to commit on me murther : but thy power, nor thy sins be not so strong, to make my virtue bow to thee. *Megara* always bewailed *Hercules* : she lamented so much on a day, that she became all ravished, and in a Trance. That same day, *Hercules* ( being departed from *Thessalonica* a good while before ) journeyed so that he entred into the Realm of *Thebes* accompanied with many Noble men. He found the Country all destroyed. And he had not gone far, when it was told him, how *Lyncus* was Lord of *Thebes* : and how he had slain in battel the King *Creon* and imprisoned *Megara*.

When *Hercules* had received these tydings, he was replenished with anger, and said that he would rebenge him if he  
 might.



might. Then he cloathed him with a Mantle aboue his Armour, and disguised himself: when he had so done, he left there his fellows, and entred alone into Thebes, and being unknown, passed through the Gate, and carried himself so well, that the Porters let him pass through, till he came to the Palace. At the entry of the Palace a Souldier came to him, and demanded what he sought there? Hercules cast away his Mantle, and betook him to his Sword, and without speaking he gave so great a stroke to the Souldier, that being unarmed he cleft his head from the highest part down to the ground. Many other Souldiers that were there, seeing the stroke, were afraid, and ran to their Axes and Clubs, and some came and fought with Hercules: but he strooke off their heads, and then began to arise so great an uprore, that Lyncus heard it: and thinking it had been his Porters that had quarrelled, he came running down unarmed, to make peace. As soon as Hercules perceived him coming out of the hall, he drew unto him with his Sword ready drawn in his hand: crying Hercules, Hercules, and strooke him so, that he cut off his right arm, and with the stroke he fell to the ground. And he laid upon others, that had no helms on their heads, nor targets on their backs: and then they knew it was Hercules. He slew them so thick, that with the blood that ran down, was made a great rushing, as if it had been a River.

Among these things the Gentlewomen of Megara issued out of the Palace, and went into the streets, crying with high and clear voyces, that Hercules was come again, and that he had slain Lyncus. With these cries, all the City rejoiced, and both old and young, Widows, Wives and Maids, ran and took arms with great courage, and assailed all about the men of Lyncus. There was a terrible battel, and many people gathered together, men and women against their enemies. In a little space all the City was troubled. When Hercules had put to death all that he found in the Palace, excepting Lyncus, whom he put in the guard, and keeping of Queen Juno, and of many Gentlewomen that came unto him, he sprang into the streets, and threwd his sword, and laid down on all sides, and fought so mortally with the men of Lyncus, all about where he might find them,



them, that by the help of them of Thebes, he made all the party of Lyncus fall by his Sword. When the Thebans rejoiced greatly: and Hercules returned into the Palace, unto the place where the Ladies kept Lyncus. Then Hercules sent to break open the dooz of the Chamber which Megara was in, forasmuch as they could not find the keys, for they that kept her were dead. Megara then full of gladness turned to her Lord. Hercules rose up and would have embraced her: but Lyncus that thought on nothing but evil (by the secret perswasion of Juno) turned him from it, saying: Hercules, touch not my Concubine, for I have known her fleshly, and she is the most luxurious Lady, that ever I was acquainted with.

When Megara heard the crime, the Traitor charged her with, she fell backward into a swoon, without speaking a word. Hercules being full of anger, and thinking Lyncus said true, he stroke off the head of Lyncus, and with the same Sword that he slew the Traitor, he put to death Megara, that was with Child. Per the Chronicles of Spain tell, that he slew not his Wife, but put her into a Religious house, that he ordained in Thebes in the Temple of Diana, renouncing her company: and it is said, that this was the first Religion that ever was in Thebes. These things accomplished, Hercules went and took out of Prison Amphitryon and Philotes, and departed from thence sore grieved: so that then, nor a long time after he spake not: and went his way at all adventure, accompanied with Theseus and Philotes, and the Thebans lamented his departure: and he refusing, they crowned Layus the Son of Agenor King of Assyria, forasmuch as he married Jocosta Daughter of King Creon.

## CHAP. : IX.

How Hercules put to death Laomedon, and destroyed *Troy* the second time.

**K** Now, that Hercules, Philotes, and Theseus departed from Thebes, and went into many Kingdome seeking their adventures. And passing by Lycia where Hercules was created King, on a day they came into Macedonia, unto the Palace of



King Eson, whose Son Jason had enterprized to sail into the Isle of Colchos, and made all things ready. When Hercules had been feasted of Jason, and of Duke Peleus, and knew that Jason would conquer the Fleece of Gold, he promised that he would accompany him. And if Fortune would favour him, he would adventure to bring his enterprize to an end. To be brief, Jason and Hercules made ready a good Ship, setting out to Sea, and renewed not their victuals, till they came to the Port of Troy. And then they could not renew them at the Port, for the King Laomedon was then in Troy, and had fortified marvellously the City again: knowing that there was landing at his Port a Ship full of Greeks, he sent down a messenger, that commanded them rudely, that they should depart thence, and that he was enemy to the Greeks. Jason (as Captain of the Army) answered courteously the Messenger of the King Laomedon, and prayed him, that he might have victuals for his money: The Messenger answered him, that he should have none there, unless he got it with the Sword. Then Hercules could be silent no longer, but swore to the Trojan, that if he might return from the voyage that he had enterprized, he would yet once again destroy Troy, and not leave one stone upon another. With this conclusion, Hercules and Jason departed from Troy, and by Fortune they were brought to the Port of Lemnos, where reigned a Queen named Hyliphyle, who waxed amorous of Jason, as is contained in the History of Jason. In this Port of Lemnos, Hercules was advertised, that thereby was a King named Phineus, which suffered himself to be governed by an avaricious woman, Phineus had been married to another woman before, and by her had two Sons. These two were wrongfully banished by their stepmother: and she was so covetous, that she took from the King his riches, and held greater state than he. Hercules hearing thereof, he went and spake to King Phineus, and to the Queen, and shewed them their vices in such manner, that the two Children were called back from exile, and the King held his estate royal. Then Hercules returned into Lemnos, and setting to Sea with Jason, sailed to the Isle of Colchos, where Jason by the help of Medea, conquered the Sheep with



with the fleece of Gold, and carried it with him into Greece. Then Hercules commended Jason greatly among his Parents and Friends, and spake of the unkindness of King Laomedon, how he had sworn to destroy Troy, for the discourtesie that Laomedon had offered them. Then they altogether with Hercules, vowed Troy's Destruction: and concluded upon the day of their departure, and after made ready their ships, and other provisions. Then Hercules kept his Covenant so well, that at the day concluded, the whole Army put forth to Sea, and having a gentle Wind, they shortly arrived at the Port of Troy, with so great an Host, that Laomedon durst not interrupt their landing.

Jason was at that time, travelling to seek adventures. Hercules had with him many Noble men, and among others, there were with him the King Thelamon, Ajax, the Duke Nestor, Castor, Pollux, Theseus, and many Kings and Dukes. At the landing of this Host (which was of strong entry) Hercules, that nothing doubted his enemies, caused to sound the Trumpets and Tabors, and made so great a noise with them, that the Walls of Troy, and of the Walace echoed therewith, so that Laomedon seeing (out of one of his Windows) the Host of his Enemies, was a great while thinking whether he should go to battle against them or no. So then it happened, that as he was thus pensive, he looked toward the Market place, and saw there more than thirty thousand armed men: which enflamed his heart, that he went and armed him, and (all his thoughts and piveness set apart) came to his people, whom he desired to do their uttermost. And after, himself trusting in Fortune, issued out into the field in order of Battel, with good conduct: although he supposed Hercules to be in the Army that was landed at the Port, he marched unto his enemies, that were joyful at his coming. And then began the Greeks and Trojans a hot skirmish with such slaughter, that there was many slain. Hercules failed not to beat down his enemies, and casting his eyes on high, espied the Banner Royal of Troy: he laid on the right side, and on the left, with his Club he beat down unmeasurably, that he came to the Banner, and finding there Laomedon, he laid on him



him with his Club on his helm, that he pierced his brain-pan and he fell down dead among many Trojans: and ended his miserable life.

After this, he fought so valiantly with them that held the Banner, that he beat it down; then all the Trojans were discomfited, and cryed flæ, flæ. With this cry, they began to retire unto the City, thinking to save themselves. But the Greeks pursued them so close, that they slew many of them in their flight. The rest entered the City, so troubled for the death of King Laomedon, that there was little defence among them. Thelamon was the first man that entered Troy, and Hercules the second: and then Hercules found well, he was right valiant. Priamus was not in Troy at that time, but was gone into the East, at the commandment of Laomedon, after he was returned from Thebes. Fortune having cast down King Laomedon by the strong hand of Hercules, the Greeks entered into Iliion and pillaged it, and did ransack all the Treasures of Troy. And they took Exione the Daughter of the King, whom Hercules gave unto Thelamon, requesting him to take her, forasmuch as he was the first that entered the City. And when they had taken all they thought good in Troy, for a final vengeance, Hercules beat down the Towers and buildings, and fired them: that they left not one stone upon another.

#### CHAP. X.

How Hercules and Affe assailed by battel the Gyant *Antheon*, and how they vanquished him in battel the first time.

**A**fter this general destruction of Troy, when the Greeks departed, and Hercules had left them, the Greeks returned into Grece with great glory, and Hercules went by Sea, seeking his adventures, accompanied with Theseus and Philotes: and arriving at the Port of Alexandria, he found in this Port a great army. When the Captain of the Army saw him weigh anchor, he knew by the Ensigns of Hercules, that it was he: for he had heard him commended above all men, he came unto him full of joy, and said to him: Lord of valour, and trea-  
sure



sure of vertue, amongst the people most might, and among things most resplendent in all glorious vertue. I salute you, and request that I may be your seruant and friend. and thus saying, he fell on his knees before Hercules, in sign of humilitie, he kissed the earth. When Hercules saw the salutation and behaviour of this man, he took him by the hand (and lifted him up from the ground) saluted him, and demanded of him his name? He answered him, that his name was Affer, Son of Medias, the Son of Abraham, and that in the Army, none was Captain but himself, and that the Egyptians, had ordained him Duke and Leader of the Host, to go into Lybia, to destroy the Countrey in revenge of the injuries that the Tyrant Busire of Lybia, had done to them, as Hercules well knew.

When Hercules had understood the name and affairs of Affer, he took him for his friend: and said to him, that he would accompany him to conquer Lybia. Affer thanked him, and brought him into a rich Ship, where he feasted him as much as was possible. They had not long abidden there, but they went to sea with great gladness; for the Egyptians were so joyful and glad to have Hercules with them, that they believed verily, that there might no mishap come to them. Hercules found in the ship of Affer, the Wife and also the Daughter of Affer, whose name was Echec: she was the most fair Gentlewoman in the world, and young and fresh. By the daily sight of her, Hercules became amorous of her, and required her to be his Wife. Echec answered, that of her self she might not accord to his demand: but she said, if Fortune give me so great a grace that I may be your Wife, I shall have more cause to thank the Gods, than any desert in me. Hercules was well content with the Damoysel: and by her perswasion called Affer, and required him that he would give to him his Daughter to be his Wife. Affer thanked Hercules, that he vouchsafed to demand his Daughter: he that was the most excellent of Nobles: and said to him, that he should take her and do with her his will and pleasure. Hercules espoused Echec, by the consent of Affer, and they lay together, paying the due debt of Marriage in such wise, that Echec conceived of the seed of Hercules. After the marriage, Hercules and Affer sailed.



tailed so long, that they arrived at the Port of Lybia, where now standeth Carthage, and there they took Land in a night which was clear, afterwards they entered hastily into the Countrey, and besieged the City of Lybia, without resistance, or gainsaying.

In this City was then a great Gyant named Antheon, very great above other Gyants, the most strong and puissant that was in all the parts of Europe and Lybia, Cirene, Tripoly, in all the Mountains and Isles, inhabited in these Countreys, unto the Isles Fortunate. This King then advertised of the coming of the Egyptians, was passing angry, and swore, that none of them should return into Egypt.

As soon then as he might he did cause his men to arm them, and issued out of the City with a great company of Lybians, and made so great hast to run upon the Egyptians, that he kept no order among his people, whereof he took great harm: For when he came to the battel, he found that Hercules had trained his people, and set them in two battels, of which he lead and conducted the first battel. It hapned so, that they of the said company of Hercules, by force of shot, bare themselves so valiantly, with strokes, that they brought to death more than fifteene hundred Lybians. When their shot failed, Antheon sprang into the greatest press, as the most valiant, and supposed well to have skirmished with his enemies: but when Hercules saw him come, he laid hand on his Club, and put him forth before, and gave him so great a stroke, that he made his head to bow on the left side. Antheon had his Sword lifted up to have smitten Hercules. when he received the stroke that Hercules gave him, by which his stroke was broken. Nevertheless he said between his teeth, he would revenge him. So he lifted up his Sword again, and stroke Hercules so vehemently, that with the stroke he brake his Shield. Then Hercules knew that the Gyant was a man of great strength, yet notwithstanding, he smote him the second time with his Club: thus Hercules and Antheon gave each other so great strokes, that there came between them of the two parties, both Lybians and Egyptians. There was a great noise of clinking of Swords, and sounding of the Shields and Helms that



that were broken, and Halberds that were dismailed, Shields quartered, and Glaves broken: there was blood largely shed on both parties. Hercules and Antheon were parted by force of the Pyres. Antheon by great ire smote without ceasing upon the fierce Egyptians: Hercules broke the Helms largely with his Club, and did what he pleased with the Lybians, and brought so many to death with his Club, that in little time he passed throughout the whole power of King Antheon, many times in his way he covered the earth with dead Lybians. The first skirmish was strong and damagable to Antheon: for one Egyptian that he slew with his Sword, Hercules with his Club killed ten Lybians. About Hercules was nothing but blood Hercules made the mountains to rebound with cries, the companies to tremble, the Lybians to flee back, with little gain. As long as the day endured he held the battle valiantly, and about the evening, when Affer and Theseus came to the fight, he bestirred himself in such fashion against Antheon that he made him flee, so that the Egyptians pursued them.

### CHAP. XI.

How Hercules took King *Atlas*: and how he began to study the Science of Astronomy, and the seven liberal Sciences.

**N**OW when Hercules saw the Lybians flee before them, he caused to sound a retreat, forasmuch as it was late, and with great gloze returned into the place that he had chosen to hold his Siege at. His Wife Echec came to him with open arms, and kissed him: she helped to warm him, and brought him fresh water to wash his face with, and there was made good cheer of all the Egyptians. Contrary to this good cheer, the Lybians were in the City and made great sorrow, for they had lost near thirty thousand men: especially Antheon made ample cheer, for he had good cause: Hercules had so beaten him with his Club, that he might not help himself, but went with great pain to bed, and with sorrow sent for his Physicians and Chirurgians, which came and visited him, and finding him all bruised, said to him that it would be near a month ere they could heal him. An-

theon



theon considered his case, sent and desired of the Egyptians  
Truce for the space of a month, offering to send them daily a  
certain number of cattel, and a great quantity of vittuals. Then  
he commanded all the Kings and Princes that were his Tribu-  
taries, and sent unto his neighbours, praying them that they  
would come and succour him with their men of Arms, in the  
most hastie wise they could. This peace so made, Hercules be-  
gan to remember him, that before time he had heard Philotes  
speak of a King named Atlas, that he was the most wise man  
and cunningest of all the world, that he dwelt in a Castle stand-  
ing on the top of a very high Mountain named Atlas, after the  
name of the same King. In this remembrance Hercules being  
covetous of the science of Atlas, called Philotes and said to him  
that he would go into the Realm of King Atlas, and that his  
intent was to seek there his adventure. Philotes answered, that  
he could bring him into the Realm, for he knew the Country.  
Then Hercules called Affer, and Theseus, and charged them that  
they should alway make good watch. And took leave of them and  
his Wife, saying that he would hastily return. This done,  
he and three Mariners with Philotes, went unto the Sea in a  
Galley finely made, and sailed into the Mediterranean Sea: they  
had speedy Wind, and Fortune was good to them. In little while  
they came into the Strait of Gibraltar. And then Philotes shew-  
ed unto Hercules the Mountain, and the Castle where Atlas was  
at that time abiding.

When Hercules saw the Mountain and the Castle, he went  
and took land joyously: Then he took his Club, and commanded  
Philotes and his Mariners to abide them there. So he went  
toward the Mountain, and it happened he met with a man that  
descended down from the hill, and he addressed him toward the  
said man to hear some tidings, and demanded him from  
whence he came? He said, I came from the Castle that ye  
may see ponder on high. Whither go ye said Hercules? unto  
the City of Mercely, answered the stranger: the King Atlas  
to whom I am servant, hath sent me thither to publish his  
commandement unto the Citizens, that within six days they  
should be furnished with their Arms, for to accompany him to  
go



go unto the war of the great King of Lybia, which requested instantly to have his succour. Wherefore if ye will serbe him in his Army, and be his souldier, go up and ye shall find him in his Castle studying the science of Astronomy. The Serbant of King Atlas with these woꝝds went on his way, and Hercules went up unco the Mountain, and came to the Gate of the Castle. where he found four Knights that demanded of him what he would have? Hercules answered, his will was to speak to the King, for certain matters that concerned him. The four Knights (thinking nothing but good) brought Hercules within a great Hall, wherein were all the men of King Atlas, assaying them with Swords and Axes, forasmuch as they had heard say, that they should go to Mars, and they were all armed.

When these Knights had brought Hercules thither, they gave knowledge unto the King, that a strange Gyant asked after him, and would not tell them the cause why? Then Atlas went down, and found Hercules armed in a Lyons skin, and asked him what he was? then he answered, he was Hercules that had conquered Philotes and the Garden with the Sheep of thy Daughters: I am now come hither for to conquer thee with thy sciences. Wherefore it behobeth thee that thou do to me obedience, and give over to help the great Antheon mine enemy. And if thou wilt not do so, Arm thee hastily, and defend thee with Arms, and that I command thee: If thou wilt not consent thereto by love, I will make thee accoꝝd thereto by force. Atlas was exceedingly discouraged, when he knew by the mouth of Hercules that it was he that had conquered Philotes, and had slain the Gyant his fellow, taken his Sheep, and also newly had assailed by War Antheon, to whom he had promised to give succour: and also considered, that he willed he should yeld himself to him, his heart then began to swell for anger and pride, and in great rage he said to him. O thou presumptuous Hercules, how art thou so hardy as to come alone before me? thou that I may not love? know thou that I have had many a displeasure by thy outrage, for Philotes was my great friend: and now thou art come to renew this displeasure, and that I, ie. o me unto thee, is not my intention.



Atlas with these words went into a Chamber fast by, and commanded that every man should arm him, as they did, Hercules had always his eye upon him: to the end that he should not escape him. When he was armed he came against Hercules, and challenged him. After he gave him a stroke with his sword fiercely. With the cry and with the stroke all they of the Fortress assailed Hercules. Then he put himself in defence, and laid about mightily by the rigour of his Club, and with twelve strokes he slew twelve of his enemies. After he wounded many other, and spared long the blood of Atlas. But in the end, so much as Atlas, gave great strokes to Hercules, Hercules smote him upon the Helme, without employing all his strength, and gave him a wound in the head, that all astonished he bare him to the earth. Then they of the Fortress durst no more adventure to assail Hercules, neither durst they adventure to relieve Atlas, but fled thence out of the Castle, and Hercules abode there alone with Atlas, and the dead bodies. So in the end when Hercules saw they had given it over, he took Atlas, and made him to cry him mercy. Then he went into his study, and took all his books, which he laded upon a Camel, and constrained Atlas to follow him. And when Hercules had done in the Castle all his pleasure, he departed accompanied with Atlas, and with his books, and brought him down to the Sea side, to the place where Philotes stayed for him.

When Philotes saw Hercules come with Atlas, and his books, he had great joy, and took acquaintance with Atlas, who was so sorrowful that he could not speak: then they entered into their Galley, and went unto the Sea: Atlas was sorrowful, and troubled with the wound he had in his head. Hercules requested him instantly, that he would teach him his science. Atlas would in no wise do it at the beginning of his sorrow: but when he had conversed and tarried with Hercules, as well for the bounty he saw in him, as by the persuasion of Philotes, which affirmed that Hercules was the most noble and vertuous man that ever was, he began to teach him all his sciences: wherein he learned and profited by quick and sharp wit, that he attained to all, and that afterward he became the best Philosopher, and the most perfect.



perfect Astronomer in all the world. Thus studying, Hercules returned with great honour into the Army of Affer, and found at his coming, that his Wife had brought forth a fair Son, which the Egyptians had crowned King of Egypt, where he reigned afterwards, and was called Dedon.

When Affer saw Atlas, and knew how Hercules had vanquished him, he marvelled much of his prowess which was so great, and of his wisdom that attained to such high things. But Hercules bent all his wit and study to learn the science. In the mean while a little and a little the time passed, and Antheon assembled a very great host, and was all healed of his wounds, and the Truce failed and expired, whereat the Egyptians had great joy: for they expected to have victory of their enemies. And the Lybians hoped to revenge them of the shame that Hercules had made them receive. When the Truce was expired, the day following Hercules made ready his battels on the one side, and Antheon ordained his on the other side. Antheon made three battels, the first of twelve thousand fighting men, the second of twenty thousand, and the third battel of thirty thousand. He then ordained himself King and chief Captain of the first battel: in the second, he ordained the King of Getulie to be Governour: and in the third, he made the King of Cothulie. And then when he had well set them in array, and trained them, in a morning he made them to march joyously against his enemies, expecting nothing but the hour when Hercules would charge them.

## CHAP. XII.

How Hercules assembled his battel against Antheon King of the Lybians, which he put to flight, and slew the King of Cothulie.

**H**ercules had made of his folk two battels, the first whereof he conducted. Affer and Theseus guided the other. When he saw the Lybians march, which made the greatest tumult and noise in the world, he went forth before, and his Company followed. Then began the Trumpets to sound, and Labors to make.



make great noise : the cry was great, they began sharply the battel, whereof Hercules and Antheon made the assay by a swift course, and with sharp Swords smote so sore together, that Antheon brake his Sword, and the Iron of the Sword of Hercules pierced the Shield of Antheon and his arms on his right side, by which he had a wound where the blood sprang out. Antheon was almost dead with sorrow when he felt the stroke, and saw that his Sword had done but little to Hercules : he took his Sword, and Hercules took his, and they smote each other so hard, that Hercules bare Antheon unto the earth with one stroke, and had slain him, had not the Lybians run upon Hercules on all sides, they gave him so great an assault that he knew not to whom he might attend. When Hercules employed his Sword upon the Lybians. The Egyptians assembled them eagerly upon their enemies. Antheon relieved himself all ashamed of his fall : applying all his puissance and strength to revenge him, not upon Hercules, but upon them of his party. This Antheon smote eagerly on the one side, and Hercules on the other. Antheon fought with great fierceness and anger, and Hercules by Wounds. The fierceness of Antheon was great, but the Wounds of Hercules was so excessive great, that the Lybians fled him : and when they saw him they trembled for fear, at this battel, before the sword of Hercules all bloody. Then the great routs of the Lybians were sore afraid, and kept no array : he smote off heads, and laid them down to the earth : his folk that were destroyed by Antheon he gathered together again. He made such work that the Lybians had the worse, and Antheon sent hastily to the King of Cothulie, that he should come to his help.

The King of Cothulie at the sending of Antheon, departed, weening to have come to the skirmish : but when Affer and Theseus saw him, they went against him, and hindered him. Then began the fight so great and mortal, that Theseus and Affer slew the King of Cothulie, beat down his Banners, his recognisances, and his Cotuliens, and smote so sore upon their bodies, that they went back, and were constrained to cry for help. The King of Getulie seeing this evil adventure, came unto



to the rescue, and found the Cotulians discomfited, at this coming the noise and strokes began to renew: many a valiant Act, and many a Blowes was shewed there. Many weared their vertue and strength, and many were slain there. Theseus did marvels, but always the Getulians held them together, and fought against Theseus the space of three hours, and lost but a few of their people until the time that Hercules brought the army of King Antheon to discomfiture, and made them flee, to save themselves, the Getulians, then were discouraged in such wise, that after they had seen the Army of King Antheon discomfited, they could not lift up their Arms to defend them, but were slain by little and little: and in the end they were brought to such a strait, that they knew not how to save themselves. Then they fled out of the place, dispersed in the fields, without Captains or Leaders. And Hercules put himself forth in the press before all, among them that fled first of the Lybians, so that he came to the Gate of the City with them, and began to smite, so unmeasurably, that he put to death the Lybians flying thither, and the Porters, and all them that did resist him. Also he made the Egyptians to enter into the Town. And Antheon seeing fortune against him in all points, fled into his Palace, not accompanied as a King: but went at large to the fields, by the conduct of four Moores only, that brought him into Mauritania.

## CHAP. XIII.

*How Hercules slew Antheon*

**I**n this manner Hercules and the Egyptians entred into Lybia, and subdued it by force of Arms. And Antheon fled into Mauritania, where he assembled new folk hastily. Then of Lybia yielded them all to the mercy of Hercules. When Hercules had thus daunted them of Lybia, and their neighbours, he made Affric King, and named it after him Affrick, and said that he fought not for his singular profit and covetousness, but for liberality, and to exalt vertue. O most valiant and noble Hercules, there was never man born among the Painims more liberal, more noble, or more vertuous. He would not be King of all  
the



the world, he was liberal, and employed his conquest well and wisely, and gave all his gifts advisedly. When he had made Afer King, he enquired what laws they held, and established among them the Sacrament of marriage. For at that time the Women were there, all common, and when it happened that the Women had Children, they gave to the men after their Whelignimies: and thus saith Aristotle in his politicks.

Besides this Sacrament, Hercules ordained unto the Africans, that they should keep the Laws of Greece, and with politick government, made the Affricans live reasonably and virtuously. And aooobe all other things, he made them have the order of marriage in great reberence. When Hercules had ordained all this, tydings came to him that Antheon was come again to chase him, with many Moors that followed him. Then he returned toward Antheon and the Moryans, and smote them down with his Club, so deadly, that he made it red with their blood, slew them all and put them to flight so cruelly, that Antheon abode alone against Hercules, and fought against him body to body by great strength, and gave him mung strokes hard to bear.

But Hercules gave him so many and so large strokes, that the Gyant knew not how to save himself, and thought to have fled. But Hercules that ran as swiftly as an horse ran after him, and embraced him in his arms with all his might, and lifted him up into the air, and bare him unto the Mauritanes. And when he came nigh unto them, he cast him down despightfully to the earth, that bruised and crushed him: Antheon abode there dead. And his death turned unto the Moors so great abashment, that they lost all their strength, and were slain by great excess without remedy: they lost there the King Antheon the King of Mauritanie, the King of Tangie, and many other Kings, and all the honourable of the battel: for in the end they all fled, in which flight was taken and subdued the Seignioze of Affrick, and the City of Mauritanie.



## CHAP. XIV.

How *Hercules* and *Theseus* fought against the two *Damosels* of *Scythie*.

**I**n remembrance of this victorie *Hercules* made in the field a statue of a man sleeping in the place where he had put to death *Antheon*, and under it he buried the body of *Antheon*. And as the Image, which was made of the bone of an Elephant, was set up, the neck of the Image began to sound like as it had been a man sleeping, wherefore the Moors had afterward the sepulchre in great reverence and worshipped the Idol. After this statue thus accomplished by *Hercules*, he went by *Tingie* and *Ampelocie* and by many other Countreys, and conquered all the Country, that now is called *Africk*, and gave all to *Affer*, and *Hercules* returned into *Lybia*, and there he found *Echee* his wife dead by a grieuous sickness: wherefore he made marvellous great sorrow. Then to forget this sorrow, he took leave of King *Affer*, and the Egyptians, and thought to have departed thence, but as he was taking leave, a *Damosel* strangely arrayed came unto him and said, Lord of *Lybia*, the Queen of *Scythia*, Ladies of *Egypt*, of *Cappadocia*, and of *Asia*, have sent me unto you: which Ladies have conquered the said Countreys, in taking vengeance of the misfortune of their Husbands now late dead: and have abandoned their Country because of the great outrage that *Verores* King of *Egypt* made in *Scythia*. And forasmuch as ye be of the Linage of the Egyptians, they send to you, that ye submit unto their obedience, to do with you what shall please them: or else that you come against them in battel, to prevent the shedding of blood. And they let you know, that they have good right to subdue you, and that if there be among you two Knights, that against two of them will do feats of arms to try their lives, they will deliver unto you two Ladies in place convenient, upon condition, that if the Ladies overcome you, you shall be holden as vanquished, and be at their commandment: and if your men overcome the Ladies, they shall be reputed as overcome, and shall be subject unto you.

¶

*Hercules*



Hercules hearing this message of the Ladies, answered the Messenger. Damofel, since the Ladies of Scythia be so valiant that they have conquered the great Realms of Egypt, Cappadocia, and of Asia, they may be doubted. Nevertheless, to prevent the effusion of blood, and to defend the Africans from their bondage, you shall return to them and say, that the battel of two Knights against two Ladies, is agreed unto them, to be done to morrow upon the condition that you have said. Then Hercules, After, and many others promised to hold these things and did great honour unto the Damofel.

The Damofel having done her message, returned unto the Ladies, which were entred a great way in Africk, and told them word for word the answer of Hercules. The principal of all these Ladies, was Synope and had two sisters so expert in arms, that they feared no Knight of the world, the one was named Menalippe and the other Hyppolita, Anon, as the Ladies had received these tydings of the Africans, they had great joy, and holding opinion, that Africk was won by the strength of Hyppolita and Menalippe, who did marvels in Arms, they ordained that they should fight with the two Knights: and so they were on the morrow ready in the fields.

At the hour that was ordained, Hercules and Theseus (sitting on two horses, with a great company of Africans) rode into the place that the Ladies had chosen to do feats of arms in. There were the two Ladies abiding in a fair place armed and well mounted on good Steeds, and by them were other Ladies in great number. As soon as Hercules and Theseus had espied the two Damofels, they made them that followed to stand, and sent unto the Damofels to know what they would do. The Damofels answered the two Knights, that they were ready to do deeds of Arms against them, under the condition of their quarrel. And if they were come they would come forth.

Hercules and Theseus, with this answer took their Spears, and spurred their Horses, and made signs unto the Damofels. And they furnished with Shields and Spears, ran against them so expertly, that they seemed of heaven and not of earth, and at the coping of their sharp Spears, the strokes were so great on both



both sides, that Hippolita and Theseus bare each other unto the earth, in likewise did Menalippe, and Hercules. The Africans marvelled much to see the two Princes bozn down, and yet the Ladies of Scythia marvelled much more of the Damosels. When the Knights and the Damosels found themselves lying on the earth, shame smote them to their hearts. Nevertheless each of them got lightly up, and with great courage took their Swords, and approaching smote each other fiercely, that the Ladies and Knights felt the strokes. Hippolita pursued her man Theseus, and Menalippe kept her unto Hercules. The strokes of Hippolita were great, and did great grief unto Theseus. Theseus enforced himself strongly to avenge him, and could not well come to his purpose, Hercules overcame Menalippe lightly with his Sword, and put her in his mercy, but Hippolita maintained her force so mightily against Theseus, that she had put him to fogle, had not Hercules been, that said to him: Brother, what shall this be? Where is the Damosels of Theseus? Shall that be daunted by the Chivalry of a Damosel? If it be so, certainly all men shall have shame of your dishonour.

These words began to awake again the blood of Theseus that was as aze asleep, and to lighten his courage, in such wise that he recovered a new strength, and put himself forth, and began to smite with such force, that he made the Damosel recant, and took away her Sword, and conquered her: whereat the Ladies were much grieved, and especially the Queen Synope, which then sent to Hercules her arms, in token that she was banquished praying him that he would restore again the two Damosels. And Hercules took the Arms of the Queen, and sent to her Menalippe, and made peace with her for the Africans upon condition, that they should give Hippolita in marriage to Theseus, who was amorous of her. So then the Wedding was made in Africk with great honour. And the Ladies hearing of the marvellous Acts of Hercules, praised him, and held themselves happy to be banquished of him.



## CHAP. XV.

How *Hercules* began to wax amorous of *Dejanira*, and how *Achelous* and *Hercules* had battel the one against the other, and how *Achelous* was vanquished.

**A**fter the Conquest of these Ladies, Theseus took leave of Hercules and of Affer, and returned into his Country, to bring home his Lady; and then went Hercules to Calcedonia, which lyeth opposite to Achaja, and Arcadia, to see a fair Lady of excellent beauty, that he had heard greatly recommended by a Calcedonian that was in his company: By Sea, and by Land, he came into Calcedonia. The King of that place had to name Oeneus, and had two Daughters, the one named Dejanira, and the other George. Dejanira was the fairest, and that was she that Hercules came to see. When Oeneus had knowledge that Hercules came into his Country, he had great joy, and received him, embracing him so honourably, as was possible. In entring into his Palace, the Queen and his two Daughters, George and Dejanira welcomed Hercules. Incontinent as Hercules cast his eyes upon Dejanira, that was the fairest woman that ever he saw. He felt himself marvellously ravished. This desire entered into Hercules all full of rages of Love, piercing into his heart as suddenly as the rages of the Sun, passeth through Glass.

Dejanira had so much beauty, and was so well accomplished, that to her might be made no comparison, not only in beauty, but with her in wisdom and bounty. She was the most precious treasure of Calcedonia, and thither came many Ladies, Gentlewomen and others. Her neighbours were all amorous of her, and especially King Achelous, that was strong and puissant. This King had great seigniozy, and marched through the Realm of Calcedonia. But when Hercules had been there a space, passing the time joyously, in beholding the behaviour of Dejanira, it hapned on a day that the Messenger of King Achelous, came to Oeneus and said to him, that Achelous demanded if he would give him his Daughter, and that if he would not give her to him



him at this time, he would molest his country, and make him war. At this message, Oeneus was troubled, and answered the Messenger, that on the morrow he would give him an answer, All that day Oeneus was penſive and abode alone: and to paſſe his melancholy, he came to Hercules. When Hercules ſaw him ſo penſive, he adiured him earneſtly that he ſhould tell him the cauſe of his penſivenesſe, who told it him and ſaid. Lord Hercules ſince it pleaſeth you to know of my grief, I will tell you the cauſe. There is here by a King my neighbour, named Achelous, great, and fierce, which hath many times deſired to have to his wife Dejanira my daughter, I have not been willing to accoꝝd the Marriage, foꝛasmuch as I know this King a man of evil life. And foꝛ this cauſe I have had many menaces of him, and alſo this day his Messenger is come again to me, and he hath ſaid, that if I give him not my Daughter at this time, he will make war. Surely Hercules if ye ſee me penſive it cometh to me by this occaſion, foꝛ I have not yet given him his answer, but I muſt give it him to morrow.

Nevertheless, I have concluded in my ſelf, that I will not give unto him my Daughter. And now when I ſee verily, that by the reſuſe of my Daughter, it muſt needs be that war will enſue, know well that I am diſpleaſed: foꝛ war is the eternal deſolation of the Countrey, perdition and waſt of the people and goods.

Sir (ſaid Hercules) it is needful unto a man that he take and bear all that Fortune will. As ye ſay, war is not encreasing of people but diminution: yet by that extremity, it is expedient that a man rejoyce in his right. Right comforteth the courage of a man, and the courage of a man comforted, bringeth him oftentimes to glorious victory. A brute beaſt diſgarniſhed of reaſonable wit, fighteth foꝛ his neſt with his claws, and with his teeth. What ſhall a man ſenſible and endowed with wit and reaſon, do with any aſſault (namely in his own Land and Territorie) Nature willeth and inſtructeth that where corporall force faileth, vigour and vertue of courage worketh, and that they fight foꝛ their Countrey. Take Courage then in your right, and tell your enemies: ye have received me worſhipfully, and in re-  
ceiving



teibing these tydings, I will help you if it be need, and I suppose if Achelous assail you, he shall repent him.

With these words the King Oeneus comforted himself greatly, and the day drew over. On the morrow Oeneus called the messenger of Achelous, and said to him, he should come no more to demand his daughter, for that he was not minded to give her to his Master: and furthermore if he moved war against him for this cause, he had intention to defend himself unto the death of the last man of his people. The Messenger returned with these words and told them to Achelous, and all that he found with him. Achelous was not content with King Oeneus, and as he that was evermuch smitten with the love of Dejanira, began to assemble his men of Arms, with an intent to make war on King Oeneus, and to take from him his Daughter. Hercules was then in Calcedonia, and oftentimes he was with Dejanira in gracious conferences. He found her so well addrested in all honest manners, that all the day he was most part with her, in the night he did nought but dream and think on her: howbeit he said nothing that concerned his amorous desires, willing first to shew them his power in Arms. It hapned on a day he opened a window that was by the Garden of Dejanira, and casting his eyes down he saw Dejanira that sate upon a green place, accompanied with many Ladies and Gentlewomen. Then he set all his mind to contemplate the excessive beauty of her. After he desired her, saying, O Dejanira thou that hast not the prerogative to know the hearts and thoughts of men, if I should say to thee the tenth part of the love and desire I have to thee, thou couldst not believe it. I have gone many a Countrey, and seen many a Realm, and many a Treasure, I have desired many a thing. But of all, to come to my wished bliss, I was never in so great thought as I am for to get your love. The same hour that Hercules spake by himself, Dejanira was not idle: she had Hercules in her remembrance, and in her heart, then being rich in the points of Love sown between variations of hope and despair, she was surprized in all her being with the heat of that fire that burneth amorous hearts. This fire was hard to quench, or to robber the right piercing sparkle. She lay down then upon the grass,



grasse and began to say in her mind. Alas Hercules, what shall Dejanira do? He cannot come to attain your Love, I was wont not to deigne to behold a man, and then said, that neither Prince nor King should have my love. Now am I in another mind, and desire no other thing, but that I should be your Wife, I had supposed to have remained and continued a pure Virgin, and I only was disdainful of men, contrary to the requests and admonitions of the Ladies: these be now far other tydings. With these words she ceased a little, and began to think on many other things. At this point, as she thought on Hercules, and Hercules on her, tydings came thither, that Achelous was coming to besiege the City, by land and by sea, and that he was very near. For these tydings arose in the Palace a great murmuring, that came to the ears of Hercules and of Dejanira: their spirits were troubled in such fashion, that Hercules left to behold Dejanira, and then she left to think on Hercules, and both went to the King Oeneus.

Anon as Hercules came unto the King, the King saw him, and said to him, that his enemies were very near the City. Hercules answered joyously, that it behobeth to go feast them: and willed that he put his people in arms. At this answer of Hercules, the King did sound to Arms, and with this sound all Calcedonia was moved, and each man made him ready. Hercules and his Greeks were ready in a little space. The Calcedonians assembled by great companies in the Palace. When they were assembled, the King and Hercules brought them into the field, and Hercules put them in order, that done, he did cause them to march, the Calcedonians and Greeks, and each party approached so nigh, that there was nothing to do but to smite. Hercules made two battalions, the first with his people, the other with Calcedonians. When they came to the point to meet, Hercules went to the Calcedonians, and in the presence of the King, said to them, loe here ye may see your enemies that set little by you, for they come into your Lordship to assail you. I pray you that the great courage of them abate not your courage. Ye ought herein to have the fierceness of a Lion, the puissance of an Elephant, and be greedy as a Griffon, to deliver you without end,  
from



from the fierce enmity of the King Achelous, in keeping your Country, your Dominion, your Honour, your Treasures, your Wives, your Children, and that more is, your lives. Be ye then studious to do well, be ye enflamed with desire or vengeance, be ye covetous of glory. If ye shew not your selves valiant at this time, ye may not have any thing but beggary, or servitude to death: for your enemies will do unto you all the evil they can, if they have victory over you. These words wrought in the hearts of the Calcedonians, and gave them marvellous courage. And all they with good will, desired the battel. When Hercules had finished his exhortation, he went to the battel: for it was come to the point to fight. Then there were great cries on the one side and on the other, Tabors, Trumpets, Clarins, Harneis and Weapons, began to sound: Knights began to stir at the entry of the battel. Hercules and the Greeks shot, and drew largely upon their enemies, and made Achelous abashed, forasmuch as he hoped not to have found so great resistance with the Calcedonians. Then they cast their eyes upon the Banner of Hercules, and seeing the great Lion that was painted therein, they began to imagine that there might be Hercules, of whom was spoken throughout the World, for his vertues, and his strength.

When they were thus imagining, the shot failed, with great slaughter of the party of Achelous. When the shot was so failed, Hercules took his Sword, and went up and down among them of Achaja, that were in the first front of the battel of Achelous, and there made an hole so great, that the Calcedonians and the Iconians won upon them at the first joining, and made the other party go back, whereof Achelous had great sorrow: he took to him twenty Knights, which were chosen and came and ranged with them there, where Hercules scattered and brake the battel of the Achajans. There he approved his courage lustily. For this strong Giant and his Horsemen fought valiantly, but the Greeks and Hercules dyed their Swords with their blood, and the strife was so great, that men might see nothing else but heads and arms fly in the field. Hercules smote no stroke but it was the death of one of his enemies. Achelous in like manner  
stroke



stroke for stroke, smote down one of the Iconians. The residue of their folk did the best they could, yet could not the Achajans conquer and put back their Adversaries, howbeit they were always four against one: and the Iconians were in great number, and they had always fresh supplies sent them. In this manner the two puiſſants fought together more than four hours. Lobe wrought sore there, in Hercules and in Achelous, both of them made their Swords to flourish covered with blood. They met oftentimes and smote each other, but never durst Achelous abide before the Sword of Hercules, for the horrible strokes that he saw Hercules give, but he put him in the press as soon as he had engaged him.

In this battel, Hercules performed wonders, and Oeneus took a great pleasure to behold him: but the Achajans had therein displeasure, for they that saw him, were no more assured to escape the death, than he that feeleth the sword in the hand of a Tyrant. There received no man a stroke of him, but he abode in the place: he made so great a slaughter that no man can well write it. In the end King Oeneus with all his Calcedonians came to the battel: in his coming the Achajans received loss upon loss, and peril upon peril. The King Oeneus made many of his enemies to dye. Hercules shewed his puiſſance more and more: by his well doing he put the Achajans all out of array, and after unto flight, and the loss of the field turned greatly unto the damage of King Achelous: for Hercules chased him shamefully into his ships, and made him to lose twelve thousand Achajans.

## CHAP. XVI.

How Hercules put to the worst the King Achelous, and how he espoused Dejanira.

**A**fter this victory, when Hercules saw that King Achelous saved himself by the Sea, he called King Oeneus, and said he would pursue his Enemy, and deliver the world of him: after which an hundred of his chosen men took leave of the King Oeneus, and went to Sea, following after Achelous, recom-



mending him to George, and Dejanira. In the Fight, Oeneus after the departing of Hercules returned into Calcedonia, and told his Wife and his Daughters, the high prowess that Hercules had done in the battel, how he had chased his Enemies, and gone after with two hundred men. The Ladies George and Dejanira were right joyfull of the victorie, but it grieved them soze that Hercules with so little a company pursued Achelous: and aboue all other Dejanira was greatly vexed at the enterprize of Hercules, so soze that she went into her Chamber, and was constrained to weep, and not to haue joy in heart until the return of Hercules. Saw to return unto the purpose touching Hercules, when he was put to the pursuit of Achelous, he entered into his Realm and followed him so nigh, that he was constrained to withdraw himself into a strong Castle standing by the Sea, Hercules besieged Achelous in this Castle. When Achelous saw that Hercules pursued him with so little a company, as with two hundred men only he called his leaders of his men, and among other things told them, that it was a shame to suffer themselves to be besieged with so little a number of people. They answered he said truth: and concluded the same hour to issue out, and raise the siege, and forthwith they sounded to arms with short counsel. It was not long after that they issued out of the Castle, but Hercules espying them, knew that they came to the battel, he set his men in array, and went alone to his enemies, as he that doubted nothing. When Achelous saw him come, he began to make a great sigh, and cryed unto his people upon him: saying that it was he with the Club that had chased him out of Calcedonia, and promised great gifts unto them that belaboured him with strokes. But when his folk knew that it was Hercules, they made courtesie each to other to go before, and trembling as the leaf on the Tree, they durst not abide the weight of his Club: but without smiting of any stroke turned their backs, and fled unto the Castle.

Achelous seeing the behaviour of his folk, and the fear that they had of Hercules, thought that he should haue dyed for sorrow: so he went and entered again with them into the Castle. And Hercules returned with his people, laughing at the poor dealing



dealing of his enemies. Hercules began to think on Dejanira, and Achelous began to imagine how he might annoy the Calcedonians: he had there one of his Captains, that said unto him: Sir, ye know well that your strength, may not compare unto the strength of your enemies: We are ten against one, but that may nothing help us: for the mighty Gyant that is with them, is enough to bury us all, and destroy your Realm. Consider ye then, since it is so, that open puissance and plain strength may not be used at this time, it is expedient to imagine some subtilty, to grieve the Calcedonians: and it is my advice that there shall be made a great flaming light in the Sea, such as I shall well devise, so as by that means they that have besieged us may be deceived lightly. This flaming light must be by night, and it shall be great and forcible: we will make it secretly: as soon as our enemies shall see it, they will leap out of their Tents, and go unto the Sea to see the marvel, peradventure without any Arms, for they dread us not, and then we will set on them, and shall find them unfurnished and unprovided of their Arms, and consequently it may ensue, that of them all we shall make a notable riddance.

When Achelous heard this counsel, it seemed to him good, and he would that it were effected in such manner as he had devised. The deviser did make an hundred Torches, which were finished in fifteen days. During these fifteen days, Hercules assailed many times the Castle, where Achelous was, but he might never do any thing thereto, for the Fortress stood upon the Sea, and in a strong Countrey, and could not be gotten by assault, and Achelous could have succours from no part: for between this Castle and Achaja, was a great Countrey. When the fifteen days were passed, and the Torches were made, on a night when it was peaceable from wind and storm, they that carried the Torches issued out of the Castle, four of them unto the Haven, where was left but one little Boat which was on ground, and had not long time before put to the Sea. And if ye demand where the Ships were become that Achelous brought to this Port, I say that Hercules had caused to take them, and sent them to the Sea, to the intent that Achelous should not escape



escape him, nor take away the Ships by night. The Achajans then came to this little Boat lying on the ground, and plyed them that they brought it afloat on the Sea, as secretly as they could, and entred therein, with all that to them was necessary. King Achelous put himself in ambushment with a thousand of his men, nigh unto the place where he thought the Calcedonians would go out to see the light that should be made. And when they that were in the Sea, knew that it was time to light their Torches, they set them on fire, and put them round about the Wall, wherein were made as many holes as there was Torches. And so as they imagined they did. The Knights that kept the watch of the host of Hercules saw it, and soze marveling at this light; awaked Hercules and their fellows, and shewed them the light. As soon as Hercules saw the brightness of the Torches, he would know what it was: and then approached the bank of the Sea, and his company with him, and had not been long there, when King Achelous did cause to light an hundred Torches that he had provided, and after he issued out of his ambushment with his thousand men, and ran upon Hercules, and assailed him and all his men fiercely. But when Hercules saw them discover themselves, he set his people in order in the best manner he could, by the light of the Stars, and received his enemies couragiously, where began a right dolorous battel: for the one smote upon the other very furiously, and there were many wounded and dead. The skirmish was great, Achelous thought to come at unawares, but he was valiantly resisted, and lost many of his men: and Hercules met Achelous, and smote him on the Helm that he foundred, and it gave him a wound on his head, that the blood gushed out, and moreover, he took him, and delivered him to twelve of his men to keep. There were great cries, and great abundance of strokes of Swords. Then were the Torches quenched, and put out by the force of the smiting of the Achajans, which desired greatly to rescue their King: and so they abandoned their lives in the heat. But when their Torches were quenched, by little and little, they began to cool them, and withdrew them, for they saw nothing at all. When they were withdrawn, Hercules assembled his folk, and



said to them, that he would assaile to take the Castle, and that they should follow him hardily and fiercely: and anon, when he saw his enemies return unto the Castle, he ran after and stared them, and put himself in the thickest of them, smiting with his Club on the right side and on the left, he made a right large place. And by this way he led his people unto the Gate of the Castle, where he entred with them that fled, and there made so great a slaughter of his enemies, that with little resistance, the same night he put to death twelve hundred, and the other fled into the City of Petrace, from whence they were. In this battel, and the battel that had been in Calcedonia, all the men of Achaja were slain, except four hundred which saved themselves by flight. For Achelous had taken all his men with him, his Countrey and his City Petrace, was all destroyed. When Hercules had taken the Castle, afterward he went into the City of Petrace: and entring into all places without resistance, he set this Realm into the hands of King Oeneus, and he tarried not long after he had subdued this Realm, but returned, as hastily as he might, to see Dejanira: and there he was received with so great glory, joy and triumph, that no man can rehearse nor write.

The Poets report this conquest that Hercules made upon Achelous, feigning that Achelous fought first in likeness of a man: and being vanquished, he after changed himself into a Serpent. This is to be understood in subtilness and in malice, as he did in assailing Hercules by night. To conclude, he fought in the likeness of a Bull, and Hercules brake one of his horns: that is to be understood, that at last Achelous was as fierce as a Bull, for pride and sorrow that he was taken: and Hercules brake his horn, that is to be understood, he brake and destroyed his Realm.

#### CHAP. XVII.

How Nessus took Dejanira from Hercules, when he passed with her over the River: and how Hercules slew Nessus with an Arrow.

Great was the feast that King Oeneus made for the victories that Hercules had atchieved, upon King Achelous: for  
he



he feared him passing soze. Hercules at his coming presented to him Achelous and his Realm, and said to him, that he should have it without any denyal. The King Oeneus sent King Achelous into exile, and acknowledged himself greatly beholding to Hercules, whom he honoured marvellously. Then Hercules took to his heart again amorous conceits: in like manner did Dejanira, she had soveraign joy to see Hercules, and desired none other thing. For to be tedious, when Hercules had been there a space, he required King Oeneus that he would give him his daughter to Wife. Oeneus agreed, and according to him, and Dejanira consented with better will. The Wedding was solemnized pompously, and they went to bed and lay together. Soon after, when Hercules saw that his Father in law had his Realm in peace, took he leave of the King Oeneus, and departed from Calcedonia, with Dejanira and his people, to go by land into his Realm of Iconia. Hercules had always in his journey Dejanira by him: he loved her exceedingly, and had great solace in her beauty: and if he had not studied with Atlas, he could not have abstained him from beholding her beauty. In passing the time pleasantly, in the manner that folk do that be newly married, Hercules journeyed so far, that he came to a quarter of Thessaly, where the River of Hebenus runneth, and arrived on this River, which was deep and broad running impetuously, and had neither bridge nor plank to pass over, but there was a Centaure named Nessus, that spent there his life, by the means of a little Boat, in which he carried the people over the River.

When Hercules had found this Nessus, he came to him, and demanded of him how he and his folk might pass the River? Nessus knew Hercules since the time he had vanquished his fellows at the Wedding of Pyrothus, answered that he might not pass the River, but by his little Boat. And if he would pass, he would with good will do him the pleasure to set him over. Hercules thanked Nessus, forasmuch as he saw that the boat was but little, and the time was disposed to rain, he would that Dejanira and her Damosels should pass first. Dejanira and her Maidens entred into the Boat. Nessus rowed, and in the rowing



rowing he beheld Dejanira, and looked on her so much, that her beauty ravished him. For as soon as he was come over on the other side, he told Dejanira, she should be his Wife, and catching hold on her, he took her on his shoulders, and bare her away: wherefore Dejanira and her Damosels made great cries. Hercules seeing that the old Giant bare away Dejanira, which he would resist to his power, bent his Bow, and shot an Arrow upon the Giant, with so great cunning, that he smote him on the right side unto the heart, and gave him his death's wound. The Bow of Hercules was so great and strong, that no man could bend it but himself. Nessus by the wound that Hercules gave him, began to feel the approaching of Death, and to suffer sharp anguish, he ran a great while after unto a Valley, where he fell down, and considering that his life had no recovery, he employed the end of it, to imagine how he might do displeasure to Hercules, calling to remembrance, that he had a most terrible and mortal popson about him, he said to Dejanira in great malice. Fair Lady, the love of you hath caused me to receive the death, which displeaseth me not so much, as that Hercules shall enjoy you, who deserve a far worthier man. Hercules is no true Husband, but the unfaithfullest to his Wife that ever was. Forasmuch as I have singular pity of you, and your beauty constraineth me to do you pleasure, I will give you here a precious thing, it having such vertue, that if you boyl it with one of the shirts of Hercules with the blood that runneth out of my wound, and give the shirt to Hercules, that he wear it, he shall never after love any other woman nor Lady but you.

And with these words the Giant took the popson, and tempered it with his blood, and wound it in a linnen Cloth, and gave it to Dejanira. The foolish Dejanira giving credit to the words of the Giant, took the popson. The Giant charged her, that no man should touch it bare, saying then it would lose its vertue after the touching: and with that, he gave up the Ghost and dyed pitiously. So Dejanira escaping safely from his hands: purposed that she would keep that popson secretly at all adventure, to help her self, if it were need. While these things passed between Dejanira and the Giant, Hercules was much perplexed



for Dejanira. As soon as he had smitten him on the right side with his Arrow, he uncloathed himself, and cast his Gown, his Harness, and Club, over the Water, by his great strength, and leaping in, swam over unto the other side, then as he put on his rayment, Dejanira (again accompanied with her Damosels) came to the River, furnished with that venemous popson. When Hercules saw Dejanira return, he imagined that he had slain the Giant, and demanded where the Traitor was. Dejanira answered not at first to this his demand, but said unto him. Alas my Lord, in what peril have I been? What oppression? What despair of joy hath oppressed my heart? The traces of mine Arms where yet is seen, the print of the hands of the Giant, shew in what displeasure I have been: The cursed glutton Giant bare me unto the depth of a deep valley, where death approaching by the stroke of your Arrow, made him to fall down, and he would never let me go until the last sight of death. Surely I have suffered a great jeopardy, but thanks be to the Gods, since I have found you again, I am sufficiently avenged of mine enemy whom I have seen dye miserably.

#### C.H.A.P. XVIII.

How *Hercules* fought against *Hydra*, the Serpent of the Moor *Lerna*, and slew him.

**H**ERcules and Dejanira having kissed each other, Hercules went unto the place where the Giant lay dead, and forasmuch as he found him deprived of life, he let him lie there to the beasts and birds, and took his Arrow that lay by him. This was the Arrow that Achilles was slain with after in the Temple of Phœbus in Troy, for the love of Polixene. Then Hercules and Dejanira came again to the River, and Hercules set over his men, and went from that place to the City of Lerna. The King of the City did great honour to Hercules, receiving him as honourably as he could. Among divers talk, Hercules demanded tidings of him. The King answered that he knew no other, but that in a great place there abode a monster, half a man, and half a Serpent, that murdered many of his Realm. For he said,



said, that all the men, women, and children this monster can find, he slayeth with his tail that is envenomed, with his claws and teeth destroying and devouring all. And so it will come to passe that this Countrey will be desolate, for the Labourers nor Merchants dare not go by, with less company than two hundred men: and if they be less, the Monster assaileth them, like as he hath done many others.

Hercules was passing glad and joyfull of these tydings, and said to the King: Sir, I have laboured hitherto for the Common weal of many Realms, and yet have I the will to persevere, and do the works of vertue. Know ye then, since I am here arrived, I will do somewhat for the weal of this Countrey, as I have done for many other. And I have intention to morrow to do my uttermost endeavour to trabel towards the monster, to abide the adventure of vanquishing him, or to be vanquished of him. This Monster was called Hydra, forasmuch as he dwelled in the Waters. When Dejanira heard the enterprize of Hercules, that he would go alone, and abandon himself in so great peril, she began to weep, and make so great sorrow, that no man could appease her, nor make her stint her weeping. Hercules comforted her the best he could, so did Atlas and Philotes, and shewed her the glorious deeds of Hercules, to give her hope in this adventure. But all could not avail, she so loved Hercules with all her heart and might. She required him with her eyes charged full of tears, that he would abstain from so high an enterprize, saying, that it was no wisdom for a man to expose himself to so eminent dangers, and that God had sent the Monster into the Countrey, to correct and chastise the people. Notwithstanding Hercules was very ardently in love with her: yet her tears that she wept, nor her prayers, nor her reasons, could cause Hercules to break his purpose, nor leave off the adventure. But early in the morning he cloathed him, and departed from Lerna, and took his way towards the Moor, wherein was the Monster.

This Moor was long, and three Miles in compass, as the Chronicles of Spain rehearse, and all environed with Fountains that sprang out of the high Mountains. In the midst of



this Blain was a great Lake, wherein dwelled the Hydra on dry land. When Hercules was come unto this place, the Hydra that never slept with both eyes, had always the neck outstretched on high, and the ear open, espying him, suddenly came against him running with great force. Hercules abode, when he espied the marvellous Monster, and had great pleasure to see him: He was ten foot high, and had as long a tail: he was foul and covered with hair: He had his body armed, and his right hand held a naked Sword, and in his left he carried a Shield. Hercules thus beholding him, suffered him to come to him: Then the Monster spake to him, and said, Booz Giant, whither goest thou? Behold this Sword, sharply on both sides cutting: yet was there never man that heard me speak, but he dyed by the point of this Sword. Forasmuch as I am the wisest Creature that ever Nature made, I am accustomed to make a question to such men as I find, and then destroy them if they cannot answer thereto. I find in my Realm people dull as beasts, without understanding, and have therefore destroyed their blood, so will I do thine, if thou canst not assay a Sophism that I shall make unto thee. O thou man Serpentine, (said Hercules) thine Eloquence, thy Prudence, thy cruel Sword, foul and polluted with infinite homicides, make me nothing abashed, nor discourage me: I sought thee, and am come higher to destroy thee. And I will not only assay one of thy Sophisms, but as many as thou canst devise: and know, that if by force of my wit, I assay thy Sophisms and falacious arguments, I will do to thee like as thou shouldst do to me: and if it happen that thy science may not overcome me, yet defend thee with arms, and that thou keep thy life as well as thou canst.

With these words, the Monster made unto Hercules seven Sophisms one after another, all falacious and subtil: Then when Hercules had given solution to one, the Monster replied by seven Arguments. Yet Hercules, full of Philosophy, and expert in all Sciences, made answer so substantially to all his falacious Arguments, that he set him at a Non-plus. For this cause the Poets feign this Hydra had seven heads, as it appeareth in the first Tragedy of Seneca, and say that when Hercules had



had smitten off one of the heads, seven other heads came again in the same place. In the end then to pursue this matter, when Hercules had so disputed, the Serpent yielded to Hercules, in such wise as he wist not what to say, Hercules said unto him: Serpent inhumane, we have fought long enough with the tongue. Take thy Sword, I may no longer with hold my hand from smiting thee, and a say if thou be as subtil in arms, as thou art in language. Poor fool, said the Serpent (which was full of Pride) Knowest not thou, that by my part Serpentine, I have infected all this Country? And I will this day drink thy blood, and devour thy body: wherefore make watch, and keep thee well.

Without more words Hercules enhaunsed his sword, for to have smitten his adversary, but he could not so soon hast him, but the Serpent gave him first two strokes, one with his sword, and the other with his tail, wherewith he had almost smitten him down to the ground. Yet Hercules abode standing, and with his sword lifted up, he smote the Monster upon the Helm with such strength, that he crushed the Helm, and made him a wound in the head. At this stroke the Serpent was full of fury, and with his sword smote Hercules the second time upon the helm, that the sparkles and the fire flew out, and the Helm was broken, &c.

Hercules that never before had received so great a stroke, promised him that he would revenge it, and smote him right angrily. Their strokes were great and deadly, they smote each at other long, and they were both of them of great courage. But when fortune had enough cherished them both, he turned against the Serpent so earnestly, that after many strokes, Hercules smote his sword within the Helm into his head, and bare him dead unto the earth.

Hercules rejoiced greatly, when he saw the Monster put to the foyl, and went for to fetch the King of Lerna, with Dejanira, and his folk, and brought them to see the Monster. When he had shewed them the Monster, he made a great fire and burned it. Wherefore there were given unto him great praises. He was brought to the City of Lerna, with great glory of La-



dies and of Gentlewomen, who conueyed him unto the Kings Palace singing melodiously. Dejanira then rejoyced greatly in the triumphant victorie of her noble Husband. When Hercules had tarried there a while, he departed thence, and went to Athens, where Theseus received him gloriously. Then Hercules and Atlas held School in Athens, for as much as they of Athens were quick of wit, and gave themselves all to learn Sciences. There they were a great while, introducing and informing them of Athens in Philosophy, but especially in Astronomy. Atlas profited in such wise, that the Students there said, he sustained and bare the Heavens on his shoulders: A noble virtuous man. When Hercules had spent some time there, and studied so long that his Doctrine had given light unto the Athenians, he departed from thence with great bemoaning, and brought his Wife unto the City of Lycia. And then was so greatly renowned, that from all the Realms of Greece, there came daily to him Noblemen and other, to profit in Vertue, Nobleness, Honour, Arms, Philosophy, Astronomy, and all other Perfections.

## CHAP. XIX.

How Hercules went into Spain and fighting on the Sea, vanquished King Gerion, and took the City of Megidda.

**A**Bout the time that Hercules flourished in vertue, and his Fame was born from Realm to Realm by glorious Renown as the Chronicles of Spain rehearse, there was a King of the City of Megidda, that standeth upon the River of Gaudian, that through his Tyrannical dealings, began to make his name have a great report, by many tyrannies, that no man could tell the third part. This Tyrant had to name Gerion, he was King of Andalusie, and Destremadure, and also of the Mountains of Galicia, and Portugal. The Poets feign, of this Tyrant, that he had three heads, forasmuch as he had two Brethren, great Giants, which were all of one Nature, and complexion, and they were so united together, that all that the one would, the other would: they were never in discord. Gerion was the



the worst of all. He caused to be made a Temple, in the City of Megidda, and ordained all they that were Noble should there have their Image and Sepulture: and that men should make the remembrances of all the men of note that he should slay, to the end, there should be a memory of them hereafter. Thus he and his Brethren tyrannized, not only over strangers, but his neighbours, and pitied no man, insomuch that he got him an evil name: And the Africans whom they persecuted more than any, went and complained to Hercules, by Affers command, as to the only destroyer of Tyrants and Monsters, and requested him, to deliver them out of that Tribulation. When Hercules understood the complaint of the Africans, and was advertised of the Tyranny that Gerion and his Brethren used: He designed to go into Hesperie, and promised to the Africans, that they should have shortly tidings of him. And asked them of the state of King Affers. And when they had told all that they knew, they returned with great joy into their country. Hercules from thenceforth, disposed him to go into Hesperie, wherefore his Wife Dejanira made great sorrow. The Renown of this voyage was spread in all the Countrey. In short time there came more men of Arms into Lycia, to serve Hercules than he sent for, he was so good, bountiful, wise and valiant, that he gave away all his spoils, wherefore every man would follow him, for no man served him, but he rewarded and enriched him in wealth and happiness. When his Army was ready, he took leave of Dejanira, and departed out of the Realm of Lycia. Many a tear was shed at his departing, as well of Dejanira, as of his Scholars that learned of him. Theseus and Hispin, Atlas and Philotes were with him. During this voyage, he studied oftentimes with Atlas, and was never Idle, without doing somewhat that ought to be remembered, He arrived in Africk, where he found Affers, who received him worshipfully. From Africk Hercules passed by the strait of Gibraltar and went into the Gades, that now we call Galicia, and peopled the Countrey forasmuch as he found there good land, and delivered this people unto a noble man named Philistines. This Philistines, as Boccace rehearseth in the Genealogie of Gods, was son of King

Agenor,



Agenor, Son of King B-lus. Philistines then reigned in Galicia, and was after named the Priest of Hercules, for when Hercules had banquished the Tyrants of Hesperie, he founded there a Temple, which he held after in great reverence. Always as Hercules peopled and inhabited this Land, he did cause to be made Pillars or Columns high and marvellous great, and set them upon the Sea: and upon every Pillar or Column, he made an image of hard stone in the likeness of Hercules, clad with the skin of a Lion. And one of the Images held a Table wherein was written with letters of Gold, Pass no further to seek land, nor go to conquer further any Realms in the West, for thou shalt find no more Land, &c.

The noble Hercules went then into the Countrey, where standeth now the City of Sivil, which was not then founded, and found by his science, that there should be builded a City of great renown: in memory thereof, he set up in that place a pillar of hard stones, and thereupon set an Image holding in his hand written, there should be made one of the greatest Cities in the world. This Land of Galicia appertained to Gerion. When when Hercules had made this pillar, and set it whereas now standeth Sivil: he had a great desire to begin to build the City, for the Countrey was very good and commodious. But Atlas by the science of Astronomy, counselled him to the contrary, shewing him by certain signs, that it was by destiny that another should build the City. And therefore nigh the Pillar, he made a Column of white Marble, upon which stood the Image of Hercules great and rich, that held one hand against the East, wherein was written: Here hath been Hercules. And with the other hand he shewed the writing that the other Image held.

These things accomplished, Hercules departed from thence and left to Inhabit and keep the Country eight hundred men of his, of the Country of Scythia, that were strong and expert in Arms, and with good will they abode there, because the Country was plentiful. Then went Hercules by the banks of the Sea, into the last and furthestmost part of Europe, and sailed so far that he entered into the River of Guadiana, where the



Tyrant Gerion dwelled, and abode in the City of Megidda. The same time that Hercules entred into the River, Gerion went up to the top of an high Tower, where he might see all about the Countrey, to espy if any person came, upon whom he might exercise his Tyranny: He had not been long there, when he beheld the River, and saw the Army of Hercules: And seeing this Army, he had great joy, for he thought in all hast he should overcome them. Without other delay, he assembled his complices, and sounded to Arms. Within a little while all his men that were ready with arms, came unto him to know what he would? When Gerion was armed, and ready to go to the battel he declared to his people his intention. Then entring into his Valley as hastily as he could he went from Megidda, approaching toward the Greeks. Thus rowing forth, it hapned that he met a little Boat: And from as far as he saw it coming, he went against it, and arrested it. In this Boat were no more than two Mariners and Hispan. Gerion then called Hispan, and demanded of him whither he went, and what he was? Truly sir, answered Hispan, I am a Greek, and have intencion to go to the King Gerion, that is now in his City of Megidda, to dispatch a message I am charged with. Messenger (said the King) if ye seek Gerion, ye need go no further, for I am he, whom ye speak unto. Sir (answered Hispan) since that you be he to whom my message appertaineth, I let you have knowledge in the name of the vertuous Hercules, that he is an enemy to your vices: and to correct your great and abominable trespasses, he is come into your Dominion. Messenger (answered Gerion) how is Hercules so presumptuous as to take upon him to come and correct my Vices? He knows little with whom he hath to do: go tell him, that he shall find me but it shall be too soon for his health, and that I will feast him in such wise ere he escape me, as I have been accustomed to feast strangers. Hispan departed with these words, and returned to Hercules, and told him word for word what Gerion had said unto him: moreover he said, he would meet with him speedily, prepared and ready to begin the battel. When Hispan had finished his message, the Gallies of King Gerion appeared and were seen from far. Hercules and the



the Greeks had great ioy and began a leud shouting, in sounding Trumpets, Pipes, and Labours. Gerion and his folk seeing and hearing their Enemies, they likewise began to shout, and make a marvellous great noise. The Air was filled with a great and ioyful noise. In this outrageous noise, the two Hosts approached each other. At their encountering was not spared Darts, round stones, nor Arrows. They of Hesperie had abundance of Darts, which they used and cast on the Greeks as if it had been rain. The cries redoubled on the one side, and on the other: so that there were many slain and hurt. They were all men of War: each man bare him valiantly, and amongst all other, Hercules having his Bow in hand, slew as many enemies, as he shot Arrows. He shot dured long, When it failed, they fought hand to hand. Then began the Battel to be eager and hard. Gerion shewed himself boisterous, and expert in arms, and put to death many Greeks, but for one that he slew, Hercules slew ten of the Hesperians.

At the encounter of the Gallies where were many hurt, Hercules took his Club and smiting one of the Gallies, that thought to have graped and boarded his Galley, he made it cleave in sunder, and the water came in so suddenly that the most part of them in that Galley were drowned, without engaging. After this, Hercules came to another Galley, and there did marvels: all that he hit with his Club were dead, or sore hurt. Some he brained, and of others he brake legs and arms. It seemed to thunder with him: he did so beset him, that each man fled from him, and there was no man that withstood him, or durst abide him: When he saw this, he put himself forth to exploit great affairs. Leaping from Galley to Galley, and made so great slaughters, that his people by his good example abounded in valour and puissance, and the Hesperians diminished: and had so much damage that all things went against them. Gerion considering, that fortune was his enemy, sounded a retreat, and left the battel.



## CHAP. XX.

How *Gerion* assailed *Hercules* the second time, before *Megidda*, how *Hercules* slew his brethren, vanquished, and constrained *Gerion* to flee.

When *Hercules* saw his enemies busie to withdraw, he sounded the retreat, forasmuch as it was near night, and also because he had enclosed the Gallies of *Gerion*, that they might not return into his City without passing by him. When the two Armies were withdrawn, *Gerion* in the darkeſt of the night, shipped and went into the City of *Valerina*, whereof one of his Brethren was King, and put him there in ſafety, in purpoſe to make the greateſt Army that he could to come upon *Hercules*. *Hercules* after the retreat, anchored his Gallies upon the River of *Gaudiana*, and paſſed there that night: on the morrow when he ſaw that *Gerion* and his ſolk were fled, and were not upon the Sea within ſight, he rowed up unto the City of *Megidda*, took land and aſſailed fiercely the City. The aſſault was eager and ſharp, and the *Megiddans* defended themſelves, but they were ſo diſfurniſhed with men of War, that they could not hold out, but opening the Town to the Greeks, yielded to *Hercules*. Thus was *Hercules* Lord of the principal City that *Gerion* had, he entred into it, and the Greeks with him. The City was well provided with victuals. So that ſince they departed out of Greece, they found no where ſo good Fortune. *Hercules* held him there a ſpace of time, ſearching in what place he might find *Gerion*. During theſe things he went unto the Temple, to thank his God. In this Temple were many Sepulchres, garniſhed with very fair marvellous Hiſtozies. Among other, there was one paſſing rich: for the remembrance of *Gerion*, of fine gold, environed with thirty Kings, whoſe heads were ſmitten off. *Hercules* abode at this Sepulchre, and demanded of the Citizens wherefore ſerved the Statues and Images ſo rich. A Citizen ſaid to him that they were the Sepulchres of the Noble men of their Realm, and that King *Gerion* had brought up that cuſtom to make theſe Sepulchres, to



have remembrance of them that were valiant in Arms. Fur-thermoze (said that same man) as soon as in this Countrey a man hath put a Nobleman to death, then he maketh a remembrance of that dead man upon his Sepulture. And forasmuch as King Gerion in his time hath slain thirty Kings, he caused this Sepulture to be made which you see, meaning to be buried here in the end of his days. When Hercules heard this, that the Citizen said, he answered, he held himself happy he had escaped the Sword of such a Tyrant, that put so many Kings to death, and made his Prayers to his God : After this he returned to the Palace, and there came to him the Messenger of King Gerion : who by the power of his Master, commanded him to aboid the City, and the Realm, or else make good watch. Hercules answered that he was entred into the Realm, and into the City, with strength of arms, and he would not go out thereof, until one had taken from him his Sword by force of Arms, or until the time that he put the Countrey in obedience.

The Messenger returned from Megidda, with this answer to Gerion, who was with his two Brethren : they took the words of Hercules impatiently, and swore they would avenge them of him. To be short, they went to the Sea with a great Army.

They rowed and sailed with all their strength unto Megidda : the Wind and Fortune suffered them in few days, to arrive at the Port : Hercules was advised of their coming, who suffered them to take land, and let them rest that day : they were fifty thousand men. When they landed it was late, and seeing the Greeks made no defence at their landing, they said one to another, that they durst not come forth and fight them. Thinking all to have won advantage, thereupon concluded, that on the morrow they would assail the City very early. Upon this conclusion, Gerion and his Brethren considered of things appertaining to the Assault, menacing greatly Hercules and his Greeks who were then in Megidda, thinking likewise on their affairs ; not only in the intention to defend them from their enemies, but to issue out the day following, to assail them by Battel, as soon as the night passed. A little before the Sun rising.



king, on the morrow, Hercules made two battalions. In the first, he put a thousand fighting men, and conducted them. In the second he put the residue of his Army, and made Theseus Captain of them. After this, when he had very well trained his people, and set them in good order, he admonished them to do their endeavour, and minded them of certain things, but could not finish his speech: For that same time, Gerion and his brethren, with their folk, made their approaches to assail the City, and made so great noise, that all about it redounded.

When Hercules heard this uproar, he opened the Gate, to behold what new things was there. And at the issuing out he saw his enemies hasten to the Forts and Walls, with Ladders and other Engines fit for an assault. Then he began to laugh in himself, and bade his men follow him: and went straight way forth, to begin the skirmish.

When Gerion saw Hercules, he knew him, by the skin of the Lion, and his Club, and shewed him to his Brethren, that marvelled of him, because he came alone upon them. Lo here is our mortal aduersarie (said Gerion) he is full of Pride, and setteth little by us: Let us assail him all three, and destroy him: all the gold in the world shall not save his life. Hercules with these words, came so nigh the three Giants, that he could well speak unto them, and said: Ye evil Tyrants, lay down your weapons: It is now no time to assail the City, it becometh you to dispose you to enter into battel. The battel is ready, begin at me, and I at you, and let us fight together till more come. With these words he lifted up his Club and charged the stroke so sore upon one of the three Brethren, that he cast his Shield, and all astonied bare him to the earth. When Gerion and his other brother, saw their brother so bozn down, they smote with their Swords upon Hercules, with great fury, and so employed their strength, that they brake off part of his Armour. With these two strokes of their Swords, Hercules received more than an hundred darts upon his body, howsoever the Swords nor Darts were not so hard tempered, that they could pierce the armour of Hercules, nor Hercules left not to work with his Club, but he lift it up on high and stroke it upon the second brother



ther of Gerion, so lustily, that from the top to the Helm he bruised him, and smote him to the ground, like as if a great Rock had fall'n on his head.

Gerion was sore afraid to see so great a stroke, and with a wonderful angry and fierce heat, he laid upon Hercules, and gave him so great a stroke upon the Helm with his Sword that he made the fire spring out: but the Helm was so hard that the Sword could not enter. Then was Hercules environed with his enemies, and was smitten in many a place upon his body. The Hesperians desired sore to see their Swords dred with the blood of Hercules, but Hercules put himself in defence, joyous that he might employ his strength upon them.

And when he probed him thus upon one and other, and would suffer none to come nearer than his arm and Club could reach, and that his enemies more and more came about him, Malion that was Pephem to Wylies issued out of Megidda, with a thousand men of the Army of Hercules. And seeing so great a company about Hercules, was assured that he fought there, he and his people addressed them thitherwards, making so great a cry, and setting on so valiantly, that in bearing down all before them, they came and found Hercules where he had slain more than six hundred of his enemies, and that he feared nothing. They that bare the Scaling Ladders and other Engines were constrained to cast them down, and go to the Battel, which was grievous and hard: and there were many Knights slain. Gerion for his part, bestirred himself terribly: His Brother that was first beaten, after he was carried out of the press came unto the field again: and in his coming he made great room among the Greeks, he was strong and puissant, and bare a very heavy Guisarme, the edge of which was three great foot long, he did marvels with this Guisarme, and beat down so many of the Greeks, that the noise arose greatly about him. And this noise and alarm came to the ears of Hercules. Then Hercules left them that he fought with, and as soon as he saw the Gyant, that dealt with the Greeks as he would, not well contented with that Guisarme: lifted up his Club, and smote the Gyant upon the Shoulder, employing his strength in such wise, that the Shoulder brake



brake and bare him down to the ground, not fully dead, but in woꝛse estate: foꝛ he might not relieue himself, and must needs dye under the feet of the men of Arms very miserably.

At this time Theseus and Hispan, with the residue of the Greeks, came unto the battel very joyfully, and finding their enemies out of array, and without any conduct, they skirmished among them fiercely, and slew so many that all the place was covered. Hispan and Theseus cleft the heads of many Knights: they were expert in feats of arms. At their coming they made their enemies to retire, and wan upon them with so good fortune, that by their means Gerion lost aboue thirty thousand men. In short space y<sup>e</sup> battel was such about Hercules, that his enemies knew not where to save them. And Gerion being advertised of the death of his second Brother, turned his back and fled unto the Sea, blowing his horn, anon they endeaoured suddenly to put themselves to flight, and they that could save themselves, saved them without delay. Hercules, Theseus, and Hispan with about twelue hundred Greeks followed them swiftly: entring into some of their Ships, but had not Mariners so ready, as the other, wherefoꝛe they were a little letted.

## CHAP. XXI.

How Hercules pursued Gerion: and vanquishing him, put him to death at the port of the Corogne.

**T**hen was finished the Battel foꝛ this day, to the great losse and dishonour of Gerion, and the honour and profit of Hercules, Malion abode in Megidda, by the appointment of Hercules, to keep the Greeks that abode there, and take the spoil of their enemies. Hercules on the other side sailed after Gerion, who perceiuing him was soꝛe afraid, and fled: his flight during thꝛee days. Gerion had good Mariners, who kept them warily from boarding the Ship of Hercules. Sailing by the Mediterranean Sea, from Coast to Coast, now befoꝛe, and now behind, but the end was such, that on the fourth day they were constrained to abide Hercules at the battel upon the Sea, oꝛ descend to land at the Corogne in Galicia. To see the death, whereof



whereof they were in doubt, they left the Sea, and took the Land at a Port, imagining that they should well defend them against Hercules, for they were ten against one. As soon as they had taken Land at the Port of the Corogne, they trained them about the Port to defend the Sea, which was strong to take. And then Gerion warned his men, saying: here is the hour of the day that we must dye or overcome our enemies. Fortune hath done us the worst she can, she was wont to make all strangers tremble before our Swords. Now she maketh us to tremble before a little number of people. Alas what shame is this: Since we are at this point, there is no way but to abenge this shame. If we abenge us at this time, we shall recover our honour. Fortune hath brought us into a very good Port, as if she will raise us again, and make us Conquerors of our adversaries: let us now defend the Port, abenge our blood, abenge our sorrow, and abenge our damage.

In the mean while that Gerion encouraged thus his folk, Hercules and his company rowed so nigh the Port, that they were come to strokes. The Hesperians cast upon Hercules round stones, darts with sharp Irons on the end, spears and swords. Against this the Greeks took their shields and covered them, and put them in devoir, to win the Port. But the casting of the Hesperians was so mortal, that it constrained their enemies to abide, and not approach the Port. They had at this Port great abundance of stones. The Hesperians kept well the entry more than three hours, so that the Greeks could find no way nor means to remedy it. At the end of three hours, Hercules very sorrowful to see his men troubled, thought he would enter into a little Boat, and so adventure himself alone to win the Port.

Then he that doubted no stroke of any mortal man, entred into a little boat, steering it himself, with help of the wind, which was for his advantage, hoysed up the sail, and adventuring as fast as he could, he brought the Boat unto the Port, but he received more than an hundred strokes with stones: that his Sail that stood up an end by force of the Wind, was smitten full of holes, the cords broken, and the Mast overthrowen, and the boat almost filled with stones.



Notwithstanding Hercules ceased not at all from his enterprize, but through he passed by all the strokes of his enemies, labouring so that he took land, and thrust himself among the Hesperians, and there he began to smite with his Club, on the right side, and on the left, end long, and over-thwart. with such an abundance of valour and prowess, that all the place was so red with their blood and brains. Theseus and Hispan, and fifty of the Greeks best armed, by the example of Hercules, took also a light boat, and adventured themselves to win the Port: Hercules was even at the mouth of the Port, he saw Theseus come, and to make him passage, he ran here and there, and did so much hurt to the Hesperians, that without great danger they took land, and sprang out of their boat. Then was the assault hot and furious. Gerion came to the Landing of Theseus, and at least three hundred of his men that followed him. All they smote, and laid upon the Greeks, and of the fifty they slew ten. When Theseus and Hispan saw that, their hearts began to swell. They encouraged themselves, and pierced the assembly of Gerion, and against one man that was slain of theirs, they slew fifty Hesperians, and there they used their prowesses so, that they did wonders by their Arms.

Gerion even doed for sorrow that he might not come to have his will on the Greeks: He and his men were eager as Tigers that had been famished. The Greeks were mighty and strong as Elephants: their strokes were great, they doubted neither Dart nor Sword, put all in adventure. The Battel was furious, and the Greeks received many a wound: always Hispan and Theseus by their marvellous prowesses saved them from death, and made passage through a great press where Hercules was.

Hercules that left not to smite, was very glad when he saw Theseus and Hispan, and their forty Companions. Their coming cost Gerion the death of a thousand men and more: for Hercules to encourage his men, added to his deeds strength upon strength, prowess upon prowess, confounding his enemies so dreadfully, drawing them toward the Sea, that they that saw him, wished they had been in their mothers womb: and in doing



ing they were in such hast, that they beat each other into the Sea, and slew themselves.

Then was Gerion smitten to the heart with great ire, mingled with impatience: so he put himself into the pzeis, and smote not only upon Hercules, but also upon the companions of Theseus: he smote the first man upon the Helm, that he cleft his head unto the teerh. After he assailed another, and bare him to the earth, so astonied that he wist not where he was. Consequently, he made there a great Massacre suddenly on the Greeks, that he dyed his Sword with their blood, and the Greeks were constrained to make a great cry for succour.

At this season the Greeks that were left with their Gallies entred into the Port, and took Land easily. When Hercules heard the cry that his men made, he ran thither to the assault and made about them a new noise, great and pitious. Gerion knew that the noise came because of Hercules, for he saw him come and smite in the thickest of the Pzeis, then he called to his folk, and cheared them, but had there so great mishap, that for one stroke Hercules gave him with his Club by chance, he was constrained to depart the pzeis, and to withdraw him apart with them that were weary, to take his breath. Gerion afterward fought to his extremity, and casting his eyes upon the skirmish, he saw the Greeks upon the Port, and prohibiting them unto battel. Then he saw how they put many of his men to the worst, and that he might not resist it: all his losses came before his eyes, and he began to sigh, and said with a dolorous heart: Alas, what is the mutability of Fortune? Flattering fortune, what hast thou thought? All the honour thou hast given me heretofore, redounds now to my shame: since thou hast sent me so many goods, wherefore hast thou sent to me Hercules? This is the enemy of all my glory. He from a shining fame hath brought me now unto a name full of darkness. If thou hast given him sufficient: Let him not come after me with his horrible deeds. All my veins be replenished with Furies, my heart murmureth it self boyling with ire. What great mishap is this: since it must needs be I shall be unfortunate, I will verily dye of the Club whereof I have seen my brother dye: or



I will take vengeance. Gerion all out of his wit, with these words put him in the Press, crying : Gerion, Gerion, to encourage his men. Thus crying, and seeking Hercules, he put to death many Greeks : he was all furious so as his Sword was dyed with the blood of his enemies. In the end he came to Hercules, and with his Sword so dyed, he smote him sore. Hercules was weary, for without ceasing he abode fighting by the space of four hours, and had received upon his arms so many strokes, that no man could number them. Nevertheless, he fled not at all from Gerion, but came to him joyfully and fought against him with so great force, that all they that saw it marvelled : and after many strokes, Hercules smote him one so great, that he bruised Gerion, and beat the brains out of his head, and smote the Helm off his Shoulders, so that he fell among the dead.

## CHAP. XXII.

How Hercules founded the City of Corogne upon the Tomb of Gerion.

Thus was the end of the unhappy life of Gerion the Tyrant : he dyed as his two brethren did by the Club of Hercules. When the Hesperians saw him brought to that pass, as to taste the bitter morsel of death, all left their arms, bewailing sorrowfully the death of Gerion, and fell into despair : So that some stayed still to be slain, others fled by Desarts, Mountains, and the Banks of the Sea. When Hercules espied them so dismayed, he thanked his God, and pursued his enemies. The pursuit dured unto the evening. The Greeks filled the fields, the Mountains, and the Plains by the Sea, with blood. When the night was come, Hercules and the Greeks withdrew them into the Gallies to refresh themselves. The hurt men were remembered and comforted with the Victory and Spoil. The weary men forgot the labour and toyl that they had done. They rested them after their travel, and passed the night over. When it was day, Hercules issued out of his Galley, and beholding the Port, it seemed to him that a City would stand well there,

L

and



and then said, that forthwith he would make one there, and concluded to begin it. He sent to all places, where he knew any people were thereabouts, and gave to each man knowledge that he was minded to make a City there, and the first person that would come to put hand thereto, should have the Government thereof: this thing was known in Galicia. Many came thither, but a woman named Corogne was the first that came. And therefore Hercules gave unto her the ruling thereof, and named it Corogne, in remembrance of the victory that he had there. Upon the body of Gerion he founded a Tower, and by his Art composed a Lamp burning continually day and night, without putting of any thing thereto. Which burned afterward the space of three hundred years. Moreover upon the pinnacle or top of the Tower, he made an Image of Copper, looking into the Sea, and gave him in his hand a Looking glass, having such vertue, that if it happened that any men of War on the Sea came to harm the City suddenly, their Army and their coming should appear in this said Looking glass, and that lived unto the time of Nebuchadonozar, who being advertised of the property of the Glass, filled his Gallies with white things and green boughs and leaves, that in the Looking Glass they appeared no other but a wood: whereby the Corognians not knowing of any other thing than their Glass shewed to them, did not furnish them with men of Arms, as they had been accustomed when their enemies came. And thus Nebuchadonozar took the City in a morning, destroying the Looking Glass and the Lamp. When the Tower was made, Hercules caused to come thither all the Maids of the Countrey, and willed them to make a solemn feast in remembrance of the death of Gerion. Then he departed unto Megidda, where were presented unto him one hundred Oxen of the fairest.

#### CHAP. XXIII.

How Hercules assailing King Cacus, overcame him, and how Cacus began to tyrannize in Italy.

**A**fter this Conquest, as Hercules intended to people this new Countrey, tidings came to him, that in the City of Cartha-



Carthagenia, a King and Gyant Reigned, named Cacus, who was passing evil and full of Tyranny, and had slain by his cursed beating the Kings of Arragon and of Navar, their Wives and Childzen, and possessed their Seigniories, and also held in subjection all the Country of Italy. Hercules received joyously these tidings, and said, by the pleasure of God, he would assay to take vengeance of the death of the Kings of Arragon and Navar. Then he disposed him unto this work, and having an appetite to correct the King Cacus, as soon as an Army might be ready, he went unto the Realm of Castile, where was King Cacus in the City of Carthagenia, that stood beside a Mountain named Monachajo. And he passing by many Realms that did him obedience, for his vertuous renown: he came to Carthagenia, the King Cacus came against him in Arms: for he had been advertised of his coming. And as he entred into the frontiers, Cacus sent unto him one of his Knights, that said to him these words: Hercules, thou open Tyrant, thou hast thine heart greater than thy body, and wouldest assail the Heavens, to conquer them, if God had given thee wings to fly: If thou dost seek peace and love, unto King Cacus, thy equal in condition and Fortune, I salute thee in his name: and if thou dost come as his enemy, I defie thee in his name: And in no wise be thou so hardy as to enter into this Country. If thou enter, know thou that thou shalt find in Cacus, and in the Castilians so hard an encounter, that from thy evil adventure shall no man of thy company be quit. Knight (answered Hercules) whatsoever you be, you shew not that you have the heart of a Noble man. For it is a shame to all men, and especially to a Noble man, to mis-call or speak evil of another man. You have called me an open Tyrant, and also you have compared me to the Tyrant Cacus. I answer you to this Article, that I am no Tyrant, but a destroyer of Tyrants: therefore return again unto Cacus, and certifie him, that I have intention to shew what hate I have to Tyrants: and within few days he shall receive a hard encounter, notwithstanding his brabadoes. With this answer the Castilian departed from Hercules, and returned unto King Cacus, and told him word for word what Hercules had said. When Cacus had heard this, he



was abashed, notwithstanding he was a strong and puissant Gyant, and had never found a man stronger than himself: for the renown of Hercules was then so great through the universal World, that the most strong, most assured in Arms, and the most fortunate doubted him, and trembled hearing speak of his deeds. Nowbeit Cacus took courage in himself, and without sign of being abashed, in the presence of his Nobles, said: Blessed be the next days, that Fortune and Fortune shall bring to us, to make proof and force of our strength. Now it behoveth that Castile and Sicil shew the force of their arms, to defend King Cacus from the Claws of his enemies: and it is of necessity likewise, that King Cacus, for his people put forth the uttermost of his strength. Now go we on my brethren and friends, we are come to the War. The Greeks come upon Castile without any quarrel, let us go against them, and fight for our Country: the Birds fight one against another for their Preys, and the dumb Beasts for their Caves. Fortune leadeth them to do so, if we have the same Fortune, the time is come that we ought to shew it.

When the Castilians and the Arragonoys that were there, heard Cacus speak, they praised greatly his courage, and answered all with one voice, they were ready to assail their enemies. With this answer the King did dis-lodge his Host that he had there in the fields: and went forth against Hercules, the straightest way he could. King Cacus desired to find Hercules. Hercules on the other side wished to see Cacus. They went so long the one against the other, that soon after they saw each other, nigh to a place where Hercules after founded a City, which was named Terricone. As soon as they saw each other, they began to make great joy, with shouts and cries. Then they trained them in order of battel, and marched the one against the other so sharply, that they filled the air in short space with shot of Arrows, casting of Stones, and Darts. At the beginning of this battel, the Castilians bare them valiantly, and there were many of their part slain, more by hardiness than for fear. For they put themselves too far forth. And they feared not the shot of the Greeks, though they were thick, that all the Ground was red with



with their blood And the Castilians which were so far gone, and soze chased, were driven back again to their fellows. When King Cacus saw his folk so soze bestead, and heard that they recoyled from the shot of the Greeks: he had very great sorow in his heart, and knew not what to do to withstand the force of the Battel: Some fled, others went back, and others fell down, dead or soze hurt. The Battel dured long to the sorow of King Cacus. But in the end the shot of the Greeks failed, and the Castilians with Cacus recovered new strength, that they came to close fight, hand to hand with their Swords, they shed largely the blood of them of Tyre, and of Ancone, which were in the first front of the battels of Hercules.

The noise arose great: There were many Shields broken, and skins of Lions cut in pieces. As Cacus approached, it seemed as a Tempest: He was strong, fierce, and outrageous in smiting, each of his strokes was the death of a Greek. He did so much, that the cries of them that were about him mounted up into the Air, that the Castilians had well nigh won all, and began to rejoyce for their good fortune, and chasing the Greeks to death: but like as a clear day is ofentimes troubled by a dark Cloud, so by the alone coming of Hercules to skirmish, all their joy was troubled, and turned into mortal losses. For the deadly arm of Hercules laid about him so terribly, that he beat down the Castilians, like as a Mower with his Scepter cutteth down the grass in a green Meadow. When Cacus saw Hercules so founder his men, his blood was on fire, and he was so exceedingly enraged, that in a great fury he presented himself before the front of Hercules, and smote him with his Sword so furiously, that he cleft his Shield in two parts. The Castilians seeing the Shield of Hercules fly in pieces, thought that Cacus had put him to death, then they made a shout for joy, but it dured not long: for Hercules lift up his Club and smote Cacus upon the top of the Helm with such strength, that it seemed to Cacus he had been smitten down with the greatest Rock in Spain. Yet notwithstanding Cacus abode standing in his place, challenging Hercules to the death, and smote him with all his might. At this assailing, the Castilians hoping in the Fortune



of Cacus, they all assailed Hercules.

Hercules was gone so far among his Enemies, that he was separated from his company. When he heard Cacus threaten him to death, and saw that the Castilians assailed him, and came to him from all sides, his heart was filled with fury, and abandoning the thickness and hardness of his Skin of the Lion to the Swords of them all without rehanging him, save only against Cacus, he smote him without measure. Cacus fought with the spirit of a Tyrant chafed, Hercules fought with a heart nourished in Virtue. Both of them were fierce, strong, and of great courage: But when they had both enough each of other, at length the strokes of Hercules were so great and forcible, that the Shoulders of Cacus, nor his head could sustain them. So in the end, after their battel had dured two hours, Cacus could no moze suffer him, but fled.

When Hercules saw that Cacus fled, he meant not to follow, but for the Victory, began to hew on the Castilians, Arragonnoys, and such others as he found; for he left no man alive before him, young nor old, feeble nor strong. Hispan and the other of his side, made their feats of Arms to flourish. The Battel was sharp: for the Greeks doubled and redoubled their strokes and slew many of their enemies. In the end, when Cacus had taken his breath, he put again into the middle at one side, to where his folk fled, and made them tarry, smiting and beating the Greeks moze terribly than he had done before, whereof the cries arose so high, that Hercules fighting on another side, heard, and ran thither at all adventure. And as he espied Cacus, he went before him, and broke the press, and smote down so sore, that Cacus knew him, but durst not abide him, but fled away again. When the Greeks made a shout, and a joyful noise, so that all the Castilians fled some here, some there, to the great hurt and loss of Cacus: For of all his people there was left no moze but fifty which saved themselves upon the Mount of Tonchayo, which stood there by. But with great effusion of blood of them of Castilia, that thought to have mounted up with the other, so that it seemed there had been a Spring of Blood, the Caves in the Valley were filled with blood: howbeit Cacus saved himself and  
fifty



fifty of his men upon the Mountains, as the Chronicles of Spain rehearse. When he was above, and in sure peace, he returned, and looking down to the foot of the hill, saw so many Cafilians, that were without number dead, or in danger to dye: he had great sorrow then at his heart, not for pity, but despite, and for the dangers that he saw he must pass. Anon after he saw in the Champaigne, each quarter and place there, all covered with them of his party, and of their blood. Also he saw them that fled taken, and brought to the hands of the other. These things considered, the desolation of his Dominion, and punishment of his tyranny was to him evident: he thought then that Hercules would soon conquer all the Country: for they obeyed him through fear and not for natural love.

Notwithstanding he despaired not, albeit that he saw the puissance of his men destroyed by the Club of Hercules, and knew that he might no more reign in that Countrey, because they were all slain, then he returned unto his Science, and as sorrowful as he was, he entered into a house he had there, but first appointed twelve of his men to keep the passage of this Mount, which was so strait and narrow, that there could go up but one man at once.

When Hercules and his men had put to death all their Enemies, Hercules began to assail the Rock, and got upon the degrees or stairs: but then suddenly they that kept the Passage, cast upon him great stones, in so great abundance, that of force he was constrained to descend. When Hercules saw that he must withdraw him, he obeyed Fortune, notwithstanding he made a vow, that he would never depart from the foot of the Rock, till he had constrained Cacus to descend, by famine or otherwise: This vow made, Hercules came unto the foot of the hill, where the battel had been, and made the place clean, and purged it of the dead bodies, and of the blood of them that lay dead. After that he made his Tent of boughs and leaves, and his Bed of fresh grass, and commanded that every man should lodge there. When the day was ended, and night approached, the Greeks were weary, for they had all day laboured in arms, and would faine have rest, and made good cheer with that they had. And af-



ter they had ordained, and set their Watch, as well to keep the Coast, as to keep the Rock that Cacus should not come down, they laid them down upon the grass, in such wise as they were accustomed when they were in the War, and so slept that night.

On the morrow, Hercules parted the Host in twain, and sent Hispan with one of them into Arragon, and Navarre, and he remained with the other. Hispan in the name of Hercules, was joyfully received of the Navarroys, and of the Arragonoys. And they all made to him obeysance, acknowledging Hercules to be their Lord, and the most vertuous Prince that was in the west. When Hispan had subdued them, he returned unto Hercules. Hercules lay yet still befoze Monchayo, and there held Cacus in subjection, that he should not issue out. Cacus and his folk were then in great want of victual, and they wist not what to eat or drink. They deferred as long as they might, hoping that Hercules would be weary of being long there. But in the end, when their Victuals failed, they saw that they must needs adventure themselves to come down, Cacus by his Science made certain secret things to go down into their stomachs, and after put thereto fire, and taught all the other to do so, then suddenly as they felt the fire issue out of their mouths, the fume and smoke in such abundance, they seemed all on a light fire, then by the counsel of Cacus they adventured themselves to descend down in running, and casting fire and fume so impetuously, that Hercules and the Greeks thought it had been a Tempest of Lightning from the Heavens, and had burnt the Mountains; for it was a thing to make men sore abashed: and thus they escaped the danger of Hercules at that time. For during all that day the Rock was full of smoke and fume that Cacus had made, and the smoke was so material, that it seemed darkness.

Cacus and his folk thus passed the Host of Hercules and the Greeks: Then Hercules who was the wisest Clerk in the World, so employed himself in study, he took his Books and began to search how and by what reason the fire descended from the Rock: he read much, but all things well considered, he found not that this fume came of natural things, whereof he had great marvel. Then he sent for Atlas, that always was lodg-  
ed



ed behind the Host, to be solitary. When Atlas was come, he shewed him the smoak and fume that dured yet; then he told of the Lightning that had passed by the Host, and demanded of him his opinion. Atlas knew incontinent the fume, and answered to Hercules. Certes my Son, thou art more sharp in Science than I, for mine age may not attain to such high things as thy youth. Howbeit, for as much as I know, the growing of this thing long time past: I will tell thee, (what I say thou shalt find true as I suppose.) Therefore know, that this fume is a thing artificial, and made by the craft of Vulcan, the Father of Cacus, who was an excellent Master in this Science, and was the inventor thereof: he made certain Mountains in Cicily to burn, and shall burn continually to the end of the World. Cacus which knew the Art of his Father, hath made this fume to escape thy hands, he is descended with his company in the form of Lightning or Tempest, and thus thy strength is deceived by his Science. When Hercules understood this, that Atlas had said to him, he greatly marvelled at the Science of Cacus, and could not believe it. Then to know the truth, he took his Club, and went up through the smoak, unto the top of the Rock seeking Cacus: but he found there neither man nor beast, then he returned unto Atlas, and laughing, confessed to him that he had said truth, and said, he would make no pursuit after him, forasmuch as he was so gentleman-like escaped. This day they passed over in speaking and communing of Cacus and his father Vulcan. The day following, when the smoak and fume was banished away, Hercules began to behold the Country, and saw it was commodious and fertile, and to the end that there should ever be remembrance of him, he founded there a City which he named Terracone, forasmuch as he gave this Country to the Son of the King of Ancone, and there he made him dwell with his people, and with them of Tyre. Hercules after this foundation, went to the City of Salamanque, and forasmuch as it was well inhabited, he would make there a solemn study, and did make in the earth a great round hole in manner of a Studr, and he set therein the seven liberal Sciences, with many other Books.

¶

Then



## The Second Book of

Then he made them of the Country to come thither to study, but they were so rude and dull, that their wits could not comprize any cunning of Science. Then forasmuch as Hercules would depart on his voyage, and would that his study were maintained, he made an Image of gold unto his likeness, which he did set up on high in the midst of his study upon a Pillar; and made so by his Art, that all they that came befoze this Image, to have declaration of any Science, to all purposes, and all Sciences, the Image answered, instructed, and taught the Scholars with Students, as it had been Hercules in his proper person. The renown of this study was great in all the Countrey. And this Study dured after the time that St. James converted Spain unto the Christian Faith: from Salamanque Hercules departed and went into Catalogne, and founded there the City of Barseloigne, which is a good City. And finally, when he had accomplished all these things, he sent Atlas home again into his Country, but he held by him all his Writings, for he loved Books above all the riches of the World. After he would give leave unto Philotes to return unto his Country, but Philotes refused his Congie, and said to him, that he would serbe him all his life, and reputed his felicity moze great to be in his service, than to govern the Country that Fortune had put into his hand. Hercules after this called Hispan, and said to him: Hispan, I know thy wit and thy valour, I have found thee always wise and true. Thou art a man of authozity, and very well known in these Coasts, I do now make and constitute thee to be King over all this Country: and I do give unto thee charge to love vertue, and maintain thy honour. When Hispan heard the gift that Hercules bestowed on him, he fell down at his feet & thanked him, and excused him of that honour. But Hercules said to him, he would have it so, and delibered to him a certain number of his people to serbe him. Afterwards he caused him to depart, with great sighs and sorrows. And Hispan went then by all the Countries that Hercules had conquered from Gerion and Cacus. And from thenceforth the Country was named Spain. after his Name: Wherefore I will now cease speaking of his Conquest of Spain, and will rehearse the deeds of Arms that Hercules did in Lombardy, and of the death of Cacus.

CHAP.



## CHAP. XXIV.

How *Hercules* fought against the eleven Gyants of *Cremona*, and vanquished them.

**N**OW where are the Kings, Emperours, Souldans, and Princes, that I may speak of the vertuous liberality of them, equal or like unto those of *Hercules*? The men at this day fight one against another, and make many conquests: but they attribute them unto their singular profit. They resemble not *Hercules*, he never fought but for the common weal of the World. To pursue my discourse; When he made *Hispan* King of all the Region of *Hesperie*, that now is named *Spain*, he sent for his *Dren*, his *Rine*, and his *Calbes*, and after departed from *Barceloigne*, and took his way into *Lombardy*, he went on his journey till he came nigh the City of *Cremona*, which is but a days journey from *Millan*. There were in this City eleven Gyants, great of measure. These eleven Gyants were all brethren, and sons of *Nelen*, the son of *Saturn*. They called themselves all Kings of this City. They held all estate Royal, howbeit their Revenues were but small, but they were thieves, and robbed their neighbours, and made them always War. When they knew that *Hercules* approached their City, they assembled their Council, and demanded one of another, if they should suffer *Hercules* to enter into their City? All were of one opinion, that they should not receive him, and they would send unto him one of them, which was named *Nestor*, that he should not enter into *Cremona*, unless he first had vanquished in battel the eleven Brethren. *Nestor* at the commandment of the Gyants, departed from *Cremona*, and went to *Hercules*, whom he found with his little Army, lying but three miles distant from *Cremona*.

Then spake he to *Hercules*, and said to him; Sir, I have ten Brethren Kings of *Cremona*, that have sent me unto thee, forasmuch as thou entrest into their Dominion, and they certify thee by me, that they will give unto thee no passage into *Cremona*, unless thou first overcome them, one after another in battel:



battel : therefore chuse whether thou wilt have the battel, or else return again, and leave off this boiage. I aduertise thee, that they are all Gyants, more great and more puissant than I am. Sir Knight, (answered Hercules) I have taken my way to pass by Cremona, let the Gyants know that Hercules hath an intention to speak unto them, as he that dreads not, nor feareth their accustomed Tyrannies, which I must deliver the world of, by feats of Arms. And to the end that they presume not that I have any doubt or dread of them in any manner, ye shall say unto them, that I will not fight with them ten, one after another, but all at once together, and you with them, if you will accompany them : to do so, they shall find me ready to morrow early, by day light.

Hercules with these words made his people to abide, and rest there for that night. And Nestor returned to his Brethren, and said : My Brethren, I have spoken to Hercules, and told him your commandement : He hath answered unto me with a high and plain courage, that he will fight with us to morrow : not one after another, but with us all at once. And to speak plainly of him, he hath the semblance of a valiant man, and furnished with Weapons : he is a Prince very modest, and of great courage. It behoveth you to furnish well the battel. Certainly it will be perillous, for he is mightily membered, and as big as one of us, but me thinketh he may not compare, nor prevail against us eleven, and that he may not escape our forces, but we shall pierce him with our Swords, whatsoever force or strength is in him.

The Gyants hearing him so praise Hercules, had great marvel of him, and would not believe Nestor, of that he had reported, that he would fight with them all together at once : For there were none of them all but he thought himself strong enough for Hercules. Then they asked again if Nestor were sure to have well understood what Hercules said unto him, that he would fight against them all at once ? Nestor answered, yea, and that he had heard him say it in his proper person. With this answer they concluded, that on the morrow they should Arm them all, and that they would go to the field to fight against



## The Destruction of Troy.

gainst Hercules, if he came against them. One of the Gyants said unto his Brethren: To morrow shall be the day of our glory. We shall vanquish the Vanquisher of Monsters: Let us make good cheer. Brother (answered Nestor) therein is no doubt, but that we shall overcome him that ye speak of, but so much shall our glory be the less, being eleven against one. Well, said another, if in fighting against us eleven we shall have the less honour, let us every man fight for himself. Brother (answered Nestor) if ye had seen and heard him as I have, ye would not be so hardy as you seem: he is another manner of man than you think of. Keep you at the offer that he hath made, it is better to have the most profit, and less honour in such a case. In these conferences they passed all that day, afterward they went to rest. When the hour was come, on the morrow early they arose, and made themselves ready the best they could. After they sent one of their men unto Hercules, to know what he would say: but as soon as the Messenger issued out of the Gate, the first thing he saw was a Gyant armed marvellously: the Messenger abode then, and advised him a little. After he had advised himself, he went unto the Gyant armed, and asked him what he was? I am Hercules, said the Gyant. What will you say, or have, said the Messenger? I say, said Hercules, that the Gyants of Cremona have no cause to let me the passage of their City. Forasmuch as they gave me to understand yesterday, if I would have passage, it behobeth me to vanquish them one after another in the field by battel: I am come hither in hope to win the victory, and demand no other thing but to see them in arms, to fight with them altogether at once, to have the sooner done. Wherefore go to them, signifie my coming, and hast them.

The Messenger with these words returned unto the Gyants, and told them all what he had found. When the Gyants knew that Hercules was already come into the field, they all took their Swords, and their furniture of War, and departed from the City, addressing themselves against Hercules. Hercules was then alone in the place. The men and women of Cremona went upon the Walls and Towers to see the battel. Philotes  
with



with other Noble men of the Greeks, were upon an Hill, far enough from the place where Hercules was abiding the Gyants. They were all well furnished with Helmers enriched with gold and stones. They were great and strong, all of one meature, they were bearded, and had fierce countenances: they marched stoutly, with a great courage.

When they came nigh to Hercules, within half a Bow shot, they all menaced him to the death, and made a cry so great, that the walls of their City redounded. Then they ran against the assured Prince, like as they had been Lions: Hercules hearing these cries, seeing their course on foot, stayed for them, lifting up his Club over his head.

When it came to meeting, it seemed the Gyants would have bzuised him with their Swords, for they smote upon him so unmeasurably, that the pieces of their Swords flew into the Air. Hercules suffered them, and beheld what power they had: when they made their assays upon him, Hercules made his assay upon them, and with his Club smote one of the Gyants upon the Helm, that he all bzuised not only his Helm, but his head, that he fell down suddenly dead. When the other ten Gyants saw their brother dead of one stroke, they had great sorrow, and their blood moved. Nature willed them to take sharp vengeance. They did what they could, and assailed Hercules eagerly on all sides.

Hercules feared not any stroke of Sword, Spear, or Poleaxe: his skin of the Lion was hard and strong: his strength was stable, and his Club defended all, so it need, great was the strokes that they gave each other. The Gyants did their best endeavours, and gave strokes enough to Hercules, but they could never pierce the skin of the Lion, it was so hard: yet his Club was harder. The Gyants marvelled at the constance and puissance of Hercules. As soon as Hercules lift up his Club to strike them, they leaped aside, and otherwhiles brake his strokes: howbeit in less time than an hour, he slew four of them, and the other seven fought afterwards, by such vigour, that the more he smote them with his Club, the more furious he found them and fierce.



The battel was terrible and hard, for the Gyants were strong, and long had used the skill of Arms, great pain had they to save themselves, and small hope to revenge the blood of their Brethren, and gain the honour of the battel. They said that they were unfortunate, seeing they might not overcome one man alone, nor equal him. In fighting they helped and comforted each other, and had all good courage. But what did their number of Brethren profit them? What abailed them their couragious strokes, when they were approaching their death? Hercules was always Hercules: he rejoyced much in the number of his enemies, he comforted himself in fortune, fortune he prised him, he did marvels on all sides, well could he fight, and well defended he himself, all that he did was well done: all that the others did, was nought worth, notwithstanding they were mighty. But the luck of Hercules was not to be broken, nor his Club to be fopled: but he Triumphed, and his valour encreased to sustain the furies of his adversaries, who with all their might charged him with their strokes. O marvellous strength and might of a man. His puissance was not of a man, but of an Elephant: his skin of the Lion seemed that it had been tempered with quick and hard steel: his body seemed more constant against the cutting Swords of all his enemies, than is an Anvil against the strokes of many hammers, or great sledges: there was no stroke of his enemy that grieved him: he took great pleasure in the battel; seeing himself among so many Gyants. He still greatly rejoyced, and there was nothing grieved him, but the declining of the day, which began to fail.

At this hour, when the Sun withheld her rays, and turned into the West, Hercules would make an end of his battel. The Gyants began to cease to smite, for from the morning to the evening, they fought without ceasing: and Hercules behaved himself smiting upon one and other, laying about him furiously, that of some he brake Helms and Heads, of others he brake arms and sides marvellously, and gave many great strokes, that he beat down all except Nestor, who fled away, when he saw the discomfiture. Wherein he did wisely, for all his brethren were slain by the hand of Hercules.

When



When they of Cremona saw their Lords dead, they soon enough made an end of their mourning and sorrow, for they had been to them hard and troublesome. At the end of this battel, they assembled to Council, when they saw Hercules had won the victorie, and concluded together, that they would yield themselves to Hercules, and his mercy. With this conclusion they issued out of the Gates in a great number, and came to Hercules, the Conqueroz of his enemies: first they kneeled befoze him down to the ground: secondly, they prayed and required of him mercy: and thirdly, they surrendered unto him their City and their goods, and said they would hold him for their Lord during their liues. Hercules, who was pitiful and gentle, to them that humbled themselves, receiued the Cremonians into his fauour, and made them stand up, and after sent for them of his Host. When they were come, he brought them all into Cremona, where great joy was made: For they were glad of the death of the Giants. And there was no man, woman, nor child, but did reioyce.

In this manner was Hercules King of Cremona, and enriched with a new title of victorie. The first night that he entered into the City, he rested him and his people: and were well refreshed and well feasted. On the morrow he caused to bring into the City the bodies of the Giants that were dead, and buried them worshipfully. Then he founded upon them a very great and high Tower, and upon the Tower he set eleven statues of mettall, after the fashion of the Giants that he had slain, in remembrance of his victorie.

After the Edification of this Tower, Hercules left in Cremona, folk to govern them, and departed thence to go further into the Country. He studied alway, and was neuer idle: he studied so much, that he could make the fire artificial as well as Cacus: and found the remedies against the same. What by arms and by his science, he got very great glory in Italy. He went into many places, and over all where he came and went, men did him Reuerence. With great good adventure he went so far, that he came to a City standing nigh the Mount Auentine, where reigned a King named Evander, which receiued him solemnly.



remally. It is to be noted, that when Cacus fled from Monchayo, he came into Italy unto this Mount, displeased that he had lost his Seigniorie. Then he gave all his servants leave to depart from him, and in despair, he went to the Mount Aventine in an evening, where he was constrained to withdraw himself, for he feared Hercules much. When he was come on this Hill, he found there a great Cave, and went in without his supper, and then he began to be discomforted greatly, and said: Alas, now am I exiled, and banished out of all my Seigniories, and Lordships. Now have I no succour nor comfort of person. I dare not name me King, where I was wont by my name to make Kings to tremble, alas all is turned, and become upside down. I have nothing to eat, nor know where to lodge, unless it be with the beasts. O poore King: where is any man so unhappy as I? I am so unfortunate, that I dare not be seen nor known. With these words he laid him down upon the bare ground and laid a stone under his head, and with great pain and grief fell asleep, which dured not long, for his veins were strongly stirred, his heart was not quiet, and his body was very evil sustained. After he awoke, he went out of the Cave, to look if it were nigh day: for the night troubled him, and was to him too long. But when he was come into the air, he saw no day appear, nor stars nor Moon shine, but he found it all dark and all the Regions of the air covered with clouds, whereat he was greatly grieved. Then he went into the Cave again, not into the deepest but into the mouth, and there (sorrowful and pen-sive) abode without sleeping till it was day.

When the day appeared, Cacus went out of the Cave, up unto the top of the Hill, and began to view the Country about. The Country seemed to him good and fair to live there. After great pensiveness and many thoughts, he concluded in himself, that he would abide there, and would live of booties, rapine, and theft. After he berought himself, that he would go unto King Pricus of Calidonie, which was his Cousen, to have his Wife, that he had chosen, to bear him company, and that he would ask and demand in marriage one of his Daughters. With this conclusion he departed from the Mount Aventine, and took his



way unto Calidonie. Some say Calidonie is that Country that we call Calabria. When Cacus was come to Calidonie, the King Pricus received him as it appertained to a King, forasmuch as he knew him, and was of his Linage: and demanded of him his rydings. Cacus began to sigh, when he saw that he must tell his mishap, and told him from the beginning to the end, how Hercules had taken from him his Realms, and how he had been besieged, and was escaped. Forasmuch (said he) as I dare not abide in my own Country, I am come hither unto you for refuge to count my sorrows. I have intention to hold me on the Mount Aventine in a Cave that is there, until that time my enemy Hercules shall depart from my Heritage: and I will keep me there so secret, that no man in the world shall have knowledge thereof, to the end that Hercules know it not, forasmuch as he hath me in great hate, and he hath more greater hap and fortune in arms than I have: And if he knew that I were in any place, I am certain he would come thither to destroy me. This considered, I have chosen this Cave to hide me, as I have said: It is so that the eyes of a man being in great trouble, rejoyce in the sight of a woman, for a woman is a comfort to a man. Wherefore I require you that you will give me to wife one of your Daughters. And if it please you so to do, you shall do me a greater friendship than I can have for this present time. King Pricus answered Cacus, you are of high descent, and have great Lordships in Hesperia. If fortune were against you this day, your Highness ought not therefore to be the worse esteemed. I have four Daughters, of whom the one is named Yole. Take whom it pleaseth you except Yole, for I will not yet marry her. And if you have any will to make any Army against Hercules, tell me plainly, I will succour you as a true and faithful friend. Cacus was very well content with the answer of the King, and thanked him, saying that he would make no Army for this season, but pass this time in the Cave as he had purposed. Then the three Daughters of King Pricus were sent for, and Cacus chose one of them, which he wedded, and after lay with her, and abode there two days. At the end of two days he would depart, and took leave of the King. The  
King



King would have delivered unto him ten Knights, and ten Esquires to have brought him on his way, but he refused them and would have none. Then he would have delivered to him certain Ladies and Damosels, but of all them he took none save the two Sisters of his Wife: which would by force go with him. Thus then he departed from Calidonie, accompanied with the three Sisters. He was alway sorrowful, and from that time forth, being impatient for his being cast out of Royalty, he began to rage, and bathed his Axe in the blood of men, women, and children that he met, and put them all to death.

Cacus began to exercise the deeds of fury and Tyranny, as he was going to the Mount Aventine. Being come thither he entered into the Cave, the best he could with his wives, and the most secretly. Of this place he made a pest of theft, and a pit of sins. For the first night that he lodged his Wives, he went into the Village that stood there fast by, and beheld the fairest house, whereinto he entered by a window that was open, and stole all them that were therein: after took all the goods as much as he could carry upon his shoulders, and bare them into the Cave, where his wives were.

## CHAP. XXV.

How Cacus stole away Oxen and Kine, belonging to Hercules, and how Hercules fought with him therefore, and slew him.

**I**n the morning Cacus found a very great stone of marble, which he took and bare unto his Cave, and made therewith his doore. Cacus held him in this Cave, and never went out but when he would do harm. When he went into the field, he slew all he met. He robbed every man, deflowered Women, burnt houses and towns, and shortly spoiled, and did so much harm in Italy, that they that passed in the Countrey, supposed it to be destroyed by the hand of God, and could not know whence came these persecutions that Cacus made upon them. To return then to our talk of Hercules, he came unto the City of King Evander, in the time that Cacus bedewed Italy with the blood of men, and filled his Cave with stolen goods. After the



coming of Hercules and of his men of Arms, his Beebes and Oxen were brought into the City, because King Evander should see them. The King took great pleasure to behold them, for they were high and passing fair. After the King had seen them, Hercules demanded of him, whither he could send to pasture that night? In truth Sir, said King Evander if ye will follow my counsel ye shall let them abide in this City, and not send them into the fields. Wherefore replied Hercules? Evander answered, when we send forth our beasts, we know not where they become. They have been stoln and driven away, and we cannot tell who are the Robbers, our servants have been murdered, houses burnt, people that should labour in the field are slain, women and maidens are violated and put to shame: and we cannot remedy it. For we cannot have knowledge of the Authors thereof. Wherefore some men say and will avouch, it is God that doth thus punish us for our sins. Wherefore I pray you let your beasts abide in the City, to the end, they be not stoln. Sir, said Hercules, ye tell to me a great marvel: I believe well those things ye say, notwithstanding, since God hath saved them unto this day, he will keep them yet if it please him: for if he will have them he will take them as well within the City, as out in the fields. And if there be a Robber or Thief in the Country, that will take them away, I suppose I shall find him, and make Italy quit of him. With these words Hercules sent his Beasts into the Pasture, and there left them without any Keepers: The day passed over, the night came. In this night Cacus issued out of his Cave, and went into the Country to steal, if he could find any booty. Thus he that is unhappy seeketh evil, and in the end is paid at once for his trespasses; the unhappy adventure brought him into the Peadom, where pastured the Oxen of Hercules: it was nigh the morning. he had with him his three wives. As soon as he saw the beasts by the light of the Moon. he knew them. He was all abashed, his blood changed in his visage, and not without cause: for soon after his sorrows began to grow on him, and came to the quickness of the heart, that he could not speak. His wives when they saw that he spake no words, and that he beheld the beasts.



beasts all amazed, came to him, and demanded of him what he ailed? Alas answered Cacus since it is that you must needs know: I tell you for certainty, that all the sorrow in the world ariseth in my stomach, and environeth mine heart: For I here see the Oxen of the Triumph of mine Enemy Hercules, and in beholding them I remember the great losses that I have had by him, and the honours that he hath made me lose, and the Realms that he hath taken away from me, and the extream misery that I am now in. He must needs be here by in some place. Cursed be his coming, for I know not what I shall do: but in sign of vengeance, I will slay his Oxen and his Kine.

When the three sisters heard that Cacus sorrowed, they counselled him, he should not slay the beasts: saying, if he slew them, Hercules should lose nothing, for he would eat them. It were better (said his Wife) that ye lead away as many as ye can, and bring them into our Cave: for if ye do so, Hercules shall have loss and displeasure, and ye shall have pleasure and profit.

Cacus believed what his Wife said to him, and looked in the Meadow all about, if any man had been there keeping them, but he found no man nor woman: Then he came to the beasts, and took eight of the best he could chuse: After he bound them together with a cord by the tails, and the Cord about his neck, he drew them in that manner unto his Cave, albeit the beasts resisted strongly to go backwards in that manner. Cacus so brought all those beasts that he stole, to the end, no man should follow him by the footings of the beasts.

When he had put in his Cave the beasts of Hercules, he shut the doore so well, that a man could never have known nor perceived there had been any doore. Then thinking he had been safe, he laid him down and slept. After the Sun rising, Hercules that desired much to hear tidings of his beasts, arose up, and with the King Evander came unto the place, where his Oxen and Kine were. When they were come into the Meadow Hercules found that he lacked four Oxen, and as many Kine: Whereat he was sore troubled, and commanded that they should seek all about the Meadows, and see if the footings of the beasts might be found. At this commandment every one began to seek. Some



there were that looked towards the Mount Aventine, and found the footings of the Oxen, but they thought by that footing, the beasts descended from the Mount, to come into the Meadow. When all they had sought long, and saw they found nothing they made their report unto Hercules, that they could not perceive where those Oxen were issued out, and that on no side they could find any signs or tokens of Beasts going out of the Pastures. But even now said one, I have found the footings of certain Oxen and Kine, that he descended from the Mountain into the Meadow. When Hercules heard that from the Mountain were come Oxen into the Meadow, he called unto Evander and demanded what people dwelled on the Mountain. Evander said that therein dwelled neither man nor beast: and that the Mountain was not inhabited. Hercules would go to see the footing, and went thither, and he thought well that thither might have passed eight great Beasts in that night, for the traces of the feet was great. Then he would know where they were become: but he found that the footing of the Beasts took their end there as they pastured. He then marvelled greatly forasmuch as there were no strange Beasts, and began to muse.

Now when he had a little paused, he beheld the Mount, and said: It must needs be that there is a thief in this Mountain, that is come and hath stolen them and led them away, going backwards. But howsoever it is, I will never depart from hence, till I have searched this Mountain, from one side to another, for my heart judgeth the beasts are here:

With this conclusion Hercules caused to take divers Calves that were there, and made them fast till noon, in the mean while he sent for his Harness and Arms by Philotes, and made him ready to fight. After mid day, as the Calves began to cry, and bleat for hunger, he caused them to be brought about the Mountain. Thus as they passed by the place where the Cave was, and cryed: it happened that the Kine in the Cave heard them, and answered: crying so loud that the sound passed by the holes of the Cave, and came to the ears of the Calves, and also of Hercules. When Hercules heard the cry of his Kine, he abode



bode there: his Calves began to cry again, but his Kine cryed no more, for Cacus by the force of their cries was awaked: and he that always feared to be discovered rose up, and cut the throats of the Kine. The Calves then naturally knowing their Dams, cryed very loud, and bleated, as they that desired their milk. Hereat Hercules marvelled very much.

Then he came near the mount, and went unto the place to where he heard the Kine: and was there three hours, seeking if he could find any hole or Cave to pass by. Howbeit he passed many times by the entry of the Cave, yet he could not perceive it. Some said, that the noise and bleating they had heard of the Kine was come by Illusion. Others said, Hercules lost his labour, and prayed him to leave off to seek any more, they thought them not recoverable. In the end when Hercules had heard one and other, and saw that he might not come to the end of his desire, in a great anger he took in both arms a great Tree that grew thereby, and shook it three times with so great force, that at the third time he overthrew it root and all, in such wise, that the root that came out of the earth made a large hole, so deep that the bottom of the Cave was seen plainly.

When Hercules saw the great hole that the root of the tree made, he was very joyful, and said: Truly it is here that the great Thief dwelleth. I must see if he be here, and what Merchants inhabit in this place. In saying these words, Hercules bowed down his head on the one side of the Cave, where he saw Cacus. As soon as he saw the Thief, he knew him, whereof he was more joyous than he was before, and called to him, Cacus I see thee: thou hast before this time troubled the Realm of Hesperia, with innumerable trespasses and great sins, that thou didst commit openly and manifestly. This was the cause of the destruction of thy Seigniorie. Now thou troublest the Italians with Tyrannies secret and unknown, I know thy life, thou mayst not deny it. It behobeth that thou dye therefore, and that I make the Italians free, from thy horrible and odious thefts. O cursed man, if thy Crowns, Diadems, Scepters, Renovans, thy Royal men might not maintain thee; Wherefore art thou wrapped here still in sins, and amendest not, for  
all.



all thy punishments that thou hast suffered? But yet instead of a King and Prince, thou art a thief. Instead of doing justice thou hast been a murderer, and burner of Villages and houses. Where thou shouldest have kept and saved women, thou hast deflowered them, and done them villany. O Cairiff King, without repenting of thee. Certainly, I see well thou art he that the Italians know not, and that thou hast persecuted them.

Thy malice hath been great and thy subtilty, seeing that unto this day thou wast never betrayed, and hast done great mischief. But thy cunning is not so great, neither hast thou so hidden thee, but thou art nigh peril, for thou shalt pay to me again my Wren. And to conclude, thou shalt put me to death, or thou shalt dye by my hand, thou shalt not escape by running away.

When Cacus understood this sentence, he was exceedingly afraid, nevertheless he lifted up his head: and seeing that he was found by Hercules, the only man of the world he most hated, he said unto him: alas Hercules, a man all corrupted with covetousness: what cursed fortune hath made thee to draw out the tree whereof the profound and deep roots have covered the secret abode of King Cacus, late reigning but now deprived of all worldly prosperity? Sufficeth it not to thee, that I may have the use of my natural force to live by, when thou hast taken all away from me? and that I am forced to live by Robbery and Spoil, whereof the blame and fault ought to redound upon thee? Why sufferest thou not me to live out the residue of my poor life, among the stones, Rocks, and moorings of the Earth? Consider now what thou hast done to the King and seek him no more. Thou hast hurt and grieved him enough. Cacus, answered Hercules, In the deepest of thy depths of wretchedness and miseries, thy demerits will accuse thee: I am right sorry and grieved, to see a King in so woful and shameful estate: but seeing thou canst not beautifie thy days passed or present with one only good deed, what remedy? Thou hast daily exercised tyranny, as well in prosperity as in adversity, I know well that thou art the new Persecutor of the Italians, that thy hand is all foul with their blood. I seek thee not, nor the Italians can say  
nothing



nothing of thee. Forasmuch as they complain not of thee, (having cause to their prejudice) this Tree hath spoken for them and by his Roots hath discovered thine ambush. So beboveth it that thou take thy choice, whether thou wilt come, and fight with me here at large, or else that I come and assail thee there, For if it be to me possible, I will deliver the world from thy Tyrannies.

By this answer Cacus knew there was no respite for his life. Then he intended to save himself as he had done aforesaid: and made by his craft so great a smoke and dark fume, that it seemed to come out of the hole the Tree had made as a very pit of Hell. And this black fume was mingled with flames burning. For all this Fume Hercules left not Cacus, but leapt into the Cave, into the middle of the flames and fume, as he was Master of the Craft and was quickly provided of remedies that thereunto belonged, he went in lustily and assailed Cacus; in such wise as he felt no fume nor let: and then he gave him a stroke upon the Helm with his Club, that he made him hit his head against the walls of the Cave, Cacus with the receiving of this stroke, let the fume disgorge out of his stomach, seeing that by that means he could not escape, and betook him to his huge great Axe that stood by him, to defend himself: Hercules suffered him to take up his Axe. Cacus smote upon him, the Cave was not large, yet they fought long therein. Unto the rescue of Cacus, came the three Sisters, who did cast stones upon Hercules in great abundance, and wept bitterly.

The three Damosels loved Cacus very well. Hercules and Cacus fought more than a long hour without ceasing. And at the end of the hour, they were both so sore that they must needs rest them. Then Cacus took in himself a great pride, for he was strong of body, and seemed when he had rested, that Hercules was not so strong as he had been aforesaid, and that he might never banquish him, forasmuch as he had not overcome at the beginning. By this presumption he demanded of Hercules, if he would finish the Combate without the Cave? Hercules answered that he was content. With this answer Cacus took  
D away



away the stone that shut the Cave, and went out, in going out after him Hercules espyed his Kine that were dead in a corner, and his Oxen that were bound by the Mussels unto a Pillar: He was sorry when he saw his Kine in that case, nevertheless, he pursued Cacus, and said unto him: Thou cursed Thief, thou hast done to me a great displeasure, to have slain my Kine. Dea (cursed Thief thy self) answered Cacus, yet hast thou done to me more displeasures, to have slain my men, and taken away my Realms. Thou art only culpable of the evils that I have done, and of the death of thy Kine. I would it pleased God that I had thee as well in my mercy, as I had them: be sure thou shouldest never take away Realm from any man again: now let us dispatch our battel. At these words Hercules and Cacus smote against each other very sore, and with great fury, so as their strokes cleaved to their Harness, and made a great noise. At this noise, the King Evander and the Greeks came to the battel, to behold, which was before the entry of the Cave, where were the three Sisters passing desolate. Cacus enforced him with all his puissance. For he saw it was time then or never to shew all the force that he could. He handled his Are very strongly, and it was needful so to do. He was hard and boisterous: he gave many a stroke to Hercules. And thought oftentimes he should confound him unto the earth. But Hercules on his side failed not, though he had a stout Adversary against him: He was also strong at the Combate, and more than was good for the health of Cacus: He never smote Cacus, but he turned his eyes in his head, or made him reel on the one side, or go back shamefully. This battel by long during grieved the beholders, they so assailed each other and fought hard on both sides. Finally they did so much that they were driven to rest them again, their bodies did sweat all over. When Hercules saw the victory was not yet won, and that the night approached, he had great shame in himself, that he had held so long battel. Then he began to lay on Cacus so hard, and redoubled his strokes with such force upon Cacus, that at the last he bare him down to the ground all astonished, and made him lose his Are, then took off his Helm. The three Sisters fled into a forest, named



named Ota full of tears and cypes. Many Greeks would have gone after : but Hercules made them return. Then called he the King Evander, and his folk, and said to him, Sir, loe here is he that was wont to trouble the Italians with secret murders, covert thefts, unknown defiling of women. Loe here is the minister and doer of these trespasses : I have intention to punish him, not only after his desert but unto death.

Evander answered to Hercules, Prince, excellent, and worthy above all worthies, and the best accomplished of all men, flourishing in Arms : What reverence is due ? Thou deservest not only humane reverence, but that reverence that is of Divine nature : I believe assuredly that thou art a God, or the son of a God : else a man deified. Thou in especial hast seen more in a moment, than all the eyes in general of all the Italians did, not in a whole year, but in an hundred years.

Oy the bright resplendent Son of Poble men : and fair shining with noble feats and deeds : How may we thank thee, and give thee praise for thy desert in this great work ? Thou (by thy most excellent labour) hast disburthened us from darkness and hast given us light, thou hast effected more than the great Troops and all the assemblies of Italians would have been able to do. Thou hast gotten more Triumph in chastising of this Gyant, passing terrible, than we are able to reward thee for, truly if thou be not a God, thou hast from the Gods their singular grace, I promise to thee in remembrance of this labour, to build a solemn Temple in my City, where thou shalt have an Altar, and upon the Altar shall be thy representation of fine gold and the representation of this Tyrant, in shewing how thou hast vanquished him, to the end that our heirs and successors in time coming, may have thereof knowledge.

During these words Cacus had refreshed him, who was astonished of the stroke that he had received, and thought to have fled : but Hercules ran after, and caught hold of him, and embraced him in his Arms, so hard that he could not stir from him, and brought him again, and bare him unto a deep pit that was in the Cave, where he had cast in all ordure and filth. Hercules came unto this foul pit, that the Greeks had found, and thrust Cacus



therein, his head downwards from on high into the ordure beneath.

Then the Italians came about the Wit, and cast so many stones upon him that he dyed there miserably. Such was the end of the poore King Cacus: he dyed in an hole full of stinking filth. When King Evander saw that he was dead: by the consent of Hercules, he made him to be drawn out of the Wit, and caused him to be borne into the City, where Hercules was received so triumphantly that no man can rehearse; the Feast was great that night in the Palace of King Evander, and passed with great joy. On the morrow the King Evander caused to be set forth the body in the sight and common view of all the people, and afterwards ordained certain folk, to carry his miserable corpes or body, through all the Cities where he had done harm, and to count and rehearse to them his life. When the body was shewed in the City of King Evander, they that had the government thereof, bare it into divers places, and alway praised Hercules.

In remembrance of this victory the King Evander commanded to begin the Temple he had promised to Hercules, and required Hercules that he would stay in that Country, until the time his Temple should be fully finished. Hercules beheld how King Evander did labour about building his Temple with all diligence, agreed to his request, forasmuch as to him seemed, the Temple would be shortly made. Some books say, that long time before, Mars had promised Hercules that there should be a Temple made unto him: and for that cause he was come into Italy, to know if his destiny would happen or no? And when the Italians heard speech of the birth of Hercules, they believed he was the Son of Jupiter, not of Amphitruon.

#### CHAP. XXVI.

How the Queen of *Laurentia* fell in love with *Hercules*: and how King *Priscus* came into *Italy* with a great Host, to defie *Hercules*.

**T**he glorious deeds of Hercules were greatly recommended in Italy, as well for that he had vanquished the Giants of



of Cremona, as for the death of Cacus. So great was his renown, that during the building of his Temple, all manner of people came thither to see him, and did him divine honours: naming him the Son of Jupiter. The Kings and the Lords came to him to give him gifts, and rich presents. Among all other the Queen of Laurentia came thither, from her City with many Chariots, filled and laden with Jewels, and presented them to Hercules. Hercules received into his grace this Queen and her Presents, and thanked her greatly. This Queen had to name Eacus, and was Wife to King Fanus, Son of King Prius, the Son of Saturn: she was young, fresh, tender, and full of lustiness. She had not seen King Fanus her Husband in four years, for he was gone into a far Country and was not in all this time come again. So it happened, that after she first began to behold Hercules, and to mark him well, she desired his company and acquaintance: and she loved him so exceedingly, that she could not turn her eyes nor her thoughts upon no other thing but Hercules. In the beholding him she said in her heart, that he was the most well favoured man and proper without comparison, that ever she saw; and that of right, men should give him praise, saying moreover, that her heart was entangled with the fire of his love: that many cogitations and thoughts ran in her mind. So she was she awaked with a joyous spirit. She passed so the first day that she came in this manner with Hercules. When she was gone away to rest, she laid her down on a bed and began to think on the beauty of Hercules, with such ardent desire that she could not abstain from weeping, and sore longed after him: whereof the end was such; that after many Imaginations, about the morning she began to say unto herself, O Fortune, what Man, what Prince, what King hast thou brought into this Country? This is not a King like other.

This is an Image singular, and like as if God had made him by nature to exceed and Triumph above all her other works. All glory shineth in him, not only by his balliant weapons, but by his simple and sacred perfection of body, to which might made no comparison.

A clear Image among the People, who is the living Image



eyes, that with one only sight will not haue her heart thorowly pierced? Who is she that will not cohet and desire his grace? The most fortunate of all, happy and well fortun'd shall she be that may get his good will: he is humble, fair, pleasant and laughing: he is a treasure. O dear treasure: like as the Gold surpasseth all other manner of mettals, so he surpasseth all other works of nature: how then, shall I not love him? As long as I liue, his name shall remain witten in my memozy, and his virtues shall neuer be forgot.

Great were the praises that Facua uttered of Hercules: and she forgot the King Fanus, and neglected him for the love of Hercules. She was there a certain space of time and alway thought on him. Hercules that thought nothing of her, made her no semblance nor sign of love; howbeit he talked oft times with her and with the Wife of King Evander, named Carmenta. The more he conferred with them, the more was Facua in great pain by the inflaming of love: sometime she lost her colour and countenance, but certainly she covered it so well, that no man took heed of it.

When she had been there eight days, bearing such grieuous pain, and seeing that Hercules perceived not the love she bore him, to come to the end of her desire, she came on a day to Hercules, and humbly required him to come to her house, to pass the time whiles the King Evander there finished his Temple. Hercules accorded and agreed unto her request, whereat she had very great joy in her self. They then disposed themselves to go unto Laurentia, and took leaue of the King Evander, and of the Queen. Thus going, Hercules was alway by the side of Facua, who reasoned of many things by the way: and alway Facua had her amorous eyes fixed on Hercules: that at last Hercules began to take heed, and said to her softly thus: Lady you do me exceeding honour to bring me into your house. Alas Sir answered Facua, I do nothing but trouble you; for I haue not the power to feast you as I fain would. Lady (answered Hercules) the good cheer that you bestow on me, is to me acceptable, so that from henceforth ye bind mine heart to be willing to fulfil your will in such wise, that there is nothing that you desire



fire, but I will accomplish it at your Commandment, unto my power, as to any the most best accomplished Lady that is in the West: Facua with these words began to smile, and answered: Sir, I have done nothing for you: and you are not beholding to me as you say. Howbeit I thank you for your good word, And thereof I hold me fortunate and happy, for that the most worthy man of all men vouchsafeth to accompany so poor a Lady as I am. Lady (answered Hercules) I take not that to be attributed rightly to me, to say, that I am the most worthy of men: for there have been many better than I am. But certainly, the more ye speak, the more ye bind me to you. And since you do me so great honour, I request that I may be your Knight, and that ye take power over me, to command me to perform your will and pleasure. Sir, said Facua, will ye that it be so? Lady (answered Hercules) most willingly, I will not command you (said Facua) but I will give you over me as much Seigniorie and Lordship as it shall please you to take. Hercules with the same word, would fain have kissed the Lady, had it not been for the honour of her which he would keep. Thus they ended their conference for that time, and from that day forth Hercules intended to please the Lady more than he had done before: shortly he acquainted himself so with her, and she with him, that they lay together secretly. And he begot on her a Son that was named Latine, who was afterward of great Government.

During these things, whilst Hercules and Facua had this good opportunity in Laurentia, tidings came that the King Egeus was coming. Facua, who began to take delight in the love of Hercules, was passing sorry when she heard these tidings for she had firmly fixed her heart on Hercules. Suddenly the tears blubbered her eyes. And weeping, she came into a Chamber where Hercules was: then she took him apart, and said to him. Alas my Love, I shall dye for sorrow. Lady (said Hercules) wherefore? For so much (said she) as my Husband the King, Egeus cometh home: It is full four years since I heard of him. I had supposed he had been dead, but is not. His Harbingers are come before, and say, he will stay here this night. Alas, what



what evil adventure is this? She must now depart, and our communication fail. With these words, the Lady embraced Hercules, and fell in his arms in a swoond. Hercules took her up, and comforted her the best he could, and said unto her, that since she was married, it was reason she should abide still with her Husband. Wharsoever Hercules said unto the Lady, he could not keep her from weeping, her love and her griefs were great. In the end, she went into her Chamber, and dazed her eyes, and brake off her dolorous weeping as much as she could, arraying and apparelling her in such wise, as if she had been very joyfull at the coming of her husband, who came soon after, and entred into the City with great Triumph.

Hercules and the Queen Pacua went to meet the King Fanus. When the King Fanus saw Hercules, he did to him as much honour as he could do. Forasmuch as he was adveitised of the deeds of arms that he had done against the Giants of Cremona, and against Cacus: and highly thanked him, forasmuch as he was come into the City. For conclusion Hercules abode there four days after Fanus came home: and on the fifth day considered, he might no longer enjoy his Love, he did nothing there but lose his time, so he took his leave of King Fanus, and of the Queen Pacua, and returned unto the Palace of King Evander, where he abode unto the time that his Temple was accomplished. About the consummation of this Temple, an Herald of Calidonie, came to Hercules, and signified unto him, that King Pricus came against him with a great puissance of men of Arms, to revenge the blood of Cacus his Cousen: and that he charged Hercules he had without cause most cruelly put to death a noble King. Moreover, that if he would maintain the contrary, on the morrow early he should find King Pricus in the same place where the blood of King Cacus was shed: and that by mortal Battel, puissance against puissance, he would prove it true that he said.

When Hercules had heard what King Pricus had signified unto him: he had his heart full of joy, and answered to the Herald, the death he had made Cacus to die, was a work of Justice: and that upon the quarrel, he would answer by Battel.

King



King Pricus, at the hour and place that he had named. After this answer thus made, Hercules gave unto the Herald his Gown that he wore upon him, and caused him to be sealed saying that he had brought him tidings of great pleasure.

When the Herald had had good cheer, and well feasted, as Hercules commanded: he returned to King Pricus, and told him the answer of Hercules, and that he should have on the morrow the Battel. King Pricus thought to win all by the advantage of his multitude, (for he had in his Army above thirty thousand men) and thanked his God for these tidings, came forward: and lodging him the same night, nigh unto the Mount Aventine, and on the River of Tyber. He made him ready to fight this battel: The like did Hercules: either of them minding what they had to do. Thus the night passed, and on the morrow, as soon as the day light appeared, King Pricus and Hercules began to sound their great Tabours, and with that sound, their men put them in arms, and made themselves ready, after trained in order of battel. And so they came on both parties, as well the one as the other, into the same place where the blood of King Cacus had been shed.

## CHAP. XXI.

How Hercules fought King Pricus in battel: how he fled into the City, where Hercules alone slew him, and many others.

**A**Bout five of the clock in the morning, Hercules and Pricus assembled at the battel: from as far as Pricus saw Hercules, he made a marvellous cry. With this cry the Calidonianians began to run against Hercules, and made so great a noise, that it seemed there was not people enough in all the world for them. But certainly, as small rain abateth down a great wind, in like manner Hercules alone suppresseth their overboasting uproar.

For as soon as he saw his enemies come running against him, about a quarter of a mile off, he departed from his main body, that was set in good order: and after he commanded his folk that they should not make haste, he began to run against the Cali-

donians



donians swiftly: not like an Horse, but an Hart, that no man might overtake. The King Evander was all abashed, to see in Hercules so great numbleness. Pricus and the Calidonians, when they saw him move from the Host, supposed it had been a Horse, or other Beast. In the end, when Hercules was come nigh them, within the space of a Bow-shot, they knew it was Hercules: whereupon they were so abashed at his coming: Pricus cryed to have set his men upon him. They shot Arrows, and they cast Darts and spears upon Hercules, against all the parts of his body: nevertheless they could never pierce nor enter into the skin of the Lion, and he never rested, till he had accomplished his course, thrusting himself forwards among his enemies so mightily, that overthrowing all before him, like as a Tempest or Thunder, he went into the midst of the Host, where was the chief Banner of King Pricus.

Hercules stayed there, and began to lay on upon one side and the other, and dye his Sword with the blood of the Calidonians, His sword was so heavy that no man might endure it, bruising all it reacht. It made the place red where Cacus dyed. Then was not the shame and death of Cacus reorged, but augmented upon the persons of his friends, with an exceeding slaughter. The cry arose great about Hercules: he broke to pieces the Banners and Recognizances of the Calidonians, there was none so hardy but he drove him back: and none so resolute but he fled from him. Then he made what spoil he would with his Enemies. Theseus, Evander, and others, came unto the battel. At this conflict there was made a Spear, Halbert and Shie'd broken, and many a Knight slain. The Calidonians were in great number, and many were both strong and mighty. The battel was sharp and furious. King Pricus set foremost upon the Greeks, and fought most valiantly, and Hercules and Theseus did worthily, and deserving memo<sup>r</sup>y: they ran from rank to rank, and brake the ranks of their Enemies. They comforted and encouraged their men, and shewed them how they should do. Their deeds were so great, that it is impossible to recount them, for in little time they put their enemies to despair. All the discomfiture was upon the Calidonians, for they could not withstand the force of the Greeks. And when King Pricus saw that



## The Destruction of Troy.

113

that his people could no more fight, and that he lost on all sides, that Fortune was against him in all points, being weary with fighting, he withdrew him out of the press, and sounding a retreat, the Calidonians fled after him.

When Hercules saw the Calidonians withdraw themselves, he made his Greeks retreat: not for any need they had, but to give leave to their enemies to rest them. Thus the battel ceased, Hercules supposing that the Calidonians would assemble on the morrow when they had rested them: but they withdrew themselves some here, some there. The day passed, the night came, then King Pricus assembled his Captains and shewed to them their loss, and the strength and might of the Greeks, and in especial of Hercules. After he had said to them, that they could never conquer them, and that they could not do wiser than withdraw them, and to return into their Country. The Calidonians, that feared Hercules more than death, or a Tempest, had great joy when they understood the will of King Pricus, and answered all with one accord, that they were ready to go forth on their way. With this answer they concluded to leave the Tents, Carts, and armour, to go lightly, and more secretly. After this they took their way according to the conclusion, fair and softly, without stir or noise, and did travel so this night, that on the morrow they were far from Hercules. After this, when Hercules espied that they were fled, he with his men pursued after swiftly, howbeit they could not overtake them. For to speed the matter, King Pricus returned into Calidonia; Hercules pursued him into his City, which was strong with Walls, and besieged him. During this siege there was never a Calidonian that durst come out. Hercules oftentimes assaulted the City, but lost his labour. At length when he saw he could not get nor win upon his enemies, he called his Greeks, and said to them: that man that ventureth not, winneth nothing. We sojourn here without doing any thing worthy of memory. Our Enemies will not come against us unless we fetch them, and thus we shall have no end: shortly we must win or lose all. Wherefore I think it best that I disguise me, and go unto the Gate, and let the Porters understand that I have an errand

B 2

unto



unto the King: and hereupon, if I may enter, I will go unto the King, and so deal if it be possible, that he shall never assault me after in battel. And if it happen that I may so do, as I have told you, I will that ye assail the City, as soon as I shall be within: that the Calidonians may have to do with you, as well as with me, lest I have them all at once upon me.

When Theseus and Evander understood well what Hercules would do, they answered they were ready to obey all his commandments, and would assault the City after his saying. Then Hercules arrayed himself like as he had been an Ambassadour, Theseus and the Greeks made themselves ready for the assault. When all was ready, Hercules departed, and came and knockt at the Gate of Calidonie: the Porters looked out at a little Window, to see who knocked there, and seeing there was but one man in a long Gown, they opened the Gate for him, and asked him what he would have? Hercules answered, that he sought the King, what would you with him said one of the Porters? Hercules said, I would fain speak with his Majesty: and saying these words, the Porters saw that Hercules was Armed under his Gown: then in few words, they cried upon him, and laid at him before and behind, saying he was a Traitor: and that he was come to espy the City. When Hercules saw himself set upon by the Porters, being where he would be, he had great joy which he covered, and made shew at the beginning, as if he would have fled away and escaped: he employed so little of his strength, that the Porters brought him unto King Pricus, which fate in the Hall with his Daughters and his Princes, and presented him to them, saying: Sir, loe here is a Traitor, that is entred into your City, for to espy your power. We have taken him: He said that he would speak unto your Majesty and he is armed under his Mantle as ye may see: It is an evil token for a man desiring to speak to a King, Armed privately or covertly.

When the King understood this accusation of the Porters, whilst they spake, he beheld Hercules, and he knew him: whereat he was sore affrighted, that he knew not what to say. Hercules then bestirred himself, and wozung himself from the Porters,



ters, throwing them down upon the ground, that they never could reliebe themselves. When the Calidonians in the Hall, saw him so evil intreat their Hosters, they threatened Hercules unto death, and assailed him on all sides. His Gown was then rent off. In the bickering he received many a stroke, and always he defended himself, without displaying of his power and great strength, as he that waited for the tryings of the assault that was nigh. The affray was great in the Hall, and in the City on all parts, the Calidonians ran to the Palace, to assail Hercules: King Pricus made him ready, and came with others unto this fray. Then was Hercules assailed fiercely, but this assault was dear to the King: for to his welcome Hercules came to the Tabernacle that stood upon four great Barres of Iron: the one whereof he took, and beat down the Tabernacle. After, he lifted up his Bar, and smote King Pricus, so unmeasurably upon the top of his Helmet, that he beat him down to the Earth, and smote him so sore, that he fell down dead between his two Hosters.

At this time, the cry arose great among the Calidonians, not only there but in the City also, (for he that kept the March founded to Arms, the Greeks assailing to climb the Walls.) Calidonie was then troubled terribly, and the Calidonians knew not where to turn them, together to Hercules, or the assault: All was full of armed men, as well in the Kings Palace as on the walls. After Hercules had slain Pricus, he began to lay on soundly upon his Enemies, his strokes were great, and at each stroke he slew two or three, that in short space he covered all the pavement of the Palace with dead bodies of the Calidonians, lying one upon another, without any damage to himself. The Calidonians were of great courage, and were ashamed that they could not overcome Hercules, who alone had injured them so much. They assailed him fiercely, and cast upon him Darts and sharp Javelins. With his arms he bore all, and did so much with his barr, that they could not resist his strength. The poor Calidonians came thither with great courage to revenge the death of their King. Hercules slew so many that he knew not where to set his foot, but upon their car-



lasses. Before the Gate of the Palace, was a great noise, and weeping, that Women and Childzen made. In the end, when the Calidonians perceived the strength of Hercules, they ceased to assault him, and fled. When Hercules issued out of the Palace, with his Bar all covered with blood. As soon as the Calidonians saw him, they assailed him again: casting Stones and Darts upon him, and shot Arrows abundantly, as they that awaited his passage. In this assault, Hercules suffered much, yet he passed them that would have slain him, and rested not until he came to the Gate.

Then the Calidonians ran after him, as men careless of their lives, and mightily enraged, began again to lay on Hercules. When he saw that, he turned his face upon them, and laid about with his Barre on every side, so lustily, that he dyed his Barre with new blood: and maugre his enemies, he made them retire back more than forty paces: and obtained the Gate. Then the Calidonians pursued him again: but ere they came upon him he broke all the Locks and the Micket of the Gate: so that the Greeks assailed them with all their power, and beat down the Draw-Bridge. After he called the Assailants, and they came unto him, and with little resistance they entered the City, which was filled at that time with great slaughter of the Calidonians, who would not yield, nor put themselves to mercy, until the time they saw their streets and houses full of dead bodies.

#### CHAP. XXVIII.

How Hercules was enamoured on Yoel, the Daughter of King Pricus; how he required her Love and she accorded.

**I**N this manner was King Pricus slain, and his City taken by Hercules. After the slaughter, when the Calidonians had humbled themselves, Hercules and Theseus went unto the Palace, and they came thither so fitly, that they found the Daughters of King Pricus, with their Ladies and Gentlewomen, seeking the King among the dead bodies. There were so many dead that they could not find nor know him they sought. Hercules at his coming began to behold one & another, but especially among  
all



all others he cast his eye upon Yoel the Daughter of the King: forasmuch as she was excellently glistering in beauty, that in all the world was none like unto her. When he had a little beheld her, by a secret commandment of love, he drew him unto her, thinking to comfort her. When the desolate Gentlewoman saw Hercules approaching unto her, she trembled for fear, and fled unto her Chamber, the Ladies and Gentlewomen followed her, and with them went Hercules. He entered into the Chamber where she was, and set down by her. She thought to have risen, to have gone out of the way, but he held her by her cloaths, and said unto her: Lady, ye must not fly my company. Yoel spake then, and said: O miserable Tyrant, what seekest thou me now for to trouble me more? Thou hast slain my Father, let that suffice thee. Madam (answered Hercules) if the King your Father be dead it is reason: For he thinking to Revenge the death of the Tyrant Cacus, came not long since to assaile me in Italy, saying that I had unjustly and without cause slain him. In maintaining the contrary, I fought with him upon his quarrel: the Battel was not ended, nor put to utterance at that time, for he withdrew himself with his people, and came into this City. And I have pursued him hither.

And when he saw that I laid my siege about this City: he would not come to fight the battel during my Siege, wherefore this day I purposed to finish the War. Fortune hath been on my side and hath put you in my power. Certainly, without remedy you must be my Lady and Love: for in seeing your singular beauty, love hath constrained me to be yours: When I pray you as effectuously as I may, cease your sorrow, and receive me as your friend. The more ye weep the less ye win: continual tears and sorrow, nor lasting sighs, can never raise your Father.

With these words the fair Yoel was sore oppressed with hot and contrary imaginations, that her heart failed her. It was a pitious thing to behold how her friend Hercules would have taken her up between his arms. But a wise Lady that had always governed her, came to him, and kneeling on her knees, said:



said : Sir, I censure you in the name of God, that ye will cease to speak to this poor Damoel, for she hath this day lost her Father. You may do with her your own pleasure, if ye let her a little abide in her melancholly : all shall be well if it please God, as well for you as for her. At the request of the Lady, Hercules was content to let her go, and he recommended Yoel to God, and went to Theseus, to pass his time away with him : but to the end that Yoel should not go away nor escape, he ordained the Greeks to keep her, and commanded upon pain of death : they should suffer no Woman to issue out of the Chamber without examining whither she went. In this night Hercules did cause the dead bodies to be had out of the Palace. And ordained that the body of King Pricus should be intombed. When those things were accomplished, Hercules and Theseus with their men of Arms made good cheer, with such as they found there : and Yoel at this time was sore discomforted that it cannot be recounted. The Lady that had her in governance, sought very much to comfort her. Then when Hercules had left her in the Chamber, as is said, she had many words with her, and among all other she said to her : My Daughter, you weep too much. Ha Madam (said Yoel) how may I do less ? When shall I have cause to weep, if I have it not now ? My Father is dead : I have lost him that most loved me of all the world, I can lose no greater thing. Dought not then my heart to be sorrowful ? My Daughter (said the Lady) I know well that ye have as great occasion of sorrow as any woman can have : but since you must pass by this misfortune, what can your weeping profit you ? There can nothing proceed of it but melancholiness, and impairing your praised beauty. We are now fallen into the hands of this Prince. This is a man worthy and noble above all other, he loveth you : you ought to thank God, and to give him praise for this grace. This is to you good fortune, and a hap in your mishap. If you will be ruled by me, you shall take all this in good part. Better it is to suffer one evil than two. I think ye ought to consider your estate : And if ye consider it well, ye shall endeavour to forget it. Madam (said Yoel) Alas how can that be, that I should love, or have familiarity



Warity with him, that hath done unto me so much harm. He hath not only taken from me a Knight, and Uncle, nor a Cousin, but mine only proper Father, let none speak to me thereof. He is and shall be my mortal Enemy, as long as I and he shall live, he shall have no more of me, for prayer promise nor menaces.

My Daughter (said the Lady) make not your self bond, whereas you are free: the effects of love be subtil and suddain. Love is alway in his secret throne, that can do no other thing, but humble the hard hearted, and bow the strongest. So hard a heart is not among the humane Creatures, but that it is soon humbled and made meek, when it is his pleasure. There is no Tower so high, but it may be overthrowen by subtil undermin- ing: For no night so dark, but it is overcome by the day. We hate Hercules now, but after ye have a while kept company with him peradventure you will love him better than ever you loved your Father: or any of your kindred. And that I know by experience: for I hated my Husband at first exceedingly, but shortly after when we began to be acquainted together, I loved him so, that if he had not been with me day and night, I thought I should have dyed for sorrow. My Daughter, such are the chances of Love, that oftentimes after great hate cometh great love. The gloze of Hercules is so clear, that your heart ought to be delighted therewith: the Conquest that he hath made in this City, shall be for you a singular preparation to all good. Would you attain unto a greater height of honour, than to be a Lady of him who is the subduer of Kings: and the most valiant in arms; for to him is nothing impossible, having conquered the most part of the world. O my Daughter, rejoyce in your Fortune: But not the dooz to prosperity that cometh to you: it is to be believed, the desolation of this Cite was appointed by God, in favour of you that are the Waragon: and none like unto you of all the Daughters of the Kings, to give you in Marriage unto this man.

With these words the fair Yoel had her stomach surprized with sundry imaginations. She rose up from that part, and went into her Guard-robe, where was the representation of

M

the



the Goddess Diana. When she came thither she kneeled down in great humility, befoze the Image: abounding in sighs and weeping said: Goddess of Virgins, what shall thy Hand-maid do? O lighten my hope, behold mine affliction, and weigh my mishap, send thine eyes into the secret of mine heart, and see the sorrow I suffer, and in the favour of Virgins, preserve me from the hand of him that would have me for his Wife, since he hath caused in me a mortal hate, which is not possible to be rooted out as Nature judgeth in me: (for it is impossible I should love mine enemy) I am therefore perswaded, that the hate that I have against this Tyrant Hercules, shall abide for ever.

In these Prayers and Lamentations Yoel abode; until the dead time of the night, cursing Hercules: saying that she had rather dye than love him. Thus disdainning the love of Hercules, without meat or drink she passed that whole night. The day following Hercules returned unto her: and anew prayed her, that she would be his Wife: saying, that without delay he must needs yield thereunto. She was sore grieved at his request, and excused her self in many fashions, that were too tedious to rehearse at this time. But yet at the end of the requests of Hercules, Love inspired in such wise this fair Gentlewoman that she yielded unto his request. Thus Yoel accompanied with Hercules as his Wife, and they lay together: and grew acquainted each with other. Love then rooted in their hearts, so that their two wills were locked into one. Hercules forgot Dejanira, and Yoel forgot the death of her Father, and was so enamoured on Hercules, that she could rest in no place without him. O wonderful! the rancour and hate that Yoel had yesterday, is now turned into love infallible. To speed this matter, Hercules and Yoel thus loving together, at her request he gave her Sisters in Marriage, to certain Knights of the Greeks, and left them there to govern the Country, and the Realm of Calidonic. After he departed from thence, and brought his Wren and his Kine with him, and sent again the King Evander into his Dominion, thanking him for his company, and the honour he had done him.

Evander



Evander would gladly have accompanied Hercules into Greece: But Hercules would on no terms suffer him. At last Evander (with great thanks to Hercules and his Army) departed: and Hercules with his Army went unto the Sea, and forgot not behind him the fairest Yoel, for he loved her dearly. All day he was with her, and she pleased him as well as she could, fearing more to lose his love, than she was sorry for the death of her Father. As they thus sailed on the main Sea, maintaining to their power their amorous life. Hercules encountred on a day nigh by an Haven and a good City, a Merchants Galley. He made the Galley to tarry, and after called the Master, and asked him of what Country he was, and from whence he came? Sir (answered the Master of the Galley) I departed late from the Port of Thrace, that is here by: I see you are a stranger, and that ye know not the peril you are in, wherefore I have pity of you, and of your company: and do aduertise you, that at the next Haven you shall find, ye tarry not there, for any thing that may befall you: for as truly as you are here, if you go thither you shall take harm enough: there is a King, the most cruel Tyrant in all the world, named Dyomedes: that maintaineth under him ten thousand Thiebes, and he maketh war against all that he finds. and hath a custom that he putteth men to pay Ransoms, such as it pleaseth him: and if they that he putteth to such misery, pay their Ransoms, he letteth them go quietly, and with that money and substance he nourisheth his Thiebes, and his Horses. If they cannot furnish themselves with their Ransome, he himself smiteth them to morsels, and giveth their bodies to his horses, to eat and devour. But there is one good thing for you, this morning he is gone to the chase, to hunt about a Forest which is some four miles from Thrace: and with him there are an hundred of the strongest Thiebes he hath. This I know for a certain, for I saw them depart not passing three hours since.



## CHAP. XXIX.

How *Hercules* fought against *Dyomedes* in the Forrest of *Thrace*:  
and how he made his horses eat him.

**H**ercules hearing these words the Master of the Galley had said unto him, in rehearsing the life of *Dyomedes*, was passing joyful in his heart, more than he had been since the death of the Chief *Cacus*. He had in him that valour, that where he might know a Monster or Tyrant, or any men molesting the *Meal*, thither he went, and such Tyrants he destroyed: to the end that men should not say, he did it for gain, he would never retain to his proper use any of their goods, but all he conquered in that manner he gave to *Poble* men, and fought nothing but vertue. He would not enlarge his Seigniozy, nor take to himself any advantage.

He was content with what *Patre* gave him. And alway he would labour for the publick good. A most vertuous *Pagan*, there was none like him neither before nor after. For to go forward with my matter, when the Master had advertised him that *Dyomedes* was gone on hunting into the Forrest, with his hundred Thieves, he enquired so much that the Master showed him the situation of the Forrest, and by what manner he might soonest come thither. After this, he gave leave to the Master to go his way. That done he called his mariners and made them seek the place. Then he bid his Greeks tarry there, and told them he would go to the Forrest, and seek *Dyomedes*: saying, he would never return into *Greece*, till he had delivered the world of this Tyrant. *Yoel* began to weep, when he heard his enterprize, and weeping prayed him, he would leave the hazard of so great peril. *Hercules* took no regard nor heed to her prayers. He delivered to *Philotes* his Bow, and his Club, and entered into a little Galley finely made and light: which he guided by the help of *Philotes*, very nigh the place where he would be: and took land two bow shots from the Forrest, and in setting foot on land he heard the cry and noise of the hunting, and said he was well and where he would be. He took then his Club,



Club and left his bow with Philotes. After he entred the For-  
rest, and had not far ranged when he found Dyomedes and his  
hundred Thieves. Dyomedes was the first that from far espied  
Hercules, and knew that he was a stranger, and calling to him,  
said: Ggant, what is it that thou seekest in this Forrest, Hercules  
answered, what art thou? Dyomedes said, I am the King of  
Thrace: thou art entred into my Dominion without my leave,  
it displeaseth me, and thou must be my Prisoner, wherefore  
yield thee unto me. Hercules said: King, since thou art Dy-  
omedes, the King of Thrace, thou art undoubtedly the Tyrant  
that I seek. And therefore I am not purposed to yield me,  
without smiting, especially to any evil Thief. Know thou, that  
I will defend me with this Club, with which I have been ac-  
customed to destroy Monsters, and am in hope this day, to make  
thy Horses eat and devour thy body, like as thou hast taught and  
used them to eat thy Prisoners.

When Dyomedes heard the answer of Hercules, he took a  
great Axe, that one of his Thieves bare after him, and he lifted  
it up, threatening Hercules unto the death, and discharged so hard,  
that if Hercules had not turned the stroke with his Club, he had  
been in great peril. Dyomedes was of the stature of Hercules,  
and had abundance of strength and puissance. When Hercules  
had received the stroke, he lifted up his Club and failed not to  
smite Dyomedes, for he gave him such a stroke upon the stomach,  
that he turned him up side down, from his Horse, and laid him  
all astonished in the field. Then his hundred Thieves bestirred  
them, and assailed Hercules on all sides. Some of them there  
were that recovered Dyomedes, and set him on his Horse, the o-  
ther shot at Hercules: some brake their Swords on him. All  
this impaired nothing of the Arms of Hercules. His Halbert  
and his Helmet were of fine steel, forged and tempered hard.  
He stood there among them like a Mountain. When he had  
sustained the first assault of the Thieves, to shew to them with  
whom they fought, he set upon them, and smote down on all  
sides with such valour that suddenly he made the pieces of them  
fly into the Wood, and smote them down from off their Horses.  
Dyomedes was at that time risen up, and with great fury came  
unto



114 THE SECOND BOOK OF  
unto the rescue of his Thieves, whom Hercules used as he would. Whiles that some of them assailed him before, he came behind, and smote him with his Axe upon his Helm, the stroke was so great that the fire sprang out. Dyomedes had well thought to have murdered Hercules: yet Hercules moved not for the stroke but a little bowed his head. After this, then he lifted up his Club and smote among the Thieves: and maugre them all, in less than an hour, he had so laboured his Iron about their backs, that of the hundred he slew sixty, and the other he battered, and put to flight with Dyomedes. But Hercules running more swiftly than an Horse, amongst all others he pursued Dyomedes so nigh, that he caught him by the leg, and pulled him down from his horse, and threw him against a Tree unto the earth. After he took him about the body, and by main force, he bare him unto the place where the battel had been. There he unarmed him with little resistance: For that Dyomedes was then bruised, and could not help himself, when he had gotten him thus at his will, he bound him fast by the feet and hands. After this, he assembled together twenty Horses of the Thieves that run dispersed in the Wood, and came to Diomedes, and said unto him. Thou most cursed enemy that hast employed all thy time in Tyranny, and didst never one good deed, but all thy days hast lived in multiplying of sins and vices, and hast troubled the people by thy thefts, and hast nourished thy Horses with mans flesh: and by this cruelty supposed to have made me to die: Surely I will do Justice upon thee, and will do to thy evil person, like as thou wouldest have done to mine. Then Hercules laid the Tyrant in the midst of the Horses which had great hunger, and they deboured him, for they loved mans flesh. And thus when Hercules had put the Tyrant to death, he took his Arms in sign of victory, and returned to Philotes.

Philotes had great joy when he saw Hercules return, he enquired of him how he had done. And Hercules would neither hide nor conceal any thing from him. What shall I say? with great joy and gladness they returned back again, unto the Greeks, and did cause to disanchor their ships, and sailed for the  
the



the Port or Haven of Thrace. Then did Hercules make known in Thrace, the death of Dyomedes. Whereat was a great uproar. Forwithstanding, Hercules gave to Philotes the arms of Dyomedes, and sent him into the City, to summon them that governed it, to yield it into his hands. Philotes went into the Palace of Thrace, and made to be assembled them that were the Principals in the City. When they were assembled, Philotes laid open to them his message, and summoned the Thracians that they should deliver their City into the hands of Hercules: Saying, that Hercules was he that had put to death the King Dyomedes, for his evil living, and for the love of the common weal: and that the City could do no better but to receive him at his coming, (for he would not wrong it) but would only bring it to good government. When he had done this Summons, that they should believe him, he shewed them the Arms of Dyomedes.

When the Thracians saw those Arms of Dyomedes, some of the Complices of Dyomedes, and Thieves were full of great rage, and would have taken the Arms from Philotes. The other that were wise and notable men, and that many years had desired the end of their King (seeing his Arms) knew assuredly that Dyomedes was dead, full of joy answered to Philotes: Forasmuch as Hercules was a King of great renown and wisdom, and hath done a work of great merit, in the death of Dyomedes, they would receive him into their City.

Without long discourses, the Thracians went unto the Gate and opened it. Philotes returned then unto Hercules, and told him these tidings. Hercules and the Greeks went out of their Gallies, and entered into Thrace. The Thracians brought them unto the Palace where were yet many Thieves. Hercules put all the Thieves to death, not in the same night, but during the space of ten days, that he sojourned there.

He set the City in good order, and delivered it from the evil Thieves: He made Judges by election, at the pleasure of the people. And when he had finished all these things, he departed from Thrace with great thanks, as well of the old as of the young. He mounted on the Sea, after by succession of time, he came



came unto his Realm of Lycia, into his Palace, where he was receiued with great ioy of the Inhabitants there, and also of the Neighbours. Where he abode with the fair Yoel, whom he loved above all tempozal goods.

# CHAP. XXV.

How *Dejanira* sorrowed for the love of *Hercules* to *Yoel*.

**T**Heseus after the return of Hercules: Seeing he would abide there, and there was no mention, in all the world of any Monster or Tyrant, took leave of his fellow Hercules, Yoel, Philotes, and others, and went to Athens, and Thebes. Likewise the Greeks took leave and every man returned into his Countrey, repeating in all the places where they went, the great adventures, and the glorious works of Hercules. When his renown ran as swiftly as the wind, so that it came unto Iconie, whereas *Dejanira* sojourned, and it was said to *Dejanira*, that Hercules was returned from Spain, with great triumph, and come into Lycia. *Dejanira* for his Renown was glad, and ravished with ioy, and concluded to go unto him, yet was abashed for that he had not signified to her his coming, and that he had not sent for her, doubting that she should be out of grace with Hercules. She made ready her company, and in noble estate, departed from Iconie, on a day to go into Lycia. She tarried there, to attire her in the best wise she could, called her Esquire named *Lycas*, and commanded him that he should go into Lycia, and signifie unto Hercules of her coming. At the commandment of *Dejanira*, *Lycas* went unto the City, and it happened at the Gate he met a man of his old acquaintance, a Squire of Hercules's. *Lycas* and the Squire saluted each other friendly. After *Lycas* asked the Squire, and demanded of him, where the King was: and if he were in his Palace? Hea verily (said the Squire) he is there, I know well, and passeth his time with his Lady *Yoel*: the most beautiful, and most resplendent Lady that is in all this world. Each man praiseth her a thousand times more than *Dejanira*. Hercules hath her in so much grace, that continually they are together. And whatsoever the Lady doth



doth, it is acceptable unto Hercules : there is no man that can tell the great love they have together.

Lycas hearing these tidings of the Squire, took leave of him, and made semblance to have left behind him some of his precious Gems and Jewels : for he was of opinion in himself, that it would be good to give advertisement of his estate. Whensoe and simply he came back again to Dejanira, where she was attiring her self preciousely, and said unto her. Madam what do you here? Wherefore? (answered Dejanira.) Why, (said Dejanira?) what tidings? Lycas answered : hard tidings. I have heard tell of Hercules, things full of such hardness, that truly it is very grievous for me to tell you. Howbeit since you are come thus far, you must needs understand them : I tell you for certain, that your Lord Hercules is in his Palace very ioyful: and that he hath in his company a Lady, whom he loveth above all things for her great beauty, so exceeding, that each man marbelleth saying : she is the most Soberaign in beauty that eber was seen by man.

Advise your self well, what ye do, ere you go any further : this day is needful you abide, and take counsel.

At the hearing of these tidings, Dejanira was passing angry, and bespread with a great sorrow in all her being, she began to quake and tremble. Her fair hair that was finely dressed on her head, she tore with her hands, in so furious manner, that she distressed her, and smote with her fist so great a stroke upon her breast that she fell down backward in a swoond. The Ladies and Gentlewomen that accompanied her, shrieked & cryed dolorously, and were sore moved. At length Dejanira came to her self again pale and wan, she spake, with a feeble and low voyce. Woe Dejanira, what shalt thou do? Whither shalt thou go? Thou that findest thy self forsaken of thy Lord Hercules? Alas, alas, is it possible that the new coming of a Lady, may take away my Husband? The heart late joyned to Dejanira, shall she make the separation? I hope verily it may not be : For Hercules is noble of heart, and loveth vertue : if he abandon me, he acts against vertue and nobleness, I have affiance in him that he will be true to me. Madam (said Lycas) you  
 fail



fail nothing to say that Hercules is Noble and full of Virtue : for he hath employed all his time in virtuous things, howbeit he is a man, and hath taken lobe in this new Woman for her beauty : know well that Fortune entertaineth not long Princes and Princesses, on the top above her wheel : there is none so high, but she maketh them sometime lie beneath among them that suffer trouble. Behold, what ye have to do. If ye go unto Hercules, and he receive you not as he hath been accustomed, then shall you have cause of despair. Men say that he loveth soveraignly this new Lady : It is apparent then, that he shall set but little by your coming : and if you go, the Lady will be evil content : she hath renown, and every man is glad to do her pleasure. There shall be no man so hardy to welcome you for the lobe of her. Go not thither then, the peril is too great : I counsel you for the better, that ye return into Iconie, and that ye bear this thing patiently, attending and abiding until the fire and the fume of this Lady be quenched : for Hercules is another manner of man than most men be : and will leaue the lobe of this Lady by little and little.

Djanira believed that Lycas counselled her truly, and soze weeping she returned into Iconie. When she was in the house at Iconie, she denyed her self all worldly pleasure, living solitarily, without going to Feasts or Plays. Abiding in this solitude, her grievous annoy grew more and more, by so great vexations, that she was constrained to make infinite bewailings. The continual company of her Ladies could give to her no solace. The innumerable speeches that they used unto her ear, could never take away Hercules out of her mind. She lived this life many days, having alway her ears open to know if Hercules sent for her. In the end when she had waited long, and saw that neither man nor woman was coming to bring her tidings from the person of Hercules, she wrote a Letter which she delivered to Lycas, to bear unto Hercules, and charged him to deliver it to no person, but to him she sent it to. Lycas took the Letter, and went into Lycie, two miles from the City he met Hercules in a cross way. Hercules came from Arcadie, where he had newly slain a wild Boar, so great that there was never  
none



none seen like him. When Lycas saw Hercules, he made him reverence, and presented his Letter to him saluting him from Dejanira. Hercules waxed red, and changed colour, when he heard speak of Dejanira. But he receiving the Letter amiably read it, and found therein as followeth.

*Hercules*, My Lord, the man of the world that I most desire, I humbly beseech and earnestly intreat you, that you have regard to your true servant, and Lover *Dejanira*, Alas *Hercules*, alas. Where is become the love of the time past? Ye have now sojourned many days in *Lycia*, and you have let me have no knowledge thereof. Truly it is to me a very dolorous grief: for I desire not to be deified nor to mount into the celestial Mansions, with the Sun, the Moon, nor Stars, but without feigning or breaking of a free heart, I desire your solemn communication. I can from henceforth no more feign. It is said to me, that you have another Wife. Alas, *Hercules*, have I made any fault against your worth? wherefore do you abandon me? how can you do so? Men name you virtuous. You forsake me: that is against virtue. Though now ye do it, I have seen the time that you were my husband, embracing together, and kissing, you shewed semblance of good liking and joy. Now let you her alone that you loved as a poor cast-away. Alas, where are the witnesses of our Marriage? where be the eternal vows and oaths which we made one to another. Men are deaf and blind, but God doth hear and see: wherefore I pray you, consider, and hold your good name more dear, than you do the love of your new acquainted Gossip, that maketh you to err against virtue, whereof you have so great a renown; and I pray you heartily write to me your pleasure.

When Hercules had read from the beginning to the end, the Letter of Dejanira, as he yet looked upon it, Yoel came unto him, with three hundred Gentlewomen to be merry with Hercules, Hercules then closed the Letter, and returned into Lycia, holding Yoel by the hand: howbeit, when he was in his Palace he forgot not Dejanira, but found means to go into his Study, and there wrote a Letter; when it was finished he gave it to Lycas, to present it to Dejanira. Lycas took the Letter and return-



ed home to Dejanira. First, he told her tidings and of the state of Yoel. After he delivered to her the Letter, containing that he commended him unto her, and that he had no other Wife but her, and he prayed her that she would not give her self to think any evil, but to live in hope and patience, as a Wife and noble Lady ought and is bound to do, for her honour and credit. This Letter little or nought comforted Dejanira, she was so vehemently afflicted with jealousy; her sorrows redoubled. In this sorrow she wrote yet another Letter which she sent to Hercules, that contained these words:

*Hercules*, Alas what availeth me to be the Wife of so Noble a Husband as you are? your nobleness is to me more hurtful than profitable. O Fortune, I was wont to rejoyce, for every day I heard no other things but commendations of your prowesses and glorious deeds, wherewith the world was illuminated. Now must I be angry and take displeasure in your works, that are foul and full of vices. All Greece murmureth at you, and the people say, that you were wont to be vanquisher of all things; and now you are vanquished by the foolish love of Yoel. Alas *Hercules*, shall I be separated from you? and be holden the waiting drudge of the Catiffe Yoel. She is your Catiffe, for you have slain her Father, and have taken her in the prize of *Calidonia*, now she hath the place of your lawful wife. Alas, now shall I no more be esteemed, it is not alway happy to mount to high estate. For from as much as I have mounted in height, and was your fellow, from so far I feel my self fall into the more great peril. O *Hercules* if for my beauty you took me for your Wife, I may well curse that beauty: for that is cause of the grievous shame; that is to me evident, to prognosticate mine harm, and ill to come. I cannot count them but for enemies, since by them, all sorrows come unto me. The Ladies have joy in the prehemency of their husbands, but I have ill fortune and mishap. I see nothing but displeasure in my Marriage. O *Hercules*, I think all day on you, that ye go in great perils of Arms, and fierce Beasts, Tempests of Sea, and the false perils of the world. Mine heart trembleth, and hath great fear of you, of whom I ought to have



have comfort. I remember and think on you in the day, and dream on you in the night: me thinketh verily, that I see the cutting of sharp swords enter into me, and the heads of the Spears: and that I see issue out of the Caves of the Forrests and Desarts, Lyons, and wild Monsters, that eat my flesh. Since the beginning of our alliance unto this day, I have had day and night such pains for you, and born them. But alas, all these things are but little in comparison of the pains that I now suffer, forasmuch as you maintain strange women, and a woman of folly. May she be called the mother of your Children by whom the sparkles of soul renown shall abide with you. With this vice is my pain redoubled, and pierceth my soul. I am troubled with the dishonour. They say, that ye are become like a woman, and live after the guise and manner of a Woman, and spin on the Rock, you that were wont to strangle Lyons with your hands, you leave the exercise of Arms, and to be known in far Countries and Realms, in shewing your vertue, like as you were wont to do, for the only company of the Catiffe *Yoel* that abuseth you. O cursed company. Speak to me *Hercules*, of the high and mighty men that thou hast vanquished, as *Diomedes* of *Thrace*, *Antheon* of *Lybia*, *Busire* of *Ægypt*, *Gerion* of *Spain*, and *Cacus* the great Thief, if they were alive and saw thee thus held? Surely they would not repute them worthy to be vanquished by thee, and would point at thee with their fingers, as at a man living in the lap of a woman. O how strong is *Yoel*, when her hands that are not worthy to thread a Needle, hath taken thy Club and brandished thy Sword wherewith thou hast put in fear all the earth? Alas *Hercules*, have you not in remembrance, your Childhood, lying in your Cradle you slew the two serpents: you being a Child were a man, and now when you have been a man, are you become a woman, or a Child? This is the work of a woman, to hold himself always with a woman: or it is the deed of a Child, to enamour himself on a woman of folly. The truth is, you began better than you end: your last deeds answer not the first, your labours shall never be worthy praisings. For all the commendation is in the end. Who-



soever he be that beginneth a work, whereof the beginning is fair, and the end is foul, all is lost: surely *Hercules*, when I behold the glorious beginning that virtue made in you, and see that now you are vicious, all my strength faileth, mine arms fall down as a woman in a trance, without spirit, and it may not seem to me true, that those arms (that bare away by force the sheep from the Garden belonging to the Daughters of *Atlas*) may fall into so great a fault, as to embrace fleshly another wife than his own. Notwithstanding I am assured of a truth that you hold not *Yoel* as a Catiffe, but as your own wife: not in prison but at her pleasure, in Chamber finely bedecked, and in bed Curtained and hanged: not disguised and secretly, as many hold their Concubines: but openly and with shameless face, shewing her self very glorious to the people, as if ye might do so lawfully: For she holdeth you Prisoner and Catiffe, and she hath put the fetters about your neck, by her Italian Juglings and shifts, whereof I have great shame in my self. But as for the amendment I will discharge my mind, I cannot better it, but pray to God that he will procure a Remedy.

## CHAP. XXXI.

How *Dejanira* sent to *Hercules* a shirt envenomed, and how *Hercules* burned himself in the fire of his sacrifice, and how *Dejanira* slew her self, when she knew that *Hercules* was dead by means of her ignorance.

**W**hen *Hercules*, had read this Letter, he understood what it contained, and was smitten with remorse of conscience. Understanding that vertue was stained in him: he was very pensive, and much deprived from all pleasure, that none durst come to him in a great while, save only that they brought to him meat and drink. *Yoel* durst not go to him, *Lycas* that brought this Letter, was there waiting long for an answer. No man could know whereof proceeded the pensiveness of *Hercules*, nor the cause why he withdrew himself: in the end, when *Hercules* had been long pensive, and had thought upon all his affairs



affairs, how to withdraw himself from Yoel, he departed from his Chamber on a day, saying that he would go and sacrifice to Apollo, upon the mount named Oeta, and commanded upon pain of death no man should follow him, except Philotes. By adventure, as he issued out of his Palace, accompanied only with Philotes, to go upon the mount, he met Lycas. Lycas made him reverence, and demanded of him if it pleased him any thing to send unto Dejanira. Hercules answered to Lycas, that he would go to make his sacrifice to Apollo, and at his return again, he would go or else would send unto her.

With these words Hercules and Philotes passed forth, on their Pilgrimage. And Lycas returned unto Dejanira, and told to her the joyful tidings that he had received of Hercules; also what life Hercules led since the day and hour he had presented to him her Letter. Dejanira comforted with these good tidings, went unto her Chamber, and thanked God and Fortune. After, she began to think on their estate, and thus thinking she remembered her of the poison that Nessus had given her, being at the point of death, she had kept it in one of her Coffers: and forthwith incontinently she opened the Coffer, and took the cursed poison and one of the Shirts of Hercules: as she that imagined by the vertue of the poison to draw again to her the Love of Hercules, like as Nessus had said unto her. She made the Shirt to be boyled with the poison, and gave the charge thereof to one of her women. When the Shirt was boyled enough, the woman took the vessel, and set it to cool. After she took out the Shirt openly, and wzing it, but so soon as she had wzing it, the fire sprang in her hands so vehemently, that she cast it upon a perch to dry and fell down dead.

In process of time, Dejanira desired to have the Shirt, and seeing the woman that had charge thereof, brought it not, went into the Chamber where the Shirt had been boyled and found the woman dead, whereof she had great marvel. Nevertheless she passed the death lightly, and one of her Damosels she made take the Shirt that hanged on the Perch and was dry, commanding her that she should fold it, and wind it in a Handkerchief.

At the commandment of Dejanira the Damosel folded the  
Shirt.



Shirt. But so doing, she was serued with the popson in such wise that she lost her speech, and dyed soon after. Forwithstand- ing Dejanira that thought nothing, but to come to her intention, took the Shirt and deliuered it to Lycas, charged him to carry it to Hercules. Lycas that was ready to accomplish the will of his Mistres, took the charge of the Shirt, and departing from them went into the Mountain whereas Hercules was, and there found him in the Forrest, where was the Temple of Diana, Hercules had no man with him but Philotes, who made ready for him a great fire, to sacrifice an Hart that Hercules had taken, running at a course. Lycas then finding Hercules in the Temple kneeled low down to him, and said: Sir, here is a Shirt that your seruant Dejanira sendeth to you. She recom- mendeth her humbly unto your grace, and prayeth you that you will receiue this present in good part, as from your Wife. Hercules was ioyous of these words, and presently uncloathed him, to put on this cursed Shirt, saying, that verily she was his Wife, and that he would for her sake wear this Shirt. In doing on this Shirt, he felt a very great dolour and pain in his body. Forwithstanding he put on his other cloaths aboue, as he that did think no evil. When he was cloathed, and the Shirt warm, his pain and sorrow grew more and more. Then he began to think, and knew presently that his malady came of the Shirt, and feeling the pricking of the venome, without long tarrying, he took off his robes, a supposed to have taken off his Shirt from his back and to have rent it. But he was not strong enough to do so, for the Shirt held so soze, and cleaved so fast to his flesh, by the bigour and strength of the sharp popson, that he tare out the flesh, and took away certain pieces thereof, when he would have taken off his Shirt.

Hercules knew then, that he was wounded to death. Death began to fight against him, he began to resist by drawing off his Shirt from his body with pieces of his flesh and blood, but all could not abail. He rent and tare his back, thighs, and body, unto his entrails and guts, his arms, his shoulders, unto the bones, and still his dolour and pain increased more and more. As he returned, in pain, he beheld Lycas, and another fellow



fellow that he brought with him, he went to them, and said unto Lycas. Thou curst and unhappy man: what thing hath moved thee to come hither under the false friendship of Dejanira, to bring me into the change of this misfortune: What thinkest thou hast done? Thou hast served me with a shirt intoricated with mortal venome. Who hath introduced thee to this? Thou must needs receive thy desert. And saying these words Hercules caught by the head pooz Lycas, that knew not what to say, and threw him against a Rock so fiercely, that he burst his bones, and slew him, the fellow of Lycas fled, and hid him in a bush, Philotes was so affrighted, that he knew not what to do. At the hour that Hercules was in this case, much people came into the Temple. The entrails of Hercules were troubled. His blood boyled in all his Veins, the poplen pierced unto his heart, his sinews shrunk and withdrew them.

When he felt himself in this extream misery, that Death hastned his end by terrible pain, as he that could not take away the force of the venome, striving began to run ower hill and ower Valley, up and down the Forrest, and pulled up the great Trees, and overthrew them. Then he began to rent off his shirt, with the flesh, that was sodden and boyled. When he had long led this life, he returned unto the Temple, full assured of death, and lifting up his hands and eyes to Heaben said. Alas, alas, must Fortune now laugh at me, for this miserable destiny, coming from the mad Jealousie, and Sorcery of that Woman, which in all the world I repute most wise and vertuous? O Dejanira, unnatural woman, without wit, shame and honour, with an heart of a Tyrant, besotted with jealousy: how hast thou been able to contriue against me this fury, and treason envenomed? If Kings or Princes acquaint themselves with Ladies or Gentlewomen, for the increase of mankind, they will neber have credit with their proper Wives. O Dejanira what hast thou done? The Women present, they that are in the wombs of their Mothers, shall spit at thee in thy face, and curse thee without end, for the reproach that thou turnest upon them.

Alas Dejanira: What shall Calcedonie now do, that gloried



ried in thy glozy, and set thee in the front of their honour, as a Carbuncle, for the decking of their precious things? Now thy glozy shall be shame: for by impiety and diuers Engines, by secret cruelty thou hast conspired my death, and hast brouched this incurable misfortune, for thee and me, and for our Friends and Kinsmen.

Oy Dejanira, thy malice as an unhappy and most cursed Serpent, hath wrought this malicious and reproachful Murther. Thy false Jealousie hath more power to terminate my life, than all the Monsters of the world. By thine offence, and by thy mischievous sleight wherefrom I could not keep me, I must dye, and pass out of this world. Since it is so, I thank Fortune, and ask of God no vengeance against thee: but surely to the end it be not said, that the vanquisher of men, be not vanquished by a woman, I will not pass the bitter passage of death by thy mortal Sorceries full of abomination: but by the fire, that is neat and clear, and the most excellent of Elements.

These dolorous and sorrowful plaints accomplished, Hercules took his Club, and cast it in the fire that was made ready to make his Sacrifice. After he gave Philotes his Bow and Arrows, and then prayed him, that he would recommend him to Yoel, and to his dearest friends. Then feeling his life had no longer time to sojourn, he took leave of Philotes: and all burnt and sodden, he laid him down in the fire, lifting up his hands and eyes to Heaven, & there consummated the course of his glorious life. When Philotes saw the end of his Master Hercules, he burnt his body to ashes, and kept those ashes, with intention to bear them to the Temple, that the King Evander had caused to be made: After he departed from thence, and returned into Lycia, greatly discomfited: and with a great fountain of tears, recounted to Yoel, and to his friends, the pitifull death of Hercules. No man could recount the sorrow that Yoel made, and they of Lycia, as well the Students as rural people. All the world fell in tears and sighs, bewailing his untimely death. So much abounded Yoel in tears, that her tender heart was drowned: and forthwith her soul departed from her body, through the excess of sorrow: Then each one cursed, and spake ill of Dejanira.

Finally,



Finally, Dejanira being aduertised by the fellows of Lycas, of the mischief that was come by the shirt, she fell into despair, and made great lamentations, and said: What have I done? Alas, what have I done? The most notable man of men, shining among the Clerks, he that traversed the strange Coasts of the Earth and Hell: He that bodily conversed among men, was familiar with the Sun, Moon and Stars, is dead by my cause and without my knowledge. He died by my fault: for I have sent unto him the shirt, that hath been the instrument of his death. It was not my fault: for I knew nothing of the popson. Oh mortal popson. By me he is deprived of life, whom I loved as I did mine own. He that was the Fountain of science: by whom the Athenians Harpned their wits and judgments: he that made the Monsters of the Sea to tremble in their Abisins, destroyed the Monsters of Hell: confounded the Monsters of the earth, Tyrants he corrected, insolent and proud! The humble and meek he enhaunsed and exalted: He that made no treasure but of Virtue: subdued all the Nations of the world, conquering them with his Club: and if he had pleased or been ambitious, might have attained to be King of the East, West, North, and South, of the Seas and Mountains. Of all these he might have named himself Lord, by good right, if he had pleased. Alas, alas, I was bozn in an unlucky hour? When so high and mighty Prince is dead by my simpleness: He was the Glozy of men. There was never none like him, nor ever shall be. Dught I to live after him? No, for among the Ladies I shall be pointed at with the finger, and fall into strangers hands to be punished, forasmuch as I have deserved shame and blame by his death, I will commit a revenge upon my self. And with that she took a knife, saying: I feel my self willing and ready to die, and know that I am innocent of the death of my Lord Hercules, so with the point of the knife she ended her desperate life. Whereat Philotes was abashed: and so were all they of Greece that long wept, and bewailed Hercules his death. And they of Athens bewailed him exceedingly: some for his Science, and others for his virtues, whereof I will now cease speaking: Beseeching her that is the cause of this Tran-



lation out of French into this simple and rude English, that is to wit, by redoubted Lady Margaret by the Grace of God Dutches of Burgoine and of Brabant: Sister to my Sovereign Lord the King of England and France, &c. To receive my rude labour acceptably, and in good part.

Thus endeth the second Book of the Collection of the Histories of Troy. Which Books were translated into French, out of Latin by the labour of the Venerable person Raoulle Feure Priest, as afoze is said, and by me unfit and unworthy, translated into this rude English, by the commandment of my redoubted Lady, Dutches of Burgoine. And forasmuch as I suppose the said two Books have not been had before this time in our English language: therefore I had the better will to accomplish this said work, that was begun in Brudges, and continued in Gaunt, and finished in Colen, in the time of the great divisions as well in the realms of England and France, as in all other places universally, through the world, that is to say: in the year of our Lord, one thousand four hundred seventy and one.

And as for the third Book, which treateth of the general and last Destruction of Troy: It needeth not to be Translated into English, forasmuch as the worshipful and Religious man, John Lidgate Monk of Bury, did translate it lately: after whose work I fear to take upon me (that am not worthy to bear his Pen and Ink-horn after him) to meddle at all in that work. But yet, forasmuch as I am bound to obey and please my Ladies good Grace: also his work being in Verse: and as far as I know it is not had in prose in our tongue: and also peradventure he translated it after some other Authoz than this is: and forasmuch as divers men be of sundry desires: Some to read in Rime and Meeter, and some in prose: and also because that I have now good leisure being in Colen, having no other thing to do at this time: to eschew Idleness, Wherof of all Vices, I have deliberated in my self, for the contemplation of the said redoubted Lady, to take this Labour in hand,  
by



by the sufferance, and help of Almighty God, whom I meekly beseech to give me the grace to accomplish it to the pleasure of her that is the causer thereof: and that he receive it in the humble devotion of me her faithful, true, and most humble servant.

---

*The End of the Second Book.*

---



# The Table of the Second Book of the Destruction of TROY.

Chapters.	Pages.
1. <b>H</b> OW <i>Hercules</i> fought against three Lyons, in the Forest of <i>Neme</i> : and how he slew them and took their Skins.	1
2. How <i>Juno</i> sent <i>Hercules</i> into <i>Ægypt</i> to be slain of the Tyrant <i>Busire</i> , and how <i>Hercules</i> slew the Tyrant, against the hope and will of <i>Iuno</i> .	5
3. How <i>Hercules</i> espoused <i>Megara</i> , and how he was made Knight in <i>Thebes</i> .	9
4. How the Centaures ravished <i>Hipodamia</i> , at the Wedding of <i>Pyrotus</i> , and how <i>Hercules</i> recovered her again, and vanquished the Centaures in battel.	13
5. How <i>Pluto</i> ravished <i>Proserpina</i> , and how <i>Orpheus</i> went for her to Hell: how Queen <i>Ceres</i> came to the wedding of <i>Pyrotus</i> , and how <i>Theseus</i> and <i>Pyrotus</i> fought with <i>Cerberus</i> the Porter of Hell.	16
6. How <i>Hercules</i> found <i>Pyrotus</i> dead at the Gate of Hell, and <i>Theseus</i> in danger: and how <i>Hercules</i> vanquished <i>Cerberus</i> , and how he rescued <i>Proserpina</i> from <i>Pluto</i> .	22
7. How <i>Andromedus</i> delivered <i>Lincus</i> : and how he slew in battel the King <i>Creon</i> , and took the City of <i>Thebes</i> .	27
8. How <i>Hercules</i> entred into <i>Thebes</i> in an unknown habit, and how he put to death the Gyant <i>Lyncus</i> and his complices, and his wife <i>Megara</i> .	31
9. How <i>Hercules</i> put to death <i>Laomedon</i> , and destroyed <i>Troy</i> the second time.	33
10. How <i>Hercules</i> and <i>Affer</i> assailed by battel the Gyant <i>Antheon</i> and how they vanquished him in battel the first time.	36
11. How <i>Hercules</i> took King <i>Atlas</i> : and how he began to study the science of Astronomy, and the seven liberal Sciences.	39
12. How	



# The Table.

Chapters.	Pages.
12. How <i>Hercules</i> assembled his battel against <i>Antheon</i> King of the Lybians, which he put to flight, and slew the King of <i>Cothulie</i> .	43
13. How <i>Hercules</i> slew <i>Antheon</i> .	45
14. How <i>Hercules</i> and <i>Theseus</i> fought against the two <i>Damofels</i> of <i>Seythie</i> .	47
15. How <i>Hercules</i> began to wax amorous of <i>Dejanira</i> , and how <i>Achelous</i> and <i>Hercules</i> had battel the one against the other, and how <i>Achelous</i> was vanquished.	50
16. How <i>Hercules</i> put to the worst King <i>Achelous</i> , and how he espoused <i>Dejanira</i> .	55
17. How <i>Nessus</i> took <i>Dejanira</i> from <i>Hercules</i> , when he passed with her over the River: and how <i>Hercules</i> slew <i>Nessus</i> with an Arrow.	59
18. How <i>Hercules</i> fought against <i>Hydra</i> , the serpent of the Moor <i>Lerna</i> , and slew him.	62
19. How <i>Hercules</i> went into Spain and fighting on the sea, vanquished King <i>Gerion</i> , and took the City of <i>Megidda</i> .	66
20. How <i>Gerion</i> assailed <i>Hercules</i> the second time, before <i>Megidda</i> , how <i>Hercules</i> slew his brethren, vanquished and constrained <i>Gerion</i> to flee.	71
21. How <i>Hercules</i> pursued <i>Gerion</i> : and vanquishing him, put him to death, at the Port of the <i>Corogne</i> .	75
22. How <i>Hercules</i> founded the City of <i>Corogne</i> upon the tomb of <i>Gerion</i> .	79
23. How <i>Hercules</i> assailing King <i>Cacus</i> , overcame him, and how <i>Cacus</i> began to tyrannize in Italy.	80
24. How <i>Hercules</i> fought against the eleven Gyants of <i>Cremona</i> , and vanquished them.	89
25. How <i>Cacus</i> stole away Oxen and Kine, belonging to <i>Hercules</i> , and how <i>Hercules</i> fought with him therefore and slew him.	97
26. How the Queen of <i>Laurentia</i> fell in love with <i>Hercules</i> : and how King <i>Pricus</i> came into Italy with a great host, to defie <i>Hercules</i> .	106
27. How <i>Hercules</i> fought King <i>Pricus</i> in battel: how he fled into	into



The Table.

Chapters.	Pages.
into the City, where Hercules alone slew him, and many others.	111
28. How Hercules was enamoured on Toel, the Daughter of King Prius, how he required her Love, and she accorded.	116
29. How Hercules fought against Diomedes in the Forrest of Thrace: and how he made his Horses eat him.	122
30. How Dejanira sorrowed for the love of Hercules to Toel.	126
31. How Dejanira sent to Hercules a shirt envenomed, and how Hercules burned himself in the fire of his sacrifice, and how Dejanira slew her self when she knew that Hercules was dead by means of her ignorance.	132

---

FINIS.

---



THE  
DESTRUCTION  
OF  
TROY,  
THE  
Third Book.

WHEREIN IS SHEWED

How the City of *TROY* was by  
*Priamus*, Son of King *Laomedon*, re-edified  
and repaired, more strong, and better fortified, than  
ever it was before.

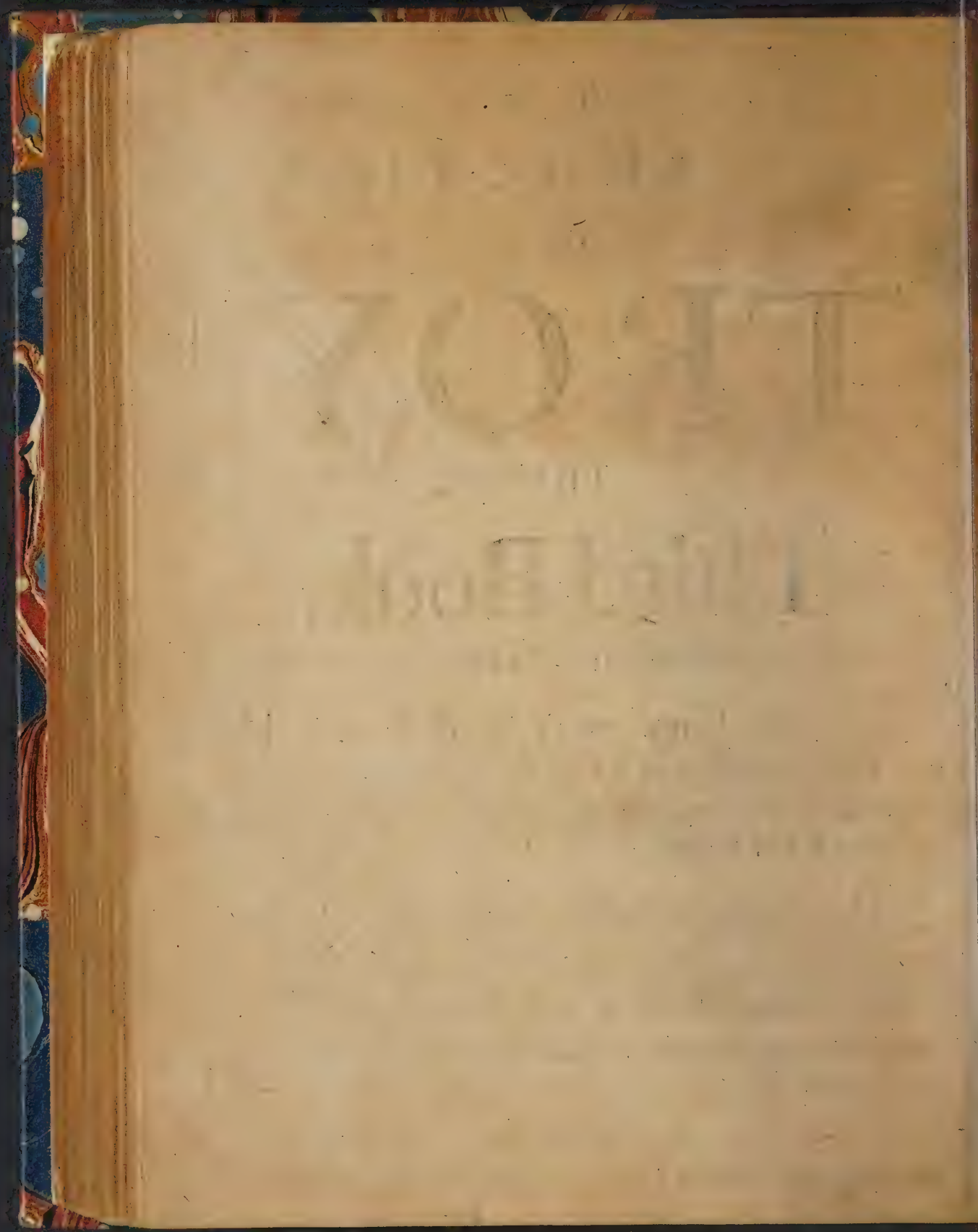
And how for the ravishment of Dame *Helen*, Wife of  
King *Menelaus* of Greece, the said City was totally destroyed,  
and *Priamus* with *Heëtor*, and all his Sons slain, with many of  
their Nobles out of number, as hereafter shall appear.

---

L O N D O N,

Printed for *Thomas Passenger*, at the Three Bibles  
on *London-Bridge*. 1676.









THE  
DESTRUCTION  
OF  
TROY,

The Third Book.

CHAP. I.

How King *Priamus* re-edified the City of *Troy*, more strong than ever it was before: of his Sons and Daughters. And how after many Councils, he sent *Anthenor* and *Polidamas* into *Greece*, to demand his Sister *Exione*, that *Ajax* kept.

**Y**ou have heard of the second Destruction of *Troy*, how *Hercules* had taken Prisoner *Priamus* the Son of King *Laomedon*, and put him in Prison. Wherebeit, *Dares* of *Phrigie* saith, that his Father sent him to move war in a strange Countrey, where he had been long, therefore he was not at that discomfiture. This *Priamus* had wedded a very noble Lady, Daughter of *Egyptus*, King of *Thrace*, by whom he had five Sons and three Daughters of great beauty. The first of his Sons was named *Hector*, the most worthy Knight of the world. The second Son was named *Paris*, and by surname *Alexander*, which was the fairest Knight of the world, and the best drawer of a Bow. The third was cal-



led Deiphebus hardy and discreet. The fourth was named Helenus, a man that knew all the Arts liberal. The fifth and last was called Troilus, one of the best Knights that was in his time.

Virgil recounteth, he had two other Sons by his Wife, the one was named Polidorus. This Polidorus was sent by King Priamus with great plenty of Gold, unto a King his friend, to have aid against the Greeks. But this King seeing that King Priamus was in strife against the Greeks, and also being moved with covetousness, slew Polidorus, and buried him in the Isle of the Sea. The other Son was named Ganimedes, whom Jupiter stole away, and made him his Bottle carrier, instead of Hebe the Daughter of Juno, whom he put out of that office. The eldest Daughter of King Priamus was named Creusa, who was Wife to Aeneas: This Aeneas was Son of Anchyses, and Venus of Numidia. The second Daughter was named Cassandra, she was a noble Virgin; learned with Sciences, and knew things that were to come. The third was named Polixena, she was the fairest Daughter, that was known in all the world. Besides these Childzen heretofore rehearsed, King Priamus had thirty bastard Sons, by divers women, that were valiant Knights and hardy.

When King Priamus was in a strange Country, very much employed in the profession of War, together with his Queen and Childzen; Tydings came to him that the King Laomedon his Father was slain, his City destroyed, his noble men put to death, their Daughters brought into servitude, and also his Sister Exione.

At these sorrowful tydings he was grieved, wept abundantly, and made many lamentations. He left the Siege, finished his War, and returned hastily to Troy: and when he found it destroyed, he began to make great sorrow. Then he re-edified the City, so strong, that he never ought to doubt his enemies: and did enclose it with Walls and great Towers of Marble. The City was so great that the circuit was three days journey. And at that time was none in the World so great, nor so fair.



In this City were six Gates : the one was named Dardane, the second Timbria, the third Helias, the fourth Cheras, the fifth Troyen, and the sixth Antenorides. The Gates were great and strong. And there were in the City rich Palaces without number, the fairest that ever were, with houses, rich and well compassed. There were in many parts of the City, divers fair places, for the Citizens to sport in. In this City dwelt men of all Crafts and Merchants that went and came in traffick from all parts of the world. In the middle of it ran a River, named Paucus, which bare Ships that did bring great profit unto the Citizens.

When the City was finished, King Priamus did cause to come all the Inhabitants of the Country thereabouts, and made them dwell in the City, and there came so many, that there was never City better furnished with brave Nobility, and Citizens, than it was. There were found many Games, as the Chess-play, the Tables and Dice, with divers other Games. In the open place of the City, upon a Rock, King Priamus did build his rich Walace named Ilion : that was one of the richest and strongest in all the world. It was of height five hundred paces, besides the height of the Towers, whereof there was great plenty, so high, as it seemed to them that saw them from far, they reacht the Heaven. And in this Walace King Priamus did make the richest Hall that was at that time in all the world : Within which was his Throne, and the Table whereupon he did eat, and held his estate among his Nobles, Princes, Lords and Barons, was of gold and silver, precious stones, and of Ivory.

In this Hall, at one corner, was an Altar of Gold with precious stones, consecrated in the name and worship of Jupiter their God : unto which Altar, men went up twenty steps : upon the Altar was the Image of Jupiter, fifteen foot high : all garnished with precious stones. For in that God Jupiter was all the stedfast hope and trust of King Priamus, to hold his reign long and in prosperity.

When he saw that he had so fair a City, strong, and well furnished with people, and so wealthy of goods : he began to con-



ceive some displeasure, at the wrongs the Greeks had done unto him, and thought how he might revenge him. He assembled all his Nobles, and held a Court. At this Court Hector his eldest Son was absent, for he was in the parts of Pannonia, in the affairs of his Father: forasmuch as Pannonia was subject to King Priamus. When King Priamus saw all his Noble Peers assembled before him, he began to speak in this manner, O men, and friends that be partners of my great injuries, done by the Greeks, for so little a cause, ye know the Greeks came into this Country, and have cruelly slain your Parents and Friends as well as mine. Also how they have taken away captive, and held in servitude Exione my Sister so fair and Noble: yet they hold her as a Common Woman. We know how they have battered down this famous City, overthrowen the Walls, the Palaces and Houses to the very foundation: and have bozned away the great riches whereof the City was full. For these things, I think it should be reason that by the help of our Gods, who resist those that be insolent and proud, we altogether by a common accord should take vengeance of those injuries. We know what a City we have, and how it is peopled with men of Arms, and garnished with all manner of riches.

And likewise ye know, the Alliances we have with many great Princes, who will assist us if need be. Wherefore we think it will be good for us to take revenge of this shame. Yet forasmuch as the adventures of the Wars be very doubtful and dangerous, and that no man knoweth what may come thereof. (though the injury be great, and that they hold my Sister in so great dishonour) yet will I not begin the War: But first if ye think good, I will send the most prudent man I have, to pray and require them that they will restore again my Sister Exione: and I will be content to pardon all the other injuries.

When the King had thus finished his speeches, all praised his advice. And then King Priamus immediately called one of his Princes, named Anthenor, and most earnestly desired him with gentle perswasions, that he would enterprize this Embassage forthwith into Greece. Anthenor with all humility answered him, he was always ready to do his good pleasure. Then was there



there a ship made ready, and all necessaries, for to bring Anthenor into Greece. He entred into the Ship, and his men, and sailed so long, that they arrived at the Port of Thessalie, where was by adventure the King Peleus, who received the Prince Anthenor joyfully: and demanded of him wherefore he was come into those parts? Anthenor made answer in this manner: Sir I am a Messenger of the King Priamus, that hath sent and commanded me to say unto you, that he is well remembered of the great injuries you and other have done him, that for so little cause have slain his Father, destroyed his people, some dead, and some in servitude. And that is worse, to hold his Sister as a Concubine. And forasmuch as ye are a man of great discretion, the King my Lord wisheth and warneth you, that from henceforth you cease the rage and the great slanders that may come for this cause, that all good men ought to eschew to their power, and that his Sister be safely delivered again unto him: and he will pardon the residue, as a thing that never had happened.

When the King Peleus heard the Prince Anthenor so speak, he chafed with him in great anger, and began to blame King Priamus, that his wit was so light. After menaced Anthenor, and commanded him he should presently depart his Land: for if he tarried long there, he would slay him, with great torments.

Anthenor tarried not long, but entred into his Ship, without taking leave of King Peleus, and sailed so far by Sea that he arrived at Salamine, where the King Thelamon sojournd. When Anthenor went unto him and declared unto him the cause of his coming in this manner. Sir (said he) the King Priamus requesteth your Pöbleness, that his Sister Exione whom you hold in service so foully, ye would restore unto him. For it is not seemly unto your gloze, to use so the Daughter and Sister of a King, and that is issued of a more noble Linage than you be. In case you will restore to him his Sister, he will hold all things as not done, as well the damages as the dishonours, that by you and other have been done unto him.

When King Thelamon heard Anthenor so speak, he began



to war passing angry, and answered to him very fiercely: My friend whatsoever thou be. I have much marvel of the simplicity of thy King, to whom I bear no amity, neither he to me. Therefore I ought not to hearken unto his request. Thy King ought to know that I and others have been there to revenge an injury, that his Father Laomedon did to some of our friends. Forasmuch as I first entered into Troy with great effusion of my blood, Exione of whom thou speakest, was given unto me for the guerdon of my victory, to do with her my will.

And forasmuch as she is so well to my pleasure as she that is of great beauty, it is not to me so light a thing to deliver again a thing that is so delightful, which I have conquered with so great pain and danger. But thou shalt say to thy King, that he shall never recover her, but by the point of the Sword: and I repute thee for a fool, that wouldest enterprize this message, wherein lieth thy great peril: for thou art come among people that vehemently hate thee: therefore go thy way hastily out of this Country. For if thou abide, I will make thee dye a cruel and hateful death.

When Anthenor heard Thelamon so speak, he entered hastily into his Ship, and sailed so far, that he arrived in Thes-saly, where King Castor and King Pollux his brother sojourned. He went a shore from his Ship, and declared his message, like as he had done to the other. And the King answered to him in great ire. Friend (what art) I will that thou know, we think not to have injured King Priamus without cause: for it is so that King Laomedon his Father began the folly wherefore he was slain. For he wronged first the Nobles of Greece, and therefore we desire more the evil of thy King Priamus, than his peace. And it seemeth well that he had not thee in any good reckoning when he sent thee hither to do his message: wherefore I wish thee, see that thou abide not long here, for if thou depart not presently, thou shalt dye villainously. When Anthenor departed without leave, and entered into his Ship, and sailed till he came to Pilon, where the Duke Nestor sojourned, with a great company of Noblemen. Anthenor went to him and said, he was a Messenger of the King Priamus, and told to him



him his message, as he had said to the other before.

And if the other were angry, this Nestor chafed more in himself against Antenor, and said unto him: Ha, ha, vile varlet, who made thee say such things before me? Surely if it were not, that my nobleness hindzeth me, I would cause thy tongue to be plucked out of thy head, and in despite of the King, I would by force of Horse cause to draw thy members one from another. Go thy way hastily out of my sight, or by my Gods, I will cause to be done unto thee all that I have said.

Then Antenor was all abashed, at the horrible words of Duke Nestor, and doubting the fury of his Tyranny, returned to Sea, and set on Troy-ward. But he had not been long on the Sea, till a great Tempest rose, and the air began to wax dark, to rain and to thunder, and there arose great winds contrary, and waxed thick and horrible, and his Ship was born on the waves, one time high and another time low, in great peril, there was not a man in the Ship, but supposed to die, and in these perils were they three days, and on the fourth, the Tempest ceased, and the air waxed all clear, and became peaceable.

Then they comforted themselves, and sailed so far that they came to the port of Troy, and went straight to their Temples to give thanks to their Gods, for that they had escaped so many perils. And after Antenor, went with a great company of Noble men before King Priamus, and when all the Barons were assembled, and all the Sons of the King present, then Antenor told all by order, what he had done in Greece, like as it is contained heretofore.

At these tydings was King Priamus sore troubled, for the opprobrious speeches offered to his messenger in Greece. And then he had no more hope nor trust to recover his Sister.

#### CHAP. II.

How King Priamus assembled all his Barons, to know whom he might send to Greece to get again his Sister *Exime*. How Hector answered: and of his good Counsel: how Paris declared to his Father, the Vision of the Goddess *Venus*.

**K**ing Priamus being assured of the hate of the Greeks, and by no fair means he could recover his sister, he was moved  
B with



with great ire, and thought he would send a great Paby into Greece, to hurt and damage the Greeks. Alas King Priamus, tell me what mis adventure is this, that hath given to thee so great hardiness of courage, to cast out thy self from thy wealth and rest? Why mayst not thou refrain the first movings of thy courage? although it was not in thy puissance, yet thou oughtest to have good counsel, for men say commonly: Some man thinketh to revenge his sorrow, and he encreaseth it.

It had been a more sure thing to thee, to have remembered the Proverb that saith, he that sitteth well, let him not remove. Else, he that is well at ease, let him keep therein. All things may be suffered save wealth, a man that goeth upon plain ground, hath nothing to stumble at. In this manner King Priamus thought long, and after he assembled on a day all his Noble men, in his Palace of Ilion, said unto them. We know how by your counsel Anthenor was sent into Greece, to recover Exione by fair means: ye know also, how that he is returned and come back, and also what wrongs he hath found, and it seemeth the Greeks make little account of the injuries they have done unto us, at least they by their words, repent them not, and threaten us more strongly than ever they did. God forbid that ever it should come unto us, like as they menace. But I pray the Gods to give us power to revenge us to their loss. For me seemeth, that we are more puissant than they are, and have the most surest City, and the best furnished in the World: also we have great Lords very plenty allyed to us, to help and aid us at our need: for conclusion, we have the puissance to hurt and damage our enemies in many manners, and valour to defend us from them. And it should be good, to shew them what puissance we have to grieve them withal. If you think it good, we will send our men secretly, that shall do to them great damage, ere they should be ready for to defend themselves. And for that ye ought every one to employ your selves to take vengeance of these injuries, and that ye have no doubt for any thing, in as much as they had the first victory: for it happeneth oftentimes that the Conquerors be banquished of them that were banquished.

Then all that were present, allowed the advice of the King and



and offered every man to employ themselves to the same with all the power they could, whereat King Priamus had great joy.

And after that he had given them thanks, he let every man depart home to their own houses, excepting his Sons legitimate, and the Bastards whom he maintained in his Palace, and told to them his complaint of the Greeks, with weeping tears in this manner: My Sons, ye have in your memory the death of your Grandfather, the servitude of your Aunt Exione, that they hold in the manner of a common woman, and you be so puissant that reason should instruct you, to employ your selves to revenge this great injury and shame. And if this move you not thereto, yet you ought to do it, to satisfie my will and pleasure: for I am ready to dye for sorrow and anguish, which ye ought and are bound to remedy to your power, that have caused you so well to be nourished and brought forth. And thou Hector, my right dear Son, that art the eldest of thy Brethren, the most wise and strong. I pray thee first, that thou put in execution this my Will. And that thou be Duke and Prince to thy Brethren in this work, and all the other will obey gladly unto thee. And in like manner shall they do of this Realm, for the great prowess they know in thee. And know, that from this day forth I discharge my self of all this work, and put it upon thee that art the most strong to maintain battels: For I am ancient, and can not from henceforth help my self, so well as I was wont to do.

To these words answered Hector sweetly, saying, my Father, and dear Soberaign Lord, there is none of all your sons, but that it seemeth to him a thing humane, to desire vengeance of these injuries, and to us that be of high nobleness a little injury ought to be great. It is so, that as the quality of the person groweth or diminisheth, so ought the quality of the injury. If we be desirous to take vengeance of our injuries, we forsake not nor leaue the nature of men: for in like manner the dumb Beasts do, and Nature it self teacheth them thereto. My dear Lord and Father, there is none of all your Sons that ought more to desire the vengeance of the injury and death of our Lord and Grandfather, than I that am the eldest. But I will (if it please you) that ye consider in this enterprize, not only the be-



ginning, but the middle and the end, to what peril we may come hereafter: For otherwise, little profit some things will be that come to an evil end.

When methinketh that it is much more allowable for a man to abstain from things whereof the ends are dangerous, and whereof may come more evil than good: For any thing is not to be said fortunate, until the time that it come unto a good end. I say not these things for any evil meaning or Cowardise: only to the end that ye begin not any thing, that you have in your heart, to put in practice, but first be ye well counselled, and with good advisement.

We know, that all Africk and Europe, be Subjects unto the Greeks. They be furnished with Knights, hardy and marvellous? Surely this day, the strength of us is not to be compared unto them in valour. Wherefore, if we begin the wars against them, we might easily come to a mischievous end. We that be in so great rest among our selves, what shall we seek to trouble our prosperity and welfare? Exione is not of such high price, that it behoveth all us to put us in danger of death for her: She hath been long time there. It were better that she spend forth her time, who I think hath but little time to live, than we should put us all into such perils. And meekly I beseech you, not to suppose that I say these things for cowardise: But I doubt the chances of Fortune, and least that under the shadow of this thing, she confound and destroy our great Seigniorie: and at least we should begin things that we ought to leave for to eschew more mischief.

When Hector had made an end of this answer, Paris was nothing content therewith: he stood upon his feet and said: O my dear Lord, I beseech you, to hear me speak, to what end you may come, if you once begin the War against the Greeks. Be not we garnished with mighty and noble Chivalry as they be? Surely we be, that in the world is none that may discomfit us: therefore begin ye boldly that enterprize that ye have thought of, and send some of your Ships and people to go into Greece. to take their people, and damage the Countrey. And if it please you to send me, I will do it with a good will, for I am perswaded if



if ye send me, I shall do great Damage unto the Greeks, and I will take away some noble Lady of Greece, and bring her with me into this Realm, and by commutation of her, you may recover your sister Exione. If you will understand and know how I am perswaded of this thing: I will tell you, the Gods have promised it to me. It happened to me of late (said Paris) that by your commmandment I was in the lesser India, at the beginning of the Summer, and upon a Friday I went to hunt in a Forrest very early, and that morning I found nothing that turned me to any pleasure: and after mid day, I found a great Hart, that I put to the flight, so swiftly, that I left all my company behind: and followed the Hart close, into the most desert place of the Forrest which was named Ida. And so long I followed him, that I came unto a place, passing obscure, then I saw the Hart no more, that I chased. I felt then my self sore weary, and my Horse also, that could no further go. So I lighted, and tyed my Horse to a Tree, and laid me down upon the Grass, and put under my head my Bow instead of a Pillow, and fell asleep. Then came to me in a vision, the God Mercury, and in his company three Goddesses: Venus, Pallas and Juno. He left the Goddesses a little from me, and after he approached and said unto me in this manner. Paris, I have brought these three Goddesses unto thee: for a great controversy, that is fall'n between them. They have chosen thee to be Judge and to determine after thy will. Their controversy is thus, that as they did eat the other day together in a place, suddenly was cast among them an Apple, of so marvellous fairness, that never was seen one such before amongst them. And there was written about this Apple in Greekish language: Be it given to the Fairest: So each of them would have it, by any means in the world: saying each of them to be the more fair than the other, so they could not agree.

Wherefore they have put it to thy Judgement, and each of them promiserh thee a gift for thy reward, that thou shalt have without fail, for the Judgement of the Apple. If thou judge that Juno be the fairest, she will make thee the most noble man in the world. If thou judge for Pallas, she shall make thee the



most wisest man of the world in all Sciences. If thou judge that Venus be the fairest, she shall give thee the most noble Lady in all Greece. When I heard Mercurius thus speak, I said unto him, that I could not give true judgement, unless I saw them all naked before me, to see the fashions of their bodies, the better to give a true judgement. Then incontinent Mercurius did cause them to uncloath themselves, and then I beheld them long, and methought all three passing fair: but yet me seemed that Venus exceeded the beauty of the other: therefore I judged that the Apple appertained to her. Then Venus greatly rejoicing at my judgement, confirmed unto me the promise that Mercury had made before in the favour of her: and after I awoke. When ye then (my dear Father,) that the Gods fail of any thing they promise? Say verily, I say to you still, it is best that ye send me into Greece, that you may have joy of that I shall do there.

After Paris, spake Deiphobus: My dear Lords, if in all the works that men begin, should be advised ever in the events of things that might happen, they should never enterprize nor do valiant acts by hardiness.

If the labourers would leave to sow the Land, for the seed which the birds pick up, they should never labour. Therefore (dear Father) let us make ready for to send into Greece your Ships. We may not believe better counsel than that which Paris hath given unto you: For if he bring any noble Lady from thence, ye may easily yield her back again, to recover your Sister Exione, for whom we all suffer shame enough. After this spake Helenus, the fourth Son of King Priamus thus: Ha, ha, right puissant King. and right Soberaign over us, your most humble Subjects, and obedient Sons. Beware that covetousness of vengeance put you in such danger as lieth herein. We know well how I understand the things future and to come as ye have proved many times without finding fault: the Gods forbid, that ever it come to pass, that Paris should be sent into Greece: For know ye, that if ever he go to make any assault upon them, ye shall see this honourable City destroyed by the Greeks, the Trojans slain, and all your Children. Therefore  
Disswade



diswaide your self from these things, whereof the end shall be great desolation, with death to your self, your Wife, and he that be your Sins cannot escape. For if Paris go into Greece, all these evils will come thereof.

When the King heard Helenus thus speak, he was abashed, and began to counterpoise more of the matter, and held his peace and spake not of a good space: so did all the other. Then arose up Troilus, the youngest Son of King Priamus, and began to speak in this manner. O Noble men and hardy, how are ye abashed for the words of this cowardly Priest? Is it not the custom of Priests for to dread the battels, to love good cheer, and pleasures, and to fill their bellies with Wines and Meats? Who is he that believeth, any man can know the things to come unless the Gods do shew them by Revelation? It is but folly to tarry upon this, or to believe such things, If Helenus be afraid, let him go into the Temple, and sing Divine Service, and let the other take revenge of their injurious wrongs by force of Arms. O dear Lord and Father, wherefore art thou so troubled with these words? Send the Ships into Greece, and thy Knights wise and hardy, that may make requital to the Greeks, for their injuries they have done unto us. All they that heard Troilus thus speak, commended him, saying: he had very well spoken. And thus finished their Parliament and went to Dinner.

After Dinner, King Priamus called Paris, and Deiphobus, and gave them commandment expressly, that they should ride into the parts of Pannonie, to fetch and assemble haliant Knights and to take them into Greece. And the same day Paris and Deiphobus departed from Troy, to accomplish the will of their Father. The day following, the King assembled to council, all the Citizens of Troy, and said unto them: O my loving friends and true Citizens, ye all know how notoriously the Greeks, by their pride and insolence have done unto us great wrongs, and damages, as it is well known to the whole world. And ye know also how they hold my Sister Exione in servitude, wherefore I live in great sorrow: and also ye may remember, how I sent Anthenor into Greece, that hath done nothing: wherefore my sorrow



forrow is doubled. Forasmuch as I have purposed to send my Son Paris, with men of arms into Greece, for to assail our enemies by strength, and to do them great damages, and to assay if they can take any noble Lady of Greece, and send her into this City: that by the commutation of her, I might get again my Sister Exione: And because I will not begin this thing, but that it may come to your knowledge first, I pray you, that you give to me your advice: for without you I will not proceed any further, forasmuch as it toucheth you as well as me.

When the King had thus finished his speeches, and each man silent a great while: then stood up a Knight named Pantheus, that was the Son of Deuphrobe the Philosopher, and said: O noble King, as I am your Servant and Vassal, I will declare unto you my advice in this matter. Truly, as a Vassal and subject is bound to counsel his Lord, ye have had good knowledge of Deuphrobe, the great Philosopher, my Father, who lived in this City, more than ninescore and ten years, and was so wise in Philosophy, that he knew of the things to come hereafter: he said unto me many times, and affirmed for truth, that if Paris your Son went into Greece to take any noble Lady by violence, this famous City should be destroyed and burnt to ashes by the Greeks, and that ye and all yours shall be cruelly slain. Therefore wise and vertuous King, pleaseth it your Majesty to hear my words, and believe what the wise men have said, do not persevere in your opinion. Therefore will ye seek to intrap the good estates of your rest, and put your tranquillity under the dangerous adventures of Fortune: Leave this, and disswade your self from this jeopardy: and finish your life in rest happily, and suffer not Paris to go into Greece in Arms. But if you will proceed send some other and not Paris.

At these words of Pantheus, grew and arose great murmuring. Some approb'd the Prophecies of Deuphrobe the Philosopher, and some held it as a fable, which were of the greatest number, insomuch that by consent of the most part, Paris was appointed to go into Greece with men of Arms, so the Parliament finished, and each man went home, to his particular place.

When



When this conclusion was known to Cassandra, Daughter of King Priamus, she began to make so great sorrow, as if she had been frantick, saying: O noble City of Troy, what Fairy hath moved thee to be brought to such perils, for which thou shalt in short time be overthrowen and destroyed unto the ground? O Queen Hecuba, for what sin hast thou deserved the death of thy children, which shall be horrible? wherefore with holdest thou not Paris from going into Greece; Which shall be the cause of this evil adventure? and when she had so cryed, she went unto the King her Father, and drowned in tears with weeping, desired him he would be perswaded to leave off his enterprize, saying; that she knew by her Science the great evils that were coming by this means. But neither for the dissuasions of Hector, nor the admonition of Cassandra, the King would change his purpose, nor for Helenus his Son, nor Pantheus.

## CHAP. III.

How Paris and Deiphobus, Æneas, Anthenor, and Polidamas, were sent into Greece: and how they ravished Helen out of the Temple of Venus, with many Prisoners and riches, and brought them to Troy, where Paris espoused Helen.

**I**F the beginning of May, when the earth is adozned with divers flowers, Paris and Deiphobus returned from Pannonie, and brought with them three thousand Knights, hardy and wise. Then they made ready two and twenty great ships, and laid in them all that was convenient for them. Then Priamus called Æneas, Anthenor, and Polidamas, the Son of Anthenor, and commanded that they should go into Greece with Paris and Deiphobus, and they offered themselves with a good will. When they were all ready to take Shipping, Priamus spake unto them: I need not to use many words, for ye know well enough for what cause I send ye into Greece, and what just cause we have to revenge the wrongs the Greeks have done unto us. But the principal cause is to recover my Sister Exione, that liberty in great thralldom. Wherefore I admonish you, that ye bend all your endeavours, that I may recover my Sister. And be cer-  
tain



tain if ye want or need any succour. I will supply you with so great a strength, that the Greeks shall not be able to beat. And that in this voyage ye hold my Son Paris Captain of the Army of Aeneas and Anthenor.

After these words, Paris and all the other took leave of the King, and entred their Ships, and hoisted up sails, and recommended them to the guiding of Jupiter and Venus, and sailed so far, that they arrived on the Coasts of Greece, in sailing about the Country, they met a ship, in which was one of the greatest Kings of Greece, named Menelaus, going to the City of Epire unto the Duke Nestor. This Menelaus, was brother of Agamemnon, and married unto Queen Helen, that was the fairest Lady in the world: she was Sister of Castor and Pollux, that dwelled together in the City of Samastare, and nourished with them Hermione their sseece, Daughter of Helen: Menelaus made his ship cross a little, and to turn out of the way, so the one did not know the other.

And the Trojans sailed so far, that they arrived at the Isle of Cithar in Greece, there they anchored their Ships and went a land. In this Isle was a temple of Venus passing ancient, and of great beauty, full of all riches: for the Inhabitants of the Country made their devotion unto the Goddess Venus especially, and solemnized her feast every year, and she told and gave them answers of their demands.

Then when the Trojans were arrived, they hallowed the most principal feast of Venus: and for this cause were assembled men and women of the Countrey thereabouts, that made great chear.

When Paris knew of this feast, he took his best cloaths and apparelled him, and all the fairest and loveliest of his men, and went into the Temple in a pleasing manner, and made his offering of gold and silver with great liberality.

Then was Paris beheld on all sides that were there, for his beauty: for he was one of the fairest Knights of the world, and was so richly decked, that it afforded great pleasure unto all them that beheld him, and every man desired to know whence he came: The Trojans told them it was Paris Son of King Priamus



mus of Troy, that was come into Greece, by the commande-  
ment of his Father, to require that they would restore again  
Exione his Sister, that they had given unto King Thelamon.  
So far went the tydings of the coming of these Trojans and  
of their beauty and rich cloathing, that Queen Helen heard  
speak thereof: and after the custom of women, she had great  
desire to know by experience, if it were truth that she heard: and  
disposed her to go unto the Temple, under colour of devotion,  
for to accomplish her desire. How great folly is it, unto honest  
women, to go unto the sports of young people, that do nothing  
but devise how they may come to their desire, and care not what  
mischief may follow in body and in soul? The Ship would ne-  
ver perish, if it abode always in the Port, and were not sent  
out into perils of the Sea.

It is a precious Jewel, to have a good woman, that holdeth  
her honesty in her house. How great damage came unto the  
Greeks and Trojans, that Helen went so lightly to see the Tro-  
jans: and especially in the absence of her Husband? But it is  
the custom of women to be wilful, to bring their desires to the  
end. Helen did cause to make ready Horse, and all that was con-  
venient, to go unto the Temple, as if she went for Devotion:  
This Temple was not very far from the place where she dwel-  
led. When all was ready, and she cloathed in Royal habit, she  
rode with her company, unto the Isle of Cithar, and entered  
into a Messel that brought her nigh to the Temple, where she  
was received with great honour by the Country, as their Lady.  
She entered into the Temple right stately, and made her obla-  
tions with great liberality.

When Paris knew that Queen Helen, Wife of King  
Menelaus, one of the most noble Kings of Greece, was come  
unto this Temple, he arrayed him in the most Gentleman like  
manner he could, (and his company) and went into the Temple:  
for he had before heard of her great beauty. And when he saw  
her he was greatly surprized with her looke, and desired to see  
the fashion of her body, so fair and well shaped in all parts, that  
it seemed Nature had made her to be looked on: for in her was  
nothing but served to manifest all the excellencies of a woman.



Wherefore Paris could not forbear beholding her; saying in himself, he had never seen nor heard tell of any so beautiful and well formed. And as he beheld her, she likewise beheld him, many times and oft, he seemed to her, that he was more fairer a great deal than had been reported to her: and still she said in her self, that she never saw a man of so great beauty, nor that pleased her so well to behold: and so she left all her devotion and gave no heed to any thing save only to behold Paris.

When Paris saw this, he had great joy, and beheld her sweetly more and more, and she him. By which sight they shewed their desires, the one to the other: and thought divers times by what occasion they might speak together. And so long they beheld each other, that by all likelihood, Helen made a sign to Paris, and he approached to her: and Paris sat down beside her, whiles that the people played in the Temple, he spake unto her with a soft voice sweetly, and she to him, and declared each to other how they were surprized with love, and reasoned how they might come to the end of their desires. When they had spoken enough of their hot love, Paris took leave of her, and issued out of the Temple, he and his company: and Helen sent her eyes after him as far as she might.

When Paris was come to his Ship, he called to him the most noblest of the Trojans, and said to them: My friends, ye know wherefore the King my Father hath sent us into Greece, that is to recover Exione his Sister: and if we cannot recover her, that we should do damage unto the Greeks. We cannot recover Exione, for she is in too strong an hand: and also it would be our danger and loss since it is so that the King Thelamon, that holdeth her, and loveth her heartily, is more puissant than we, and is in his own Country. We are not so strong for to take any noble City in Greece, the Country is so full of people, and valiant Knights.

Therefore it is necessary, that we refuse not the fair gift the Gods have sent us. For in this Isle is come to the feast the most greatest Citizens, and the Temple replenished with the most noble women of this Province, also Queen Helen that is Lady of this Country, and Wife of King Menelaus. This Temple



is full of riches: if we can take them alive that be in the Temple, and bring them Prisoners with us, and the Gods that be there, of Gold and Silver, we shall have conquered a great gain and get riches in other places.

If ye thinke good this night we will enter into the Temple all armed, and take men and women, and all that we find, and bring into our Ships, and principally Helen: for if we can carry her into Troy, King Priamus may lightly enough have his sister Exione again for her: therefore advise speedily what is best to be done, before they escape us. Some of them blamed this thing, some allowed it: and finally they concluded after many Counsels, that they would do as Paris had devised.

Now when the night was come, and the Moon nigh going down, the Trojans armed themselves, and left some for to keep their Ships, and the other went privily unto the Temple, and entered therein, so armed as they were, and with little defence, took all them that they found in the Temple, and all the riches. And Paris with his own hand took Helen, and them of her company, and brought into their Ships, and after returned to the Boote. Then began the noise to be passing great within the Temple, and some had rather suffer death, than for to be taken Prisoners.

The noise was heard so far, that they of the Castle there by, heard it: and arose and armed them, and came to assaile the Trojans, as valiant as they were. Then began the skirmish fierce and mortal: but the Trojans (that were four against one) slew many of them, and the other retired into their Castle: and the Trojans took as much goods as they could find, and carried them into their Ships, and hoisted up their Sails, and sailed so long, that on the seventh day they arrived at the Port of Troy, their Ships filled with good Prisoners and great riches, and they remained at the Port of Tenedon, that was three miles from Troy: there they were received with great joy. And Paris sent a proper Messenger unto his Father King Priamus, to let him have knowledge of his coming, and all that he had done in Greece. At these tidings the King was greatly rejoiced, and commanded to make a solemn Feast in all parts of the City, for these tidings.



Whiles that Helen was with the other Prisoners in the Ship she ceased not to weep, and bewail with great sighs her Husband, Brethren, Daughter, Countrey, and her Friends, and was in so great sorrow, that she left to eat and drink. And Paris comforted her the most sweetly that he could: that she might forbear weeping, and Paris said to her in this manner: Dear Lady, wherefore make ye this sorrow, day and night without rest? What man or woman is it that can long endure this? Know not ye that this sorrow hurteth your health? Yes verily: wherefore I pray you to rest contented, for in this Realm, ye shall want nothing, neither those Prisoners that you respect, and ye shall be the most renowned Lady of this Realm, your men that be here, shall want nothing. To this she answered, Paris, I know well, that will I, or will I not, I must needs do as you will, since I am your Prisoner: and if any good happen to me and to the Prisoners, I hope the Gods will reward and thank them that do it. Madam (said Paris) fear not for I will do you and them all what ye shall please to command.

Then he took her by the hand, and brought her into a more secret place, and said unto her: Madam, think ye, forasmuch as it hath pleased the Gods to suffer you to be brought by me into this Province, that ye be lost, and undone, and shall not be more rich and more honoured than ye have been, and that the Realm of Troy is not more rich than the Realm of Achay? Yes verily it is. I will not maintain you dishonestly; but will take you to my wife, so shall ye be more honoured than you have been with your Husband: for your husband is not descended from so noble a house as I am, nor so valiant: nor did he love you so well as I will do. Therefore cease your sorrow, and believe this that I have said to you. Sir (said she) who can abstain from making of sorrow, being in the estate that I am in? Alas, this case happened never before, but since it cannot be otherwise, I will do that thing ye require of me, forasmuch as I have no ability to resist it. Thus Helen was comforted a little: and Paris did please her to the uttermost of his power.

On the morrow betime, she apparelled her self the most honourably she could, and sat upon a Haire richly arrayed, so



did the other Prisoners, each after their degree: and after he went on horseback himself, and Deiphobus his Brother, Aeneas, Anthenor and Polidamas, with a great company of Noble men, and accompanied Queen Helen from Tenadon, and went toward Troy. There came forth of the Town King Priamus, with a great company of Noblemen, and received his Childzen and his Friends with great joy: who came to Helen, and bowed courteously to her, and welcomed her honourably. And when they came nigh the City, they found great store of people glad of their coming, with instruments of Musick: and in such joy came unto the Palace of King Priamus: he himself lighted down and helpt Helen from her Halfrey, and led her by the hand into the Hall, and made great joy all the night, throughout all the City, for these tidings. And the next morning, Paris by consent of his Father, wedded Helen in the Temple of Pallace: and the feast was lengthened throughout all the City for the space of eight days.

When Cassandra knew that her Brother Paris had Wedded Helen, she began to make great sorrow, and like a frantick woman said thus:

O unhappy Trojans, wherefore rejoyce ye at the Wedding of Paris, of which so many evils shall happen? It will cause the death of your selves, your Childzen shall be slain before your eyes, and Husbands before their Wives? O Noble City of Troy, how shalt thou be destroyed and put to nought? O unhappy Mothers, what sorrow shall ye see, when your little Childzen shall be taken and dismembred before you? O Hecuba, Cairisse, and unhappy: where shalt thou take the Water that thou shalt weep for the death of thy Childzen? O people blind and foolish, why send ye not Helen home again, and yield her unto her Husband, before that the Swords of your Enemies come and slay you with great sorrow? Think you that the Kingly Husband of Helen, will not seek revenge? Yes, which shall be your total destruction. O unhappy Helen, thou shalt be the cause of great sorrow. As Cassandra cryed thus with great sorrow, King Priamus hearing it, entreated her to cease, but she would not. And then he commanded her to be cast in

Prison.



Prison where she was kept many days. What pity was it that the Trojans believed not this warning and admonition ; For, if they had believed it, they had prevented the evils that came after unto them, which shall be told in tables, and made plain to them that will hear them, unto the end of the world.

#### CHAP. IV.

How *Menelaus* was sore troubled for the Ravishing of *Helen* his Wife. And how her two Brethren *Castor* and *Pollux*, pursued *Paris* in the Sea : and of their death : And of the condition and manner of the Lords, as well *Greeks* as *Trojans*.

**A**fter these things were done, *Menelaus* (that sojourned at *Epire* with Duke *Nestor*) hearing tydings of the prize and taking of his Wife, and his people, was so perplexed with grief, that he fell to the earth in a swoond. And when he was come again to himself : he complained exceedingly, and made the greatest sorrow of the world. Above all other things he was most grieved for his Wife, and could not be comforted.

When Duke *Nestor* heard the tydings, he came to him and comforted him the best manner he could, for he loved him entirely. But *Menelaus* could not leave his sorrow : but took his leave and returned into his Country.

And sent unto King *Agamemnon* his Brother, to come and speak with him. And also unto *Castor* and *Pollux*, the Brothers of *Helen*, that they should come also to him. When *Agamemnon* saw his Brother make such sorrow, he said : Brother, wherefore grieve ye ? Suppose that the cause be just, yet a wise man ought not to make shew thereof : for it causeth his friends to be sorrowful, and his enemies to reioyce : therefore hide thy sorrow, and make shew as if thou didst not regard it : for by sorrow thou canst not attain to honour nor rebenge, but only by force of arms. Therefore awake thy courage, so shalt thou rebenge the injury done unto thee. Thou knowest what Forces we have and what Aiders we shall find : for this injury toucheth all the Kings and Princes of Greece, and as soon as we shall require their aid, there shall not be one but he will help us with



with all his power, then we will go before Troy, and will do with our enemies as we list, and will destroy the City. And if we take Paris that is actor of these hurts, we will hang him, and make him dye a shameful death. Cease then thy sorrow, and let us make it known to all the Kings and Princes of Greece, and require their aid to revenge this injury.

Then was Menelaus comforted, with the words of his Brother, and they sent their Letters unto all the Barons of Greece, and at their intreaties they all came: first Achilles, Patroclus, Dyomedes and many others. As soon as they knew wherefore they were sent for, they said, that they would go to Troy with all their strength, for to revenge the shame, and recover Helen. So they chose Agamemnon chief Prince of their Host, as he that was prudent and of good counsel.

Now it happened that Castor and Pollux, Brethren of Helen, as soon as they heard their sister was ravished, they took shipping and pursued the Trojans, with a great Army to recover her again. On the third day, as they were on the Sea, there arose a Tempest, Thunder and Rain, that their ships were cast on the Rocks, one here, another there: and finally they were all drowned. And the Pagans say, that these two Brethren were translated with the Gods into the Heaven or Zodiac, and returned in the Sign of two Beasts, forasmuch as they were Brethren and twins. And thus ended their lives by the taking of their Sister. Some Poets feign, that these Brethren are translated into two Stars, (that is) the North-star, and the South-star, which are named after them, Castor and Pollux.

In this place declareth Dares in his Book, the fashions of the Greeks that were before Troy, some of the most noble of them, as he that saw them many times, during the Siege before the City. And he began to speak of Helen, and saith, that she was so fair, that in all the world no man could find a fairer, nor better formed in all members. Agamemnon was long, and white of body, strong of members, and well formed, loving, discreet, hardy, and passing well spoken. Menelaus was of mean stature, hardy in Arms, and couragious. Achilles was of great  
D beauty



beauty, black hairs, and crisp, gray eyes, and great, of amiable sight, large Breasts, broad shoulders, great arms, his Veins high enough, a man of great stature, and had none like unto him among all the Greeks, desirous to fight, large in gifts, and liberal in spending. Tantalus was great of his body, and strong, faithful, humble, flying quarrels, if they were not just. Ajax was of a big stature, great and large in his shoulders, great arms, and always well clothed, and very richly? and was of no great enterprize, and spake very quick. Thelamon Ajax was a marvellous fair Knight, he had black hair, he had great pleasure in Musick, and he himself sung very sweetly: he was of great prowess, and a valiant man of War, without pomp. Ulysses was the most fairest man amongst all the Greeks, yet he was very deceitful and subtil, and delivered his speech joyfully: he was a very great Liar, and so well spoken, that he had no fellow like unto him. Dyomedes was great, and had a broad breast, and marvellous strong, of fierce sight, false in his promises, worthy in arms, desirous of victory, dread and redoubted: he was greatly injurious to his Servants; and Luxurious, wherefore he suffered many pains. Duke Nestor was of great members, and well spoken, discreet, and very thrifty, gave always good counsel, suddenly he would be very angry, & straightway pleased again: he was the most true friend in the world. Prothelaus was fair, and of a goodly stature, noble and active in Arms. Neoptolemus was great, he had black hair, and great eyes, but joyful and well cheared, his eye-brows smooth, flaming in his words, but he was wise in the law. Palamedes the Son of King Naulus, was of fair shape and lean, stout and amiable, a good man and liberal. Polidarius was passing great, fat and swollen, hardy and high minded, without truth. Mithaon was of mean stature, proud and hardy, one that slept little by night. Brisayda the Daughter of Chalcas, was passing fair, of mean stature, well made, sweet and pitiful, and many men loved her for her beauty: For the love of her came the King of Persia, unto the aid of the Greeks, unto the siege of Troy.

Now of them that were within Troy, the same Dares saith,  
 fir st



there was a rich Temple, in which the God of the Panims was worshipped, and gave answer to the people of such things as they demanded. This Ile was first called Delos, that is as much as to say in Greek, manifestation: forasmuch as in this Ile the Panims saw first the Sun and the Moon after the deluge: therefore they supposed they had been bozn there of their Mothers: for Apollo is the Sun, and Diana the Moon in their language.

Some call this Ile Origie: forasmuch as the Birds that men call Ortiges, in English they be Quails, were first seen there. The Panims gave to Apollo divers names after the divers operations of the Sun. In this Temple was a great Image composed all of the fine gold in the worship of the God Apollo, and albeit the Image was deaf and dumb, yet where Idolatry reigned at that time in the world, the devil put him in the Image, and gave answer to the Panims, of the things they demanded of him. This did the Devil to abuse the foolish people, that at that time believed this Image was very God.

Upon this part the Authoz declareth, from whence came first Idolatry. We find in Historia Ecclesiastica, that when Herod was deceived by the three Kings that returned not again to him, but worshipped our Lord Jesus Christ, as is contained in the Gospel, afterwards departed by another way, &c. Herod purposed to have slain the Child Jesus, therefore the glorious Virgin our Lady, Saint Mary his Mother and Joseph bare him to Egypt. And as soon as our Lady entred into Egypt, all the Idols fell down to the Earth, broken and bruised, according to the Prophecies of Isaiah, that said thus, Ascendet Dominus in nubem levem, & engradietur Egyptum, & movebuntur simulachra Egypti. Shewing that at the coming of our Saviour Jesus Christ, all Idolatry should have an end. And amongst the Jews, Ismael was the first that made an Idol, and that was of earth.

Prometheus made the first among the Panims, and taught others the manner how to make them: but the right beginning of Idolatry, came of Belus King of Assyria, that was Father of King Ninus, when he was dead, his Son Ninus did bury him.



him in a rich Sepulture, and did make an Image of fine gold, to the semblance and likeness of his Father, to have memory of him, and worshipped him as his God, and compelled his folk to worship him: after an evil spirit entred into the Image, and gave unto the people answers of their sundry demands. Thus by the example of him, the simple Panims made other in the worship of their friends, thus proceeded they in Idolatry and there were none but had their particular Gods, that gave unto them their answers of their demands, by the devise of the Enemy, that deceived them, and brought them unto damnation, by the great envy he had against the lineage of men, which God made, to fulfil the places of Paradise, from whence he was cast out for his pride, into hozroz and darkness: after the day of Judgement.

When Achilles and Patroclus were arrived in the Ile of Delphos, they went with great devotion into the Temple of Apollo: and there made their oblations with great liberality, and demanded of him answer concerning their affairs. Then answered Apollo with a low voice. Achilles, return again unto the Greeks, that have sent thee hither: and say unto them, it shall happen for certainty, that they shall go safely to Troy, and there they shall make many batrels: But in the tenth year they shall slay the King Priamus, his Wife and Childzen, and most part of the Country. And there shall none escape, save they only whom they will save.

Of this was Achilles passing glad: And it happened that whilst they were yet in this Temple, a great learned Bishop of Troy named Chalcas, Son of a man named Thistram, which was a wise man, entred into this Temple, and he was sent also from the King Priamus, to have answer of Apollo for them of Troy.

As he then had made his oblations and demands for them of Troy, Apollo answered saying: Chalcas, Chalcas, beware thou return not back again to Troy: but go with Achilles unto the Greeks, and never depart from them, for the Greeks shall have victory of the Trojans, by the agreement of the Gods, and thou shall be to them very necessary in counsel. As Chalcas knew Achilles,



Achilles, that was in the Temple, he approached unto him, and made acquaintance with him, and accompanied together by Faith and Oath: they told each to other what the Idol had said to them: whereof Achilles had great joy, and made great cheer and countenance to Chalcas, and took him with them: sailing so long, they arrived at the Port of Athens, and when they issued out of their Ships, Achilles took Chalcas by the hand, and presented him to the King Agamemnon and to others, and told unto them the answer of Apollo: How they should have victory of the Trojans, and how Apollo bade him not return again to Troy, but hold him with the Greeks, during the war. At these tidings the Greeks greatly rejoiced, and made a feast, and received Chalcas into their company, by Faith and by Oath, and they promised to reward him and do him good.

## CHAP. VII.

How the Greeks with a great Navy sailed towards Troy: and how they arrived at Tenedon three miles from Troy, which they conquered and beat down to the earth.

**A**fter this feast the Greeks had made for the good answers of Apollo, Chalcas went in a morning in the company of Achilles and Patroclus, unto the Tent of King Agamemnon where all the Nobles of the Army were assembled, and he saluted them courteously, saying: Noble Kings and Princes, that be here assembled for vengeance of the injuries done by the Trojans: wherefore tarry you here, after the Gods have given their answer? Think ye not that King Priamus hath his spies among you, and whiles ye sojourn, he furnisheth not his Countrey and City with victual, with horses, and with other necessities? Is not great part of the Summer passed, and ye have nothing enterprized upon your enemies. Beware ye be not ingrateful to the answer of the Gods: and that by your negligence they change not their answer into the contrary. Therefore tarry no longer, but embark your Horse, and go to sea, and cease not until the time the promises of the Gods be accomplished. When Chalcas had thus spoken, each man said he had well  
E
spoken.



spoken. Then the King Agamemnon sent unto all the host, and gave commandement with the sound of Trumpet that every man should make ready to remobe. And presently they entred their Ships and disanchored, hoysed up their sails and sailed a mile from Athens, the air that before was clear began to wax troublous and thick, and a great tempest arose of wind, rain and thunder: insomuch that there was none so hardy but had fear to have dyed, for their Ships were cast by the Sea, one here, and another there, and they supposed to have been drowned. Then said Chalcas to them that were with him, the cause of the Tempest was forasmuch as Diana their Goddess was angry against them, because they departed from Athens, and made to her no sacrifice: and for to appease this wrath, it behoved King Agamemnon to sacrifice to her with his own hand, Iphigenie his Daughter a young Virgin, otherwise the Tempest should never cease. And to speed this sacrifice, he counselled to turn the Paby, and apply it to the Ile of Andill where the Temple of the Goddess Diana was.

When King Agamemnon understood this thing, he was passing sorry in his mind, for he loved his Daughter Iphigenie, with great love: on the other side he was required of all the other Kings and Princes of Greece, that he would make no delay in so great a matter, or to withstand the Sacrifice: wherefore he was banquished by the Princes, and for the love of his Country, he took his Daughter Iphigenie, and in the presence of Kings and Princes, sacrificed her unto the Goddess Diana, presently the tempest ceased, and the air became neat and clean, and the Sea well quieted and in tranquillity. Then he went again into his Ship, and all the other in like manner drew up their sails, and sailed before the wind so far, that they arrived at a Port of the Realm of Troy, nigh unto a Castle called Sarabana. Dares putteth not down what was the cause wherefore King Agamemnon made this sacrifice unto Diana. But Ovid (in the twelfth booke of Metamorphose) saith, it was Iphigenie his Daughter. And when they of the Castle saw the great Paby at their Port, they armed them, and came unto the Port, thinking to defend their Land against the Greeks, and assailed them



them that were come on Land, and being weary of the trabel of Sea : But the Greeks issued presently out of their Ships in great number all Armed, and chased them unto their Castle, and entred the Castle with them, and put them all to death, took the booties, after beat down the Castle, and then re-entred again into their Ships, and sailed to the Port of Tenedon, and there anchored their Ships.

At this Port was a Castle, well peopled, and full of great riches, being three miles from Troy. When they of the Castle saw the Greeks, they ran to arms, and furnished their Castle with good fighters, the other issued out, and came to the Port, where they found the Greeks then issued out of their Ships all armed, and took all that they could find. Thus began the battel very fierce and mortal, and there were enough slain on both parties : more of the Greeks than of the Trojans. But as soon as the great strength of the Greeks were landed, the Trojans could no longer suffer nor abide, but put them to flight, some to the Castle and the other fled unto Troy. Then the Greeks besiered them, and laid the Castle round about, and they within defended it passing well upon the walls, and slew many by shot and by Engines, but the Greeks dressed their Engines about the Castle, and set their Ladders unto the walls, and went up on all sides, they within defended them valiantly, and made them fall in their Ditches, some dead, some hurt. But the Greeks that were so great in number, sent always new folk to the assault whereof they within were grown so weary, that they retired back from their defences : and then the Greeks entred by force into the Castle, and there slew all they found, without sparing of any man or woman, and pillaged all that was good, and after beat down both the Castle and the houses unto the Earth, and put in fire, and burnt all up. After they re-entred into their Ships joyous of their gain they had gotten in the Castle.

## CHAP. VIII.

How the Greeks did send *Dymedes* and *Uisses* again to the King *Priamus*, to have *Helen* and the Prisoners, and of their answer.

When the Greeks had destroyed thus the Castle and Edifices of Tenedon : then *Agamemnon*, that had the



charge of all the Host, commanded that all the bootie and gain of these two Castles should be brought forth, and it was done presently as he commanded: and he as a wise King distributed the gain, unto each man after his desert and quality. And caused all the noble men to assemble on the plain of Tenedon before King Agamemnon: and when they were come, King Agamemnon spake in this manner. My friends and fellows that be here now assembled, for so just a cause as each of you knoweth, and in so great puissance, that there is and shall be tidings thereof in all the world: yet let it please the Gods, that it be without pride or felony: for it is, that of the sin of pride groweth all other vices, and the Gods resist and withstand the insolent and proud people, therefore we ought to put away all pride from our works: and in especial this work here, and use the way of justice that none may blame us.

We know that we are come thus far, to take vengeance of the injuries and wrongs that King Priamus hath done to us, and we have done to him now great damage. We may know for truth, that they have assembled into the City of Troy, great powers, to defend them against us: and also the City is great and strong: and we know that they be upon their own heritage, that is a thing which troubleth their force and strength. I say not these things, for any doubt but that we shall have victory, and destroy this famous City, though it be strong: only for our worship, to the end, we be recommended to have conducted this work by great discretion, and without pride: for that oftentimes by over hasty enterprizes, a thing of great weight, may come to a mischievous end. We know it is long ago that King Priamus did first require us, by his special Messengers, that we would render unto him his Sister Exione: and that by our haughtiness and pride we would not deliver her again: if we had then delibered and sent her home again, these evils had never happened in the Isle of Cithar as they be. And the Queen Helena (who is of the noblest of Greece) had never been ravished nor led away: also we had not enterprized the pain nor labour we now are in. And there is none of us that knoweth what shall happen to him good or evil: therefore if ye think good that:



that we should return into our Countrey, without suffering of more pain, with our honour and worship, we will send to King Priamus our special Messengers, and bid him to deliver again to us Helen freely, and that he restore to us the damages that Paris hath done to us in the Isle of Cithar: if he will so do our return shall be honourable, and we can ask no more of him by right. And if he refuse, we shall have two things that shall fight for us, that is, Justice and puissance: and when men shall hear of our offers, they will give the wrong and blame to the Trojans, and to us the laud and praise: and we shall be excused of all damages that we shall do to them, after these offers. Therefore advise you among your selves, what ye will do.

There were some bad people, that blamed this counsel, and some allowed it: Finally they concluded to do as Agamemnon had said. Then they chose for their Messengers Dyomedes and Ulysses, to go to Troy, and make their legation, which took their Horses, and went incontinently, and came to Troy about mid-day, they went straight to the Palace of King Priamus, and tied their Horses to the Gate, after went up into the Hall, and in going up they marvelled greatly at the rich works they saw in all the Palace, especially of a tree that they saw in a plain which was made by Magick, marvellously composed, and of great beauty, for the stock beneath, was no thicker but of the greatness of a spear, passing long and high, and above branches of gold and silver leaves that spread over the Palace, save a little, it covered all: and the fruit of the said tree was of divers precious stones, that gave light and brightness. and also did much please and delight them that beheld it. They went so far, that they came into the hall where King Priamus was accompanied with noble men. And without saluting the King or the other, Ulysses said in this manner.

King Priamus, marvel nothing that we have not saluted thee, forasmuch as thou art our mortal enemy. King Agamemnon (from whom we be Messengers) commandeth thee by us, that thou deliver and send unto him Queen Helen, whom thou hast caused most vilely to be ravished and taken from her Husband, and that thou make satisfaction for all damages that Paris thy



son hath done in Greece: if thou so do, I suppose thou shalt shew thy self a wise man: but if thou do not, behold what evils may come unto thee and thine: for thou shalt dye an evil death, and all thy men, and this noble and famous City shall be destroyed.

When King Priamus heard Ulysses thus speak, he answered, (without demanding any Counsel: ) I marvel greatly, at thy words, that thou requirest of me a thing that a man vanquished and overcome, and one that could defend himself no more but with great pain would accord to thee. I believe not that the Greeks have such puissance which thou hast said unto me: they require of me amends, and I ought to demand the like of them.

Have not they slain my father and my Brethren, and led away my Sister in servitude, whom they deign not to marry honourably, but to use her as a common woman? and to have her again I sent to them Anthenor, and would have pardoned them the surplus: but you know the villanies they did use towards my Messenger: and therefore I ought not to hear any thing that ye say to me, but rather dye ballantly, than to agree to your request; let Agamemnon know, that I desire not to have peace nor love with the Greeks, that have done to me so many displeasures. And if it were not ye be Messengers, I should make you dye an evil death. Therefore go away quickly, for I cannot behold you without displeasure in my heart. Then began Dyomedes to laugh for despight, and said thus: Ha King if without displeasure thou canst not see us but two, thou wilt be displeased all the days of thy life: for thou shalt see from henceforth before thine eyes great armies of Greeks, which shall come before the City, and shall not cease to assail it continually, against whom thou canst not long defend thee, but thou and thine finally shall receive bitter death. Therefore thou shouldest take better counsel in thy doings if thou wert well advised.

There were many Trojans that would have run upon the Greeks, and drew their Swords to have slain them: But King Priamus forbade them, and said that they should let two fools utter their folly, and a wise man to suffer it. Ha, ha, sir, said A-



neas, what is that ye say? men must shew to a fool his foolishness, and truly if it were not in your presence, this fellow that hath spoken so foolishly before you should receive his death by my own hand. It appertaineth not unto him to say unto you such venomous threatnings: therefore I advise him, that he go his way quickly, unless he cease to speak so absurd and foolishly.

Dyomedes of nothing was abashed, answered to Aeneas: Whatsoever thou be, thou shewest well by thy words, thou art ill advised, and hot, and I wish that I may once find thee in a place convenient, that I may reward thee for the words thou hast spoken of me.

I see well that the King is fortunate and happy to have such a counsellor as thou art, that giveth him counsel to do villainy. Then Uliesses brake the words of Dyomedes wisely, and prayed him to hold his peace, after said to King Priamus, we have understood all that thou hast said, and will go and report it to our Princes. Incontinently they took their Horses, and returned unto their host, where they found many assembled before King Agamemnon and told them the answer of King Priamus: whereof they had great marvel, and conferred long together for the well ordering of their affairs, since they were assured of the war of the Trojans.

### CHAP. IX.

How Agamemnon assembled in council the Greeks to have victuals: And how they sent Achilles and Telephus to the Realm of Mysie, where they slew King Theutran in battel: And how Telephus was made King: And of the Kings that came to aid and help King Priamus.

After these things, Agamemnon called his council in the plain of Tenedon, and said among all other things; It behoveth us to be advised, how that during the Siege before Troy, our host should be succoured with victual: therefore if ye think good, we will send to the Realm of Mysie, to have victuals from thence continually, for it is a country very commodious: and they that go thither, shall take surety of the Country, that they



fail not to send victual to the host, so long as we shall be in this Country. This counsel pleased the Greeks, and they chose Achilles, and Telephus the Son of Hercules to furnish this message, and to go with a great company of men of arms. In that Province reigned a King named Theutran, and had long reigned in peace, for his Country was peopled with hardy Knights: when Achilles and Telephus with three thousand Knights were arrived in the Isle of Melle, they issued out of their Ships, and went on Land. Then came against them the King Theutran, with a great company of men of foot and Horseback.

Then began the Battel fiercely, and at the skirmish were many Knights slain on both sides. Albeit the Greeks were less in number than the other, they defended themselves well: but their defence had not availed them, had it not been for the great prowess of Achilles, that did great miracles with his body, as he that was the most strong and valiant of the Greeks: for whosoever he smote he dyed, and there could no man stand before him. When Achilles espied King Theutran, in the midst of his people, did great damage to his folk, he thrust into the greatest press of his enemies, and beat down before him all he found, till he came to King Theutran: and hewed his helm, and smote him down to the ground, and had slain him, had not Telephus been, which put himself between them, and prayed Achilles humbly that he would not slay him, nor do him any more harm than he had: Then the King cryed to Achilles for mercy. Then said Achilles to Telephus, what moveth thee to pity our mortal enemy, that is come to assail us with so great fury: It is reason that he fall into the pit that he made ready for us. Ha, ha, sir, said Telephus, the King was very familiar with my Father Hercules, and also did to me great honour in this Land, and therefore I may not suffer to see him slain. Well then (said Achilles) take him and do with him what thou wilt. Then was their battel finished, the Greeks retired, and King Theutran carried into his Palace as a dead man: for Achilles had sore bruised him. And the King prayed Achilles and Telephus, that they would go with him: who went and were received with great joy and honour.



It was not long after, that this King Theutran, sent for Achilles and Telephus, and said unto them : My friends, I may not long live : and after said to Telephus : My friend, I may no longer live, and I have no lawful heirs of my body to whom I may leave this Realm, which I have gotten with great labour, and had lost long since, had it not been for the worth of all worthies, thy Father Hercules, which was a Shield unto me, against all them that would have taken it from me : he did often fight with them. So thy Father by his great promises, chased them out : since that time I have kept it peaceably, not by merit, but by the vertue of thy Father. And since it happened that thy Father conquered this Realm for me, I having no heirs, it is a reason that thou be heir of my Father : and with these my last words, I leave this Realm unto thee, and all my worldly goods, and make thee mine Heir, and therefore bury me honourably, as appertaineth to a King. And as soon as he had finished these words, he dyed : then Telephus, and the Nobles of the Countrey buried him honourably, and laid him in a very rich Sepulture, whereof was this Epitaph : Here lyeth the body of King *Theutran*, whom *Achilles* slew : who left his Realm to *Telephus*.

Now this Telephus, that before was but a Duke, was made King of Messe, and all the Nobles of the Countrey did him homage, and the people promised him faith and service. Then Achilles did furnish his ships with victual, and ordained Telephus should abide in his new Realm (which he did) and he commanded, in the name of the Greeks, that he should do his diligence, to send unto the Host of the Greeks provision, and he promised him he would perform it without any default. Then Achilles took leave of him, and returned into his ships, and sailed so long, that he and his company arrived at the Port of Tenedon, where they found the Host yet sojourning : when he was landed, he went straight to the Tent of King Agamemnon, where all the Kings and Princes were assembled : and they received him with great joy, as he that all the Host loved much, for his great promises. Then Achilles rehearsed to them, how he arrived at Messe, and of the battel, and  
 how



how Telephus was made King, who promised to furnish the Host with victuals.

Of these tydings the Greeks had great joy, and praised the valour of Achilles, and after each man went unto his Habilion. Then was Achilles receibed with great joy of his Myrmidons that much loved him.

Here the Authoz nameth what Kings and Princes came to the aid of King Priamus to Troy: not of all, but of the most notable. First, came unto their aid, King Pandorus, King Galior, and King Adrastus, with thzee thousand Knights armed.

From the Province of Tholoson came four Kings with fife thousand Knights armed, the King Carras, King Amastus, King Nestor a mighty strong man, and King Amphimachus. From the Realm of Lycia came King Glaucion, with thzee thousand Knights, and his Son Serpedon, one of the strongest Knights in the world, being Cousin to Priamus: from the Realm of Lycaon, came the King Ensemus, with a thousand Knights expert in arms. From the Realm of Larissa came two Kings with fifteen hundred Knights, the King Mistor, and King Capledus. From the Realm of Thabory came King Remus with thzee thousand expert souldiers, and in his company came four Dukes, and seven Earls, that were in League with Priamus: they were all in Armour of Azure colour without other sign, thereby was Remus and his people known in the Battel. From the Realm of Thracia, came King Pilex, and Duke Achamas, with eleben hundred Knights. From the Realm of Pannonie came King Pessemus, and the Duke Stuper his Cousin, with thzee thousand Knights, expert to just and shoot with the Bow.

This is a wild Country full of Forrests and Mountains, there is but little people, many wild Beasts and Birds. From the Province of Boetia, came thzee Dukes with twelbe hundred Knights, the Duke Anserrimus, Duke Fortunus, and the Duke Sammus. From the Realm of Burtin, where grew good spices, came two Kings Brethren with a thousand Knights, the King Boetes, and King Episteus. From the Realm of Papha-



gorie, that is at the Sun-rising, the rich King Philemenus, with three thousand Knights, all their shields of the hides of Fishes, covered with gold and precious stones; this King was as great as a Gyant. From the Realm of Ethiopie, came the King Perseus, and the King of Thicteon with him, that was hardy and wise, with three thousand Knights, that had in their company many a Duke and Earl.

There was with them, Simagon the Son of King Thicteon, From the Realm of Cheres, came the King Theleus and Archilogus his Son, that was of the affinity of King Priamus, and brought a thousand Knights. From the Isle of Argus came two Kings, of whom I have not the names, with twelve hundred Knights.

From the Realm of Eliane, that is beyond the Realm of Amazon, came an ancient King, and discreet, named Epistrophus, and brought a thousand Knights, and a marvellous Beast called Sagittary, the middle was an horse, fore part a man, his eyes red as a fiery coal, and shot like a man with a bow: this Beast made the Greeks fore afraid, and slew many of them with his Bow. In number all the Knights that came in aid of King Priamus, were two and thirty thousand, besides them of Troy, and of India the lesser. And it is not found in writing, that since the Creation of the World, so many Noble Knights were assembled in one place, that prosecuted the quarrel for so little occasion. Oh how Kings and Princes ought to be advised how to begin war, if they might avoid it by any other way.

CHAP. X.

Of the coming of Duke *Palamedes*, and how the Greeks departed from *Tenedon*, by the counsel of *Dyomedes*, and came and took land before the City of *Troy*, and how the Trojans received them in battel right vigorously.

**N**OW the Greeks were not departed from *Tenedon*, when *Palamedes* the Son of King *Naulus* arrived at the Port, with thirty Ships full of Knights armed, all Noble men. At his coming the Greeks were joyful, who murmured before, be-



cause he tarried so long, wherefoze he excused him by sickness that he had.

This Palamedes was holden in great worshop amongst the Greeks, and was the second next King Agamemnon : puissant discreet in arms and very rich. And at his coming, he was chosen to be Counsellor of the Host. Thus were the Greeks many a day and night at the Host of Tenedon, oftentimes assembling them, to advise of the best manner to besiege the City of Troy. At length, after many opinions, they agreed to the counsel of Dyomedes, that was this:

Now, said he, all ye Kings, Princes, and Barons, that are here assembled, we ought to have great shame and dislike, since it is a year agone since we landed in this Country, and have not yet been before Troy. Merily, in this we have given to our Enemies great advantage: that during this time they are purged of great aids, and all their City fortified and fenced with Walls and Bulwarks, that they have leisure to make, and they think that we are not so hardy as to come unto them: therefore the more that we delay to go thither, the more encreaseth our shame and damage: but if we had gone thither, when we came first into the Countrey, we should have more easily gone ashore, than we shall do now: for they are better furnished than they were at that time, of all such things as behoveth to defend them with: therefore I counsel you, that to morrow betimes we put us in good order, and lay siege firmly, as hastily as we may. We know that we shall not do so without great labour: wherein it behoveth every man to employ himself, and to banish fear. For we can prevail no other way nor more honourably as I think.

The counsel of Dyomedes pleased all the Barons; and early in the morning, they re-entred into their Ships, and sailed to the Host of Troy in good order one after another.

In the first front they put an hundred Ships, furnished with Knights and Banners, that waved in the Wind, and after them another hundred: and all the other by order, and they had not sailed far, but they saw the noble City of Troy, and approached thereto as hastily as they might. When the Trojans saw the  
Greeks



Greeks approach toward the City, they mounted upon their Horses all armed, and went forth without order unto the Port. When the Greeks saw the Trojans come in so great number to defend their Port, there were none so hardy but was afraid forasmuch as they could not go on Land, but they armed them incontinent, and did their best to take Land by force.

Of the first hundred Ships, was chief Captain the King Prothelilaus of Philard, that endeavoured with great diligence to bring his Ships within the Port: but the wind being strong blew them into the Port, so strongly against the Shore, that many of them brake, and many Greeks were drowned, and they that might take land took it, and were slain by the Trojans with great torments, in so great number, that the ground was made red with their blood. It is not in the remembrance of any man, that ever Passy won Land with so great damage as the Passy of the Greeks. After this first hundred Ships, the other arrived that followed them: and they within were well provided of great Arbalesters, wherewith they shot and slew many of the Trojans, constraining them to go back.

Then the Greeks landed speedily, and succoured the first that fought at deadly hazard. Then began a battel, The King Prothelilaus that landed with the first, did great marvels with his body, and slew that day infinites of the Trojans. If he alone had not been, all the Greeks that were gotten on the land, had been slain. But what might his defence help, when seven thousand Greeks fought against an hundred thousand Trojans. And that for the great danger wherein they felt themselves, they sold their lives dear, expecting the succours of King Archelaus and King Prothenor, that anon arrived, and would the Trojans or not, they went a Shore, took land, succoured their people valiantly and began again a cruel battel.

After that arrived the Duke Nestor and his folk, that thrust in among their enemies fiercely. There was many a Spear broken, and many an Arrow shot: Knights fell down dead on both sides, and their cry was marvellous to hear. There were slain many Trojans by Archelaus and Prothenor. After arrived the King Ascalus, and King Aglus with their Ships, and



went a land, and assailed the Trojans with great fierceness, and by force made them retire: then came to the battel plenty of new Trojans. Then began the battel to be greater, than it had been all the day before: insomuch that the Greeks were recopled by force unto their Ships, then arrived Ulisses with a great company of his Knights, which thronged into the battel: and the Greeks recovered land, and assailed the Trojans furiously. There Ulisses made great effusion of blood on his Enemies, and immediately his Ensign was made known among them. King Philomenus seeing that Ulisses slew their people, he addressed himself unto him, and beat him off his Horse. Ulisses smote him again, and wounded him in his throat, and cut asunder his original vein, and smote him as half dead. The Trojans ran and took him from the Greeks, and carried him upon his Shield into the City, but had not this misadventure happened to the King, the Greeks had been discomfited. The Trojans laboured much to save him. Then arrived King Thoas, King Agamemnon, King Menelaus and King Thelamon Ajax, with all their forces, and fought very valiantly, and broke their spears upon the Trojans, beat down many, some slain, and some hurt.

When King Prothesilaus departed from the battel, where he had been since the beginning, to recover breath, when he came to the Port, he found all his men nigh dead, for whom he wept exceedingly, and took again his courage, to revenge the death of his men, and went again unto the battel, and slew many Trojans, and smote down many of their horses. Then came to the battel on the behalf of the Trojans King Perseus, with a company of Knights, at which the battel began to be mortal, and there were many Greeks slain, and many made to retire, and without doubt had discomfited them, but the worthy Palamedes soon won footing, and at his coming the Greeks were comforted, then Palamedes performed wonderful deeds with his hand, and addressed himself against Sagamon, the Brother of King Memnon, and Prophet of the King of Perse, that sore grieved the Greeks, and he pierced him thorow the body, and smote him dead to the earth: afterwards he thronged into the great



great press, and beat down all that he met, each man that knew him made him way. And then arose a cry upon the Trojans, that they might not bear the strength of Palamedes. But the most worthiest of all worthies, Hector, when he heard the cry, among his people, issued out of the City, with a great company of valiant Knights, and entered the battel in rich Arms, and bore in his shield of Gold a Lion of Gules. His strength was anon known among the Greeks: he met in his coming the King Prothelaus, that all that day had not ceased to kill the Trojans, and stroke him with his Sword, upon his Helm, that he cleft him to the nose, whereof he fell down dead to the ground. After, Hector thrust into the greatest press, and as many Greeks as he reacht with his Sword he slew. Then each man fled from him, making him way, and then demanded the Greeks one of another what he was, but straight they knew it was Hector, the strongest man of the world, then was there none so hardy, that durst abide his stroke.

Then it happened, that Hector went out to refresh him, whereupon the Greeks took courage again against the Trojans. This happened that day eight or ten times. It was about the hour of Evenlong, when Hector departed from the battel and re-entered into the City: for the Greeks were withal discomfited, then arrived strong Achilles with his Myrmidons, and entered into the battel, with three thousand approved Knights that were with him: then were the Trojans on all sides beaten down and slain, for against Achilles endured no man, but he was beaten down to the earth.

Then arrived all the Raby of the Greeks, and the Knights got a land, and skirmished with the other in the battel: wherefore the Trojans had much to suffer, so that they must flee into their City, and Achilles and the other slew them fleeing: there was a great cry of the hurt men, for Achilles was all doted with the blood of the Trojans, and there was a great slaughter at the entry into the City. There saw the Fathers their Children slain: and the slaughter had been exceeding great, if Troilus, Paris, and Deiphobus had not come with a great company fierce and new, who issued out of the City, and resisted the Greeks,  
and



and made the slaughter to cease, for that the night was nigh, every man withdrew him to his place.

The Trojans kept close their City, and did make good watch, Achilles with the Greeks, returned to their Tents with great glory, which were not yet dressed: but King Agamemnon did cause them to be dressed, and made each man take place meet after his estate. And they that had no Tents nor Pavilions, they lodged under the leaves, in the best manner they could, both themselves and their Horses, and after anchored their Ships, and took out of them all that was necessary for them.

Thus the Greeks set Siege to the City of Troy, and made great fires in the Host. So they were lodged a night together and made good watch, although they had no assaults this night, and they had all the night Trumpets and Minstrels great plenty, that Agamemnon ordained for to comfort the Host. And they rested this night all armed the best they could: This was the first battel of the Greeks and of the Trojans at their coming.

#### CHAP. XI.

Of the second battel of *Troy*, where were many Kings and Barons slain, by worthy *Hector*: and how the *Trojans* had been victorious of their Enemies, had it not been for the request of *Thelamon Ajax*, Cousin of *Hector*.

**I**n the night passed, *Hector* having the charge of them in the City, ordered early his Battels in a plain that was in the City, and put in the first Battel two thousand Knights, and appointed two of his kinsmen to conduct them, *Glaucon*, Son of the King of *Lycia*, and *Asiamolor* his Bastard Brother, and assigned them King *Thesus* of *Thrace*, and *Archilogus* his Brother, that was wise and valiant, and made them issue out of the Gate named *Dardan*, which stood against the Host of the Greeks: In the second Battel he put three thousand good Knights, and appointed them to King *Exampetus* of *Frigia*, and the King *Alcanus* that were Knights of great strength, and recommended them to the guard of the Gods, and made them issue out after the other.

The



The third Battel he gave his Brother Troylus, to conduct with three thousand Knights, and said to them at the departing: My dear Brother, my heart putteth me in doubt of thy great hardiness: wherefore I pray thee that thou govern thee wisely in the Battel, that thou enterprize not such things as thou mayest not atchieve, therefore put not thy body into danger of death, by overmuch weening, whereby thou mightest give joy to thine enemies. Go thy way in the name of the Gods, who conduct and keep thee from peril. Worthy Brother, answered Troylus, you need not doubt of me, for I will do as you have commanded: and then he went forth with his company after the other, and tooze in his Shield three Lions of Gold.

Hector put in the fourth Battel three thousand Knights, and seven hundred, who marched under the conduct of King Huppon and Larissa. This King Huppon was the strongest of all the Trojans next Hector, and had in his company a valiant Knight a Bastard Brother of Hector, named Diamacus. The fifth battel Hector delivered to the conduct of King Cifaine, with all his people, that were strong, and as great as Giants, and the same King bare in his Shield all Azure, without any difference. Hector put in commission in this battel, Polidamas his Bastard Brother with this King, and issued after the other. The sixth battel the King Preneftas led, he had his people well instructed to shoot and draw the Bow, and went without Armour to battel. mounted upon light Horses: Hector commised Deiphobus his Brother to conduct them. With this battel Hector joyned all the worthy Knights of the Realm of Agreste, under the conduct of King Eldras, and King Philon. This King Philon had a rich Chair all of Ivory, Gold, Silver, and precious stones. This Chair was drawn by two strong Knights. With these two Kings, Hector put Epitagore his bastard brother, and they issued after the other. The seventh Battel Eneas led, and a noble Admiral named Eustene, they went after the other. The eighth battel the King of Perse named Perles led: and Paris was the chief Captain, Hector intreated his brother Paris, that he would not assemble unto the Greeks, until the time that he came himself, and said that he would follow  
 G him



him anon. The ninth and last battel, Hector led, and ten of his Bastard brethren after him, all the best Knights of the City were chosen in this battel, to the number of five thousand.

And when Hector was richly arrayed, and armed with good harness, he mounted upon his Horse named Galathee, that was one of the strongest horses in the world. And so (armed and mounted,) he rode unto the King his Father, and said unto him: dear Father, retain with you a thousand and five hundred knights, and all the men of foot of this City, and stand with them in the face of the Greeks, move not, till I send for you, if we have need, that ye help us. And I will send Messengers to certifie you of the estate of the battel: take good heed and keep guard; that our enemies take not the City by policy. And the King answered him: My Son I will do as thou hast said: for next the aid of the Gods, thou art all my hope and trust, and I have no confidence but in thy wit and valour. I humbly pray the Gods to protect and preserve thee from thine enemies.

After these words, Hector went forth after the other. This Hector was very couragious, strong and victorious in battel, and a wise conductor of men of Arms, his Shield was of gold, and in the middle a Lion of Gules. Although he was the last that issued out of the City, yet he alway passed the battels, and put himself before; in the first: the women that were in the City and all the other, went upon the walls to behold the battels: there were the daughters of the King, with Queen Helen, that had great doubt and divers imaginations in her self,

Whiles Hector ordered his battels, King Agamemnon was not idle, but divided his men into six and twenty battels. He put in the first, Patroclus with his people, and with them the folk of Achilles, who was not that day in the battel, for his wounds that he had, he remained in the Tent to cure them. This Patroclus was a rich and noble Duke, and loved so much Achilles, that they were both of one alliance. In the second battel was King Menon, and King Idumeus with three thousand knights: there was the Duke of Athens with all his people. The third battel led the King Achalaphis, and his Son Phineus. The fourth battel led King Archelous, and King Pro-

thenor.



thenor his Brother, with him was Securidan, the strong Knight with all the people of Boetia. The fifth battel King Menelaus led with all the people of Sparta: The sixth battel the King Epistropus led, and the King Celidus with all their people.

The seventh battel led Thelamon Ajax of Salamine, and he had four Carls with him, which were Theseus, Amphimachus, Dorius, and Polidarius. The eighth led King Thoas, The ninth led Ajax Aleus. The tenth led King Philotus: The eleventh the King Idameus and King Neron: the twelfth Duke Nestor: The thirteenth King Exiones: The fourteenth Ulysses: the fifteenth King Humerus.

In the sixteenth were the folk of Protheglaus, much despairing to revenge the death of their Lord: the seventeenth led King Polidarius and King Machaon: the eighteenth the King of Rhodes, the nineteenth King Sampitus, and King Lidorus. The twentieth King Geripulus. The one and twentieth King Philoretes of Larisse. The two and twentieth Dyomedes: the three and twentieth King Oeneus of Cypres. The four and twentieth King Protholas. The five and twentieth King Carpenor. The six and twentieth and last battel, led King Agamemnon, Imperor of all the Host.

When all the battels were set in order on both sides, and there was nothing to do but to meet, then Hector advanced the first, and Patroclus came against him, as fast as his Horse might run, and smote him so strongly with his Spear on his Shield, that he pierced it thorow, but did no more harm. Then Hector assailed Patroclus with his Sword, and gave him a stroke upon his head, that he cleft it in two pieces, and Patroclus fell down dead. When Hector saw him dead, he covered his Arms, for they were exceeding rich and gorgeous, and lighted down to take them, but the King Menon came upon him with three thousand Knights, for to defend the King Patroclus against Hector and said to him thus. Wolf ravenous and insatiable, It behoveth, to seek thy prey in some other place, for here gettest thou none. And then they assailed him on all sides, and would have taken from him his horse Galathee. But Hector by his Promise remounted, would revenge him on King Menon; but King Glau-



cion and King Theseus and Archilogus his Son, came with three thousand, then Hector laid on, and beat down all afoze him: the first that he met, he gave so great a stroke, that he slew him, and after, many moze he beat down and slew.

Thus began the battel on both sides, and Hector came again to the body of Patroclus for to have his Arms, but King Idumeus of Creet came against him with two thousand, and King Menon (that had alwayes his eyes on Hector) letted him, and was so in the way, that Hector might not have his arms, that he so earnestly desired, and suffered great pain forasmuch as he was on foot, but he enforced him with all his courage and began to slay man and horse, to smite off heads, legs, feet and arms, and slew fifteen of the strongest that assailed him. In the meantime, King Menon took the body of Patroclus before him, and carried it unto his Tent. As the Greeks contended to grieve Hector, and to take away his Horse, there was among them a strong Knight, named Creon de la Pierre, that grieved him most: then one of the Serbants of Hector addressed him against this Creon, and gave him a stroke with his Spear, that he fell'd him dead to the earth, after he smote down another, and then he smote down a third, and cryed to the Trojans aloud, that they should come and succour Hector.

With this cry, first came Securabor, one of the Bastard Brethren of Hector, and thrust into the greatest pzel, so fiercely, that he came upon them that most grieved Hector, who had slain moze than thirty of them, and did bestir him, that by force he made the Greeks to recoyl: then was Hector re-mounted, and thrust in among them, and slew great plenty of them, for displeasure that he might not have the arms of Patroclus. When he met with none but he slew, and each man made him way, and feared him.

Then came unto the battel Menesteus Duke of Athens, and joyned him to that battel whereas Troylus was, who performed marvels in arms, and had with him King Sampitus, King Machaon, and King Alcanus. Then began fierce battels: Menesteus addressed him against Troylus, and there fought him with so great force, that he beat him off his Horse, in the great  
pzel.



press of the folk: and Menesteus laboured with all his strength, insomuch that he took him, and led him towards their Tents, with a great company of Knights. When Miseres of Troy cryed to the Trojans, that Troylus was prisoner, and that they should be dishonoured, if they suffered him to be led away. Then the King Alcanus took his Spear, and addrested him unto them that held Troylus, and smote the first to the earth, and smote another, and soze wounded him, and did so much by the aid of his men, that Troylus was rescued, and set again upon his Horse also, by the help of King Sampicus, that came on with all his people, he gave so great a stroke to Menesteus overthwart, that if he had not been well armed, he had been slain. Then Menesteus cryed to his people, and so began among them a mortal battel, there were many slain on both sides.

Among these things, Menesteus was sozry he lost his Prisoner, met Miseres by whom he had lost him, and beat him down, and the same time smote down another Knight. Then came to the battel Huppon and Hixipilus, with two thousand, and against them came Menelaus and Prothenor with their folk, and there began a mortal skirmish.

After came Polidamas the Son of Anthenor, with a great company, and thrust in on the other side among his enemies, After came King Remus from Troy, with three thousand men, and against them came Menelaus, with his people. Menelaus addrested him against King Remus, and they smote each other to the ground. Then Polidamas the Nephew of Helen, a young man of twenty years old, addrested him against Remus, and Remus gave him a stroke with his Spear, that he smote him to the earth, whereof Menelaus had great sorow, for he loved him much, and in rebenge he gave so great a stroke to Remus with his Sword, that he smote him down as dead, When King Remus was so beaten down, his men thought he had been dead, and would have fled, had it not been for Polidamas that retained them, and did so much, that they took their King so hurt as he was, and bore him home in safety. Then King Celidus, that was the most fair King of the world, addrested him to Polidamas, and smote him with his Spear, but he



could not remobe him. Polidamas gave so great a stroke with his Sword that he smote him to the Earth. Among all these things Hector came beating down his enemies, and made way before him in slaying of worthy Knights, so far, that he came upon them of Salamine, that King Thelamon conducted, who slew many of the Trojans, and beat them down by his great prowess. Then King Theuter gave a stroke with his Spear of Hector, that he made him a deep wound: and Hector in his great ire encountred an Admiral of the Greeks, and slew him with his Sword. Then was Hector closed with his enemies on all parts: there was of the Greeks, the King Theseus, and he spake to Hector, and warned him he should go out of the battel, and said, it were damage for all the world to lose such a Knight: and Hector thanked him courteously.

In this while Menelaus and Thelamon assailed Polidamas, and Thelamon that addressed him first, smote him with his spear, and after gave many strokes, insomuch that they brake the lace of his Helm, and took him and had led him away, had not Hector been, which was not far off, who smote among them that held him, and slew and hurt many of them, and by his valour slew thirty of them: and kept Polidamas with him. Then came together King Menelaus, and King Thelamon, with all their people, and smote in among the Trojans by so great fierceness, that they made them go back, notwithstanding the great prowess of Hector, that was with the other, that did marvels in his person.

And then was his fierce and gallant warlike horse Galathee slain under him, and then he defended himself on foot so marvelously, that there was no man so hardy of the Greeks that durst approach him.

When his Brethren knew the greater danger that he was in, they ran all to that part. Then was Thelamon sore hurt, and Dynadorus (one of the Bastard Brethren of Hector) gave a stroke to Polixenus, a noble man, that he slew him, beating him down from a great Horse, and took the Steed unto Hector, who forthwith mounted upon him. There were marvels of Arms done by the Bastards. Then came on Deiphobus, with  
all



all his Host, to wherein he had great stoe of Archers, that hurt and slew great stoe of the Greeks. And Deiphobus gave to King Theuter a great wound in the visage. Then began the battel as mortal as it had been all the day. There was Theseus assailed by Quintelenus, one of the Bastard Brethren of Hector, and of King Moderus, and was taken and led away: but Hector delibered him, for the courtesie that he had done to him a litle before.

Then came to the battel of the Greeks, King Thoas, and King Philotes: but King Thoas addressed him against Cassilanus, one of the bastard Brethren of Hector, and gave him a stroke, that he flew him to the earth: Hector then smote so angrily amongst the Greeks that he flew many of them, and put the rest to flight. Then came to the battel Nestor, with six thousand knights: and King Esdras, and King Phylon, that did great marvels of Arms against them.

At this assembly there were many Knights slain, of the one part and of the other. King Phylon, that did great marvels in arms, was enclosed round with the Greeks, and had been slain, if Jecomas and King Esdras his Father, had not delibered him. Hector and his Brother did marvels with Polidamas, and had put all the Greeks to flight, but that Menelaus and Thelamon resisted them strongly.

Then came Eneas to the battel with his Host, and put in with Hector and the other, and by force put the Greeks to flight, whereof Ajax had much sorrow: also as he looked behind him he saw the Banners that came to the battel, which had not been there, where was all the chief flower of the Chivalry of Greece. Then prayed he them that fled, that they would abide, and begin a new battel. Ajax and Eneas encountred so hardy, that they fell both to the earth. And then came Philotes with three thousand knights, and made the Trojans go back, and smote Hector with his Spear, but he could not remone him: and Hector gave him a stroke with his Sword, that he sorely hurt him. Then came to the battel King Humerus, and King Ulfes, with all their people in good order, and they had in their Host ten thousand knights, which did the Trojans great hurt, that were

weary.



weary. To their succours came Paris, and in his coming smote the King of Frigie, who was Cousin to Uliſſes that he ſlew him, whereof the Greeks had much ſorrow: and Uliſſes ſuppoſed to have ſmitten Paris with his ſpear, but he ſmote his Horſe and ſlew him, and Paris fell to the earth. Then Troylus gave to Uliſſes a ſtroke, that he wounded him in the face, and made the blood ſpring out as the Wine runneth out of a Tun, and Uliſſes hurt him again. And truly the Trojans had then fled, had it not been for the great Promiſes of Hector, and his brethren, for Hector ceaſed not to put himſelf in the greateſt preſs, here and there, and each man that knew him made him way.

When he ſaw that his people could not endure the great ſtrength of the Greeks, he withdrew them, and told them what injuries the Greeks had done them, and what they will do if they come to their conqueſt, and then admoniſh them to do well, and after brought them to a Valley on the right ſide, to aſſail their enemies. There was great ſlaughter of the Greeks: there was King Thoas aſſailed of the baſtard Brethren of Hector, to revenge the death of Caſſibelanus their Brother that he had ſlain: they beat him down off his Horſe, and raiſed off his Helm from his head, and had ſlain him, if the Duke of Athens had not come on, that thruſt in amongſt them, and gave a ſtroke to one of the Baſtards of Quintilinus, that he fell to the ground fore hurt: and Paris ſmote the Duke with an Arrow on the ſide and gave him a great wound: but the Duke ſet not thereby, but maugre them all, he delivered King Thoas from their hands. Then Hector endeavoured to put the Greeks unto flight, but the King Humerus ſhot an Arrow unto Hector, and hurt him in the face, and Hector ran upon him with ſo great ire, that he ſmote him upon the head, and cleft it unto the teeth, that he fell down dead.

Then, with blowing of an horn came more than ſeven thouſand Greeks to aſſail Hector that defended him againſt them marvellouſly. After this, he went a little off to his Father, and took three thouſand Knights and brought them to the battle, and then made very great ſlaughter of the Greeks.

Ajax and Hector fought each with other, Menelaus ſlew at  
this



this ioyning an Admiral of Troy. Celidonus slew Moles of Oreb, the pephew of King Thoas. Maudon smote out an eye of King Sedoneus. Sadeilus slew an Admiral of the Greeks: Thelamon beat Margareton and sore wounded him. Famuel beat King Prothenor to the earth. The King of Gaul Jullid against Menesteus, but Menesteus hurt him on the nose with his sword. Then Dianor seeing his Brother hurt addressed him to Menesteus, and smote him down to the earth: then fell upon him the three brethren, that would have slain or taken him, but he defended himself valiantly, and anon he was succoured by King Theuter. But Hector assailed them both, and without fail they had not escaped had not Ajax the valiant Knight come to the rescue, with a thousand Knights that he had in his company. Then came on the King of Perse with five thousand Knights that Paris led: and so did all the other Trojans, and made the Greeks go back by force. Dares writeth in his Book, how that Hector slew a thousand Knights in this assault.

Among all other things, Hector encountred King Menon befoze a Tent and said to him: Ha, evil traitor that thou lettedst me to take the Arms of Patroclus: and smote him a stroke that he fell to the ground. After Hector alighted down, and smote off his head, and would have taken his arms from him, but Menesteus letted him and smote upon Hector oberthwart by such force that he gave him a wound, and went his way without more tarrying, doubting the fury of Hector. Then Hector went out of the throng and bound up his wound, that it bled no more, and went in again into the press, and slew many Greeks. Dares saith, that after he had bound up his wound, he slew the same day a thousand Knights, and there was none had courage to avenge or defend himself, but he put them all to flight, and the Trojans entred into their Tents, and took all the best they could find.

On this day the Trojans had victorie of the Greeks if Fortune had consented: for they might have slain them all, and eschewed great evils that after came to them. Surely it is not wisdom, when any man findeth his enemy in great peril, to deliver him thereof: for it happeneth oftentimes that he shall ne-



her recover to have his enemy in the same case, but that Fortune will turn her back.

Thus it happened this day to the unhappy Hector, that had the better of his enemies, and might have slain them all if he would, for they sought nothing but to slay. When by great misadventure, there came before him in an encounter Thelamon-Ajax, that was Son of King Thelamon, and Exione, that was Cousin germane of Hector and of his brethren, which was wise and valiant, he addressed him against Hector, and gave him a furious assault, a Hector to him, as both valiant Knights. And as they were fighting, they talked together, and thereby Hector knew that he was his Cousin germane, Son of his Aunt: then Hector embraced him in his Arms, and offered to him to do what he pleased, if he desired any thing of him, and prayed him that he would come to Troy to see his lineage of his mothers side: but Thelamon that intended nothing but to his best advantage said that he would not go at this time. But prayed Hector, that if he loved him so much as he said, he would for his sake, at his instance, cease the battle for that day, and that the Trojans should leave the Greeks in peace. The unhappy Hector accorded unto his request, and blew a horn and made all his people to withdraw into the City. Then had the Trojans begun to put fire in the ships of the Greeks, and had burnt them all, had not Hector recalled them from thence: wherefore the Trojans were sorry of their repeal.

This was the cause wherefore the Trojans missed to have the victory, unto which they might never attain: for Fortune was to them contrary: and therefore Virgil saith: Non est misericordia in bello, that is to say, there is no mercy in battle. A man ought not to be merciful, but take the victory when he may get it.

#### CNAP. XII.

Of the first truce of two months: and of the three battles between them, in which Hector beat Achilles to the ground twice and after slew King Prothenor and cut him in two.

**I**n the morning betimes the Trojans armed them to assail the Greeks: but the Greeks went betimes to King Priamus, and demanded



Demanded truce for two months : and he agreed to them. Then were the dead bodies gathered, as well of the one party as of the other, and some were buried, and some burnt. Achilles was so sorrowful for the death of Patroclus, that he could in no wise be comforted : he made his body to be buried in a fair Sepulture, and so did they of the other : as of King Prothelilaus, and other Kings and Princes that were slain : they that were wounded they did cause to be healed during the truce. Priamus the King did bury his Bastard Son Cassibelanus honourably in the Temple of Venus, and shewed great sorrow for his death, so did all that were there.

When Cassandra heard the sorrow that the Trojans made for the death of their friends, she cryed and said : O ungracious Trojans, make sorrow for your selves, for in likewise shall it happen to you, as it is to your friends : alas, why seek ye not peace of the Greeks, before those evils come to you, and this noble City be destroyed ? alas, why yield ye not again Helen, that the King my Father did cause to ravish by force, wherefore ye shall all be destroyed ? among all these things, Palamedes murmured at the Seigniorie of Agamemnon, saying that he was not worthy to have so great dominion above all other, and that he himself was more worthy to have the Seigniorie of the Host, than Agamemnon : and that he had not the good will and consent of the Princes, but only of three or four : then at that time there was nothing further proceeded.

When the Truce failed, King Agamemnon that had the charge of the Host, ordered early his Battels, and gave the first to Achilles, and the second to Dyomedes, the third to Menelaus the fourth to Menestes the Duke of Athens, and over all the other he ordained good Captains. Hector ordered his battels likewise, and set in the first Troilus, and in all the other he set good Captains, and made all the battels to issue out : and he himself in the front before. When Achilles saw him he ran against him, that they smote each other to the earth, Hector remounted first and left Achilles lying on the earth, and smote in among the other, in the greatest press, and he caught no Knight but he slew him, or beat him down, and went throughout the



battel all made red with the blood of them he had slain. When Achilles was remounted he thrust in among the Trojans and slew many: and went so far, that he encountred Hector again: as he ran to him, and Hector to him, but Achilles was born to the ground: and Hector would have taken his Horse, but he could not for the great succours that Achilles had. So soon as he was re-mounted, he assailed Hector with his Sword, and gave strokes to Hector, that he had almost beaten him: but Hector gave to him a stroke upon the Helm, that he overthrew him, and made the blood spring out of his head. Thus was the battel mortal, the two Knights, if they had not been parted the one from the other, they had been slain: Then came Dyomedes to the battel, and Troilus on the other side, which smote each other to the earth. But Dyomedes re-mounted first, and assailed Troilus that was on foot, and defended himself valiantly, and slew the Horse of Dyomedes: but their men remounted them both by force, and they began again to skirmish, Dyomedes had taken away Troilus, if the Trojans had not put them in peril of death, for to rescue him: and many of them were slain, then came Menelaus on the Greeks side, and Paris on the other side; and thus going and coming, Hector ceased not to beat down the Knights. Then there was a new Knight named Briets, that assailed him fiercely, but Hector with great ire smote him upon the Helm that he cleft his head, and he fell down dead: but Archilogus his Cousin, seeing that Hector would have taken his Horse, Archilogus defended him as much as he could, but Hector ran upon him, and smote his body in two pieces, notwithstanding his Harnesse. King Prothenor addressed him to Hector that took no regard, and smote him to the earth.

And Hector re-mounted anon upon his Horse, and gave King Prothenor a stroke with all his might that he cleft his body in two halbes: Achilles that was his Cousin, seeing that, had so great sorrow, that he and King Archelous contended to revenge his death.

But the Trojans did come upon him with such courage and warlike strength, that the Greeks fainted, and must needs flee, the Trojans followed them unto their Tents, but the night came.



came on, that made them depart, and the Trojans returned in-  
to their City.

CHAP. XIII.

How the Greeks held Parliament how they might slay Hector,  
how they returned to the fourth battel, in which Paris and  
Menelaus encountred, and brought King Thoas prisoner to  
Troy.

**A**fter this battel, when night was come, all the Kings,  
Princes and Barons of the Greeks assembled at the Tent  
of King Agamemnon, and there held a Parliament how they  
might slay Hector. They said that as long as he came to the bat-  
tel against them, they could never vanquish the Trojans. And  
to bring this to end, they requested Achilles that he would take  
it upon him, as well for his strength as his wisdom. And A-  
chilles enterprized it gladly, as he that knew Hector desired  
more his death than of any other: also Hector was he by whom  
he might soonest lose his life. After this Counsel they went to  
rest, till on the morrow betimes they armed them. And Hector  
then issued out of the City well and diligently ordered, and was  
himself before all other in the first battel. And after him came  
Eneas. then Paris, then Deiphobus, after him Troilus, and af-  
ter him the other following each in his order. Then joyned  
all the Trojans together, and were more than an hundred thou-  
sand fighting men. Then began the battel to be horrible and  
mortal. Paris with them of Perse, that were good Knights, slew  
with shot many Greeks and wounded them. Hector encountred  
King Agamemnon, and beat him, wounding him sore. Then  
Achilles assailed Hector, and gave him so many strokes, that  
he broke his Helm. Then Eneas and Troilus came to the res-  
cue of Hector, and Dyomedes came upon that, who addrest  
him to Eneas, and beat him, and said to him in mockery: Ha-  
ha, good Counsellour, that gapest counsel to thy King to offend  
me, know for truth, that if thou come off into these battels, and  
I see: with thee thou shalt not escape without death.

Among these things, Hector assailed Achilles, and gave to  
him



him so many strokes, that he brake his Helm, and weened to have taken him : but the Son of Guideus ran upon Hector, and gave him a stroke with his Sword, that he hurt him very sore. Hector in his ire encountred Dyomedes, and gave him a stroke, that he beat him to the ground : Then Troylus allighted to fight with Dyomedes on foot : but Dyomedes defended himself so valiantly, that it was marvel. And beside them, fought together Hector and Achilles. Then came to the skirmish all the Kings and Princes of Greece, and from the Trojans, came all the Barons that were come to aid them : There began the battel. King Agamemnon and King Pandolus fought together : King Menelaus encountred Paris, and they knew each other well, Menelaus smote him with his Spear, that he gave him a wound, and smote him down, whereof Paris was ashamed. Ulysses beat King Arastous, and took his Horse that was very good, and sent it to his Tent. Pollimetes assailed Huppon the ancient, and slew him. Neoptolemus and King Archilogus fought together. Polidamas beat Palamedes, and wounded him very sore, and after mocked him by reproach. King Selenus and King Carras encountred together, and Carras was sore beaten and wounded. Philomenus beat Anthenor, Phyloteas and King Remus fought together. King Theseus and King Eurialus fought together, and both were sore hurt. And the Bards of King Priamus slew many Greeks, and hurt many Kings. King Thelamon and King Sarpedon justed one against the other, that they fell both sore hurt, and astonied of the anguish they had. King Thoas and Achilles that were Cousins, assailed Hector, and gave him many strokes, and drew off his Helm from his head, and hurt him in many places. Hector gave to him a stroke with his Sword that he cut off half his nose.

To the rescue of Hector came his bastard Brethren, that slew many Greeks and took King Thoas, and wounded King Agamemnon, that he was bozn to his Tent as dead, and King Thoas was led prisoner to Troy. Menelaus endeaboured to grieve Paris, and Paris shot to him an Arrow envenomed, and wounded him, that he was bozn into his Tent, as soon as Menelaus had



had bound up his wounds, he came again to the battel to assail Paris, and he found him and assailed him, but Eneas put himself between them both, forasmuch as Paris was unarmed, and not able to prevent him: and so Eneas led him into the City, to the end that Menelaus should not slay him. Then Hector assailed Menelaus, and weened to have taken him: but there came to the rescue great plenty of Chivalry of the Greeks, wherefore Hector could not come to his intent, then he thrust in, and smote among the other, with help of his folk, that the Greeks fled. And then night coming on made the battel cease.

## CHAP. XIV.

How Priamus would have had King Thoas hanged, and how they fought the fifth battel, in which Hector slew three Kings, and how Dyomedes slew the Sagittary.

**I**N the morning King Priamus would not fight that day, but sent for his council, to wit, Hector, Paris, Troylus, and Deiphobus, Eneas, Anthenor, and Polidamas, and said unto them: We know we hold Prisoner King Thoas, without any evil we have deserved, he is come to destroy us: and therefore I think good, that we make him dye an evil death. What say ye thereto? Ha sir, said Eneas, the Gods forbid that your nobles should do such a villany, since it is so that King Thoas is one of the most noble Kings of Greece, for it might happen that the Greeks might take one of ours, to whom they might do the like, whereof ye might take the greatest grief in the world. It is better as I think, that ye keep safe King Thoas, without doing him hurt, that if by fortune one of ours were taken, we might make an exchange and take one for the other. This counsel seemed good and pleasing to Hector, but King Priamus said if ye do this, it shall seem to the Greeks that we doubt them, and that we dare not put their folk to death: notwithstanding I will do by your counsel. This council finished, Eneas took Troylus and Anthenor, and went to see Helen, whom they found in the great Hall of Illeon, with the Queen Hecuba, and many other noble Ladies, where she made great sorrow, and they



they supposed to have comforted her, so did Queen Hecuba, that said she should take no sorrow, for they of the City would well defend them.

Among these things the Greeks complained of the death of their friends that the Trojans slew, and held themselves very Childzen that they had put themselves in such danger, wherefrom they had well passed, if they had had good counsel: yet it happened that same night, there came so great a wind and rain, that their Tents were all turned upside down, and it seemed that the world should have ended by the great storm, whereof their sorrow was doubled. When it came to the morning that the Tempest was passed, they armed themselves throughout the Host, and went against the Trojans, that then were issued to battel. Achilles addressed himself first to Happon, that was as great as a Gyant, and was King of Larissa, and smote him with a Spear in the breast, that he killed him, and bare him to the earth. Hector slew, in his company, King Anthoneus. Dymedus slew King Antipus. Then King Epistropus, and King Cedus assailed Hector, and Epistropus iusted against Hector, and brake his Spear upon him, and said to him many villainous words, whereat Hector was wonderful angry, and in his exceeding great ire gave him such a stroke that he slew him, and afterward said, that he should go & say his villainous words to them that were dead, such as he was wont to say to the living. Then was Cedus passing sorrowful for the death of his brother, and admonished a thousand Knights to slay Hector, and they assailed him, and beat him off his Horse, and cryed to King Cedus, to slay him: when Hector perceived that, he gave him a stroke and cut off his Arm, wherewith he fell down, then Hector slew him. Eneas slew in this skirmish King Amphymacus. Then went together the most puissant of the Greeks, and assailed the Trojans and slew many, and they went with so great force, that they put the Trojans in a chase, in which Achilles slew King Philes whereof Hector had great sorrow. and in his ire slew King Dalpme, and King Dorcus, thus by the puissance of Hector, the Trojans recovered the field and slew many Greeks.

Then issued out of Troy King Epistropus, with three thousand



land Knights, and they brake ranks, and thrust among the Greeks that recoyled in their coming, he brought with him a Sagitary, that before is made mention of. This Sagitary was not armed, but he bare a strong Bow and a Quiver full of Arrows, and shot strongly. When the Knights of the Greeks saw this marvellous beast, they had no desire to go forth, and they that were before began to withdraw. Among these things, Hector slew Polixenes, the noble Duke that fought sore against him, for by the strength of the Trojans, and the horrow of the Sagitary, the Greeks were driven back to their Tents. It happened that Dyomedes before one of the Tents, was assailed of the Sagitary, and had this beast before him, and the Trojans on his back, so that it behoved him there to shew his puissance. The Sagitary shot an Arrow to him, and Dyomedes not well assured, advanced nigh unto him, and gave him a stroke with his Sword not armed that he slew him, at that time it was past mid day, then the Greeks recovered the field, and made the Trojans flee. Then encountred Hector and Achilles, and with force of their Spears they fought, and fell both to the earth: And as Achilles was first re-mounted he supposed to have led away Galathee the good Horse of Hector: but Hector cryed to his folk, that they should not suffer him. Then they ran upon Achilles, and recovered Galathee, and rendered him again to Hector, that was very glad of him. At this skirmish was Antenor taken and sent to their Tents, notwithstanding, that Polidamas his Son did marvels of Arms to rescue him, but he could not: thus they fought to great damage of both parties, until the night parted them.

## CHAP. XV.

Of the Truce between them, after which began battel again from morn to even, with great damage to both parties, but the Trojans lost more than the Greeks.

**I**N the morning the Greeks sent Dyomedes and Ulysses to King Priamus to have peace for three months. King Priamus assembled his council upon this thing, and each man agreed  
 I . . . . . Tade



save Hector, that said the Greeks feigned them to bury their dead bodies, and they lacked victual, therefore required Truce, to the end, that du. ing this time they might provide them of victual, and we daily waste ours, whereof we may soon have scarcite: yet he would not stand against the opinion of so many wise men but agreed, and the truce was accorded for thre months. This truce during, King Thoas was delibered instead of Anthenor, whom they sent to the Trojans. Chalcas that by the commandment of Apollo had left the Trojans, had a passing fair Daughter, named Briseida, which he prayed King Agamemnon and the other Princes, that they would require King Priamus to send Briseida to him. They prayed earnestly to King Priamus at the request of Chalcas, but the Trojans blamed soze Chalcas, and called him false Traitor, and worthy to die, that had left his own land and his natural Lord, to go into the company of his mortal enemies: yet at the earnest desire of the Greeks, King Priamus sent Briseida to her Father.

The Truce during, Hector went on a day to the Tents of the Greeks, and Achilles beheld him gladly, forasmuch as he never saw him unarmed. And at the request of Achilles Hector went into his Tent: and as they spake together of many things, Achilles said to Hector, I have great pleasure to see thee unarmed forasmuch as I never saw thee so before. Yet I shall have more pleasure, when thou shalt dye of my hand, which thing I most desire. For I know thee to be strong, and have oftentimes proved it, to the effusion of my blood, whereof I have great anger: and much more sorrow, forasmuch as thou slewest Patroclus, that I loved the most of the world. When thou mayest believe that before this year be past, his death shall be avenged upon thee, by my hand, and I also know thou desirest to slay me.

Hector answered and said: Achilles, if I desire thy death, marvel nothing thereat: for thou art mine enemy, and art come into this land to destroy me and mine, I would have thee know that thy words fear me nothing at all: yet I have hope that within two years, if I live and continue in health, and my sword fail me not, thou shalt dye by my hands, and not thou only, but the greatest part of the Greeks: for among you ye have enter-  
prized



Prized a great folly. And I am assured thou shalt dye by my hand ere I shall dye by thine. And if thou think thou mayest defend thee against me, make it so that all the Barons of thy host do accord, that we fight body against body, and if it happen that thou vanquish me, my friends and I will be vanquished, out of this Realm and leave it unto the Greeks, therefore I shall give good pledge. And herein thou mayest profit many other, that may run in danger, if they follow the battel: and if it happen that I vanquish thee, then all of thy host depart hence, and suffer us to live in peace. Achilles chafed with these words and offered to fight this battel, and gave Hector his gage, which he took and received gladly.

When Agamemnon knew of this offer, he went hastily unto the Tent of Achilles, with a great company of Noble men, which in no wise would accord to this battel, saying that they would not submit, so many Nobles under the strength of one man: and the Trojans said in like manner, save only King Priamus that would gladly agree, for the great strength he found in his Son Hector. Thus was the fight broken, and Hector departed and went again to Troy.

When Troylus knew that Briseida should be sent to her father, he made great sorrow, for she was his Sovereign Lady of love, in likewise Briseida loved earnestly Troylus, and made also the greatest sorrow of the world, to leave her Sovereign Lord in love. There was never so much sorrow between two Lovers at their departing. Who that list to hear of all their love, let him read the book of Troylus that Chaucer wrote, wherein he shall find whole stories, which were too long to write here, but finally Briseida was led unto the Greeks, and received honourably.

Among them was Dyomedes, that anon was enamored with the love of Briseida, when he saw her, and in riding by her side he shewed her all his mind, and made her many promises, desiring her love: when she knew the mind of Dyomedes, she excused her: saying, she would not agree to him, nor refuse him at that time, for her heart was not disposed to answer otherwise. Of this answer Dyomedes had great joy, forasmuch as he was not



refused utterly, and he accompanied her unto the Tent of her Father, and helpt her down off her Horse, and took from her one of her Globes, which she held in her hand, and she suffered him sweetly. Chalcas receiued her with great ioy, and when they were in priuity between them both, Briseida said to her Father these words.

Ha, ha, my Father, how is thy wit failed that wert wont to be so wise, and the most honoured and beloved in the City of Troy, and governedst all that was within, and hadst so many riches and possessions, and now hast been Traitor, thou that oughtest to haue kept thy riches, and defended thy Country unto death? How shall this turn to thy shame? Surely thou shalt never get so much honour, as thou hast gotten reproach: and thou shalt not only be blamed in thy life, but also ill spoken of after thy death, and be damned in Hell. And me seemeth yet, it had been better to haue dwelled out from the people upon some Isle of the Sea. than to dwell here in this dishonour, thinkest thou that the Greeks hold thee for true and faithful. thou art openly false and untrue to thy people: Surely it was not only the God Apollo that thus abused thee, it was a company of Devils: as he thus spake to her Father, she wept grievously for the displeasure that she conceived.

Ha, ha, my daughter, said Chalcas: thinkest thou it is a fit thing to despise the answer of the Gods, and especially in that that touches my health? I know certainly by their answers, this War shall not endure long, this City shall be destroyed, and the Nobles also, and the Burgeses and therefore it is better for us to be here safe, than to be slain with them, thus finished they their talk.

The coming of Briseida pleased much all the Greeks, and they came and feasted her, and demanded of her tydings of Troy, and of King Priamus, and them that were with him, and she answered courteously to all their demands. When the Nobles that were there, promised to defend her, and hold her as dear as their Daughter: then each man went into his Tent; and there was none of them but gave her a jewel at departing: it pleased her well to abide and dwell with the Greeks: and she forgot the noble



noble City of Troy, and the love of noble Troylus. O how soon is the purpose of a woman changed: Surely sooner than any man can say or think: Even now Briseida accused her Father of treason, which she her self exerciseth in forgetting of her Country, and true friend Troylus.

## CHAP. XVI.

How the Greeks and Trojans began the sixth Battel, that lasted thirty days, in which were many Kings and Princes slain on both sides, and how Dyomedes smote down Troylus off his horse, and sent it to Briseida his Love, that received it gladly.

**A**fter the three Months Truce was expired, the Trojans provided for Battel. And when Hector had ordered all his battels, he issued out first, and took with him fifteen thousand and Troylus followed him with ten thousand Knights: after him came Paris with three thousand good Archers, and well horsed. After came Deiphobus with three thousand: after him Eneas, and all the other in order, there were this day on the Trojans party, more than an hundred thousand valiant fighting men.

On the Greeks party, came first Menelaus with seven thousand Knights, after him Dyomedes with as many, and then Achilles who led eleven thousand, then King Pampytus with a great multitude of Knights, and the other after, as they were appointed. The King Phyles advanced him first, and Hector ran against him so strongly, that he slew him with his Spear. Then there arose a great cry for his death among the Greeks, and the slaughter began so great, that it was an horrible sight to see, as well of the one side as of the other. King Pampytus slew many Trojans, for to revenge the death of his Uncle, and assailed Hector, but Hector gave him a stroke that he slew him, and to revenge his death, the Greeks slew many of the Trojans. Achilles slew many Noble men, among whom he slew Duke Byraon, and Euforbe that was a great Nobleman. Hector was this day sore hurt in the face, and knew not who had done it, therefore the Trojans recyled to the Walls.



When Hector apparently saw upon the walls, Queen Hecuba his Mother, and his Sisters, he was ashamed, and furiously assailed King Menon, Cousin of Achilles, and gave him so many strokes with his Sword upon his Helm, that he slew him in the sight of Achilles, that was mad for anger, and took a strong spear and ran against Hector, and brake his Spear upon him, but he could not remove him: and Hector gave him a stroke that he made him tumble under his Horse, and said to him: Achilles, Achilles, thou contendest to approach me, but know thou approachest thy death. And as Achilles would have answered to Hector, Troilus came between them with a great number of Hrs. And there were slain more than five hundred Knights of the Greeks, and they put them back by force. Then Menelaus came to the rescue with three thousand fighting men.

And on the Trojans side came King Ademon, that juffed against Menelaus, and hurt him in the face: and he and Troilus took him, and had led him away, if Dyomedes had not come the sooner, with a great company of Knights, and fought valiantly with Troilus at his coming, and smote him down, and took his Horse and sent it unto Briseida, and did cause to say to her by his Servant, that it was Troilus his Horse, her Love: and that he had conquered him by his prowess, and prayed her from thenceforth that she would hold him for her love.

Briseida had great joy of these tidings, and said to the Servant, that he should say unto his Lord, she might not hate him, that with so good a heart loved her. When Dyomedes knew the answer, he was joyful, and thrust in among his Enemies: but the Trojans made the Greeks go back, and recoil unto their Tents, and had slain them all, if King Agamemnon had not succoured them with great strength. Then began the battle mortal, and the Greeks recovered the field, and put the Trojans back to their Ditches. Then came Polidamas to the rescue, with a great number of valiant Knights, and did goodly exploits of war. Dyomedes addressed him to him, but he was braten off his Horse, by Polidamas, who took the Horse and delivered it to Troilus, that fought on foot, and he presently mounted thereupon.

Then



Then came Achilles against Troylus, whom Troylus recei-  
ved gladly, and beat down Achilles, which remounted lightly,  
and assailed Troylus with his Sword, Troylus defended him va-  
liantly. Then came on Hector, who had at this time slain more  
than a thousand Knights: but the Greeks defended Achilles,  
and were so sore oppressed, that they could hardly defend him a-  
ny longer, he had been slain or taken, if King Thelamon and the  
Duke of Athens had not succoured him. They set him again on  
his Horse, then the night came on, that parted them. They  
fought thus thirty days continually, to the great damage of  
both parties: and there were slain six of the Bastard Sons of  
King Priamus, and Hector was hurt in the face, therefore King  
Priamus demanded truce of the Greeks for six months, and they  
accozded to him.

## CHAP. XVII.

How the Greeks and Trojans began the seventh battel, that du-  
red twelve Days, and after began the eighth battel, where-  
in Hector was slain by Achilles, and they were driven back in-  
to their City by force to their great damage.

**D**uring the six months Truce, Hector sought to be healed of  
his wounds, and played in the noble Hall of Ilion, (as the  
History saith) the beautifullest Palace in the world. During  
the Truce, King Priamus buried his six bastard Sons, each in  
an honourable Sepulture. Among all other things, Dyomedes  
suffered great grief, for the love of Briseida and could not rest  
for thinking on her, and many times requested her love, but she  
answered him wittily still giving him hope without certaintie:  
by which Dyomedes was more enflamed. When the six months  
were past, they began to fight for twelve days space from  
morning till night, there were many slain on both sides. And  
there happened a great mortality in the Host of the Greeks, by  
reason of the great heat: therefore Agamemnon required truce  
which was accozded to him.

The night before the Truce was expired, Andromache the  
Wife of Hector had two fair Sons by him, whereof the one  
was



was named Laomedon, the other Astromates, this Andromache saw that night a marvellous vision, and it seemed to her that if Hector went the day following to the battel, he should be slain. And she had great fear and dread of her Husband, mournfully requesting him, that he would not go to the battel that day: whereof Hector blamed his wife, saying, that she should not believe nor give faith to dreams. The next morning Andromache went to King Priamus, and the Queen, and told them the Merity of her Vision: and praying them, that they would do so much at her request, as to dissuade Hector, he should not in any wise that day go to the battel.

It happened, that day was fair, and the Trojans armed them, and Troylus issued first into the battel, after him Eneas, after Paris, Deiphobus, Polidamas, and King Sarpedon, King Epistropus, King Croys, and King Philomenus, and after all, the Princes that were come in aid of the Trojans, each man in good order. King Priamus sent to Hector, that he keep him that day from going to battel. Wherefore Hector was angry, and reproached his Wife, as he that knew well, that this commandment came by her. Notwithstanding he armed him: and when Andromache saw him armed, she took her little Childzen, and fell down at the feet of her Husband, and humbly prayed him that he would unarm him: but he would not do it. Then she said, if not for my sake, yet have pity on your little Childzen, that I and they dye not a bitter death, or that we be not led into bondage into strange Countreys.

Then came Queen Hecuba, and Queen Helen, and the Sisters of Hector, and they all at once humbly entreated him with tears in their eyes, to unarm him, and come with them into the Hall: but he would not do it for their prayers, but descended from the Walace thus armed as he was, and took his Horse, and would have gone to the battel. But at the request of Andromache, King Priamus came running, and took him by the bzidle and said to him so much, that he made him return but in no wise he would be perswaded to unarm him.

Among all these tyings, the battel was mortal on both sides. Dyomedes and Troylus Iusted together, and had slain each



73  
each other, if Menelaus had not parted them. Then King Miferes of Frigia beate Menelaus, and hau taken him, when Eneas came, he would haue slaine him, but Dyomedes deliuered him, and slew many Trojans.

Then came King Thelamon with three thousand, and Iustied against Polidamas, and unhorsed him. But Troylus succoured him, and made him remount his Horse: after came Paris and Achilles on the other side, that smote among the Trojans by so great force with the help of his people, that he put them to flight unto the City: in this chase Achilles slew Margaretton, one of the Bastards of King Priamus.

When Hector knew that Achilles had slaine Margaretton, he had great sorrow, and did lace on his Helm. and went to the battel that his Father knew not of, in his coming he slew two noble Greek Dukes, and Duke Corriphus, and Duke Bastidus, and he thrust into the Greeks, and slew as many as he could reach, that the Greeks fled befoze him, and there was none so hardy that durst abide his strokes: thus the Trojans returned and slew the Greeks on all sides. Then the Greeks took Polidamas, and had led him away, had not Hector deliuered him, and slew many Greeks. Then an Admiral of Greece named Leocides assailed Hector, and Hector slew him.

When Achilles saw that Hector slew thus the Nobles of Greece, and many other, that it was maruel to behold, he thought if Hector were not slaine, the Greeks should neuer haue victory. Forasmuch as he had slaine many Kings and Princes, he ran upon him marbellously, and a noble Duke of Greece with him, named Policeus, that was come for the lobe of Achilles, the which had faithfully promised to giue him his Sister in marriage. But Hector slew the same Duke in the sight of Achilles. Then Achilles thinking to reuenge the death of Policeus, assailed Hector furiously: but Hector cast to him a dart fiercely, and made a wound in his thigh: Then Achilles issued out of the battel: and did bind up his wound, and took a great Spear on purpose to slay Hector if he might meet him. Among all these things, Hector had taken a Noble Baron of Greece, that was richly armed, and to lead him out of the Host at his ease,



ease, he cast his shield behind him, and left his breast uncovered and as he was departing, minding not Achilles he came privily unto him, and thrust his Spear in his body, and Hector fell dead to the ground. When King Menon saw Hector dead, he assailed Achilles by great force, and beat him to the ground, and hurt him grievously, but his men carried him into his tent upon his shield, Then for the death of Hector, were all the Trojans discomfited, and re-entred into their City, bearing the body of Hector with great sorrow and lamentation.

## CHAP. XVIII

Of the rich Sepulture of Hector, and great lamentations and weepings the Trojans made for his death: and how Palamedes was chosen Governour of the host of the Greeks.

**N**OW Hector being dead, and his body borne into the City, there is no tongue can express the sorrow that was made in the City, generally of men and women: there was none but had rather have lost his own son than him: every one said, that from henceforth they had lost all their hope: thus they demeaned long their extrem grief. The noblest Kings and Princes carried the body unto the Palace of Ilion. When King Priamus saw him, he fell down in a swoon upon the body, that they were constrained to take him away by force. There all his Brethren made great lamentations. What might men say of the sorrow the Queen his Mother made, and afterwards his Sister? What sorrow made his Wife? There can no man express their several griefs. And forasmuch as the body might not long endure without corruption, King Priamus took counsel of wise Masters, how they might keep the body of Hector without Sepulture: then he did cause to be made by their advice and counsel a rich sepulture upon four pillars of gold, lift upon high, upon the which was made a rich Tabernacle of gold and precious stones: and on the four corners of the Tabernacle, were four Images of gold, like Angels: and above the Tabernacle, there was a wonderful great Image of Gold, that was made after the semblance of Hector, and had the visage toward



wards the Greeks, and held a naked sword, with which he menaced them: there was in the midst of the Tabernacle a place void, where the Masters sate, and put the body of Hector, flesh, and bones, clad in his robes, and stood up on his feet, and might endure a long time in this wise without corruption, by a certain device that the masters had set on the head of Hector: to wit, a Vessel that had a hole in the bottom full of fine balm, that distilled and dropped into his head, and spread down into all the parts of his body, as well within as without, and they often filled the Vessel with balm. Thus the body did not impair for the great vertue of this balm.

And all the people that desired to see Hector, saw him as perfectly as if he lived. To this Sepulture, the same Masters made a Lamp of fine gold, burning continually without going out, and afterward, they made a closure, that no man should approach unto this Tabernacle without licence. In this Temple King Priamus ordained great plenty of Priests to pray unto the Gods without ceasing, for his Son Hector, and gave to them good rents.

Among these things, King Agamemnon assembled all the Kings and Princes of his Host, and said unto them: *Worthy Kings, Princes, and Barons, we ought to render thanks to the Gods, with devout hearts, that have suffered our courageous enemy Hector to be slain by the hand of Achilles. For whilest he lived, we had no hope to overcome our Enemies. What may the Trojans from henceforth hope for, but only their overthrow? And we may hope in short time for the victory over them and theirs: forasmuch as Achilles is grievously hurt, and may not go to battel, if ye think good, whiles that he may be healed, and the other also that be hurt, (of whom we have many, and also for to bury the dead bodies) we will send to King Priamus, for to have Truce for two months. The counsel liked them, and they sent to King Priamus for Truce, and he agreed thereto.*

During this Truce, Palamedes murmured again at the Seigniorie of Agamemnon, and as they were altogether, Palamedes speaking of this matter, King Agamemnon answered



very discretely, in the presence of them all, and said : Palamedes, thinkest thou I have any pleasure in the Seigniorie that was given to me at the beginning, and have discharged unto this time? Know, it was not my seeking, neither have I any profit thereby: but great cares, and breach of sleeps, lest by my negligence our Host should be ruined or dishonoured : I shall be well pleased to be under the government of another : and I fear no man that can accuse me, for any neglect of my duty. If thou gavest not thy consent to mine election, thou needest not repine thereat : for you were not at that time come, but it was two years after ere thou camest. And if we should have carried your coming, we should have been at the port of Athens, and forasmuch as you shall not think I am desirous of this honour, I desire another should be chosen, and am ready to give consent with the most voyces. When Agamemnon had thus spoken, they proceeded no further that day in this matter. And in the evening Agamemnon caused it to be proclaimed throughout the Host, that each man should assemble early in the morning, before the Generals Tent at the Parliament.

When they were all assembled, Agamemnon said unto them, Royal Princes and friends, I have had until this time, the charge of this undertaking, to order it well : in such wise, that by the sufferance of the Gods, I have executed it with honour until this time. And forasmuch as it is not lawful that an Universitie be ruled alway by one Master, but that every man employ him to the best, and forasmuch as I have conducted this host a long time, I desire ye to make choice of another, that may likewise conduct it discretely. When Agamemnon had finished his words, his speeches pleased every man, and they chose Palamedes to be their Governour : then he went to his Tent.

Achilles that lay sick of his wounds, was angry at the deposing of Agamemnon, and said before all that would hear it, that Palamedes was n thing like unto Agamemnon, in wit and judgement, and that they ought not to change him for Palamedes : but forasmuch as the people had consented, he agreed also.



## CHAP. XIX.

How King *Priamus* went to be revenged on the *Greeks* for the death of his Son *Hector* : and of the Prowesses he did : and of the Anniversary of *Hector*, in which *Achilles* was surpris'd with the love of *Polixena*, the Daughter of King *Priamus*, in such wise that he might endure no rest.

**W**hen the two months Truce were past, King *Priamus* desiring to revenge the death of his Son *Hector*, ordained with his own person his Battels : and set in each battel good Conductors, and he himself led with him five and twenty thousand good Knights. Dares saith there issued out of Troy that day, an hundred and fifty thousand men. Deiphobus was the foremost, and then Paris, and after him came King *Priamus*, *Troilus*, *Eneas*, *Menon*, and *Polidamas*, and they march'd upon the *Greeks*. *Palamedes* made ready his battalions. Then began the battel furious and mortal. King *Priamus* smote down *Palamedes* in his coming, and after smote the *Greeks*, and slew many of them, and performed such deeds of arms that day, that it is almost incredible, a man so ancient and far in years as he was, could do that which he did. King *Serpedon* of Troy, assailed King *Neoptolemus*, who was a strong Knight, and King *Serpedon* was soon born to the earth, who defended him valiantly, and gave a stroke unto King *Neoptolemus*, that made a wound in his thigh. Then came King *Perse* that remounted again King *Serpedon*, with the aid of his men. *Menelaus* and the Duke of Athens, assailed the King of *Perse*, and enclosed him and his people amongst them, and slew the King of *Perse*, and made the *Trojans* recoil : there did King *Serpedon* wondrous matters of Arms.

King *Priamus* and his Bastard Sons, that then followed him ceased not to slay the *Greeks* : and there was none that day, that did so much in arms as King *Priamus*, for his sorrow and anger, made his strength to increase. The *Greeks* advis'd to take the way, which the *Trojans* should return unto the City : and they went thither in great number. And when the *Trojans* recoiled to go to that place, they found themselves in the mid-



dle of their enemies. Then began a mortal battel, there came upon them King Priamus, with a great number by a Wing: and Paris came crossing them with great plenty of fighters, he had great store of Archers, that slew many of the Greeks: and they did so well beset them, that the Greeks were driven to retreat to their Tents. Then the Trojans re-entered their City, and King Priamus sustained the worst of this battel. He sent to the Greeks, to demand a Truce, and they accorded to him. But we find not how long this Truce endured.

Among these things, King Priamus did cause to be carried by land & body of y<sup>e</sup> King of Perse to be buried in his Country. Then was the weeping great in Troy, and especially of Paris, who loved him exceedingly. Now during this Truce the Anniversary of Hector approached, when men should mourn fifteen days in great sorrow, and after should hallow the great Feast of the Funeral, as then it was the custom for Kings and Princes. Then during the Truce, the Greeks went and came into the City safely: so did the Trojans into the Tents of the Greeks: Then Achilles desired to go to Troy, to see the City, and the Feast of the Anniversary of Hector, whom he had slain: and he went unarmed to the Temple of Apollo, where was the Sepulture of Hector, he found there great plenty of noble men and women, that made great sorrow before the Sepulture: and Hector a man might see on all sides whole, in like manner as he was living, by vertue of the balm. There was Queen Hecuba and Polixena her Daughter, that was passing fair, with a great company of Noble Ladies, with their hair dispersed and hanging about their shoulders, making great lamentation. Albeit Polixena made great sorrow, yet it diminished not her beauty, but she seemed so fair in all parts, that Nature never formed fairer than she.

When Achilles had viewed Polixena, he said in himself, he had never seen so comely and fair a woman, nor better formed: and said she was one of the noblest women in the world. Then was Achilles shot with the Dart of love, that stroke him to the heart, that the more he beheld her, the more he desired her, And was so besotted on her, that he thought on no other thing, but



but above in the Temple, as long as the Queen was there : and when she went out, he conveyed his eye after her, as far as he might : but this was the beginning of his misfortune. Afterwards Achilles returned unto his Tent, and when he was laid to sleep, there came many things in his mind, he knew then the danger that Polixena had put him in, and thought in himself, that the strongest men in the world had no power to vanquish him, yet the sight of a fair Virgin had overcome him : he thought, that there was no Medicine in the world might heal him save she.

Then he said : my entreaties, strength, and riches, cannot move her to have pity on me : what hard fortune hath put me in this danger, to love her that hateth me, and by right good cause : for I am come hither to slay her kindred, and have lately slain her noble Brother Hector ? Surely I see no remedy, since she is the noblest Lady in the world. Then he returned him to the wall and wept, and bethought himself how he might obtain the love of Polixena : in these meditations he spent the most part of the night.

## CHAP. XX.

How Achilles sent a secret Messenger to Hecuba Queen of Troy, to request her Daughter Polixena, and the answer : how for the love of her, Achilles assembled the Host of the Greeks, and caused them to depart, and make peace with the Trojans.

**T**he night following, as Achilles was laid on his bed. he thought that he would send his Messenger betimes unto Queen Hecuba, to know if he might find that favour, that she would bestow her Daughter Polixena on him for his Wife, and he would do so much for her, that he would make the Greeks to raise their Siege, and go again into their own Countries, that peace should be made between them. What he thought in the night, he put in execution, and sent a Messenger unto the Queen to require her Daughter, and he related to her all that his Lord commanded him. When the Queen understood the Messenger,



senger, she answered him discreetly : and although she hated Achilles more than any man in the world, yet she said : Friend as much as in me is, I am ready to perform what your master requireth : but certifie him, that I cannot do this of my self, but I will speak to my Husband, and my Son Paris, if you return hither three days hence, I will fully resolve you.

When the messenger heard the Queens answer, he returned to his Lord, and told him all that he had heard : Then Queen Hecuba went to King Priamus her Husband, and told him in the hearing of Paris, what Achilles had said : then the King hanged down his head, and was a long time, not saying a word, after he said : It is (I think) a hard thing, to receive into true friendship, him that hath done us so many injuries, that hath taken away the light of mine eyes, in slaying my dear Son Hector, and therein given hope to the Greeks to obtain the victory : Yet to eschew further perils, to the end my other Sons lose not their lives, and that I may rest in mine old days, I consent with you that he have what he requireth : alway foreseen, that he do what he hath promised without any deception. Paris agreed to this readily, forasmuch as in the promises of Achilles was nothing spoken of Queen Helen.

The third day after, Achilles sent his Messenger again to the Queen, and as he was come before her, she said to him : I have spoken to my Husband, and my Son Paris, and told them the Request, and Promise of your Lord : and they are content that this his request be agreed unto : so that he first perform what he hath promised : so thou mayst say unto him, that he may obtain his desire, if he conduct wisely this thing, as much as in him lieth. The Messenger took leave of the Queen, and came to his Master, and related all that the Queen had said to him. Then began Achilles, to think how he should perform what he had promised to King Priamus, being difficult, because it was not all in his power. But it is a vice proper to foolish Rulers, to promise things that are hard to bring about. And Achilles flattered himself, that for his not giving ayd to the Greeks, he would make them to leave their Siege. Then Achilles by the counsel of Palamedes, assembled all the Kings and Poble-



Poblemen of the Host in Parliament and said as followeth.

My Friends, that be here assembled, to bzing this War to an end, think ye on pour selves, hoto by great rashness and folly, to recover the Wife of King Menelaus, we have lest our Countrey and Lands, our Wives and Childzen, and are come into a strange Land, where we have mis-pended our pzeious hours foolishly, and put our bodies in danger of death, to great and infinite labours: and since we came hither, there are many Kings and Princes dead, and I my self have shed much blood. that never should have happened if we had not begun this folly, Helen is not of so great pzeice, that so many Poble men should dye for her: there is enow in the world both as Poble, and fair as she is, of whom Menelaus might have one or two if he would. And it is not a light thing to overcome the Trojans, for they have a strong City, well furnished with good Fighters, both of Horse and foot: and it ought to suffice us that we have slain Hector, and many other of their Pobles, wherefore we might now return with great honour: and though we leave Helen, have we not Exione: to whom Helen may not compare in nobleness.

Then arose the Duke of Athens, and King Thoas, and contraried strongly the words of Achilles, so did all the other: And said, that he spake neither reason, nor well. Whereat Achilles had great sorrow, and commanded his Mirmidons, they should not arm themselves any moze against the Trojans, and that they should neither give aid nor counsel to the Greeks. Amongst these things, Victuals began to fail, and they had great famine. Then Palamedes assembled all the Pobles of the Host to counsel, and by their advice King Agamemnon was sent unto the City of Messe, to King Telephus, that laded his Ships with victuals, and came safely again into the Host of the Greeks, where he was received with great joy. Among these things, Palamedes caused their Shipping to be repaired and ready if they had need.



## CHAP. XXI.

Of the death of *Deiphobus* the Son of *Priamus*, and how *Paris* slew *Palamedes*: and the *Trojans* chased the *Greeks* into their Tents and set fire on their Ships: and how *Achilles* would not go to battel, for the love of *Polixena*.

When the Truce was past, they began to fight as before. *Deiphobus* in his coming assailed King *Cressus* of Greece, and they iustled together: but *Deiphobus* beat King *Cressus* dead to the ground, whereat the *Greeks* were put to flight. Then *Palamedes* and *Dyomedes*, came with five and twenty thousand men, that resisted the *Trojans*: with them was King *Thelamon-Ajax*, that addressed him against *Eufionus*, one of the Bastards of King *Priamus*, and smote him dead to the ground, in sight of *Deiphobus*, who in a great rage ran upon *Thelamon*, and wounded him. When *Palamedes* saw this, he took a Spear, and ran at *Deiphobus*, and smote him in the breast, that the Spear entred into his body, and breaking abode in the body of *Deiphobus*. When *Paris* saw his Brother wounded to death, he led him to the Gate of the City, and appointed his men to keep him. As *Deiphobus* opened his eyes and saw his Brother *Paris*, he said: Brother, let me not fall without revenging my death: ere this Truncheon be taken out of my body, that thou wilt revenge me on him that hath slain me. *Paris* promised him to do his best: and returned into the Battel, said in himself, that he desired to live no longer, but till he had revenged the death of his Brother: and seeking *Palamedes*, he found him in battel with King *Serpedon*, and *Palamedes* defended himself valiantly, and gave so great a stroke to King *Serpedon*, that he cut off his shoulder from his body, then King *Serpedon* fell down dead.

*Paris* seeing the great damage that *Palamedes* did to them, how with his promises he had put the *Trojans* to flight, he bent a strong Bow, and aiming well at *Palamedes*, shot to him an envenomed Arrow, and smote him in the throat, and cut in two the master vein, and *Palamedes* fell down to the earth: for whose



whose death the Greeks made great sorrow, and left the battel, and went unto their Tents, there held a parly against the Trojans, and defended them strongly. Then descended the Trojans a foot, and entred their Tents, and took all that they found. When Paris and Troylus went by a side way unto the Host, and fired their Ships. To the rescue of the Ships came King Thelamon, with a great company, and began the battel so horribly, that there was great slaughter on both sides, verily the Ships had been all burnt, had it not been for the prowess of King Thelamon that did marvels with his body: and for all his resistance, there were more than five hundred Ships burnt. There was great slaughter of the Greeks, many were sore hurt. There was Ebes the Son of the King of Thrace, hurt with a Spear, and the Truncheon remained in his body, and in that manner he went to the Tent of Achilles, where he rested him that day, and refused to go to the battel, for the love he had to Polixena, Ebes reproached Achilles greatly, because he suffered the people of his Country to be destroyed, saying that he might have helped them if he would. And as soon as he had finished these words, one took the Truncheon out of his body and he dyed presently.

After, came from the battel one of the Serbants of Achilles, and Achilles demanded of him tydings of the Host. O sir, said he, it is this day misshapened to our folk, for the great multitude of Trojans that are come upon them, and they have slain all that they met with, and I think there is not one Trojan left at home, but every man is come to the battel, if it please you now, whiles the Trojans be weary, to come to the battel, ye shall gain a perpetual memory. For by your prowess ye shall in little space banquish all, and they shall not dare to defend themselves against you they are so weary. But Achilles would neither for the words of his Marlet, nor the death of Ebes change his purpose, for the great love he had to Polixena.

During these things, the battel was cruel, and endured unto night, to the great damage of the Greeks, and the night parted them; yet Deiphobus was not dead, but drew towards his end, when Paris and Troilus saw him in that grief, they began to make great lamentations. And then Deiphobus opened a little



his eyes, and demanded of Paris with a feeble voice, if he were dead that had slain him? Paris answered yes. Then Deiphobus did cause to draw out the head of his spear and dyed: wherefore the Trojans made great sorrow. It is needless to hold long talk of the sorrow that King Priamus his Father made, for his Wife, and his Sister: also for the death of King Serpedon. Of the other party, the Greeks made great sorrow for the death of Palamedes, and buried his body worthily. And as they that might not be long without a Governour, by the grave counsel of Duke Nestor, and others, Agamemnon was set again in his dignity as he was before.

Early the next morning, the Trojans issued out in good order, and the Greeks came against them. Then began the battel to be mortal, there was great slaughter on both sides: but it rained so that day, that the Greeks withdrew them to their Tents, and the Trojans followed them: but the rain was so great, that they left the battel, and returned to the City. The next day they began to fight, and slew that day many Barons of the Greeks, and fought till evening: so they continued seven days, where was great slaughter on both sides, forasmuch as the Greeks could not suffer the stench of the dead bodies, they demanded Truce for two months, which was granted by King Priamus.

During this Truce, King Agamemnon sent Duke Nestor, Ulisses, and Dyomedes, to speak to Achilles, to request him to come to the Host, and defend them against the Trojans. When they were come he received them with great joy. And then Ulisses said unto him: Sir Achilles, was it not by your agreement, and also ours, that this Host left their Country? And now ye are come upon King Priamus, and have destroyed him and his, by force of Arms? From whence cometh this slackness, after so many hurts we have received by the Trojans, that have slain so many Kings and Princes, robbed our Tents, and burnt our Ships, and we were now in hope to have banquished them, after you by your valour had slain Hector, that was the true defender of the Trojans: also that now Deiphobus is dead, the Trojans are put under foot, now you have gotten by your valour a worthy renown, will ye lose all at once, and suffer your people to be slain cruelly, that:



that you haue so long defended with the effusion of your blood? Please it you from henceforth to keep your good Renown, to the end, that we may obtain the victorie by your prowess, by the which we hope to attain and come to it.

Sir Uliſſes (ſaid Achilles) if we are come into this land for theſe cauſes ye haue declared, we may ſay that great folly was among us, that for the Wiſe of Menelaus, ſo many Kings, and Princes be put in peril of death. Had it not been much more wiſdom, for Palamedes to haue remained in peace in his Countrey, than to be ſlain here, and other Kings and Princes in like manner? For moſt part of the Nobles of Greece be here, and if they dye, (as many be already dead) it muſt needs follow that the Countreys ſhall be governed by Villains. Hector that was ſo valiant, is he not dead? Likewise I may dye ſhortly, that am not ſo ſtrong as he was. Therefore ſo much as ye require me to go to battel, ſo much labour ye loſe, for I haue no intention to put any more in danger: and had rather loſe my renown than my life: For there is no prowess but will be forgotten. Nestor, Dyomedes and Agmemnon, ſtill entreated Achilles, but could not obtain his conſent. And he perſwaded them to make peace with the Trojans beſore they were all ſlain.

Then theſe three perſons returned, and made it known to the Princes of the Hoſt, whom they aſſembled for this cauſe, and demanded their aduice. Then ſtood up Menelaus who ſaid: It would be great ſhame now to ſeek for peace with the Trojans, ſince Hector and Deiphobus are ſlain, that by their death, the Trojans repute them as vanquiſhed: and without Achilles they ſhould maintain their wars againſt the Trojans. To that answered Uliſſes and Nestor, and ſaid, it was no marvel though Menelaus deſired the wars, to recover his Wiſe, and that Troy was not ſo diſgarniſhed, but that they had a new Hector, which was Troilus, who was little leſs ſtrong and valiant than Hector. And there was alſo another Deiphobus, that was Paris, whom we ought to doubt as much as the other: therefore they counſelled to conclude a peace, and return into Greece. Then ſtood up the falſe Traitor Calchas and ſaid: moſt Noble Wars, thinke ye to do againſt the commandment of the Gods? Have



not they promised the victory to you, and will ye now leaue it? Surely that would be great folly: take your wonted courage, and fight against the Trojans more strongly than ye have done before: and cease not till ye have the victory, that the Gods have promised. With the words of Calchas, the Greeks took heart to them, saying: they would maintain the war against the Trojans whether Achilles helpt them or not: and not leaue the war for him.

## CHAP. XXII.

Of many battels that were fought on both sides: and of a certain Truce, of the death of Noble *Troilus*, whom *Achilles* slew against his promise, and drew at his horse tail through the host how *Achilles* slew King *Menon*.

**N**OW when the Truce of two months was past, they began to fight in battel sharply. There *Troilus* did reuenge the death of his Brother. Dares saith, he slew that day a thousand Knights, so the Greeks fled: the day following began the fourteenth battel. There *Dyomedes* slew many Trojans, and addressed him against *Troilus*, who smote him to the ground, and deeply wounded him, reproaching him with the love of *Briseida*. The Greeks with great strength took *Dyomedes* up, and bare him upon his Shield to his Tent. *Menelaus* seeing *Dyomedes* wounded, addressed himself against *Troilus*. *Troilus* having his Spear whole, smote him to the earth sore hurt, and was carried to his Tent on his Shield. Then *Agamemnon* thrust in amongst the Trojans, and slew many, but *Troilus* came against him and smote him off his Horse: but he was quickly remounted by the help of his men.

Thus ended the battel that day, and *Agamemnon* required Truce for six months, King *Priamus* agreed thereto. Howbeit, it seemed unfit to some of his Council, he should grant it for so long. Among these things, *Briseida* against the will of her father, went to see *Dyomedes* that lay wounded in his Tent, and she knew that her love *Troilus* had hurt him. Having no hope to recover *Troilus*, she determined when *Dyomedes* was cured  
of



of his wounds to embrace his love.

Among these things, King Agamemnon and Duke Nestor went to the Tent of Achilles, who received them joyfully, and Agamemnon prayed him to come to battel. But Achilles would not hearken thereto: yet because he loved Agamemnon, he consented that his men should go to battel without him: whereof Agamemnon and Nestor gave him great thanks, and after they returned into their Tents.

When the Truce was past, Agamemnon ordained his people to battel, Achilles sent him his Mirmidons, marked with a red sign to be known by it. Then the battel began to be mortal. Then Troylus beat down the Duke of Athens, and slew many of the Mirmidons, and fought thus until the night parted them. On the morrow betimes began the battel, in which King Philomenus and Polidamas took King Thoas, and had led him away had not the Mirmidons rescued him. Then Troylus smote in among them, slew and hurt many of them, but they slew his Horse, and would have taken him. Then Paris and his bastard Brother smote in among them, and remounted Troylus: then there was a fierce fight. The Mirmidons slew Emargeron one of the Bastards of King Priamus, whereof Troylus had great sorrow, and by the aid of his people, smote in among them, and slew and hurt many, but they defended themselves valiantly. Then came to the battel King Agamemnon, Menelaus, Thelamon, Ulysses, and Dyomedes, with all their people, and began a hot skirmish. There the Greeks did make the Trojans to suffer, but Troylus succoured them most valiantly, and put himself always where most need was, and beat down all he found in his way, that the Greeks fled into their Tents, and Thelamon defended them valiantly, and made them recover the day. This was the sixteenth battel, in the which there dyed many Knights of both sides. Troylus ceased not to grieve the Mirmidons: he did so much, that he put the Greeks to flight, and took an hundred Noble men, that he brought into the City.

When the battel was finished, against the even the Mirmidons returned unto the Tent of Achilles, and there was found many of them hurt, there were an hundred of them dead, where-

at



at Achilles had much sorrow : when it was night, he went to bed, and there he had many waverling thoughts, once he purposed to go to the battel, to revenge the death of his men, and another time he berthought him on the beauty of Polixena, and thought if he went, he should lose her love for ever, for he had promised them, that he would aid the Greeks no more, and when he thought how he had sent his men unto their aid, he was sorely grieved: then the day approached on which the seventeenth battel began, being very horrible, that dured seven days continually, wherein were many Greeks slain. Agamemnon required Truce: but the Trojans agreed no longer to the Truce, but till they had buried their dead bodies, and when those days were expired, the eighteenth battel began, Menelaus and Paris fustled, and fought valiantly together. Also Polidamas and Ulysses fought together a great while. Menesteus overthrew Eneas in fustling. King Philomenus beat Agamemnon, and had sorely wounded him, if Thelamon had not come, who smote Philomenus to the ground.

Archilogus Son of Duke Nestor, assailed one of the bastards of King Priamus named Brum and slew him. Whereat the Trojans had great sorrow, above all other Troylus was angry, who thrusting in among the Greeks, had put them to flight, if the Myrmidons had not strongly resisted him.

Therefore Troylus smote in among them, and slew many, that he made the Greeks to retire into their Tents, and allighting on foot, entred into their Tents, and slew them on all sides: there was so great a cry, that the sound came to Achilles, who rested in his Tent, and he demanded of one of his Servants, what it was, he said to him: that the Trojans had vanquished the Greeks, and slew them within their Tents, which were no more able to defend them: and think ye to be sure here, said he? For ye shall see anon more than forty thousand Trojans that shall slay you unarmed: for they have slain most part of your Mirmidons, and unless you succour them they are all lost.

At these words Achilles quaked for ire, and forgetting the love of Polixena, presently armed him, and mounting his Horse, he smote among the Trojans, and slew many of them. When Troylus saw Achilles, he addressed him to him: and gave him a wound



wound, that for many days he came not to the battel. Troylus was hurt also by the hand of Achilles, and both fell to the ground, and the battel dured till night, on the morrow they began again and endured till the evening: and thus they fought six days. King Priamus had great sorrow that Achilles came to the battel against his promise, and thought he went about to deceive him, reproaching his Wife to believe him so lightly: Polixena grieved exceedingly, for she was then contented to have Achilles to her Husband.

Achilles during the six months Truce, healed the wounds that Troylus gave him, and purposed to be revenged on him. After these things, the nineteenth battel began with great slaughter, and before Achilles assembled his Myrmidons, and desired them only to inclose Troylus, and keep him till he came, who would not be far from them. They promised him to do so: Then he thronged into the battel. And on the other side came Troylus, who slew many of the Greeks, that about mid day he put them to flight: then the Myrmidons (being two thousand fighting men, and remembering their Lords command) thrust in among the Trojans and recovered the field. And they held together and fought no man but Troylus, so they found him, who fought valiantly, and was enclosed on all parts, but he slew and wounded many. And being alone among them, they slew his Horse, and hurt him in many places, plucking off his Helmet, yet he defended him the best he could. When Achilles saw Troylus unarmed, he ran upon him furiously, and smote off his head, and took the body, and bound it to his Horses tail, and drew it after him, throughout the Host. What Villany was it to the Son of a noble King, that was so valiant. If any nobleness had been in Achilles he would not have done it.

When Paris knew that Achilles had villainously slain Troylus, he had great sorrow, so had Eneas and Polidamas, and they laboured to recover his body, but the Greeks resisted them, that they could not. Also King Menon was grieved for the death of Troylus, that he assailed Achilles, and said unto him: Villain, what cruelty hath moved thee to bind to thy horses tail, the son of so noble a Prince as King Priamus? Then he ran and smote him



him with his Spear on the breast, that he gave him a wound, and after gave him so many strokes, that he beat him to the ground, then was the body of Troylus recovered. The Myrmidons remounted again Achilles, and as soon as his strength came to him, he returned into the battel, and encountred King Menon, who defended himself valiantly, and wounded Achilles in many places: but there came so many on both sides, that they parted: then the night approached, which caused the battel to cease, and they fought thus for the space of seven days.

The seventh day, when Achilles was healed of his wounds, desiring to revenge him of King Menon, he said to his folk, if they might encounter him, they should enclose him as they did Troylus. Then began the battel, Achilles and Menon fought together, and beat down each other on foot. Then the Myrmidons enclosed him, and took him by force, who had no man to succour him. Then Achilles seeing King Menon in this danger, ran upon him, and slew him: but Menon gave him many wounds before, whereof he lay long after. Among these things, Menelaus and Menesteus with a great company of Kings, Princes, and many fighting men, thrust into the throng, and put many Trojans to flight, which entered into their City, with doing great mischief, forasmuch as the Greeks chased them so nigh, that they slew and hurt many of them.

## CHAP. XXIII.

How Paris by the perswasion of Hecuba his mother, slew Achilles and the Son of Duke Nestor, in the Temple of Apollo, and how Paris and Ajax slew each other in battel.

**F**OR the death of Troylus, King Priamus and his Wife and Childzen and all the Citizens made great lamentation: that seeing they had lost Hector, Deiphobus, and Troylus, they had no more hope of their lives. Then King Priamus demanded Truce and it was agreed to by the Greeks: during which time, they buried the bodies of Troylus and King Menon honourably, The Queen might not be appeased for the death of her Childzen, and thought of many ways, how she might be revenged on Achilles,



chilles, that had thus slain her Son. Then she called Paris, and weeping, said to him secretly these words. Dear Son, thou knowest how this Traitor Achilles hath slain thy Brethren, the solace of my life. And because he hath slain them by treason, I think it just reward that he should fall in the same manner, and I will tell thee how it shall be done. The unhappy man hath many times required me to have Polixena for his Wife, and I have given to him good hope thereof. I have purposed to send to him the keeper of my signet, to bid him meet me in the Temple of Apollo, and I desire thee Son, to lye there in wait with a company of Knights, and when he shall enter therein, ye may run upon him and slay him, and be sure he escape not with life. Paris made answer that he would do this thing, as she had devised, thereupon he assembled twenty Knights, in whom he put much confidence, and went forth into the Temple of Apollo.

As soon as Achilles heard the Messenger, that came from Queen Hecuba, the Fool being evil counselled, took with him the Son of Duke Nestor, and they went both to the Temple, and as soon as they were come, Paris and his Knights ran upon him, Paris cast at him three Darts, wherewith he hurt him sore, Achilles drew his Sword, having no other Armour, and wrapped his arm with his Mantle, and smote, and slew seven of them, But in the end, Archilogus Son of Duke Nestor, and Achilles, were both slain within the Temple: Paris commanded his body should be cast unto the hounds, but at the request of Helenus, they were put in a place before the Temple, to be kept. And the Trojans had great joy, and said they had no care of the Greeks. When Agamemnon knew he sent unto King Priamus, for to have the bodies to bury them. Then King Priamus made them to be delibered, and they were born down to their Tents: then arose a great sorrow among the Greeks, and said, they had lost all. The Duke Nestor might not be comforted, for the death of his Son. They made for Achilles a noble Sepulture, which by the consent of King Priamus, was laid at the entry of the Gate of Tymbre.

After these things, the King assembled all the Nobles of the Host, and shewed unto them, for the death of Achilles, the most



part were discouraged from the war, and therefore demanded if it were good for to leaue the war or continue it. Then there was among them diuers opinions, some allowed the war, others blamed it, and at last they concluded all together, to maintain the war, saying: if Achilles failed, yet the promises of the Gods would neuer fail. Then stood up Ajax and said: If Achilles be dead, let us send for his Son, whom King Nicomedes his Grandfather nourisheth, and teacheth the feats of arms: for without him we can haue no victorie of the Trojans. His counsel seemed good, and by the agreement of every man, Menesteus was chosen to go fetch Neoptolemus, Son of Achilles, that was named otherwise Pyrrhus.

Among these things, when the Truce was expired, the Trojans began the twentieth battell against the Greeks, sharp and hard: this day went Ajax by great folly to battell unarmed, and had nothing but his Sword.

The Trojans that had lost their best Defenders, were not so hardy as they used to be, but to save their liues, they fought valiantly. Paris with the people of Perse, who were good Archers, slew many Greeks, King Philomenus fought strongly, and they of Paphlagony came on, and slew many Greeks, that they made them recoil. Menesteus Iusted against Polidamas, and had taken or slain him, had not King Philomenus deliuered him, Ajax thus unarmed as he was, slew many Trojans, and was not yet hurt. In the end he smote among them of Perse that Paris led, and slew so many, that he put them to flight. When Paris saw his people slain, he shot an envenomed Arrow to Ajax, and wounded him between the back and the side: when Ajax felt himself wounded to death, he would not yield to dye, till he had reuenged him on him that slew him: and did, when he found Paris, he said unto him, thou hast slain me with thine Arrow, but before I dye I will be reuenged. For by thee and for thy cause, many Noblemen haue been slain. Then he gave him a stroke, that he cut in two his face, and he fell dead to the earth: and Ajax after him. Then the Trojans took the body of Paris with weeping tears, and carried it unto the City, and were chased to the Gates. The night following Agamemnon made the Host  
to



to approach near to the City, and there pitch their Tents. And the Trojans kept their Walls day and night. Then had the Trojans no more hope of their lives, when they saw all the Sons of King Priamus dead: there is no tongue can express the lamentations that King Priamus made with his wife and daughters: and above all others, Queen Helen made the greatest. The King did bury Paris in a rich Sepulture, and set it honourable in the Temple of Juno.

## CHAP. XXIV.

How Queen Penibasilea came from Amazon with a thousand Maidens, to the succour of Troy, and slew many Greeks, and after was slain by Pyrrhus the Son of Achilles.

**D**uring two months together, the Gates of Troy were not opened, the Trojans did nothing but go into the City and lamented. King Agamemnon sent oftentimes unto King Priamus, that he should send his men to battel: but King Priamus fearing his destruction would not do it; because he waited for the Queen of Amazon, that was on her way to come to the succour of him.

Amazon is a Province, where dwelled none but women, that were brought up to war. They had nigh their Country an Isle where men dwell, and they were accustomed three times a year to go thither: in April, May and June, to have their company: after they returned into Amazon, and they that conceived, if they were Sons, they gave them suck for a time, after sent them to their Fathers. If it were a Daughter they kept it, and burnt off the right pap, to bear a Spear the better, and taught her the feats of Arms. Of this Province, a noble and valiant Virgin was Queen, who was called Penthasilea, and she loved Hector for his good Renown. When she knew that the Greeks had besieged Troy, she went to succour it with a thousand Virgins, for the love of Hector. When she came and knew that he was dead, she made great sorrow: and desired King Priamus to let her issue out upon the Greeks, that she might shew them how her Maidens could bear Arms.



at the request of Penthesilea, the next morning the Gate was set open, and there issued out King Philomenus, with them of Paphlagonie, Eneas, Polidamas, with their people, and Queen Penthesilea with her Maidens. The Greeks being ready, began the Battel fiercely. Menesteus addrest him to Penthesilea, and she in like manner to him: she smote Menesteus to the ground, took his Horse, and gave him unto one of her Maidens. Then came Dyomedes against her, she smote him so strongly, that he turned up-side down, and she took his shield from his neck, and delivered it to one of her maidens. When Thelamon saw her do such brave deeds, he encountred with her fiercely, and Thelamon was boyn to the ground, and she had led him into the City, but that Dyomedes came to his rescue with great defence, then she called to her Maidens, who smote amongst the Greeks, so fiercely, that she and they put them to flight, they chased them unto their Tents, and had slain them all, if Dyomedes had not stoutly resisted, who maintained the skirmish unto the night, that parted them. Queen Penthesilea returned into the City with glozy and honour: where King Priamus received her with joy, and gave her many rich jewels, and he hoped she would revenge him of his enemies. They fought thus many times afterwards, Menesteus returned from King Nicomedes, and brought Neoptolemus the Son of Achilles otherwise named Pyrrhus.

This Pyrrhus was received with great glozy, by all the Barons of the Host: and the Myrmidons rejoiced exceedingly, and held him for their Lord. Then was delibered to Pyrrhus, the conduct of the men, and King Thelamon Knighted him, praying the Gods to give him strength, and courage in guiding of his Sword, and that they would strengthen him to revenge the death of his Father: then two Princes set on the Spurs of Gold, and King Agamemnon gave him the arms of Achilles his Father, and all his other precious Pearls and Jewels. and for this new Knight and Feast of Chivalry, the Greeks made many days great gladness.

After these things came the day of battel, and they prepared themselves on both sides. Then began the battel, Pyrrhus being armed with the proper arms of his Father, encountred Polidamas,



lidamas in his coming, and had slain him with the great strokes  
 of his Sword, but that King Philomenus delivered him: then  
 Pyrrhus smote from off his Horse Philomenus, and had led him  
 away, had not they of Paphlagonie rescued him. Among these,  
 Queen Penthesilea entered the battel with her Maidens, and she  
 smote among the Myrmidons and slew many of them. Then  
 came King Thelamon, who smote Penthesilea to the ground,  
 and she gave him a stroke with her Sword, that she beat him  
 down, and then her Maidens relieved her, and set her again on  
 Horseback; she smote among the Myrmidons, that held King  
 Philomenus in great danger, and she slew many of them. When  
 Pyrrhus saw his men evil entreated, he cryed unto them, and said  
 they might be ashamed to suffer themselves to be vanquished by  
 women: then he left King Philomenus, to defend his men from  
 the Maids. When Queen Penthesilea drew nigh to Pyrrhus, and  
 reproached him because his father had slain Hector, and said,  
 the world ought to despise him. Pyrrhus had so great sorrow at  
 her words that he addrest him against her, and she beat him to  
 the earth: then he arose again, and assailed Penthesilea with his  
 Sword, and she him by great strength: then Pyrrhus was again re-  
 mounted by the aid of his Myrmidons. Then came to the battel  
 Agamemnon, Dyomedes, Menelaus, and Menestes, and all the  
 other Princes and Barons.

Among these things, King Philomenus was delivered safe  
 from the Myrmidons, and he gave great thanks unto Queen Pen-  
 thesilea, and said, had not she been he had been slain. Then came  
 all the Trojans and the skirmish was sharp and mortal: Pyr-  
 rhus encountred Glaucón the Son of Anthenor, and Brother of  
 Polidamas, by another mother, and gave him a stroke, that he  
 fell dead to the earth. Then addrest Penthesilea unto Pyrrhus,  
 and he to her, and beat down each other to the earth: but they  
 were quickly remounted and began to fight again. Then came  
 people on both parts, that they were parted. Polidamas (for to  
 revenge the death of his Brother) slew that day many of the  
 Greeks, and hurt them, and did so much in arms, both he and  
 Queen Penthesilea that they put the Greeks to flight. Then came  
 to the rescue Pyrrhus, Dyomedes, and Thelamon and made them

that



that fled, to stay till night, that each man went into his place: they fought thus a month together, in which time were slain more than ten thousand of both parties, and Penthasilea lost many of her maidens. When they had rested a Month, they began the battel again.

In this battel Pyrrhus and Penthasilea met, and brake their Spears without falling, but Pyrrhus was so hurt, that the truncheon of her Spear abode within his body: wherefore the cry arose among the Greeks, and they ran upon Penthasilea with great strength, and brake off the lace of her Helmet: then Pyrrhus, taking no heed to his wound assailed Penthasilea, who thought to have smitten him, but Pyrrhus prevented her, and gave her a stroke with his Sword, that he cut her arm off by the body, whereat Queen Penthasilea fell dead to the ground: and Pyrrhus that was not yet satisfied, smote the body, and cut it in two pieces: with the great effusion of blood, that ran from his wound he fell down as dead among his people, and they took him up and laid him upon his Shield, and carried him to his Tent. Then the Maidens of Penthasilea, to revenge the death of their Queen, smote amongst the Myrmidons, and slew many of them: but it could not much profit the Trojans, as they that were but a few against a great multitude of Greeks. There were slain by the Trojans that day in the battel, more than ten thousand, and withdrew themselves into the City, for their own safeguard, and shut fast their Gates, and had no more intention to issue out in battel against their enemies.

#### CHAP. XXV.

How *Antenor* and *Eneas* consulted together to deliver the City unto the Greeks by Treason, and did it under colour of peace: and how King *Priamus* withstood them, with some of his Bastards, by great and rude words.

**N**OW the Trojans had great sorrow, when they saw they had no more hope to have any succours from any place, and they endeavoured nothing, but to keep their City, and to furnish them well with victuals: for they feared not any assault. Among these



these things, the Greeks would have cast to the dogs the body of Penthesilea, forasmuch as she had slain so many Noble men of Greece, but Pyrrhus would not for the honour of nobleness: finally they concluded, that they would cast it in a pond that was nigh the City. Anchises with his Son Polidamas, went to council, to advise them, how they might have their lives saved against the Greeks, and their goods, and rather than fail they would betray the City.

Then they concluded to speak unto King Priamus and give him counsel to make a peace with the Greeks in restoring of Queen Helen to her Husband, and the damage that Paris did in the Isle of Citharis. Oh, if the King Priamus had been so happy to have done this, and have pleased the Greeks at the beginning, he had saved his own life, his Wives, and Childzen, City, and Citizens, and elshewed all those mischiefs that beset them afterwards. Wherefore men say in a proverb, that peace soon taken is good, for it is a hard thing to appease such damages to him that hath advantage of the war. For with great pain would the Greeks have been content with these offers, forasmuch as they had suffered as many damages before Troy, for it seemed they were at the point to destroy the City and all the Inhabitants. But these afore named Traitors spake, but to the end that under colour of peace, they might betray the City: if otherwise they might not save their lives.

Then they went before King Priamus and Amphimachus (one of his Bastard Sons) and spake before many Noble men of the City: and as King Priamus heard them speak of purchasing peace with the Greeks, he thought they spake this thing by great fury, and began to laugh: saying, that he would be advised first: then they spake unto him in this manner: if thou wilt hear our counsel upon this thing, if it please thee not, use the counsel of others. The King said he would hear their counsel and would do what seemed good.

Then spake Anthenor saying: King, you may well dissemble, but that you and yours be compassed with your enemies, who be here by your City desiring your destruction, and ye may not issue out: there are more than fifty Kings desire nothing but to de-



stroy this City; and you, and all that dwell therein: ye may no longer resist them, neither dare ye any moze set open your gates, and thus to let us be inclosed herein. We ought of two evils to chuse the less: therefore for to have peace with the Greeks, if ye seem good, we will render Helen to Menelaus her Husband, since that Paris is dead: and also restore the damages that Paris did to them in Greece, rather than we will be put to death, &c.

At these words arose up Amphimachus, one of the Bastard Sons of King Priamus, and reprobed eagerly the words of Anthenor, and said to him: What trust may my Lord and Father and we have in thee, since thou oughtest to have good will unto him, and to this City, and we see thee thus recreant, thou oughtest to live and dye with us: and thou counsellest us to make peace with the Greeks to our shame? Truly, before the King shall do this, there shall dye twenty thousand men: the thing that thou counsellest the King cometh of Treason.

Many other words said Amphimachus to Anthenor: and Eneas began to interrupt him, saying: ye know well that from henceforth we may not go to battel against the Greeks, and we dare no moze open our Gates, wherefore it behobeth us to find means to have peace with them. Then King Priamus with great ire said to Anthenor and Eneas: have ye not shame in your selves to speak to me? We make me dye with sorrow; For all that I have done hitherto, I have done it by your counsel. Anthenor, at thy return from Greece, whither I sent thee to require my Sister, counselledst thou not me that I should send Paris into Greece, to endamage the Greeks? and I had never taken upon me to have moved war against them, had not thy false counsel been, which moved me to send thither. And thou Eneas, alas when I sent thee with Paris into Greece, wast not thou principal of the Counsel that Paris should ravish Helen, and bring her into this Realm, and thou helpedst thereto with thy person? If thou wouldest have been but contrary thereto Helen had never seen the walls of Troy: And now after this they have slain all my Childzen, and done me so much hurt, now ye counsel me (against honour) to make peace with the Greeks? Surely, your counsel finisheth my life with great sorrow and dishonour.

At



## The Destruction of Troy.

99

At these words was Eneas exceeding wroth, and answered the King sharply, and he and Anthenor departed from the King with evil content. When they were gone, the King began to weep as he that dreaded they would deliver the City into the hands of the Greeks which would slay him. Then he thought that he would make them dye first, and called to him Amphimacus, and said unto him: Dear Son, I am thy Father, we ought to support each other unto the death. I know certainly, that Anthenor and Eneas intend to slay us by the Greeks, and deliver to them this City: therefore it should not be ill to make them fall into the pit that they have made ready, before they do such evil, and I will tell thee in what manner: To morrow at even they will come to take counsel, then thou shalt be ambushed here within, and thou shalt have with thee good Knights, and when they be come in, thou shalt run upon them and slay them, Amphimacus made answer, and said he would do so with a good will; albeit there were no more assembled at this council but the King and his Son; yet there is nothing so secret but otherwhile is known. Eneas knew the truth of this thing, and it was not known by whom he knew it: anon he and Anthenor and some other of their complices, spoke concerning the Treason of the City, and they swore each to other: then they said, if they went any more to council to the King, they would go with a great company of men of Arms: for Eneas was of the most noble of Troy, and most rich next to the King, and Anthenor was also rich, and had great friends in the City: and their treason was this, that they would deliver the City unto their enemies: so as they and all their Lineage should have their lives and goods saved, thereof they took good surety of the Greeks.

Among these things King Priamus sent for Anthenor and Eneas to counsel, to perform the thing he had promised, but they came with a great company of men of Arms: therefore the King sent to Amphimacus that he should leave off his enterprise. The day following, the King sent for all the Trojans to counsel, and when they were assembled before him, Eneas stood up, and willed them to make peace with the Greeks: to whom all the other agreed save the King, then Eneas said to him, Sir



King, wherefore dost not thou consent with the other, for whether thou wilt or not, we will treat for peace, and will make it in despite of thee. When the King saw that his contradiction could not avail, he had rather consent with the other, than be the cause of his destruction, and said to Eneas let it be done that it may be most expedient to the peace. Then by the counsel of them all, Anthenor was chosen to go to the Greeks, to treat for peace: the Trojans took branches of palm in sign of peace, and went upon the walls of the City, and shewed the sign to the Greeks, which shewed well that they would incline to peace. Then was Anthenor let down from the walls, and brought before Agamemnon. Agamemnon committed all the work to the King of Creet, Dyomedes, and Ulysses, that whatsoever these three Princes should decree with Anthenor, all the Host promised to accomplish.

When they were assembled, Anthenor replenished with fury, promised to deliver the City by treason, to do with it their will and pleasure, so they would save him, Eneas, and all their Harrenage, and all them that he would chuse, that Eneas should have all his possessions without any loss. These three Kings swore to perform it: then said one to the other, this must be kept secret till it be brought about: and to keep this treason more secret, Anthenor desired the Greeks, to let King Cassilius an ancient man, go with him to Troy, to the intent he might be the better believed: and Anthenor demanded the body of Penthesilea, and it was delivered to him.

After these things Anthenor and King Cassilius entred the City and made their coming known to the King. On the morrow King Priamus assembled all the Trojans, to hear the answer of Anthenor, who said to the King otherwise than it was, using good words to cover his treason. He spake long of the puissance of the Greeks, and of their truth in their promises, and how they had holden the Truce that they made, lying before the City, and had been faithfully governed, without breaking of them: after spake of the feebleness of the Trojans, and of the dangers they were in, then concluded that it were profitable to seek peace, and that they were come thereto: and said, that it could



could not be unless they gave a quantity of gold and silver to the Greeks, to restore to them the great damages that they had in the war. After they advised the King and the other to employ themselves in this thing. Forasmuch (said Anthenor) as I cannot know all their will at this time, I would have ye let Eneas go with me unto them to know more, to the end, that they believe us the better. Every man allowed the words of Anthenor: and so went he and Eneas to the Greeks, and the King Castilius with them.

When the counsel was finished, King Priamus entred into his Chamber and began to weep grievously as he that perceived well the treason, and complained sore of the death of his Son, and that worse, he must buy his peace of them that had done him all this hurt, and give them all the treasure he had in long time gathered together, and become poore in his old days, and yet not sure of his life, but must needs do the will of them that betray him. On the other side when Helen knew Anthenor should go to the Greeks, she prayed him that he would make her peace with Menelaus her Husband, and that he would take pity on her: and he promised her that he would do to his power.

When Eneas and Anthenor were come into the Host of the Greeks, they treated of their Treason, with the three Kings: and there they made peace for Helen, and took good surety. After their communication, the Greeks ordained that Dyomedes and Ulysses should go with them. There was great joy when they heard of their coming into their City, thinking the Trojans had the peace they so much desired. On the morrow by the commandment of King Priamus, all the Trojans were assembled at his Palace, then spake Ulysses, saying unto them, that the Greeks demanded two things, to wit, restitution of the damages, also they required that Amphimacus should be banished for ever out of Troy, (this purchased Anthenor for Amphimacus, forasmuch as he had contraried him before.) Whoso great peril is it to speak lightly in time of perturbation and sedition?

As they were all assembled in Parliament they heard a marvellous cry: at that Dyomedes and Ulysses were in great fear, that the people would have slain them: then the other said they



would take these two Kings in the stead of Amphimachus, to the intent, that he should not be banished. yet there could no man know from whence this noise came, therefore they departed every man to his place.

Anthenor drew apart Dyomedes and Ulysses to speak of their evil practices. Then said Ulysses, why tarriest thou so long, and delayest to do that thou hast promised? Anthenor answered, the Gods do know, that Eneas and I intend no other thing, but to do what we have promised to you, but there is a thing that hindzeth us, and I will tell you what it is. Certainly when the King founded first the Palace of Ilion in this City, he established in the name of Pallas a great Temple, and when it was all made ready saving the Tower, a marvellous thing descended from the Heavens, and stuck in the wall of the Temple within the great Altar, and it hath been there until this time, and none may bear it away, save they that keep it: the matter is of tree or of wood, but there is no man knoweth of what wood, nor how it is made: but the Goddess Pallas, that sent it thither, and gave to this thing a great vertue, that is, that as long as this thing shall be within the Temple, the Trojans cannot lose their City, King nor Heirs. and this is the thing that holdeth the Trojans in security. And this thing hath to name Palladium, forasmuch as the Goddess Pallas hath sent it. Then said Dyomedes, if this thing be of such vertue as thou speakest, we do but lose our labour.

Then said Anthenor, I have but late spoken to the Priest that keepeth it, to the end that he may deliver it by stealth: and I have sure trust that he will deliver it me for a great sum of gold that I have promised him: as soon as I have it, I will send it out of the City to you: and then we shall perform that which we have promised, and ere ye go hence, for to cover our work, I will go unto King Priamus, and will tell him, that I have spoke long to you, to know what quantity of gold you demand: and it was so effected as Anthenor had determined.



## CHAP. XXVI.

How the Traitor *Anthenor* bought of the Priest the *Palladium* and gave it to *Ulysses*: and of the Horse of Brasse, that was by the *Greeks* brought to the Temple of *Pallas* being full of men of arms: and how the City of *Troy* was taken and burnt, and the King *Priamus* slain, &c.

**W**hen *Dyomedes* and *Ulysses* were returned into their host; *Anthenor* went unto King *Priamus*, and said, that he should assemble his folk to counsel: for to come to their peace with the *Greeks*, they must needs pay twenty thousand marks of gold and that in good weight, and as much of silver, also an hundred thousand quarters of wheat: and this must be made ready within a certain time, then they will give surety to hold the peace without any fraud or subtilty.

Then it was ordained how this sum should be levied: and whiles they were busie thereabouts, *Anthenor* went unto the Priest that kept the *Palladium*, whose name was *Thoant*, and bare to him a great quantity of gold, there were they at council, *Anthenor* said to him, that he should take this sum of gold, wherewith he should be rich all his life, and that he should give to him the *Palladium*, and that no man should know thereof: for I have (said he) as much dread as thou, that any man should know thereof. And I will send it to *Ulysses*, and he shall bear the blame upon him, and every man shall say, that *Ulysses* hath stoln it, and we shall be both quit thereof.

*Thoant* the Priest resisted strongly the words of *Anthenor*: but for covetousness of the great sum of gold, he consented he should take the *Palladium* and bear it away. Then *Anthenor* took it, and sent it to *Ulysses* the same night, and after the voice ran among the people, that *Ulysses* by his subtilty had stoln away the *Palladium* out of *Troy*, What treason was this of a Priest? that loved better to betray his City, than leave the gold that was given him? Surely it is a foul vice in a Priest the sin of covetousness: but few have been before this time and some are yet, but they be attainted therewith, whereof it is great  
pity.



pity since that avarice is the mother of all vices.

Whilst the Trojans gathered together their gold and silver and brought it into the Temple of Minerva, to keep until the time that it was all collected, it pleased them to offer Sacrifice unto their God Apollo: and when they had slain many Beasts for their solemn Sacrifice, and put them upon the Altar, and set fire unto them for to burn them, it happened there came two unexpected marvels.

The first was, that the fire would not burn, for they began to make their fire more than ten times and always it quenched.

The second marvel was when they had appointed the entrails of the Beasts for their sacrifice, a great Eagle descended from the air crying greatly, and took with his claws the entrails, and bare them into the Ships of the Greeks.

Of these two things were the Trojans troubled, and said that the Gods were angry with them. Then demanded they of Calchandra, what these things signified? She said that the God Apollo was wroth with them, for the effusion of the blood of Achilles wherewithal his Temple was defiled and violated: and ye must go fetch fire at the Sepulture of Achilles, and light your Sacrifice therewith, then it will quench no more: and they did so, and the Sacrifice burnt clear: For the second miracle, she said, for certain, treason was made of the City with the Greeks. When the Greeks heard of these miracles, they demanded of Calchas what it might signifie? he made answer, that the City would shortly be yielded up.

Amongst these things, Calchas and Crisis the Wiest counselled the Greeks that they should make a Horse of Brasse so great, as might hold within it a thousand Knights: and they said unto them, that it was the pleasure of the Gods. This Horse was made by one whose name was Sinon, and he made it subtly, that no man could perceive any entry or issue, but within it was easie for them that were enclosed, to issue out when they would.

When the great Horse was fully made, and the thousand Knights therein, by the counsel of Crisis, they prayed King Priamus, he would suffer this Horse to enter into the City, that it might be set in the Temple of Pallas, forasmuch as that they  
had



had made it in the honour of Pallas, for a bow that they made for restitution of the Palladium, which they had caused to be taken out of the same Temple.

Among these things the Princes within Troy, when they saw that the King had so shamefully treated with the Greeks, they went away out of Troy, and took their men with them, and King Philomenus led no more but two hundred and fifty men, and threescore Maidens of Amazon's, that were left of a thousand that came thither with the Queen Penthesilea, and carried the body of her with them, and travelled to their own country.

Then came the day that the Greeks should swear their peace feignedly upon the plain field upon the Sanctuaries. King Priamus issued out of the City and his people, and swore each party to hold the peace firmly from thence forth: and Dyomedes swore first to the Greeks: after, when they had broken the peace they had treated with Anthenor of that thing, they concluded after, therefore they maintained they were not sworn by that colour, as the proverb saith, He that sweareth by deceit, by malice forsweareth himself. After that Dyomedes, swore likewise all the Kings and Princes of Greece, then King Priamus and the Trojans swore in good faith, as they that knew nothing of the treason: after their oaths thus made, King Priamus delibered Helen to Menelaus her Husband, and prayed him and other Kings and Princes of Greece, that they would do to her no harm but pardon her, and they promised him feignedly they would.

Then prayed the Greeks, that they might let the Horse of brass within the Temple of Pallas, for restitution of the Palladium, that the Goddess Pallas might be to them friendly, in their return. And as King Priamus answered not thereto, Eneas and Anthenor said to him, it should be well done, and that it should be an honour to the City. Howbeit King Priamus accorded it with evil will. Then the Greeks received the gold and silver, and the wheat that was promised, and put into their Ships.

After these things, they went all in Devotion with their Priests and began with strength of Cords, to draw the Horse of Brass before the gate of the City, forasmuch as by the Gate it might not enter into the City, it was so great: therefore they

broke



broke the wall in length and height, that it entred in the towne; and the Trojans receiued it with great joy, but the custom of Fortune is, great joy endeth with heaviness. The Trojans made joy of this Horse, wherein was enclosed their death, and they knew not of it. In this Horse was a subtil man named Sinon, that bare the keys of the Horse to open it. When the Trojans were asleep, in the night, forthwith they issued out of the Horse, and gave a token of fire to them that were in the fields, that they should come into the City to put it all to destruction.

The same day the Greeks feigned to go unto Tenedon, and said they would receive Helen and set her in safety, because the people should not run upon her, for the great evils that were done for her, thus they departed from the Port of Troy with their Sail drawn up, and came before the Sun going down to Tenedon. Then had the Trojans great joy when they saw the Greeks depart: and the Greeks as soon as they were come to Tenedon, armed them in the evening, and went privately towards Troy. And when the Trojans went to bed, then Sinon opened the Horse, and went out and lighted this fire, and shewed to them that were without, and without delay, they that were laid in wait, entred into the City by the gate that was broken. And the Knights issued out, and they slew the Trojans in their houses where they slept.

Thus entred the Greeks into the City, and slew men and women & children, and took all that they found in their houses, and slew above twenty thousand ere it was day. They robbed the Temples, and the cry arose horrible. When King Priamus heard the cry, (he knew that Eneas and Anthenor had betrayed him) he arose hastily and went into his Temple of Apollo, that was within his Palace, and kneeled before his high altar. Cassandra fled on the other side, as one out of her wits, into the Temple of Minerva, weeping with great sorrow: and the other Noble women abode still in the Palace in weeping and tears.

When the morning came, the Greeks (by the conduct of Eneas and Anthenor that were open Traitors to their City, also to their King,) entred into the Palace of Ilion, where they found no defence, and put all to death that they found. Then Pyrrhus  
entred



entred the Temple of Apollo, and found there King Priamus : then he ran upon him with a naked sword (in sight of Eneas and Anthenor) he slew there King Priamus befoze the high Altar, which was sprinkled with his blood. Queen Hecuba and Polixena fled, and knew not whither to go : and it happened, that she met with Eneas, and then she said to him in great fure. Ha, ha, Jelen, Traitor, from whence is come to thee so great cruelty, that thou hast brought them with thee that have slain King Priamus, that hath done to thee so much good, and set thee in magnificence, also hast betrayed the country where thou wert born, and the City that thou oughtest to keep : at the least let it suffice and refrain thee now of thy intent, and have pity on this unhappy Polixena, that among so many evils as thou hast done, thou mayst have grace to do one good deed, for to save her from death, befoze the Greeks slay her. Eneas (moved with pity) received Polixena in his guard, and conveyed her into a secret place.

Among these things King Thelamon set in the Temple of Minerva in keeping Andromeda, the wife of Hector and Cassandra, and set the City on fire in all places, and burnt it all except only the houses of the Traitors. When the City of Troy was all burnt, King Agamemnon assembled the most noble of Greece in the Temple of Minerva : and when they were all assembled, he required them two things : one was, that they should keep their promise with the Traitors : the other, that they should take good advice to part the prey of the City.

The answer of the Greeks was, that they would hold their faith with the Traitors, for the first point : and for the second, every man should bring all the prey in common, and there part to each man after his desert. Then Thelamon said they should burn Helen, for whom so many worthy Kings and Princes had dyed. And there was a great murmure thereupon, that Agamemnon, Ulysses, and Menelaus, had much ado to save her. But Ulysses with his fair speech, said to them so much of divers things, that they were content Helen should have no harm. Then Agamemnon did so much to all the other, that for his reward, Cassandra the Daughter of King Priamus was delivered unto him. Whilst that the Greeks held yet their Parliament, there



came to them Eneas and Anthenor, and advertised them how Helenus had alway blamed þ Trojans of the enterprize that they made against the Greeks and counselled them to put the body of Achilles in a Sepulture, which they would have given to the Hounds, and besought them therefore they would save his life, and they accorded to them. And then Andromeda and Helenus intreated for the two Sons of Hector, which were saved.

After this uproar, they ordained, that all the noble women that were escaped from death, should go whither they would freely, or dwell there still if it pleased them. And after these things done, they purposed to depart from Troy: but a great Tempest began to arise, that endured a whole month before they could go to Sea. Then the Greeks asked of Calchas the cause of this trouble; and he answered that the puissances Infernal were not yet appeased for the effusion of the blood of Achilles, that was shed in the Temple, for the love of Polixena: and to appease the Gods, it behobeth to sacrifice Polixena, for whom Achilles dyed.

Then Pyrrhus enquired diligently where Polixena was, that was cause of his fathers death? Agamemnon demanded of Anthenor: which said he knew not where she was, whereof he lyed not: yet for to make an end of all evils he enquired so much that Polixena was found in an ancient Tower, then he went and drew her out by force, and presented her unto King Agamemnon, which sent her to Pyrrhus, he sent her to the Sepulture of Achilles to be slain: and as they led her, there was no King nor Prince but had great sorrow, to see so fair a woman lost, without she had deserved it, and they had delivered her, if Calchas had not said, the Tempest would not cease until she were dead.

When Polixena was before the Sepulture of Achilles, she excused her of the death of Achilles, and said that she was much sorry for his death, and the Kings and Princes of Greece suffered her to dye against Justice, yet she had rather dye than live with them that had slain all her friends. When she had finished her words, Pyrrhus smote her with his Sword, (in the sight of the Queen her mother) and cut her in pieces, and cast them all about the Sepulture. When Hecuba saw her daughter slain, she fell



in a swoond, and after went out of her wit, and assailed with her teeth and nails all she might come by, and hurt many of the Greeks. Then they took her by force, and led her into an Isle, and stoned her to death. Thus the Queen Hecuba ended her life, and the Greeks made for her a noble Sepulture, which Sepulture appeareth yet in the same Isle to this day.

## CHAP. XXVII.

Of the dissention that was moved because of the *Palladium*, between *Thelamon* and *Ulysses*: and how *Eneas* and *Antenor* were exiled out of *Troy*: and how the *Greeks* returned, and of their adventures.

**W**Hiles the Greeks sojourned at *Troy*, and could not depart for the great Tempest, after they had besieged the City, King *Thelamon* made his quarrel before King *Agamemnon* for the *Palladium* that *Ulysses* had, saying, that he had not so well deserved it as he had done, that had so many times succoured the Host with victual, and also had defended it: by his great prowess: whereas the Host of the Greeks had been in danger to have been lost, had not he been, and said, he had slain King *Polimnestor*, and after slew *Polidorus*, and brought a great treasure he found, to the Host of the Greeks: Also he had slain the King of *Frige*, and brought his goods to the Host, and alledged then that he had gotten many Realms to the Seigniorie of Greece, and many other valiances he had done to the honour of the Greeks: and said moreover, that *Ulysses* had no prowess, but only subtilty, and fair speaking to deceive men, and by him we have gotten great shame, that where we might have vanquished the *Trojans* by Arms, now we have vanquished them by Deceit and falshood.

To these words answered *Ulysses*, that by his valour and wit the *Trojans* were vanquished: and if he had not been, the *Trojans* had been yet in glory in the City. And said to *Thelamon*, surely the *Palladium* was never conquered by your prowess, but by my wit: and the Greeks knew not what it was: and I knew that *Troy* could not be taken as long as it was in the same. I went secretly into the City, and did so much that it was deliber-



red unto me, and after we took the City. To this answered Thelamon injuriously, and Uliſſes to him in like manner, that they became mortal enemies each to other: Thelamon menaced Uliſſes unto death openly: Yet after this matter was well diſcuſſed, Agamemnon and Menelaus judged that Uliſſes ſhould keep the Palladium: (ſome ſaid, they made this judgment, forasmuch as Uliſſes by his fair ſpeaking had ſaved Helen from death, that Thelamon would have had dead.) And with this judgment they could not be content, for the greateſt part of the Heſt ſaid, that Thelamon ought better to have the Palladium than Uliſſes: therefore Thelamon ſpake to Agamemnon and Menelaus many injurious words, and ſaid that he would be their mortal enemy from thenceforth. For this cauſe Agamemnon, Menelaus, and Uliſſes, kept all three together, and had alway with them a great company of valiant Knights. And on the morrow after, early in the morning, Thelamon was found ſlain in his bed, and had wounds in many places of his body, whereof aroſe a great cry in the Hoſt, and gave all the blame to the three Kings before rehearſed.

Pyrrhus that loved King Thelamon, ſaid many injurious words to Uliſſes: Then Uliſſes doubted, and the next night following he and his men entred into their Ships ſecretly and left the Palladium with his friend Dyomedes. Pyrrhus did cauſe to burn the body of Thelamon, and put the aſhes in a veſſel of gold, to carry with him into his own country, to bury it honourably. The hate was great between Pyrrhus and King Agamemnon, and his brother: but Anthenor made the peace, and after gave a dinner to all the Nobles of Greece, and gave them fair gifts.

Among theſe things, the Greeks reproached Eneas, that had falſified his oath, becauſe he hid Polixena: for this cauſe they baniſhed him out of Troy for ever. And when Eneas ſaw he might not abide there, he prayed them earneſtly that he might have the two and twenty Ships which Paris had with him into Greece, and they granted to him his requeſt, and gave him four months ſpace to furniſh them of all ſuch neceſſaries that they lacked. Anthenor departed after from Troy, and led with him a great number of Trojans: but the Hiſtory telleth not whither he



he would go. Eneas greatly hated Anthenor forasmuch as by him he was banished out of Troy: and was in great sorrow why Anthenor was not as well banished as he. For this cause Eneas assembled all the Trojans, and said to them: My friends and brethren, since that Fortune hath put us wherein we be, we cannot live without a Governour: and if ye will do by my counsel, ye shall chuse Anthenor, your King, for he is wise enough to govern you. This counsel seemed good to the Trojans, and they sent after Anthenor, that returned: and as soon as he was come, Eneas assembled a great number of people to run upon him, as he that was the most mighty in Troy. Then the Trojans prayed him that he should cease, since that the war was finished, and that he should not begin it again. (Said Eneas) Shall we spare so hateful a Traitor, that by his villany hath caused Polixena the fair Daughter of King Priamus to die, by him I was banished out of Troy, that should have counselled you: and now I must needs leave you? Eneas said so much to the Trojans, that they banished Anthenor for ever out of Troy, and constrained him to go presently out of the Town.

Anthenor went unto Sea with a great company of Trojans, and fell among Pyrates, who ran upon him and slew many of his men, and hurt and robbed his Ships: in the end Anthenor escaped from them, and sailed so far that he arrived in a Province named Gerbandy, whereof Tetides was Lord and King, a just man and a courteous. In this Land arrived Anthenor with a few ships, and rested on the side of the greater Ile, that was nigh unto the Port. He saw the Country fair, full of woods and fountains, and there he builded a City, and fortified it with Walls and good Towers. And when the Trojans knew thereof, many went thither and dwelt there with Anthenor, and the City grew and was full of people, and Anthenor governed himself so wisely in this Land, that he was in grace with King Tetides, and was the second person after the King in his Realm, and named his City Cortiremetralum.

Cassandra that was left at Troy, had much sorrow for the mischiefs that were fallen to her friends: and ceased not to weep: and the Greeks demanded of her their estate in their returning.



turning home: he said to them, that they should suffer many great perils ere they got into their Country: and after said to Agamemnon, they of his own house should kill him. So it happened to him after, and to all the other, like as Cassandra had fore-told. Of King Thelamon were left two Sons of two Queens, the eldest named Hemicides of the Queen Glaucka: and the other of the Queen Thimissa, had to name Anchysatas, these two Childzen King Teuter nourished till they were able to bear Arms.

Among these things, Agamemnon and Menelaus demanded leave to return into their Lands: and the most part of the Host gave them leave, being sore vexed, forasmuch as they had been suspected of the death of Thelamon with Ulysses, which was stolen away like a thief, wherefore it thowed that he was culpable of his death. Thus these two Brethren went to Sea to return home, in the beginning of winter, when the Sea is most dangerous: soon after, the other Greeks went to Sea, as folks evil advised for the doubts of the Sea, and had their Ships all laden with riches of the City of Troy: and for the desire they had to be at home in their own Country, they returned back in the midst of winter, and set apart all dangers which fell unto them. About the hour of noon, came a great Tempest, and surprised them, suddenly with thunder and rain, with wind and great waves: that cast their Ships here and there: and brake their masts, and rent their sails. And when night came, which was long and dark, the Ships left each other in sailing before the wind, some in one place, some in another, and many were burnt with Lightning and Thunder, and many sunk in the Sea: and the great riches of Troy lost. Oylus Ajax that had xxii ships in this company, had all perished, and he himself by force of his arms and legs all naked swimming, arrived a land all swollen with the water he had drunken, and lay a great while upon the gravel, more looking for death than life: and after came others likewise, that were saved by swimming. This mischief came to Ajax, forasmuch as he drew Cassandra out of the Temple of Minerva. And it happeneth oft times, that many be punished for the sin and trespass of one man.



## CHAP. XXII.

How King *Naulus* and *Cetus* his Son did spoil many ships of the Greeks in their return, for the death of King *Agamemnon*, and of the exile of *Dyomedes*, and of his calling back by *Egee* his wife.

**A**T this time there was a King in Greece named *Naulus*, very rich and puissant, and his Realm stood upon the side of the Sea of Greece toward the South. In the which Sea were high Rocks, and many Mountains and Hills of land which were perillous. This King was Father of *Palamedes* that was slain before Troy, and had a Son named *Cetus*: there was not a Knight in Greece so rich nor so puissant.

Now there were some evil people there, that could not be in ease without annoying of others, which made King *Naulus* and his Son King *Cetus* to understand, that *Palamedes* was not slain in battel, so as the voice ran, but he was slain covertly by *Ulysses* and *Dyomedes*. *Agamemnon* and *Menelaus* had made and conceived a false Letter, wherein was contained that *Palamedes* would have betrayed the Host of the Greeks, whiles he was Emperour of the Host, for a great quantity of gold: and they made this Letter to be put by the sight of a Knight that was slain. Then *Ulysses* treated with one of the Secretaries of *Palamedes*, for a great sum of money, such as the Letters contained: this Secretary by the induction of *Ulysses*, put this sum of money under the head of *Palamedes* whiles he slept. And as soon as the Secretary said to *Ulysses* he had done: then *Ulysses* slew this Secretary privily, and did so much that this Letter came into the hands of the Greeks, that read it, and were all abashed when they saw the treason in writing, and the sum contained in the same, laid under his head. They went then into his Tent, and found the truth of this thing, and presently they would have run upon *Palamedes*: but that he offered himself to defend it against whomsoever would prove it: so there was none so hardy that durst fight against him. Then by *Ulysses* his fair language, this thing was appeased: and *Palamedes* continued still in his dignity.

¶

After



After this thing was appeased, Ulysses and Dyomedes told Palamedes, that they knew a pit to herein was much Treasure, and that they would he should have his part: and go the next night following. When night was come they went all three without any more company, and offered Palamedes to go down into the pit first, and said that they would follow: as soon as he was within, the other two cast stones upon him and slew him, after returned to their Tents privately. This thing done, these men charged King Naulus and Cetus of the death of Palamedes: Then the King and his Son began earnestly to bethink them, how they might avenge them of the Greeks. They knew well that the Greeks were upon return in the heart of the winter: and they must pass along by his Kingdome, then King Naulus did proclaim in all his Realm, that men should make great fires every night upon the Mountains, by the Sea side. And this did he, that when the Greeks should see the fires, they should come thither, thinking to find some good Haven: and if they came they should find hard Rocks and Hills of sand. So they should not escape without death. It was thus done as Naulus had devised, for there were nigh two hundred ships of the Greeks split and broken against the Rocks: all that were therein were drowned. When the other ships that followed them, heard the noise of them that were broken, they turned on the other board, and made to Sea-wards, and saved themselves. Of them that escaped were Agamemnon, Menelaus, and Dyomedes, and others that shall be named hereafter.

Cetus that otherwise was called Pellus, had great sorrow that Agamemnon was escaped: then he thought long, how he might avenge himself. And when he was arrived in his own land, he wrote a letter to Clytemnestra, the wife of Agamemnon: and this Letter contained, that for certain Agamemnon her Husband, had espoused one of the Daughters of King Priamus, and brought her into his Country, for to make her Queen, and to put out Clytemnestra, or slay her: therefore Cetus advertised her, that she might in time provide for her self. Clytemnestra believed these Letters, and thanked Cetus, and thought that she would avenge her of her Husband. This Clytemnestra in the absence



sence of her Husband, loved a man named Egistus by whom she had a Daughter named Erigona: she loved more Egistus, than ever she did her Husband, though he was come of low blood. But it is the custome of a woman that both amiss, to take unto her one of less value than her Husband is. She had treated with Egistus, that the first night Agamemnon should come and lye with her he should run upon him and slay him. This thing being done as she purposed: King Agamemnon slain, and laid in the earth: Clytemnestra shortly after, took to Husband her Love Egistus King of Michmas.

Agamemnon thus slain, had a Son of this Clytemnestra named Horestes, a young Child, which Calchibus his Cousin had in keeping, and took him from his Mother, to the end she should not slay him: and after sent him to the King of Creet, Idumeus, that was his Uncle. He had great joy of him, so had his wife Tharalis also, that loved him as much as Clytemnestra her daughter, that had no more Children but her, she was a fair young Maid. Thus as Cetus had written to Clytemnestra the wife of Agamemnon, in like manner he wrote to the wife of Dyomedes, named Egee, who was Daughter to King Polimenes of Argis, and sister of Assandrus, that returned from Troy with Dyomedes his Brother in law, it happened in their returning, that they went into the land of King Telephus, with a great company of men of Arms, and assailed them: and they defended themselves strongly. Assandrus slew many of the Knights of Telephus, wherefore he was sore displeased, and took a great spear, and addrested him against Assandrus, that he slew him. Dyomedes to avenge his death, slew many Knights of Telephus, and recovered the body of Assandrus and bare it into his Ship.

Thus dyed Assandrus, but it was not so reported to Egee his Sister: it was told her, that Dyomedes her Husband had slain him, to have all the Seigniorie of Argis, whereof Assandrus had the one half against his sister Egee. Of these tydings, and of them that Cetus had written, Egee was angry with Dyomedes her Husband, and wrought so with her people, that they promised they would no more receive Dyomedes for their Lord. Thus when Dyomedes returned, neither his Wife nor folk would



would receive him, but banished him out of his country for ever. Then he happened to arrive in Salamine, where King Theuter the brother of King Thelamon was. This King heard say, that Dyomedes was culpable of the death of his Brother, with U-lisses: whereupon he commanded that Dyomedes should be taken. But Dyomedes hearing thereof fled from thence. King Demophon and King Athmas being arrived in their own Lands, were banished in like manner. Then they arrived in the Land of Duke Nestor, which received them with great joy. These two Kings purposed to go into their Lands with men of Arms, and take vengeance on their people. But Duke Nestor blamed them thereof: and counselled them, that they should first receive them for their Lords, and promise them great liberties. Thus did they as Nestor counselled them: and it was not long after, but their people received them.

Whilst Eneas abode in Troy to repair his Ships, he endured many assaults of his neighbours, that would have taken the remnant of the Trojans. Forasmuch as he could not abide longer than his term assigned by the Greeks, he assembled the Trojans and counselled them they should send for Dyomedes to be their King, and said, he would come willingly, forasmuch as he was driven out of his Country: and he was both wise and valiant. So they sent to seek Dyomedes and found him: who came and found the Trojans besieged by their neighbour Nations. Eneas then prepared to battle: in which Dyomedes bare himself so valiantly, that he took some prisoners, and hanged many as Thieves. In the fifth battle he behaved himself so, that he got the upper hand of his enemies, and conquered them all: so as there was none of his neighbours that durst assail the Trojans.

During these things the navy of Eneas was made ready, whereupon he took shipping with Anchises his Father: and being at Sea, they resolved to go and seek an habitation where the Gods and Fortune would assign them. During their adventures, many perils happened, and rowing at randome, they sailed by Hellespont; from thence to Tuskany in Italy. From whence they sailed to Carthage, and again to Italy. The story whereof who list to peruse, let him read Virgil.

When



When Egeë the wife of Dyomedes knew that the Trojans had entertained Dyomedes, and that he had discomfited their enemies, she doubted that Dyomedes would take vengeance on her. She counselled with her people, and by their advisement sent for him to come unto her: who came, and had good entertainment. In like manner did sundry Lords that had been expelled return again to their Wives, and enjoyed their old Seignories as many as had escaped the danger of the Sea.

## CHAP. XXIX.

How *Horestes* Son of King *Agamemnon*, cruelly avenged himself for the death of his Father. And how King *Ulysses* after sundry perillous adventures, returned to his Country.

**T**hen *Horestes* Son of King *Agamemnon*, who was about twenty four years of age, and brought up under King *Idumeus*, was by *Idumeus* made Knight, at whose Knighting was great feasting. Then *Horestes* prayed him that he would help him to revenge the death of his Father, and to recover his Lands again. Whereupon *Idumeus* delibered to him a thousand armed men. And *Horestes* gathered out of other places, another thousand: so going toward *Michmas*, he went by *Trafim* where *Forensis* was Governour, of whom he got an hundred souldiers: this did *Forensis* for the hatred he bare to *Egistus*, because the said *Egistus* having espoused his Daughter, forsook her for the love of *Clytemnestra*. So he joynd with *Horestes*, to make war against *Egistus*. This expedition was taken in hand at the beginning of May. When they came before *Michmas*, those that kept the City would not yield it. He then besieged it round: for *Horestes* had answer from the Gods, that he should be avenged of his Mother with his own hands, albeit she was closed within that fortified City. *Egistus* was not at this time in that City, but was gone to procure aid from other places, against the coming of *Horestes*, by the instigation of his wife *Clytemnestra*.

When *Horestes* understood thereof, he secretly laid a great Ambush of Armed men, to surprize *Egistus* in his return; and therewith gave fresh assaults to the City: which being but in



THE FIRST BOOK  
fortified was taken after fifteen days siege: who appointing his men to keep due watch, that none should go out nor in at the Gates, went himself to the Palace Royal, where he took his Mother, committing her to prison, and caused to be apprehended all that were any way guilty of his Father's death. The same day returned Egistius, with his new aids, thinking to have gone to the rescue of the City: but by the way he was taken by the Ambush of Horestes, who slew all his men, and bound his hands behind him.

On the morrow, Horestes caused his mother Clytemnestra to be brought before him stark naked, with both her hands bound, whom as soon as ever he saw, he ran at her with his Sword, and first he cut off her two Waps, and after slew her, then he caused her body to be drawn into the fields, and there to be left for the Birds of the air to devour. Then he made Egistius to be stripped, and drawn naked through the City, afterwards to be hanged, in like manner dealt he with all those that were found to have been culpable of his Father's death. This vengeance took Horestes, for the death of good King Agamemnon his Father.

Menelaus having endured many perils by Sea, at length arrived in Crete, having with him Helen his wife: who hearing of the death of his brother, and how cruelly Horestes had put his own Mother to death, was sore displeased with his Nephew. At that time came unto Menelaus the greatest nobles of Greece, to see her, for whose sake all the Greeks had suffered so much trouble and vexation. From Crete, Menelaus sailed to Michmas, and told Horestes that he was not worthy to be neither King nor Governour there, for that he had so cruelly put to death his own Mother. Whereupon Menelaus assembled at Athens all the chief Nobles of Greece, to depose Horestes of his Reign and Government, for the tyrannous murdering of his Mother. Horestes excused himself thereof, saying: that the Gods had appointed him to do that which he had done.

At this the Duke of Athens rose up, and offered to be champion, in maintaining Horestes his cause against any that would withstand it: which Challenge of his being by no man accepted, Horestes was judged as guiltless, and suffered still to enjoy his King.



Kingdom. But upon this quarrel Horestes conceived such mortal hatred against Menelaus his Uncle, that he afterwards bare great evil will to him. Notwithstanding King Idumeus came within a while to Michmas, and reconciled them each to other, that Horestes took to wife Hermione the daughter of King Menelaus and of Helen. Whereat Erigone, the daughter of Egistus and of Clytemnestra had great sorrow, that she hanged her self being grieved that Horestes prospered so well.

During these affairs, Uliſſes came into Crete, with two Merchant Ships, for he had lost all his oton, and the chief of his goods by Pyrats. After which losses, he arrived in the Country of King Thelamon where he lost the rest of his goods, and they of that Country would have hanged him, if he had not by his cunning escaped their hands. After that he arrived in the Country of King Maus who hated him for the death of his Son Palamedes: yet there he so handled the matter by his industry, that he got from thence. At last coming again into Crete he was kindly entertained by King Idumeus, who wondered to see him in so poor a case, demanding of all his adventures how he had sped since he last departed from Troy. To which Uliſſes replied how great perils he had passed by Sea, and how he had lost all his men and goods that he brought from Troy. King Idumeus had pity on him, when he heard these things, and gave him honourable entertainment, as long as he would stay. When he would depart into his own Country, Idumeus gave him two ships, furnished with all things necessary for his voyage, and with great plenty of riches, requesting him that he would take his way by the King Alcinous to whom he should be very welcome.

This Uliſſes departing from Crete, came unto King Alcinous, who received him joyfully, and was much delighted with his communication. There Uliſſes told of Penelope his wife, how many Noble men had requested her love, yet none could obtain it, but she still abode constant and how certain of his lands were unjustly detained from her, during his absence: the truth of which, his Son Uliſſes Thelamonius coming thither assured him thereof. Whereupon Uliſſes prayed Alcinous that he would accompany him to his Realm with a great company of armed



men, to help him again to his right. To which Alcinous willingly agreed. So they sailed by Sea, and on a night arrived in his Country, and coming to the houses of his enemies, slew them all. On the morrow after, Ulysses came to his Palace, where he had Royal entertainment, of all sorts of people: but especially Penelope his wife made great joy for his coming, which she had long desired. His people then came from all places, with many rich presents, to welcome him home. Great was the joy, and most honourable the entertainment that Ulysses had at his return shewed him. Then he dealt with King Alcinous, that he gave to his Son Thelamonius, his Daughter Nausica to wife. The wedding being celebrated with great solemnity, Alcinous departed home again into his Country, leaving Ulysses quietly possessed in his Realm.

## CHAP. XXX.

Of the dealings of *Pyrrhus* after his return from *Troy*: and how *Hecstes* the Son of *Agamemnon* slew him at *Delphos*, for that he had gotten away *Hermione* his Wife,

**P**YRRHUS the Son of *Achilles*, and of *Dyadamis*, daughter of *Lycomedes*, which *Lycomedes* was Son to *Acastus* an old King, and greatly hated of *Acastus* his Grandfather by the mothers side. It is not recorded how this hatred grew: But this *Acastus*, having driven *Peleus* out of his Kingdom of *Thessaly*, laid wait to have slain *Pyrrhus* in his return from *Troy*.

*Pyrrhus* passing through many perils at Sea, was driven by foul weather, to cast most part of his riches he brought from *Troy* into the Sea: and arriving at *Molossæ*, he going ashore, was given to understand, that *P. Peleus* his Grandfather, by the Fathers side, was exiled from his Kingdome by *Acastus*, and that many Ships were hired to lye in wait to slay him: whereat he was sore displeased. King *Peleus* then knew not how to save himself, because *Philistines* and *Menalippus* the two Sons of *Acastus*, sought by all means to slay him. In the end *Peleus* remembered him of an old building, that stood half a mile from the City of *Thessaly*, between the Sea and the City: this place was



was encompassed about with Rocks and walls, having great Cellars under ground, into which by a little hole grown over with bushes a man might go.

Into these Vaults King Peleus got him, and there he abode until the return of his Nephew Pyrrhus from Troy, by whose good help he trusted to avenge himself of his enemies. For whose coming he often went to look on the Sea coast. When Pyrrhus with his Ships were landed, he addressed himself to Thessaly, against King Acastus: and the better to achieve his purpose, he sent his two Secretaries, the one called Crispus, and the other Adrastus, to one Assandrus, a man of great honour in Thessaly, (which Assandrus was a great friend both to him and to Peleus) for to have his counsel and help. The Messengers having been with Assandrus, returned to Pyrrhus, assuring him of his friendly aid. Whereupon Pyrrhus hoisted Sail, and making towards Thessaly, they were by a sudden Tempest driven in at the Port Sepeliadon, half a mile from Thessalie near about where Peleus kept in the Vaults. Then Pyrrhus went ashore to rest himself, and take fresh air, and by chance he went walking to the Cave where Peleus was hidden: and passing along the bushes he fell into the hole, where was the descent into the cave, where he found Peleus his Grandfather. Peleus knowing him by his countenance, for he resembled much his Father Achilles, embraced him joyfully, and made known unto him all his misfortunes, and the wrongs that he had sustained by the means of Acastus and his Sons. Tidings hereof came to Philistines and Menalippus the Sons of Acastus, who were then hunting in a Forrest there by. Then Pyrrhus apparelled himself in beggarly apparel, and leaving his Grandfather with his Ships, went alone with his sword into the Forrest where he met with Philistines and Menalippus, who demanded of him, what he was? Pyrrhus said, he was a Grecian, that returned from Troy, in company with 500 more had escaped his life from Shipwreck, and lost all that he had in the Sea, being now driven to beg for his sustenance: wherefore he did beseech them, if they had brought any victuals with them, they would give him something to eat. The two brethren said, that he should abide with them: which thing he granted.



Upon this parley a great Hart came running by them, at the sight whereof Menalippus put spurs to his Horse and followed on the chase: and immediately Philistines alighting off his horse to rest himself, Pyrrhus ran him thorow and slew him: and Menalippus afterwards returning again, was also slain by Pyrrhus. Thus Pyrrhus slew his two Uncles, the brethren of Thetis the Mother of Achilles his Father. Passing from thence, he met with Chinaras, one of the household of Acastus, of whom demanding where the K. Acastus was, and understanding that he was hard by, he slew Chinaras, and going in hast to his ships he arrayed him in precious robes, and so came back again to the Forest: and meeting with King Acastus, the King asked him who he was? I am (said he) one of the Sons of King Priamus of Troy, who now am Prisoner to Pyrrhus. Where is Pyrrhus (said the King) He pointed him toward the Sea. And as he was looking toward the Sea-coast, Pyrrhus drew his sword and would have slain him, had not Thetis been, who knew Pyrrhus, and cryed out, saying: Ah dear Nephew, what wilt thou do? Wilt thou kill my Father as thou hast killed my two brethren, thy Uncles? and thus saying, she caught him fast by the arm that he was about to strike withal, Then Pyrrhus replied, saying: the King Acastus thy Father, hath wrongfully exiled King Peleus thy Husband: let him restore him unto his right, and I will save his life. King Acastus was content therewith: then a peace was concluded between them all three, and they lived well together. After this, Acastus said to Peleus, I am old, and can no longer govern this Realm: and those are gone that should have succeeded me in this Kingdom. Therefore if it please thee, let Pyrrhus my dear Nephew take on him the Government. Peleus was well contented: and then was commandment given to all the Barons of Thessaly, that they should do homage to Pyrrhus as their King and Soberaign: whereto the Barons with great joy and liking accorded. Thus was Pyrrhus crowned King of Thessaly, and esteemed the most redoubted King in all Greece. Idumeus King of Creet dyed shortly after, leaving behind him two Sons, Merian and Loarca. Loarca dyed shortly after his Father, and Merian enjoyed the Kingdom. Thelamonius.



nus the Son of Uliſſes had a Son by his Wife Nauſica, named Deiphobus.

After all theſe things accompliſht, Acaſtus went and buried his two Sons in Theſſaly, by the conſent of Pyrrhus: and when Pyrrhus was promoted to his Royal dignity, he became enamored of Hermione, daughter of Helen, and wife to Horeſtes. Her he ſo courted, and allured by ſo many enticements, that he got her away from her Husband into Theſſaly, and took her to his wife. Horeſtes was ſore grieved at this injury: yet he durſt not aſſail him with battel in his own Realm, but ſaid he would ere long be avenged of this indignity, as ſoon as time would ſerve: ſhortly after that, Pyrrhus went to Delphos, to give thanks unto his God Apollo, for the good ſucceſs he had obtained in Theſſaly, in revengeing his Father's death, and getting the Kingdom: and leaving in his Palace behind him Andromache, ſometime the wife of Hector, and Laomedon her young Son, in his abſence it was found, that Andromache was with child by Pyrrhus, whereat Herimione took diſpleaſure, and ſent word to Menelaus her Father, how Pyrrhus for the love of Andromache had forſaken her, requeſting him, that during the abode of Pyrrhus at Delphos, he would come and kill Andromache and Laomedon her Son. At her requeſt Menelaus came, and with a ſword ran at Andromache, who caught in her arms Laomedon her young Son, and ran into the City crying for aid.

Upon ſight hereof the City roſe in arms, to defend Andromache and her young Son from the ſlaughter: whereupon Menelaus was forced to retire into his Country, without accompliſhing his purpoſe. When Horeſtes underſtood of Pyrrhus his being at Delphos, he went with all ſpeed thither, and ſlew him with his own hands. Thus did Horeſtes recover again his wife, and carried her into his own Realm. When Pyrrhus was dead, Pelcus and Theris took Andromache that was with Child by Pyrrhus, with her little Son Laomedon, and ſent them to the City of Moloffa, where Andromache was delivered of a goodly Son, which ſhe named Achilleides. This Achilleides when he was grown to years, holpe his Brother Laomedon to be King of Theſſaly, and willed for his ſake, all the Trojans ſhould be ſet free



free. Here the story saith, that the Sister of King Menon (which Menon, Achilles slew before Troy, and whom King Priamus buried by his Son Troilus) came in very costly apparel to Troy and opening her Brothers Sepulture took out his bones: which so soon as she had, she with them vanished suddenly, no man knew which way: and it is said, that either it was a Goddess, or the Daughter of a Goddess.

## CHAP. XXXI.

Of a Vision that *Ulysses* had in his sleep: and how *Thelagonus* the Son of *Ulysses* by Queen *Circe*, came to seek *Ulysses* and slew him not knowing who he was.

**A**S *Ulysses* was sleeping on his bed, he saw a vision in which there seemed before him, a wonderful fair creature, the most beautiful that ever he saw, which he would fain have embraced, but the Image would not suffer him. And he going after it, the Image asked him what he would have: he answered that he was desirous to joyn with it in carnal copulation. Then said the Image: Oh, a woful conjunction will this be, for thereupon one of us must dye. Moreover, to him seemed, that the Image held a Spear, about the head was a pensil cunningly wrought all over with fishes. And to him seemed, that the Image departed away and said: this sight betokeneth destruction that shall happen to us two. When *Ulysses* awaked he was troubled to think of his dream, and being desirous to know what it might signifie: he sent unto the Soothsayers of his Realm, to enquire what this Vision might presage: who having considered thereof said: that his own Son should kill him. Upon this he fearing his Son, caused him to be apprehended and surely kept. Afterward he made him to dwell in a Castle that stood alone, where with a few of his trusty Friends and Servants, he spent the time: and this Castle none might come unto but those few of his own retinue: and they not to pass or re-pass but at certain times by a draw bridge and a wicket, the Castle being watered round about. Now it had so fallen out before, that in his return from Troy, *Ulysses* had arrived in an Isle where *Circe* was Queen and Governour



Governour, which was the cunningest woman in the world in enchantment.

This Circe by her witchcraft, made Ulysses stay with her a time at his return, and conceived by him a Son, whom she named Thelagonus. And about the time of Ulysses his dwelling in his Castle: Thelagonus being grown to ripe years, and being a stout young man, would needs know of his Mother, who was his Father. After much intreaty she told him who was his Father and where he did dwell.

Thelagonus very glad hereof, and desiring to see his Father, travelled forthwith to Achaja, and hearing where Ulysses dwelt, he went thither: and coming on a Monday morning, he requested those that kept the bridge, that they would let him go in to speak with Ulysses. The Porters would by no means yield thereto, but thrust him back churlishly; whereat he taking displeasure, struck one on the neck with his fist, and beat him dead, and setting upon the other, cast them all off the Bridge, whereupon they made a great cry: insomuch that the people of the Castle armed themselves and came and assailed Thelagonus. He seeing that hept to one, and wung his Sword out of his hand, wherewith he slew fifteen in short space, and was himself hurt in many places. Whereupon the uproar grew more and more: and Ulysses doubting it was his Son Thelamonius, who had broken out of prison, came running out with a dart in his hand, which he flung at Thelagonus, and hit him not knowing who he was, and hurt Thelagonus a little.

Thelagonus feeling himself hurt, flung it again at Ulysses (not knowing who he was) with so great force, that hitting him, he fell down to the earth. Then Ulysses being in great pain, (remembering himself of his foresaid Mission,) demanded of him: what he was? saying, I am Ulysses. Thelagonus hearing this, fell to great lamentation, and said. Alas, wretch that I am. I came hither to see my Father, and to live joyfully with him, and now I have slain him. Thus saying, he fell down in a swoond: and when he was come again to his understanding, he rent his cloaths, beat himself about the face with his fists, and went to his Father, and fell down weeping before him, and said: I am:



Thelagonus thy unhappy Son, whom thou begottest on Queen Circe : I pray the Gods that they will suffer me to dye with thee.

When Ulysses understood this, he sent for Thelamonijs his lawfull begotten Son, who presently coming would have slain Thelagonus, to revenge his Father's death. But Ulysses said, not so, for he is thy brother : be ye reconciled together, and live and love as brethren. Then was Ulysses carried into Achaja : where within three days he died, and was by his Son honourably buried. After whose death, Thelamonijs his Son succeeded in that Kingdom, who kept with him Thelagonus his brother for the space of a year and a half, making him Knight, and honouring him greatly. At length being often sent for by Circe his mother, he returned to her into the Isle Aulides, having received many rich presents at the hands of his brother. And Circe dying shortly after, Thelagonus enjoyed her Kingdom, and reigned in the said Isle threescore years. Thelamonijs was fourscore and thirteen years old at the death of Ulysses his father, and reigned afterwards, much encreasing his Seigniorie, threescore and ten years.

In this wise Dares finished his book of the siege of Troy, and speaketh not of their further adventures : and as much as is contained in the History before written, is also found to have been recorded by Dictes, the Greek : and in most things both their Books agree.

Dares in the end of this book writeth thus, that the siege of Troy endured for the space of ten years, ten months and twelve days : and that the number of the Greeks there slain was eight hundred and six thousand fighting men : and the number of the Trojans, slain in defence of themselves and of their Countrey, was six hundred and fifty six thousand fighting men. He saith, moreover, that when Eneas departed from Troy into exile, he carried with him two hundred ships : and that Antenor had with him away five hundred Souldiers, and all the rest that were escaped went with Eneas.

The said Dares furthermore reported in the latter end of his Book, by whom the most noble Kings and Princes of the one part



part and of the other were slain : and he saith that Hector the most famous Prince of Chivalry in the world, slew with his own hands in good and loyal fight, eighteen Kings : not with treachery or subtil devices, but by his promises and valour: the names of which Kings do here follow : That is, King Archilogus, R. Prothesilaus, R. Patroclus, R. Menon, R. Prothenor, R. Archimenes, R. Polemon, R. Epistropus, R. Ecedius, R. Daccius, R. Polixenus, R. Phylus, R. Anthypus, R. Cenatus, R. Polibetes, R. Humerus, R. Fumus, and King Exemptus. And Paris he slew Palamedes, who was Emperour of all the Greekish Host, R. Achilles, and at last R. Ajax : and therewithal Ajax slew him also. Eneas slew R. Amphimachus, and R. Nercus. Achilles slew R. Cupemus, R. Yponeus, R. Plebans, R. Austerus, R. Cimonius, R. Menon, and King Neoptolemus.

Also he slew Hector at unawares, and Troylus, whom he caused his Myrmidons to beset round about. Pyrrhus the Son of the said Achilles, slew the Queen Penthesilea in fight : he slew also cruelly and tyrannously, the noble King Priamus. He slew moreover Polixena, the fairest Maid in the world. Dyomedes slew King Antipus, R. Escorius, R. Prothenor, and King Obelineus. . . . *Explicit* . . .

Now thus I am come to the finishing of this present book, which I have translated ( though rudely ) out of French into English, at the commandment and request of my right gracious and redoubted Lady and Mistress, the Lady Margaret, Dutchesse of Burgony, Lotherick, and of Brabant &c. And forasmuch as I am weary of tedious writing, and worn in years, being not able to write out several books for all Gentlemen, and such others as are desirous of the same, I have caused this book to be Printed : that being published the more plentifully, mens turns may be the more easily served. And as for the sundry Authors that have written of this matter, namely, Homer, Dictes and Dares, albeit their writings in many circumstances do disagree, yet in describing the Destruction of Troy, they all affirm it to have been in manner as is said, utterly ruined and laid waste for ever, with such a wonderful Effusion of the blood of so many worthy Kings, Princes, Dukes, Earls, Barons and Knights, and



and such an exceeding number of souldiers, as here is mentioned.

And look what pleasure or commodity men reap by perusing this Book, let them transfer the praise and thanks due therefoze, (next to almighty God) unto my foresaid right gracious Lady, who not only caused me to undertake this translation, but hath also bountifully rewarded me for my labours. To whose good liking I humbly dedicate this work: beseeching her Grace, and all that shall read the same, to accept in good part my simple endeavour herein. And I most humbly pray unto Almighty God, that the example of these cruel wars and desolation of this famous City, may be a warning to all other Cities and People, to flee Adultery, and all other vices, the causes of Wars and Destruction: and that all true Christians may learn to live godly, and in Brotherly love and conoord together. Amen.

---

**P**ergama flere volo, Fata Danaïs data solo,  
 Solo capta dolo: capta, redacta solo.  
 Causa mali talis, Meretrix fuit exitialis:  
 Foemina lethalis, Foemina plena malis:  
 Si fueris lota: si vita sequens bona tota,  
 Si eris ignota, non eris absque nota.  
 Passa prius Paridem, Paridis modo, Thesca pridem.  
 Es factura fidem, ne redeas in idem.  
 Rumor de veteri, faciet ventura timeri,  
 Cras poterunt fieri, turpia sicut heri.  
 Scoena quid evadis, morti quæ cætera tradis?  
 Cur tu non cladis, conscia, clade cadis?  
 Foemina digna mori, re-amatur amore priori:  
 Reddita victori, deliciisque thori.

---

**FINIS.**





# The Table of the Third Book of the Destruction of TROY.

Chapters.	Pages.
1. <b>H</b> ow King <i>Priamus</i> re-edified the City of <i>Troy</i> more strong than ever it was before : of his Sons and daughters. And how after many counsels, he sent <i>Anthenor</i> and <i>Polidamas</i> into <i>Greece</i> , to demand his Sister <i>Exione</i> , that <i>Ajax</i> kept. 3	3
2. How King <i>Priamus</i> assembled all his Barons, to know who he might send to <i>Greece</i> to get again his Sister <i>Exione</i> . How <i>Hector</i> answered : and of his good counsel : how <i>Paris</i> declared to his Father, the Vision of the Goddess <i>Venus</i> . 9	9
3. How <i>Paris</i> and <i>Deiphobus</i> , <i>Aeneas</i> , <i>Anthenor</i> , and <i>Polidamas</i> , were sent into <i>Greece</i> : and how they ravished <i>Helen</i> out of the Temple of <i>Venus</i> , with many prisoners and riches, and brought them to <i>Troy</i> , where <i>Paris</i> espoused <i>Helen</i> . 17	17
4. How <i>Menelaus</i> was sore troubled for the ravishing of <i>Helen</i> his Wife. And how her two Brethren <i>Castor</i> and <i>Pollux</i> , pursued <i>Paris</i> in the Sea : and of their deaths : And of the condition and manner of the Lords, as well <i>Greeks</i> as <i>Trojans</i> . 24	24
5. How the Kings, Dukes, and Earls, and Barons of <i>Greece</i> , assembled with their Navy, before <i>Athens</i> , to come to <i>Troy</i> : and how many ships each man brought to help King <i>Menelaus</i> . 28	28
6. How the <i>Greeks</i> sent <i>Achilles</i> to <i>Delphos</i> , to the God <i>Apollo</i> , to know the end of their War, and how he found <i>Calchas</i> , sent from the <i>Trojans</i> , that went with him to <i>Athens</i> . 29	29
7. How the <i>Greeks</i> with a great Navy sailed towards <i>Troy</i> : and how they arrived at <i>Tenedon</i> three miles from <i>Troy</i> , which they conquered, and beat down to the earth. 33	33
8. How the <i>Greeks</i> did send <i>Diomedes</i> and <i>Ulysses</i> again to K. <i>Priamus</i> , to have <i>Helen</i> and the Prisoners, and of their answer. 35	35
9. How <i>Agamemnon</i> assembled in council the <i>Greeks</i> to have R victuals :	



## The Table.

### Chapters.

	Pages.
<p>victuals : And how they sent <i>Achilles</i> and <i>Telephus</i> to the Realm of <i>Messe</i>, where they slew King <i>Theutran</i> in battel : And how <i>Telephus</i> was made King : And of the Kings that came to aid and help King <i>Priamus</i>.</p>	39
<p>10. Of the coming of Duke <i>Palamedes</i>, and how the <i>Greeks</i> departed from <i>Tenedon</i>, by the counsel of <i>Diomedes</i>, and came and took Land before the City of <i>Troy</i>, and how the <i>Trojans</i> received them in Battel right vigorously.</p>	43
<p>11. Of the second battel before <i>Troy</i>, where were many Kings and Barons slain, by worthy <i>Hector</i> : and how the <i>Trojans</i> had been victorious of their Enemies, had it not been for the request of <i>Thelamon Ajax</i>, Cousin of <i>Hector</i>.</p>	48
<p>12. Of the first truce of two months : and of the three battels between them, in which <i>Hector</i> beat <i>Achilles</i> to the ground twice, and after slew King <i>Prothenor</i> and cut him in two.</p>	58
<p>13. How the <i>Greeks</i> held Parliament how they might slay <i>Hector</i>, how they returned to the fourth battel, in which <i>Paris</i> and <i>Menelaus</i> encountred, and brought King <i>Thoas</i> prisoner to <i>Troy</i>.</p>	61
<p>14. How <i>Priamus</i> would have had King <i>Thoas</i> hanged, and how they fought the fifth battel, in which <i>Hector</i> slew three Kings : and how <i>Diomedes</i> slew the Sagittary.</p>	63
<p>15. Of the Truce between them, after which began battel again from morn to even, with great damage to both parties, but the <i>Trojans</i> lost more than the <i>Greeks</i>.</p>	65
<p>16. How the <i>Greeks</i> and <i>Trojans</i> began the sixth Battel, that durred thirty days, in which were many Kings and Princes slain on both sides, and how <i>Diomedes</i> smote down <i>Troilus</i> off his Horse, and sent it to <i>Briseyda</i> his love, that received it gladly.</p>	69
<p>17. How the <i>Greeks</i> and <i>Trojans</i> began the seventh battel, that durred twelve days, and after began the eighth battel, where in <i>Hector</i> was slain by <i>Achilles</i>, and they were driven back into their City by force to their great damage.</p>	71
<p>18. Of the rich Sepulture of <i>Hector</i>, and great lamentations and weepings the <i>Trojans</i> made for his death : and how <i>Palamedes</i></p>	des



## The Table.

Chapters.	Pages.
des was chosen Governour of the host of the Greeks.	74
19. How King <i>Priamus</i> went to be revenged on the Greeks for the death of his Son <i>Hector</i> : and of the Prowesses he did: and of the anniversary of <i>Hector</i> , in which <i>Achilles</i> was surpris'd with the love of <i>Polixena</i> the daughter of King <i>Priamus</i> , in such wise that he might endure no rest.	77
20. How <i>Achilles</i> sent a secret messenger to <i>Hecuba</i> Queen of <i>Troy</i> , to request her Daughter <i>Polixena</i> , and the answer: how for the love of her <i>Achilles</i> assembled the host of the Greeks and caus'd them to depart, and make peace with the <i>Trojan</i> .	79
21. Of the death of <i>Deiphobus</i> , the Son of <i>Priamus</i> , and how <i>Paris</i> slew <i>Palamedes</i> : and the <i>Trojans</i> chased the Greeks into their Tents, and set fire on their ships: and how <i>Achilles</i> would not go to battel, for the love of <i>Polixena</i> .	82
22. Of many battels that were fought on both sides: and of a certain Truce, of the death of Noble <i>Troilus</i> , whom <i>Achilles</i> slew against his promise, and drew at his horse tail through the host, how <i>Achilles</i> slew King <i>Menon</i> .	86
23. How <i>Paris</i> by the perswasion of <i>Hecuba</i> his mother, slew <i>Achilles</i> and the Son of Duke <i>Nestor</i> , in the Temple of <i>Apollo</i> , and how <i>Paris</i> and <i>Ajax</i> slew each other in battel.	90
24. How Queen <i>Penthesilea</i> came from <i>Amazon</i> with a thousand Maidens to the succour of <i>Troy</i> , and slew many Greeks, and after was slain by <i>Pyrrhus</i> the Son of <i>Achilles</i> .	93
25. How <i>Antenor</i> and <i>Aeneas</i> consulted together to deliver the City unto the Greeks by Treason, and did it under colour of peace: and how King <i>Priamus</i> withstood them, with some of his Bastards, by great and rude words.	
26. How the Traitor <i>Antenor</i> bought of <i>Ulysses</i> , and gave it to <i>Ulysses</i> : and of what was by	



*E. G. Allen*  
*2/13/15*

The Table.

Chapters.

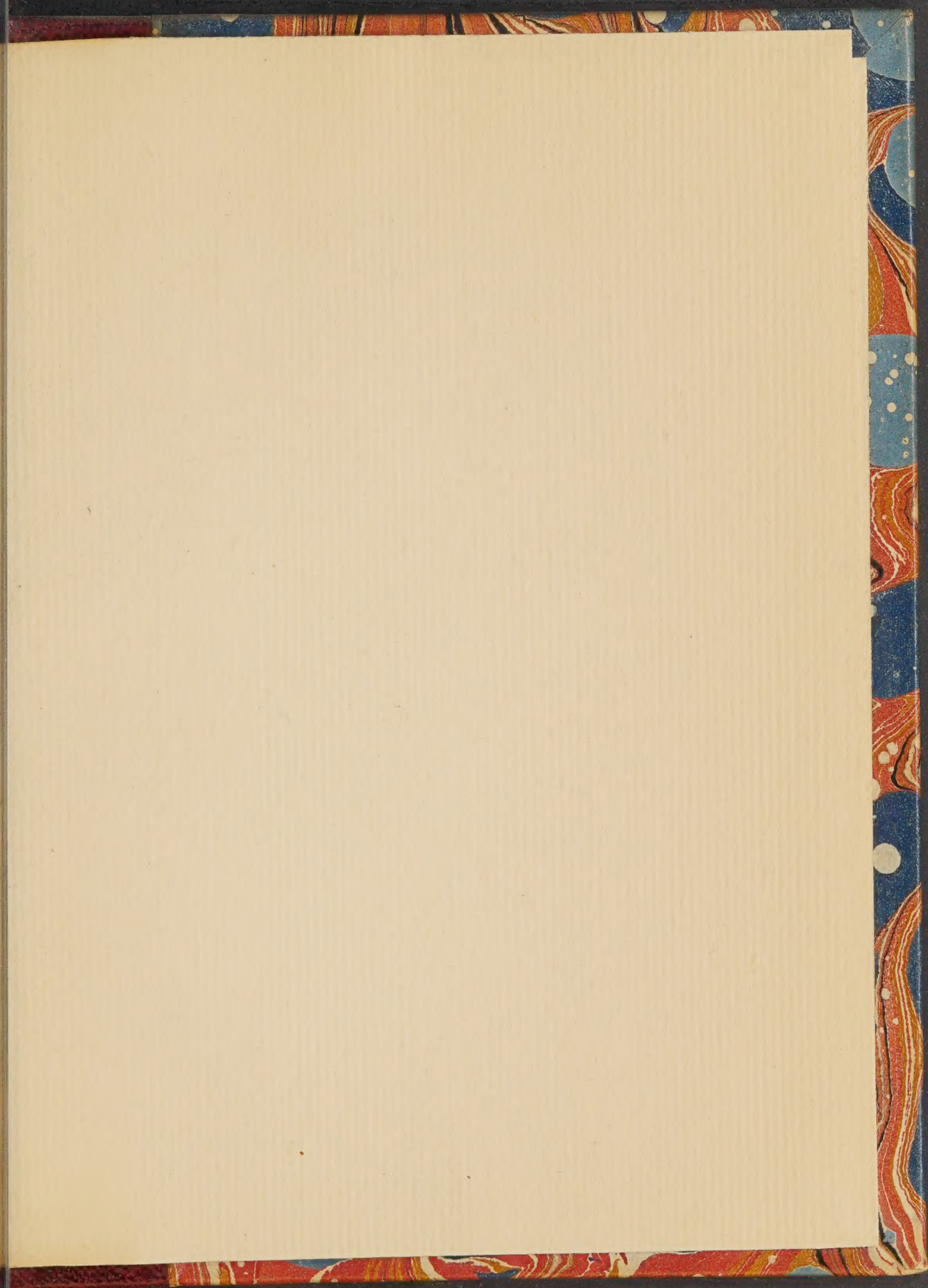
Pages.

- were exiled out of *Troy* : and how the *Greeks* returned, and of their adventures. 109
28. How King *Naulus* and *Cetus* his Son did spoil many ships of the *Greeks* in their return, for the death of King *Agamemnon*, and of the exile of *Diomedes*, and of his calling back *Egee* his wife. 113
29. How *Horester* Son of King *Agamemnon*, cruelly avenged himself for the death of his Father. And how King *Uliſſes* after sundry perillous adventures, returned to his Country. 117
30. Of the dealings of *Pyrrhus* after his return from *Troy*: and how *Horester* the Son of *Agamemnon* slew him at *Delphos*, for that he had gotten away *Hermione* his wife. 120
31. Of a vision that *Uliſſes* had in his sleep : and how *Thelagonus* the Son of *Uliſſes* by Queen *Circe*, came to seek *Uliſſes* and slew him, not knowing who he was. 124

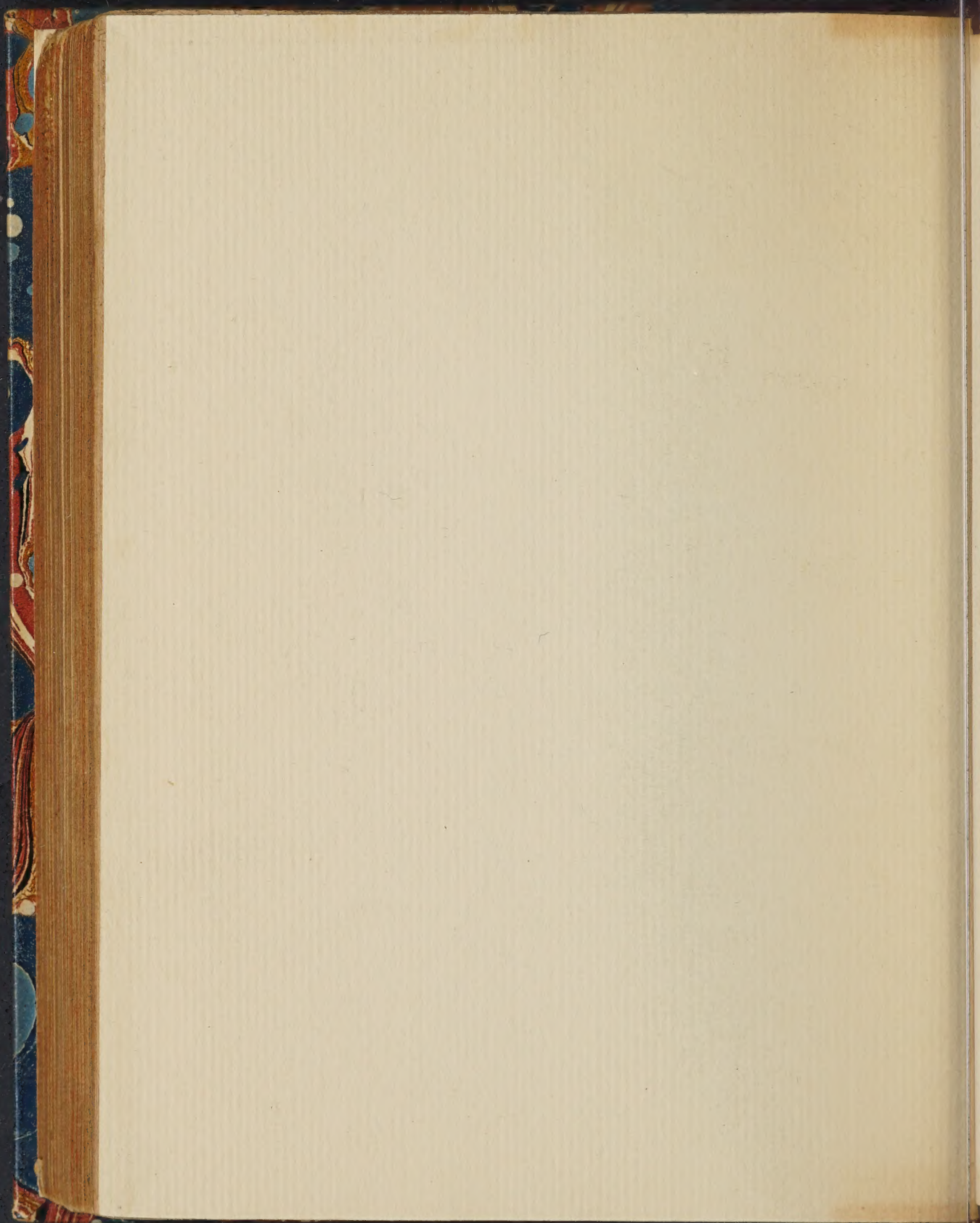
---

FINIS.











1818959



